

Phiên bản  
mới nhất  
**NEW  
EDITION**

**TheWindy**  
TỦ SÁCH GIÚP HỌC TỐT TIẾNG ANH

# GIẢI THÍCH NGŨ' PHÁP TIẾNG ANH

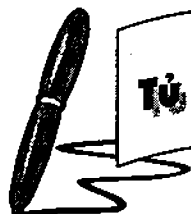
- Tổng hợp những vấn đề ngữ pháp tiếng Anh cơ bản thông dụng nhất
- Giải thích rõ ràng, dễ hiểu các cách dùng và quy luật mà người học cần nắm vững
- Các dạng bài tập phong phú giúp người học củng cố và nâng cao kiến thức



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN  
ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

**The Windy**

**ĐẠI LỢI – HƯƠNG GIANG (Chủ biên)**



**Tủ sách giúp học tốt môn tiếng Anh**

# **GIẢI THÍCH NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH**

**Hiệu đính: NGỌC MAI & NHUNG ĐỎ**

⇒ Tổng hợp những vấn đề ngữ pháp tiếng Anh cơ bản thông dụng nhất

⇒ Giải thích rõ ràng, dễ hiểu các cách dùng và quy luật mà người học cần nắm vững

⇒ Các dạng bài tập phong phú giúp người học củng cố và nâng cao kiến thức

**NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI**

Bản quyền © thuộc công ty cổ phần sách MCBooks. Theo hợp đồng chuyển nhượng giữa công ty cổ phần sách MCBooks và nhóm tác giả The Windy - Phan Văn Lợi (Đại Lợi – Hương Giang) chủ biên. Bất cứ sự sao chép nào không được sự đồng ý của công ty cổ phần sách MCBooks đều là bất hợp pháp và vi phạm luật xuất bản Việt Nam, luật bản quyền quốc tế, và công ước Berne về bảo hộ bản quyền sở hữu trí tuệ.

***Mọi ý kiến đóng góp của Quý độc giả xin gửi về:***

**Ban Biên tập sách ngoại ngữ The Windy**

**- Công ty cổ phần sách MCBooks**

**26/245 Mai Dịch - Cầu Giấy - Hà Nội**

**ĐT: 04.37921466**

**Email: [thewindy@mcbooks.vn](mailto:thewindy@mcbooks.vn)**

## LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

**Bạn đọc thân mến!**

**N**gày nay tiếng Anh được coi là ngôn ngữ quốc tế. Biết tiếng Anh bạn không chỉ có cơ hội được giao tiếp với mọi người từ khắp nơi trên thế giới, mà còn có cơ hội được chinh phục kho tri thức mênh mông của nhân loại, được tìm hiểu về cuộc sống, văn hóa, con người của nhiều nước khác nhau.

Hẳn các bạn đều biết ngữ pháp có vai trò đặc biệt quan trọng trong việc học tiếng Anh vì nó là nền tảng hỗ trợ đắc lực cho các kỹ năng: nghe, nói, đọc, viết. Muốn thực hành các kỹ năng khác một cách hiệu quả bạn phải nắm chắc được kiến thức ngữ pháp.

Trên thị trường sách phong phú hiện nay có rất nhiều loại sách về ngữ pháp tiếng Anh, tuy nhiên người học luôn mong muốn tìm được một cuốn sách hệ thống được một cách bài bản, đầy đủ và chi tiết về các vấn đề ngữ pháp của tiếng Anh. Đáp ứng yêu cầu đó chúng tôi xin ra mắt bạn đọc cuốn **“Giải thích ngữ pháp tiếng Anh”**,

Cuốn sách là sự tổng hợp những chủ điểm ngữ pháp cơ bản, đầy đủ, dễ hiểu, kèm



# hương 1 TỪ LOẠI TRONG TIẾNG ANH (THE PARTS OF SPEECH)

## ĐẠI TỪ (PRONOUN)

### I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA:

Đại từ là từ dùng để thay thế danh từ.

### II. CÁC LOẠI ĐẠI TỪ:

#### 1. Đại từ nhân xưng (personal pronouns):

Đại từ nhân xưng là các đại từ được dùng để chỉ người, nhóm người, hoặc các vật.

##### a. Hình thức (form):

Đại từ nhân xưng có hình thức chủ ngữ và tân ngữ hoàn toàn khác nhau (trừ you và it).

NGÔI (PERSON)	SỐ ÍT (SINGULAR)			SỐ NHIỀU (PLURAL)		
	CHỦ NGŨ	TÂN NGŨ	NGHĨA	CHỦ NGŨ	TÂN NGŨ	NGHĨA
NGÔI 1	I	Me	Tôi	We	us	Chúng tôi
NGÔI 2	You	you	Bạn	You	you	Các bạn
NGÔI 3	He	Him	Anh ấy	They	them	Họ, chúng
	She	Her	Chị ấy			
	It	It	Nó			

##### b. Cách dùng:

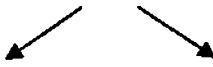
Đại từ nhân xưng được dùng để thay thế cho danh từ khi không cần thiết sử dụng hoặc lặp lại chính xác danh từ hoặc cụm danh từ đó.

Eg: John's broken his leg. He'll be in hospital for a few days.

(John bị gãy chân. Anh ấy sẽ nằm viện vài ngày.)



được dùng làm:



- Chủ ngữ của động từ.

Eg: I love you.

(Anh yêu em.)

- Bổ ngữ của động từ to be:

Eg: It was I who chose this color.

(Chính tôi đã chọn màu này.)



được dùng làm:



- Tân ngữ trực tiếp hoặc gián tiếp của động từ. (direct object or indirect object of a verb).

Eg: They called us on the telephone.

(Họ gọi điện thoại cho chúng tôi.)

- Tân ngữ của giới từ.

Eg: He said he couldn't live without her.

(Anh ấy nói rằng anh ấy không thể sống thiếu cô ấy.)

Lưu ý: Hình thức tân ngữ thường được dùng khi đại từ đứng một mình hoặc sau *be*.

Eg: Who spilt coffee all over the table? Me/ Sorry, it was me.

(Ai đã làm đổ cà phê ra bàn? Tôi đấy/ Xin lỗi, là tôi đấy.)

But: Who spilt coffee all over the table? – I did.

(Ai đã làm đổ cà phê ra bàn? - Tôi đã làm đổ đấy.)

Một số cách dùng của *it*.

- *It* thường được dùng thay cho vật, động vật, trẻ sơ sinh hoặc trẻ nhỏ (khi giới tính không được biết hoặc không quan trọng.)

Eg: I've bought a new watch. It's very expensive.

(Tôi vừa mua một cái đồng hồ mới. Nó rất đắt.)

The baby next door kept me awake. It cried all night.

(Đứa bé nhà bên cạnh đã làm tôi thức giấc. Nó khóc cả đêm.)

- *It* dùng để chỉ người khi muốn xác định người đó là ai. Sau khi đã xác định được đó là nam hay nữ thì ta dùng *he* hoặc *she* để thay thế.

Eg: Who was it on the telephone? It was Vicky. She just called to invite you to her birthday party.

*(Ai đã gọi điện thoại đấy? Là Vicky. Cô ấy gọi để mời bạn tới bữa tiệc sinh nhật của cô ấy.)*

- Đại từ **it** (điều đó; nó) được dùng để chỉ một hành động, một tình huống hoặc một ý tưởng đã được nói đến trong một cụm từ hoặc một câu đi trước.

Eg: When the factory closes, it means 500 people losing their job.

*(Khi nhà máy đóng cửa đồng nghĩa với việc 500 người sẽ thất nghiệp.)*

- Đại từ **it** được dùng như một chủ ngữ giả để nói về thời tiết, thời gian, nhiệt độ, khoảng cách ...

Eg: It's raining heavily. *(Trời mưa tầm tã.)*

It's half past eight now. *(Bây giờ là tám giờ ba mươi phút.)*

- **It** được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả khi chủ ngữ thật của câu là một động từ nguyên mẫu, một danh động từ hoặc một mệnh đề ở cuối câu.



Eg: I was impossible to get a taxi at that time.

*(To get a taxi was impossible at that time)*

*(Có lẽ lúc ấy tôi không thể bắt nổi một chiếc taxi.)*

It's always sad saying goodbye to someone you love.

*(Saying goodbye to someone you love is always sad)*

*(Sẽ rất buồn khi phải nói lời chia tay với người mà mình yêu thương.)*

- **It** còn được dùng như một tân ngữ giả, theo sau nó là một tính từ hoặc danh từ được bỏ nghĩa bởi cụm từ hay mệnh đề.

Eg: I found it difficult to explain to him.

*(Tôi nhận thấy thật khó để giải thích cho anh ấy.)*

- Đại từ **it** được dùng với động từ "to be" để nhấn mạnh cho 1 từ hoặc 1 cụm từ trong câu.

Eg: It was Jim who lent us money.

*(Jim chính là người đã cho chúng tôi vay tiền.)*

It was three weeks later that he heard the news.

*(Đã ba tuần kể từ khi ông ấy nhận được tin đó.)*

- Đại từ **it** đôi khi được sử dụng trong các đặc ngữ có tính chất thân mật.

Eg: Hang it all, we can't wait for him all day.

*(Thật bực mình, chúng ta không thể đợi nó cả ngày được.)*

When I see him, I'll have it out with him.

(*Gặp nó tôi sẽ nói cho nó vỡ lẽ ra mới được.*)

If the teacher sees you doing that, you'll catch it.

(*Thầy mà thấy mày làm vậy thì mày liệu hồn.*)

**2. Đại từ sở hữu (possessive pronouns):**

Đại từ sở hữu là hình thức sở hữu của đại từ nhân xưng (personal pronouns), được dùng để chỉ vật gì thuộc về người nào đó.

**a. Hình thức (form):**

PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Đại từ nhân xưng)	POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (Đại từ sở hữu)
I	Mine
You	Yours
We	Ours
They	Theirs
He	His
She	Hers

It không có dạng đại từ sở hữu. Its là dạng tính từ sở hữu của it.

**b. Cách dùng:**

- ◆ Đại từ sở hữu thường được dùng không có danh từ theo sau. Nó thay thế cho tính từ sở hữu + danh từ (possessive adjective + noun)

Eg: Can I borrow your keys? I can't find mine.

(*Tôi có thể mượn chìa khóa của bạn được không? Tôi không thấy chìa khóa của tôi.* Mine = my keys)

Eg: You are using my pen. Where's yours?

(*Bạn đang dùng bút của tôi. Bút của bạn đâu? Yours = your pen*)

- ◆ Đại từ sở hữu cũng có thể được dùng trước danh từ mà nó thay thế.

Eg: Ours is the third house on the left.

(*Nhà của chúng tôi là ngôi nhà thứ ba bên tay trái.*)

- ◆ Không dùng mạo từ trước các đại từ sở hữu.

Eg: That coat is mine. ~~That coat is the mine.~~

(*Cái áo đó là của tôi.*)





**Lưu ý:** Đôi khi ta có thể thấy đại từ sở hữu đứng sau giới từ of. Sự kết hợp này được gọi là sở hữu kép. (double possessive)

Eg: Tom is a friend of mine. (Tom là một người bạn của tôi.)

(a friend of mine = one of my friends)

I borrowed some magazines of yours.

(Tôi đã mượn một vài cuốn tạp chí của bạn.)

(some magazines of yours = some of your magazines)



### 3. Đại từ phản thân và đại từ nhấn mạnh (reflexive and emphatic pronouns):

#### a. Hình thức (form):

Đại từ phản thân và đại từ nhấn mạnh có chung hình thức:

PERSONAL PRONOUNS (đại từ nhân xưng)	REFLEXIVE/ EMPHATIC PRONOUNS (đại từ phản thân/ nhấn mạnh)
I	Myself
You	Yourself
He	Himself
She	Herself
It	Itself
We	Ourselves
You	Yourselves, yourself
They	Themselves

#### b. Cách dùng:

Đại từ phản thân được dùng làm tân ngữ của động từ khi hành động của động từ do chủ ngữ thực hiện tác động lại ngay chính chủ ngữ. Nói cách khác đại từ phản thân được dùng khi chủ ngữ và tân ngữ của hành động cùng là một đối tượng.

Eg: When the policeman came in, the gunman shot him.

(Khi viên cảnh sát bước vào, tên cướp đã bắn anh ta. (him = police))

Eg: When the policeman came in, the gunman shot himself.

(Khi viên cảnh sát bước vào, tên cướp đã tự sát. (him = the gunman))

Jane looks at herself in the mirror. (Jane soi mình trong gương.)

We've looked ourselves out. (Chúng tôi tự nhốt mình bên ngoài.)

This refrigerator defrosts itself. (Tủ lạnh này tự rã đông.)

Ngoài chủ ngữ của mệnh đề, đại từ phản thân còn có thể chỉ những thành phần khác trong câu.

Eg: His letters are all about himself.

(Thư của anh ta hoàn toàn viết về bản thân anh ta.)

I love you for yourself, not for your money.

(Tôi yêu em vì chính bản thân em chứ không phải vì tiền của em.)

Lưu ý: Đại từ phản thân có thể được dùng sau giới từ, nhưng sau giới từ chỉ vị trí (preposition of place) chúng ta thường dùng đại từ nhân xưng.

Eg: I'm annoyed with myself. (Tôi cảm thấy tức giận với chính bản thân mình.)

But: Mike didn't have any money with him.

(Mike chẳng có chút tiền nào trong người.)

In the mirror I saw a lorry behind me.

(Qua gương, tôi nhìn thấy một chiếc xe tải đằng sau mình.)

- **Đại từ nhấn mạnh (emphatic pronouns):**

Đại từ nhấn mạnh có cùng hình thức với đại từ phản thân, được dùng để nhấn mạnh một danh từ hoặc đại từ. Đại từ nhấn mạnh thường đứng ngay sau từ được nhấn mạnh và có nghĩa là "chính người đó, chính vật đó".

I spoke to the president himself.

(Tôi đã nói chuyện với chính ngài tổng thống.)

The film itself wasn't very good but I like the music.

(Bản thân bộ phim không hay lắm nhưng tôi thích phần nhạc trong phim.)

Khi nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ, đại từ nhấn mạnh có thể đứng cuối câu.

Eg: I saw him do it myself. (Chính mắt tôi thấy anh ta làm điều đó.)

I myself saw him do it.

**c. By + oneself = alone, without help:**

By myself/ yourself/ himself ... có nghĩa là "một mình" (alone) hoặc không có ai giúp đỡ (without help).

Eg: He likes living by himself. (Anh ta thích sống một mình.)

(He likes living alone)

Do you need any help? – No thanks. I can do it by myself.

(Bạn có cần giúp không? – Không, cảm ơn. Tôi có thể làm điều đó một mình.)

(I can do it without help.)

#### 4. Đại từ chỉ định (demonstrative pronouns):

Đại từ chỉ định gồm các từ: **this, that these, those**. Đại từ chỉ định được dùng để chỉ định vật, sự vật hoặc để giới thiệu hay nhận dạng người nào đó.

Eg: **These** are my candies. **Those** are yours.

(*Đây là những chiếc kẹo của tôi, kia là những chiếc kẹo của bạn.*)

**This** costs more than **that**.

(*Cái này đắt hơn cái kia.*)

**This** is my brother.

(*Đây là anh trai tôi.*)

Who's **that**? – **That's** Tom Jones.

(*Ai kia? Đó là Tom Jones.*)

a. **This** (cái này, người này), số nhiều là **these** (những cái này, những người này), được dùng để:

♦ Chỉ vật ở khoảng cách gần với người nói.

Eg: In all your paintings I like **this** best.

(*Trong tất cả các bức vẽ của cậu, tớ thích bức này nhất.*)

**These** are my shoes. (*Đây là giày của tôi.*)

Giới thiệu với người nào đó.

Eg: **This** is my brother. (*Đây là anh tôi.*)

**These** are the Smiths. (*Đây là ông bà Smiths.*)

♦ Chỉ tình huống và sự việc đang xảy ra, sắp xảy ra hoặc sắp được nói tới.

Eg: Listen to **this**. You'll like it. (*Nghe này, bạn sẽ thích nó thôi.*)

I don't like to say **this**, but I am really not happy with the service here.

(*Tôi không thích nói điều này nhưng tôi thật sự không hài lòng với dịch vụ ở đây.*)

b. **That** (cái kia/ người kia), số nhiều là **those** (những cái kia/ những người kia) được dùng:

♦ Chỉ vật ở khoảng cách xa (với người nói).

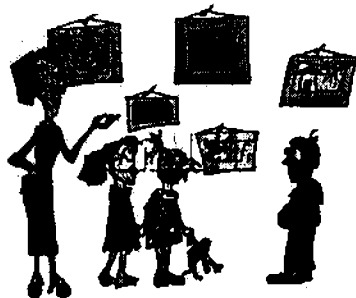
Eg: **That's** Jery's car, over there. (*Kia là xe hơi của Jery, ở kia kia.*)

Put **those** down – they are dirty.

(*Đặt những cái đó xuống đi – chúng bẩn quá.*)

**This** is my umbrella. **That's** yours. (*Đây là ô của tôi. Kia là ô của bạn.*)

♦ Khi xác định hoặc nhận dạng người nào đó.



Eg: Is **that** Ruth? - No, **that's** Rita.

(*Kia là Ruth phải không? – Không phải, đó là Rita.*)

Who are **those**? – **Those** look like Mark and Susan.

(*Những người kia là ai vậy? Trông họ có vẻ giống Mark và Susan.*)

- ◆ Nói về điều gì đó trong quá khứ, điều gì đó vừa mới xảy ra hoặc vừa được đề cập đến.

Eg: That was nice. What was it? (*Cái đó thật đẹp, nó là cái gì thế?*)

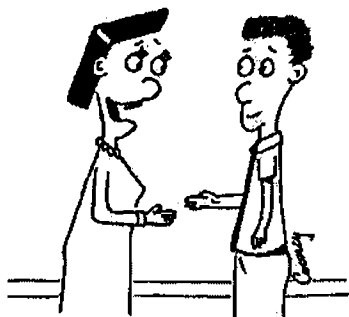
It was a secret. – That's why they never talked about it.

(*Đó là một bí mật – Đó là lý do tại sao chúng tôi chẳng bao giờ nói về nó.*)

- ◆ Trên điện thoại, chúng ta dùng **this** để nói chúng ta là ai, và **this** hoặc **that** để hỏi người kia là ai.

Eg: Hello, this is Elisabeth. Is that Ruth?

(*Xin chào, Elisabeth đây, Ruth đó phải không?*)



- ◆ **This/ these/ that/ those** có thể được dùng thay cho một danh từ, một cụm từ hoặc một mệnh đề đã được nói đến trước đó.

Eg: He hung his daughter's portrait beside **that** of his wife's.

(*Ông ta treo chân dung con gái bên cạnh chân dung của vợ ông ta.*) (*that = portrait*)

Eg: They are digging up my road. They do **this** every year.

(*Họ đang đào xới con đường nhà tôi. Năm nào họ cũng làm việc này.*)

(*this = digging up my road*)

- ◆ Đại từ **those** có thể được theo sau bởi một mệnh đề quan hệ xác định hoặc một ngữ phân từ chỉ người.

Eg: **Those** who couldn't walk were carried on stretchers.

(*Những người không đi được thì được khiêng bằng cáng.*)

(*those who ... = the people who*)

Those injured in the accident were taken to hospital.

(*Những người bị thương trong vụ tai nạn đã được đưa tới bệnh viện.*)

(those = people)

This boy of yours seems very intelligent.

(*Cậu con trai này của anh có vẻ rất thông minh.*)

- ◆ **This/ these/ that/ those** có thể đứng một mình hoặc có **one/ ones** theo sau khi có sự so sánh hoặc lựa chọn.

Eg: I don't like **these** sweaters. I prefer **those** (ones) over there.

(*Tôi không thích những chiếc áo len này. Tôi thích những chiếc ở đằng kia hơn.*)

**This one** looks the nicest. (*Cái này có vẻ đẹp nhất.*)

### 5. Đại từ nghi vấn (Interrogative pronouns):

Đại từ nghi vấn là các đại từ dùng để hỏi như: **who, whom, whose, what, which**. Các đại từ nghi vấn thường đứng đầu câu và luôn đi trước động từ.

Eg: What do you want? (*Bạn muốn gì?*)

Whose is the red car? (*Cái ô tô màu đỏ là của ai vậy?*)

- a. **Who:** là đại từ nghi vấn dùng cho người. **Who** có thể được dùng làm - **Chủ ngữ của động từ (subject of a verb):**

Eg: Who keeps the keys? (*Ai giữ chìa khóa?*)

Who is the man in grey coat?

(*Người đàn ông mặc áo choàng xám là ai thế?*)

- **Tân ngữ của động từ hoặc giới từ (object of a verb or a preposition):**

Eg: Who did you see at church? (*Bạn nhìn thấy ai ở nhà thờ?*)

(Who là tân ngữ của động từ *see*)

Who does this place belong to? (*Nơi này thuộc về ai?*)

(Who là tân ngữ của giới từ *to*)

Lưu ý: khi **who** là tân ngữ của giới từ thì giới từ luôn được đặt ở cuối câu.

Eg: Who did you go with? (not say: ~~with who did you go with~~)

(*Bạn đã đi cùng ai thế?*)

- b. **Whom:** là đại từ nghi vấn dùng cho người **Whom** được dùng làm tân ngữ của động từ hoặc giới từ.

Eg: Whom did they invite? (*Ai đã mời họ?*)

To whom were you speaking at that time? / Whom were you speaking to at that time?

(Lúc đó bạn đang nói chuyện với ai thế?)

**Lưu ý:** Who và whom đều có thể làm tân ngữ của động từ hoặc giới từ nhưng who thường được dùng hơn (nhất là trong văn phong thân mật (informal)). Whom thường dùng trong lối văn trịnh trọng (formal) hoặc văn viết.

Eg: Who/ whom did you invite to the party? (Ai đã mời bạn tới bữa tiệc thế?)

- Trong trường hợp whom làm tân ngữ cho giới từ, giới từ có thể được đặt trước whom hoặc đặt cuối câu. Cách dùng giới từ + whom được dùng trong văn phong trịnh trọng.

Eg: Whom did you go with? Hoặc With whom did you go?

c. **Whose** là đại từ nghi vấn dùng để hỏi về sự sở hữu. Whose được dùng làm chủ ngữ của động từ.

Eg: Whose is that dog? (Con chó kia của ai?)

What about these jackets? Whose are they?

(Còn những chiếc áo vét này thì sao? Chúng là của ai?)

(Whose là chủ ngữ của is và are)

d. **What** là đại từ nghi vấn được dùng để hỏi về sự vật, sự việc. What có thể được dùng làm chủ ngữ của động từ hoặc tân ngữ của động từ và giới từ.

Eg: What caused the explosion? (Cái gì đã gây ra vụ nổ)

(What là chủ ngữ của caused)

What did you say? (Câu nói gì)

(What là tân ngữ của say)

What was your theory based on? / On what was your theory based?

(Lý luận của bạn được căn cứ vào cái gì?)

Một số cách dùng với What:

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
◆ <b>What:</b> dùng để hỏi về thông tin.	Eg: What are you doing? (Bạn đang làm gì vậy?) - I'm writing a letter. (Mình đang viết thư.)
◆ <b>What:</b> dùng để hỏi về nghề nghiệp.	Eg: What is he? / What does he do? / What is his profession? (Anh ấy làm nghề gì vậy?)

<p>◆ <b>What ... for:</b> hỏi về mục đích hoặc lí do.</p>	<p>Eg: What is this tool for? (Dụng cụ này dùng để làm gì vậy?) What are they digging up the road for? (Họ đào đường lên để làm gì thế?) = Why are they digging up the road?</p>
<p>◆ <b>What be ... like?:</b> dùng để hỏi về tính cách, đặc trưng của một người hoặc vật.</p>	<p>Eg: What was the exam like? – It was difficult. (Bài thi thế nào? – Khó lắm.) (= How was the exam? – It was difficult.) Eg: What is David like? – He's short and fat and wears glasses./ He is sociable and friendly. (David trông thế nào? - Anh ta thấp béo và còn đeo kính nữa./ Anh ta là người hòa đồng và thân thiện.)</p>
<p>◆ <b>What does he/ she ... look like?</b> Dùng để hỏi về vẻ bề ngoài.</p>	<p>Eg: What does he/ she look like? She's tall and glamorous. (Cô ấy trông thế nào? Cô ấy cao và đầy quyến rũ)</p>
<p>◆ <b>What about + V-ing?:</b> (= <b>How about + V-ing</b>): Được dùng để đưa ra lời đề nghị hay gợi ý.</p>	<p>Eg: What about going for walk? (Đi bộ thì thế nào?)</p>

e. **Which** là đại từ nghi vấn được dùng cho cả người và vật, để chỉ sự lựa chọn trong số người hay vật đã được biết. **Which** có thể làm chủ ngữ của động từ hoặc tân ngữ của động từ và giới từ.

Eg: Which is your favorite subject?

(Môn học nào là môn học ưa thích của bạn?)

Which is quicker, the bus or the train?

(Xe nào nhanh hơn, xe bus hay tàu điện?)

We have two Smiths here. Which of them do you want to see?

(Chúng tôi có 2 ông Smith ở đây. Bạn muốn gặp ông Smith nào?)

There are two addresses in your card. Which do you want me to send it to?!

To which do you want me to send it?

(Có 2 địa chỉ trong danh thiếp của ngài. Ngài muốn tôi gửi nó đến địa chỉ nào?)

**Which** có thể được dùng với **of**. **Which of** được dùng trước đại từ số nhiều hoặc trước từ xác định (*the, my, these, those ...*) và danh từ số nhiều.

**Which of + determiner + noun**

**Which of + pronoun**

Eg: Which of these photos would you like?

(*Bạn thích tấm nào trong số những tấm hình này?*)

Which of us is going to do the washing up?

(*Ai trong số chúng ta sẽ đi rửa bát?*)

**Lưu ý:** Chúng ta sẽ dùng **which** hoặc **what** để hỏi về sự lựa chọn.

- **Which:** để chỉ sự lựa chọn trong một số lượng có hạn.

Eg: There's gin, whisky, vodka.

Which do you want?

(*Có rượu gin, whisky và vodka. Ngài thích dùng loại gì?*)

- **What:** để chỉ sự lựa chọn không bị giới hạn.

Eg: What would you like to drink?

(*Bạn thích uống gì?*)

## 6. Đại từ quan hệ:

Các đại từ **who, whom, whose, which, that** là các đại từ quan hệ được dùng thay thế cho danh từ đi trước và đồng thời có chức năng nối mệnh đề chính và mệnh đề phụ trong mệnh đề quan hệ (Relative clause).

**Who** và **whom** được dùng để chỉ người.

**Which** được dùng để chỉ vật.

**Whose** được dùng để chỉ sự sở hữu.

(Xem thêm **Relative Clause**.)

## 7. Đại từ phân bổ (distribute pronouns):

Đại từ phân bổ gồm các từ: **all, most, each, both, either, neither**

a. **All** được dùng để chỉ toàn bộ số lượng người hoặc vật của một nhóm từ ba trở lên. **All** có thể là chủ ngữ, tân ngữ hoặc bổ ngữ trong câu.

Eg: All were unanimous to vote him. (*Tất cả đều nhất trí bầu ông ta.*)

(**All** là chủ ngữ của **were**.)

Eg: I'll do all I can. (*Tôi sẽ làm tất cả những gì tôi có thể làm.*)

Wallet, ticket and a bunch of keys. That's all in his pocket.

(*Ví, vé xe và một chùm chìa khóa. Đó là tất cả mọi thứ trong ví anh ấy.*)



- ◆ **All of** được dùng trước danh từ (đếm được số nhiều hoặc không đếm được. Có từ xác định (*the, my, this ...*) hoặc dạng tân ngữ của đại từ nhân xưng. Động từ theo sau ở hình thức số ít hay số nhiều tùy vào danh từ.

**All (of) + determiner + plural/ uncountable noun (+ singular/ plural verb)**  
**All of us/ you/ them (+ plural verb)**

Eg: All (of) my friends like riding. (*Tất cả bạn bè tôi đều thích cưỡi ngựa.*)

All (of) the money has been spent. (*Tất cả tiền đã được tiêu hết.*)

All (of) us enjoyed the party. (*Tất cả chúng tôi đều thích bữa tiệc.*)

I'm going to invite all of you. (*Tớ định mời tất cả các bạn.*)

- ◆ **All of** với nghĩa "whole" cũng có thể được dùng trước một số danh từ đếm được số ít. (Singular countable noun.)

Eg: I've eaten all of the cake. = I've eaten the whole cake.

(*Tôi đã ăn hết toàn bộ chiếc bánh.*)

All (of) my family came to watch me playing in the concert. = My whole family came to ...

(*Cả gia đình tôi đến xem tôi biểu diễn trong buổi hòa nhạc.*)

+ **Of** có thể được bỏ khi đứng trước danh từ nhưng không được bỏ khi đứng trước đại từ.

- ◆ **All** có thể đứng sau một chủ ngữ số nhiều hoặc đại từ nhân xưng được dùng làm tân ngữ mà nó thẩm định.

Eg: These buildings all belong to the government.

(*Tất cả những tòa nhà này đều thuộc về chính phủ.*)

Eg: He said goodbye to us all.

(*Anh ấy nói lời tạm biệt với tất cả chúng tôi.*)

- ◆ **All** có thể đứng sau trợ động từ hoặc *to be*.

Eg: These cups are all dirty.

- ◆ **All** có thể được dùng với nghĩa "everything" (mọi thứ, mọi điều) nhưng phải được theo sau bằng một mệnh đề quan hệ.

Eg: All (that) I have is yours. (*Tất cả những gì anh có là của em.*)

(all = everything)

But: Everything is yours. (*Mọi thứ là của em.*)

- ◆ **All** không được dùng với nghĩa *everybody/ everyone*

Everybody enjoyed the party. (Not say: all-enjoyed ...)

(*Mọi người đều thích bữa tiệc.*)

b. **Most** (Phần lớn, hầu hết) được dùng để chỉ phần lớn nhất của cái gì hoặc đa số người.

Eg: We all ate a lot but he ate the most.

*(Tất cả chúng tôi đều ăn nhiều nhưng anh ta ăn nhiều nhất.)*

All the victims were male, and most were between the ages of 15 and 25.

*(Tất cả nạn nhân đều là nam giới và hầu hết đều trong độ tuổi từ 15 đến 25.)*

There are hundreds of verbs in English, and most are regular.

*(Có hàng trăm động từ trong tiếng Anh và hầu hết đều có quy tắc.)*

**Most of** được dùng trước danh từ (đếm được hoặc không đếm được) có từ xác định (*the, my ...*) hoặc hình thức tân ngữ của đại từ nhân xưng. Động từ theo sau ở số ít hay số nhiều tùy thuộc vào danh từ.

**Most of + determiner + noun (+ singular/ plural verb)**

**Most of us/ you/ them (+ plural verb)**

Eg: Most of people here know each other.

*(Hầu hết mọi người ở đây đều biết nhau.)*

John spends most of his freetime in the library.

*(John dành phần lớn thời gian rảnh của mình ở thư viện.)*

He's eaten most of a chicken.

*(Anh ta ăn gần hết con gà.)*

Most of us enjoy shopping.

*(Đa số chúng tôi đều thích mua sắm.)*

c. **Each (mỗi)** được dùng để chỉ từng cá nhân hoặc từng đơn vị trong một số lượng người hoặc vật từ hai trở lên.

Eg: I asked two children and each told a different story.

*(Tôi đã hỏi hai đứa trẻ và mỗi đứa kể một câu chuyện khác nhau.)*

There are six flats. Each has its own entrance.

*(Có 6 căn hộ. Mỗi căn có lối đi riêng.)*

◆ **Each of** được dùng trước một danh từ số nhiều có từ xác định (*the, my, these ...*) hoặc hình thức tân ngữ của đại từ nhân xưng. Động từ theo sau thường ở số ít.

**Each of + determiner + plural noun (+ singular verb).**

**Each of us/ you/ them + (singular verb).**

Eg: She gave each of her grandchildren 50p.

*(Bà ấy đưa cho mỗi cháu 50 xu.)*

Each of us sees the world differently.

*(Mỗi người trong chúng ta nhìn nhận thế giới một cách khác nhau.)*

- ◆ **Each** có thể theo sau một tân ngữ (trực tiếp hay gián tiếp) hoặc đứng sau một con số.

Eg: I want them each to be happy.

*(Tôi muốn mỗi người trong số bọn họ đều được hạnh phúc.)*

She gave the students each a copy of the script.

*(Cô ấy đưa cho mỗi sinh viên một bản sao kịch bản.)*

He gave us \$5 each. *(Anh ấy đưa cho mỗi người chúng tôi 5 đô la.)*

- ◆ **Each** có thể đứng sau trợ động từ (auxiliary verb) và động từ **to be**, hoặc đứng trước động từ thường (ordinary verb). Trong trường hợp này ta phải dùng danh từ, đại từ và động từ ở số nhiều.

Eg: We've each got our own cabinets.

*(Mỗi người trong chúng tôi đều có tủ riêng của mình.)*

You are each right in a different way.

*(Các bạn mỗi người đều đúng theo một cách khác nhau.)*

The students each have different point of view.

*(Các sinh viên mỗi người đều có quan điểm khác nhau.)*

d. **Both** được dùng để chỉ hai người hoặc hai vật.

Eg: He has two brothers, both live in London.

*(Anh ta có hai anh trai, cả hai đều sống ở Luân đôn.)*

I couldn't decide which of the two shirts to buy. I like both.

*(Trong hai cái áo này tôi không thể quyết định nên mua cái nào. Tôi thích cả hai.)*

- ◆ **Both (of)** được dùng trước danh từ số nhiều có từ xác định đứng trước hình thức tân ngữ của đại từ nhân xưng. Động từ theo sau ở dạng số nhiều.

**Both (of) + determiner + plural noun + (plural verb)**

**Both of us/ you/ them (+ plural verb)**

Eg: Both of her children are boys.

*(Cả hai đứa con của cô ấy đều là con trai.)*

Marta sends both of you her regards.

*(Marta gửi lời thăm hỏi đến cả hai bạn.)*

+ **Of** có thể được bỏ khi đứng trước danh từ, nhưng không được bỏ khi đứng trước đại từ.

♦ **Both** có thể đứng sau trợ động từ (auxiliary verb), sau động từ tobe, hoặc trước động từ thường.

Eg: We can both swim. (*Cả hai chúng tôi đều có thể bơi.*)

I have two daughters. (*Tôi có hai con gái.*)

My parents both work in education.

(*Cha mẹ tôi đều làm việc trong ngành giáo dục.*)

♦ **Both** có thể đứng sau một đại từ số nhiều được dùng làm tân ngữ.

Eg: She invited us both. (*Cô ấy mời cả hai chúng ta.*)

Mary sends you both her love. (*Mary gửi lời thăm hỏi tới hai bạn.*)

Lưu ý: không dùng mạo từ *the* trước *both*.

Eg: Both the children are naughty. (*Cả hai đứa trẻ đều nghịch ngợm.*)

e. **Either** được dùng để chỉ cái này hoặc cái kia. (chỉ một trong hai)

Eg: Olive oil and sesame oil are both fine, so you could use either.

(*Dầu oliu và dầu mè đều tốt, vì vậy bạn có thể dùng một trong hai.*)

Do you want tea or coffee? – Either. I don't mind.

(*Cậu muốn dùng trà hay cà phê? – Gì cũng được.*)

♦ **Either of** được dùng trước một danh từ số nhiều có từ xác định hoặc dạng tân ngữ của đại từ. Động từ theo sau thường ở số ít.

**Either of + determiner + plural noun (+ singular verb)**

**Either of us/ you/ them (+ singular verb)**

Eg: Does either of you speak French?

(*Trong hai bạn có ai nói được tiếng Pháp không?*)

Take one of the books on the table – either of them will do.

(*Hãy lấy một trong hai cuốn sách trên bàn. Cuốn nào cũng được.*)

I don't like either of my Math teachers.

(*Tôi không thích người nào trong số hai giáo viên dạy toán của chúng ta.*)

f. **Neither** (cả hai ... không): được dùng để chỉ không phải cái này mà cũng không phải cái kia trong hai cái.

Eg: There were two witnesses, but neither would make a statement.

(*Có hai nhân chứng nhưng cả hai đều không đưa ra lời khai.*)

Is your friend British or American? – Neither. She's Australia.

*(Bạn của cậu là người Anh hay người Mỹ? Cả hai đều không phải. Cô ấy là người Úc.)*

- ◆ **Neither of** được dùng trước danh từ số nhiều có từ xác định (*the, my, these, ...*) hoặc trước một đại từ. Động từ theo sau thường ở số ít.

**Neither of + determiner + plural noun + (plural verb)**  
**Neither of us/ you/ them (+ singular verb)**

Eg: Neither of the books was published in this country.

*(Cả hai cuốn sách đều không được xuất bản ở đất nước này.)*

I asked two people the way to the station but neither of them knew.

*(Tôi hỏi hai người đường đến nhà ga nhưng cả hai đều không biết.)*

Lưu ý: Động từ số ít (singular verb) thường được dùng sau *either of* và *neither of*, nhưng trong lối văn thân mật động từ số nhiều cũng có thể được dùng.

Eg: Neither of my sisters is/ are married.

*(Cả hai người chị của tôi đều chưa kết hôn.)*

Do/ does either of you like strawberries?

*(Cả hai bạn đều thích dâu phải không?)*

### 8. Đại từ bất định (Indefinite pronouns):

Các đại từ bất định trong tiếng Anh gồm:

some	something	someone	somebody	somewhere
any	anything everything	anyone everyone	anybody everybody	anywhere
none	nothing	no one	nobody	

#### a. Some, any, none:

**Some** và **any** đều dùng để chỉ số lượng bất định của người hoặc vật khi không cần hoặc không thể nêu rõ con số chính xác là bao nhiêu.

**None** được dùng để diễn đạt không một ai, không một cái gì/ điều gì trong một nhóm người hoặc vật.

- ◆ **Some** (một vài, một số): được dùng thay cho danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được trong câu khẳng định.

Eg: **Some** were at the meeting yesterday.

*(Hôm qua một số người đã đến cuộc họp.) (some = some people)*

I'd like some milk. – There is some in the fridge.

(Tôi muốn uống sữa. Có một ít trong tủ lạnh.)

The children are in the park. Some are playing hide and seek.

(Bọn trẻ đang ở trong công viên. Một vài đứa đang chơi trốn tìm.)

- ◆ **Some** có thể được dùng trong câu hỏi chờ đợi trả lời “đồng ý”, nhất là trong lời mời hoặc yêu cầu.

Eg: Do you want some help with your homework? – Yes, please.

(Bạn có muốn giúp tớ làm bài tập về nhà không? Vâng, tốt quá.)

(Người nói biết người nghe cần sự giúp đỡ.)

I've got too much strawberries. Would you like some?

(Tôi có nhiều dâu lắm. Anh lấy một ít nhé?)

- ◆ **Some of:** được dùng trước danh từ (đếm được số nhiều hoặc không đếm được) có từ xác định hoặc trước dạng tân ngữ của đại từ nhân xưng. Động từ theo sau có thể ở số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy thuộc vào danh từ.

**Some of + determiner + plural/ uncountable noun (+ singular/ plural verb)**

**Some of us/ you/ them (+ plural verb)**

Eg: Some of the chairs are broken. (Một vài chiếc ghế đã bị hỏng.)

Some of the money was stolen. (Một ít tiền đã bị đánh cắp.)

Some of us want to go swimming. (Một vài trong số chúng tôi muốn đi bơi.)

+ Trong một số trường hợp, **some of the** có thể đứng trước danh từ đếm được ở số ít.

Eg: Some of the letter is illegible. (Thư có vài chỗ khó đọc.)

- ◆ **Any:** được dùng thay cho danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được trong câu phủ định hoặc câu hỏi.

Eg: Jane looks around for her best friends, but there weren't **any**. (any = any friends)

(Jane nhìn quanh tìm bạn bè nhưng chẳng thấy người bạn nào.)

I'd like some milk. Is there **any** left?

(Tôi muốn uống sữa. Còn chút nào không?) (any = any milk)

- ◆ **Any of** được dùng trước danh từ (đếm được số nhiều hoặc không đếm được) có từ xác định hoặc trước dạng tân ngữ của đại từ. Động từ theo sau nó thể ở số ít hoặc số nhiều.

**Any of + determiner + plural/ uncountable noun (+ singular/ plural verb)**

**Any of us/ you/ them (+ singular/ plural verb)**

Eg: Does/do any of these books belong to you?

(*Có cuốn nào trong số những cuốn sách này là của bạn không?*)

She didn't spend any of the money.

(*Cô ấy không tiêu đồng nào trong số tiền đó.*)

I don't think any of us wants/ want to work tomorrow.

(*Tôi nghĩ không ai trong chúng tôi muốn đi làm vào ngày mai.*)

**Lưu ý:** Khi any of đứng trước danh từ hoặc đại từ số nhiều (plural noun/ pronoun) thì động từ theo sau có thể là số ít hoặc số nhiều. Động từ số ít thường được dùng trong lối văn trình trọng và động từ số nhiều thường được dùng trong lối văn thân mật hoặc văn nói.

◆ Any được dùng sau **if/ weather**; và sau các từ có nghĩa phủ định hoặc giới hạn **never, hardly, barely, scarcely, without**.

Eg: If you recognize any of the people in the photograph, tell us.

(*Nếu bạn nhận ra bất cứ người nào trong bức hình, hãy cho chúng tôi biết.*)

She spent hardly any of the money.

(*Cô ấy hầu như không tiêu một đồng nào.*)

◆ None: được dùng thay cho danh từ (đếm được hoặc không đếm được) đã được nói đến trước đó.

Eg: How much money have you got? – None.

(*Cậu có bao nhiêu tiền. – Không có đồng nào.*)

We had three cats once, but none (of them) are alive now. (none = no cats)

(*Chúng tôi đã có lúc nuôi ba con mèo nhưng nay không con nào còn sống.*)

I wanted some cake, but there was none left.

(*Tôi muốn ăn bánh, nhưng chẳng còn chút bánh nào.*)

◆ None of được dùng trước danh từ (danh từ đếm được số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được) có từ xác định hoặc dùng trước dạng tân ngữ của đại từ. Động từ theo sau có thể ở số ít hoặc số nhiều.

**None of + determiner + plural/ uncountable noun (+ singular/ plural verb)**

**None of us/ you/ them (+ singular/ plural verb)**

Eg: None of the tourists want/ wants to climb the mountain.

(*Không một du khách nào muốn trèo lên ngọn núi này.*)

None of this money is mine.

(*Chẳng có đồng nào trong số tiền này là của tôi.*)

Look at these clothes. None of them is/ are in fashion now.

(Hãy nhìn những bộ quần áo này xem. Chẳng cái nào trong số chúng hợp thời trang cả.)

**Lưu ý:** Khi **none of** được dùng trước danh từ hoặc đại từ số nhiều (plural noun/ pronoun), thì động từ theo sau có thể ở số ít hoặc số nhiều. Động từ số ít (singular verb) được dùng trong lối văn trịnh trọng và động từ số nhiều (plural verb) thường dùng trong lối văn thân mật hoặc văn nói.

Eg: None of the shops were/ was open. (Không cửa hàng nào mở cửa.)

**b. Something, someone, somebody, somewhere, anything, anyone, anybody, anywhere, nothing, nobody, no one, everything, everyone, everybody.**

◆ **Something, someone, somebody, somewhere** được dùng giống cách dùng của **some**.

- Dùng trong câu khẳng định và đi với động từ số ít.

Eg: Someone wants to speak to you on the phone.

(Ai đó muốn nói chuyện với bạn trên điện thoại.)

I've got something to tell you. (Tôi có một vài điều muốn nói với bạn.)

I need to find somewhere to stay. (Tôi cần tìm nơi nào đó để ở.)

Dùng trong câu hỏi khi câu trả lời sẽ là "yes" hoặc trong lời mời, lời yêu cầu.

Eg: Has someone spilt water?

(Có ai đó làm đổ nước phải không?)

(Người nói nhìn thấy nước đổ trên sàn nhà và chắc chắn có ai đó đã làm đổ.)

Would you like something to drink?

◆ **Anything, anyone, anybody, anywhere:** được dùng giống với cách dùng của **any**.

- Dùng trong câu phủ định hoặc câu nghi vấn và đi với động từ số ít.

Eg: Has anybody seen my bag? (Có ai thấy túi sách của tôi không?)

I'm not hungry. I don't want anything to eat.

(Tôi không đói. Tôi không muốn ăn gì.)

Do you know anywhere (where) I can buy a second-hand computer?

(Bạn có biết chỗ nào tớ có thể mua một chiếc máy tính cũ không?)

- Dùng trong mệnh đề if - clause và sau các từ có nghĩa phủ định hoặc giới hạn.

Eg: If anyone has any question, I'll be pleased to answer them.

(Nếu ai có câu hỏi, tôi sẽ sẵn lòng trả lời.)

Let me know if you need anything.

(Cho tôi biết nếu bạn cần bất cứ điều gì.)



I've hardly been anywhere since Christmas.

(Tôi hầu như không đi đâu kể từ lễ giáng sinh.)

◆ **Nobody, no one, nothing**

- Có thể dùng đầu câu hoặc đứng một mình.

Eg: What did you say? – Nothing. (Câu nói gì? – Chẳng nói gì cả.)

Nobody/ no one came to visit me when I was in hospital.

(Khi tôi nằm viện chẳng có ai đến thăm cả.)

- Được dùng với nghĩa phủ định: nothing = not anything; nobody/ no one = not anybody.

Eg: She told nobody about her plans.

(Cô ta không nói với ai về kế hoạch của mình.)

= She didn't tell anybody about her plans.

I said nothing. (Tôi chẳng nói gì cả.)

= I didn't say anything.

Eg: He said nothing (Anh ta chẳng nói gì.)

Nobody tells me anything. (Không ai nói cho tôi biết điều gì cả.)

◆ **Everything, everyone, everybody:** là các đại từ số ít (tuy nghĩa đề cập đến số đông) nên được dùng với động từ số ít.

Eg: Everybody has arrived. (mọi người đã đến) (everybody = all the people)

The earthquake destroyed everything within 25-mile radius. (everything = all things)

(Trận động đất đã phá hủy mọi thứ trong bán kính 25 dặm.)

Lưu ý: các đại từ **something, someone, somebody, anything, anyone, anybody, nothing, nobody, no one** có nghĩa số ít và đi với động từ số ít, nhưng thường được theo sau dạng số nhiều của đại từ (*they/ them*) và tính từ sở hữu (*themselves/ their*) vì giới tính không xác định.

Eg: **Someone** left **their** luggage on the train. (Ai đó đã bỏ hành lí trên tàu.)

No one saw Tom go out, did they?

(Không ai nhìn thấy Tom ra ngoài phải không?)

If anybody calls, tell them to call again later.

+ Nhưng it có thể được dùng với something, anything, nothing.

Eg: Something went wrong, didn't it. (Có điều gì đó trục trặc phải không?)

◆ **Someone, somebody, anybody, anyone, nobody, no one** có thể được dùng với sở hữu cách.

Eg: Someone's passport has been stolen. (Hộ chiếu của ai đó đã bị đánh cắp.)

I don't want to waste anyone's time. (Tôi không muốn lãng phí thời gian.)

## 9. Đại từ hỗ tương (Reciprocal pronouns):

Đại từ hỗ tương là đại từ chỉ mối quan hệ qua lại giữa hai hoặc nhiều người hoặc nhiều vật với nhau. Đại từ hỗ tương gồm **each other** và **one another** có cùng nghĩa là “nhau, lẫn nhau”.

Eg: Sue and Ann don't like each other/ one another.

(*Sue và Ann không thích nhau.*)

(= Sue doesn't like Ann and Ann doesn't like Sue.)

They sat for two hours without talking to each other/ one another.

(*Họ ngồi suốt 2 tiếng và không nói gì với nhau.*)

- Các đại từ hỗ tương thường được dùng làm tân ngữ bổ nghĩa cho động từ hoặc giới từ nên vị trí thông thường của chúng là sau động từ hoặc giới từ.

Eg: We send each other/ one another Christmas cards every year.

(*Chúng tôi gửi thiệp mừng Noel cho nhau mỗi năm.*)

They write to each other/ one another regularly

(*Họ thường xuyên viết thư cho nhau.*)

- Đại từ hỗ tương có thể sử dụng với sở hữu cách.

Eg: They wrote down each other's/ one another's phone number.

(*Họ ghi số điện thoại của nhau.*)

Lưu ý: Không dùng *each other* sau các từ *meet* (gặp), *marry* (cưới), và *similar* (giống nhau).

Eg: They married in 1998. (Not say: ~~They married each other~~)

(*Họ kết hôn năm 1998.*)

Their interests are very similar. (Not say: ... similar each other)

(*Sở thích của họ rất giống nhau.*)

## EXERCISES

### I. Subject or object form? Put in the pronouns.

1. There's no need to shout. I can hear you.
2. You and I work well together. \_\_\_\_\_ are a good team.
3. We've got a bit problem. Could \_\_\_\_\_ help \_\_\_\_\_, please?
4. John's two years younger than Alice, but \_\_\_\_\_ is nearly as tall as \_\_\_\_\_.
5. This is a good photo, isn't \_\_\_\_\_?  
~ Is Jessica in \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes that's \_\_\_\_\_. Look, \_\_\_\_\_ is next to Andrew.
6. Who did this crossword? ~ \_\_\_\_\_. I did \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.
7. Is this Nicky's bag? ~ No, \_\_\_\_\_ didn't bring one. It can't belong to \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ am looking for my shoes. Have \_\_\_\_\_ seen \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ are here.
9. What about Emily? ~ I expect \_\_\_\_\_ will be there. And her brother \_\_\_\_\_ both came to the party. ~ Do \_\_\_\_\_ mean Jackson? I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ very much.
10. Are Rita and Richard coming to the party? ~ We've invited \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_ isn't sure \_\_\_\_\_ can come or not.

### II. Rewrite these sentences, using pronoun *it*.

1. To keep it somewhere safe is important.  
*It's important to keep it somewhere safe.*
2. The journey to Brighton from London takes only one hour by train.
3. Some parts of King Lear are extremely difficult to understand.
4. That he will fail is clear to everyone but himself.
5. Finding our way home won't be easy.
6. My question itself made him angry.
7. Meeting each other on this occasion is a good chance.
8. Do you think that to explain to him what happened is difficult?
9. People think that he is the best doctor in this city.
10. To fall asleep like that is stupid.

### III. Put in *there* or *it*.

1. What's the new restaurant like? Is it good?
2. The road is closed. \_\_\_\_\_ has been an accident.
3. Take a taxi. \_\_\_\_\_ is a long way to the station.
4. Did someone ring? ~ \_\_\_\_\_ was Vicky. She just called to say she's arrived safely.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ was a car outside. \_\_\_\_\_ looked very expensive.
6. When we got to the cinema, \_\_\_\_\_ was a queue outside. \_\_\_\_\_ was a very long queue, so we decided not to wait.
7. How far is \_\_\_\_\_ from Milan to Rome?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ was wet, and \_\_\_\_\_ was a cold east wind. \_\_\_\_\_ was after midnight, and \_\_\_\_\_ were few people on the street.
9. I was told that \_\_\_\_\_ would be somebody to meet me at the airport but \_\_\_\_\_ wasn't anybody.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is a woman at the door. ~ Oh, \_\_\_\_\_ is Aunt Le.

### IV. Choose the right possessives.

1. Did you and your/ yours friends have a nice holiday?
2. Is this Alice's book or your/ yours? ~It's her/ hers.
3. Who/Whose car is that on the driveway? ~I don't know, not our/ours.
4. Take your/ yours feet off the table. It/ Its legs aren't very strong.
5. The Whartons are spending August in our/ ours flat, and we're borrowing their/ theirs.
6. That's my/ mine coat, and the scarf is my/ mine too.
7. Your/ Yours eyes are blue and her/ hers are brown.
8. They claim the money is all their/ theirs.
9. Unfortunately, the town has lost it's/ its only cinema.
10. Rachel has got her/ hers own calculator. She doesn't borrow my/ mine.

### V. Complete the conversation, put in *my, your, etc* or *mine, yours, etc*.

Laura: Did you and (1) \_\_\_\_\_ friends have a nice holiday?

Emma: Yes, it was wonderful. We had the best holiday of (2) \_\_\_\_\_ lives. It didn't start very well, though. Daniel forgot to bring (3) \_\_\_\_\_ passport.

Laura: Oh, dear. So what happened?

*Emma:* Well, luckily he doesn't live far from the airport. He rang (4) \_\_\_\_\_ parents, and they brought the passport over in (5) \_\_\_\_\_ car, just in time.

*Laura:* You remembered (6) \_\_\_\_\_, I hope.

*Emma:* Yes, I had (7) \_\_\_\_\_, even though I'm usually the one who forgets things. Actually Rachel thought for a minute that she'd lost (8) \_\_\_\_\_. Luckily it was in (9) \_\_\_\_\_ suitcase. Anyway, in the end we had a marvellous time.

**VI. Complete each sentence, using reflexive pronouns (*myself/ yourself ...*) with one of these verbs (in the correct form).**

burn      cut      blame    enjoy      express      hurt      dry  
turn      look at      lock

1. I cut myself shaving this morning.
2. John fell out of the window, but he didn't \_\_\_\_\_ badly.
3. The computer will \_\_\_\_\_ off if you don't use it.
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ out last night.
5. Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don't \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Jane \_\_\_\_\_ in the mirror to check her make-up.
7. They had a great time. They really \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Sometimes I can't say what I mean. I wish I could \_\_\_\_\_ better.
9. It isn't your fault. You really shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Vicky and Emma, you can \_\_\_\_\_ on these towels.

**VII. Put in reflexive pronouns (*myself/ yourself/ herself ...*) or personal pronouns (*me/ you/ her...*)**

1. Julia had a great holiday. She enjoyed herself.
2. It's not my fault. You can't blame \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Don't pay any attention to \_\_\_\_\_. He always complains.
4. What I did was very wrong. I'm ashamed of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We've got a problem. I hope you can help \_\_\_\_\_.
6. My mother likes to have all her family near \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The old man is no longer able to look after \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It's a pity you didn't bring your camera with \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I gave a key so that they could let \_\_\_\_\_ in.

10. Don't worry about \_\_\_\_\_, Mom. I can look after \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Don't tell \_\_\_\_\_ the answer to the Puzzle. We can work it out for \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Can I take another biscuit?" "Of course. Help \_\_\_\_\_!"

**VIII. Choose the right answer.**

1. I go to school with \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
 a. they                      b. them                      c. their                      d. themselves
2. We saw \_\_\_\_\_ at the Union last Friday.  
 a. her                      b. she                      c. hers                      d. herself
3. Isn't \_\_\_\_\_ a nice person?  
 a. he                      b. his                      c. himself                      d. him
4. John and \_\_\_\_\_ gave the money to the boy.  
 a. her                      b. herself                      c. she                      d. me
5. Your record is scratched and \_\_\_\_\_ is, too.  
 a. my                      b. mine                      c. it                      d. myself
6. John's shoes were worn out, so he bought \_\_\_\_\_ a pair of new shoes.  
 a. him                      b. his                      c. them                      d. himself
7. Who does this CD belong to? ~\_\_\_\_\_. I've just bought it.  
 a. I                      b. Me                      c. Mine                      d. Myself
8. The manager \_\_\_\_\_ welcomed us to the hotel.  
 a. himself                      b. he                      c. his                      d. him
9. Mary and \_\_\_\_\_ would rather go to the movies.  
 a. me                      b. my                      c. I                      d. mine
10. Just help \_\_\_\_\_ to sandwiches, won't you?  
 a. you                      b. your                      c. yourself                      d. yours
11. Could you lend Sue your ruler? \_\_\_\_\_ has just been broken.  
 a. She                      b. Her                      c. Hers                      d. Herself
12. This parcel is for George and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. I                      b. me                      c. myself                      d. mine
13. Is that Mary over there? Yes, that's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. her                      b. she                      c. hers                      d. herself
14. John and Tom, you \_\_\_\_\_ have to do it.  
 a. yourself                      b. yours                      c. your                      d. yourselves
15. It was \_\_\_\_\_ who called you.  
 a. he                      b. him                      c. his                      d. himself

**IX. Complete the sentences with *some/ any/ somebody/ anybody/ something/ anything***

1. I was too surprised to say *anything* .
2. There's \_\_\_\_\_ at the door. ~Are you expecting \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Did you get the oil? - No, there wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ left.
4. Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost \_\_\_\_\_? -Well, I was looking for \_\_\_\_\_, but now I can't remember what it was.
5. Would you-like some cheese and biscuits? ~ Oh no, thank you. I couldn't eat \_\_\_\_\_ else.
6. You must be hungry. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to eat?
7. Quick, let's go! There's \_\_\_\_\_ coming and I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ to see us.
8. Sally was upset about \_\_\_\_\_ and refused to talk to \_\_\_\_\_.
9. This machine is very easy to use. \_\_\_\_\_ can learn to use it in a very short time.
10. Were there any calls for me? -Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ rang while you were out. He refused to give his name, but he wanted to discuss \_\_\_\_\_ with you.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ who saw the accident should contact the police.
12. I didn't have any money, so I had to borrow \_\_\_\_\_.

**X. Choose the right word.**

1. She told (nobody/ anybody) about her wedding.
2. (Everyone/ someone) knows the man is a thief, but (anyone/ no one) dares to say so publicly.
3. I can't go to the party. I haven't got (nothing/ anything) to wear.
4. I'd like to go away (somewhere/ nowhere) if I can. (Someone/ Anyone) I know has invited me to his villa in Portugal, so I may go there.
5. What's in that box? -(Nothing/ Anything). It's empty.
6. I don't know (nothing/ anything) about economics.
7. Has Matthew got a job yet? -No, but he's looked (somewhere/ everywhere). He hates the idea of sitting around doing (something/ nothing).
8. The accident looked serious but fortunately (nobody/ anybody) was injured.
9. Could you do (anything/ something) for me, please?
10. There was completely silence in the room. (Somebody/ Nobody) said (anything something).

### XI. Choose the correct form.

1. We had to wait because someone had lost its/ their ticket.
2. One of the policemen had injured his/ their arm.
3. Most of these shoes is/ are in fashion now.
4. No one likes/ like going to the dentist, do he/ they?
5. If anybody wants/ want to leave early, she/ they can.
6. One of the guests had brought something wrapped in brown paper. She put it/them on the table.
7. Some of my friends has/ have arrived.
8. No tourists ever come/ comes to our village.
9. Everybody have/ has to leave his/their bags outside.
10. No car is/ are allowed in the city center.

### XII. Put in *of* or *nothing*.

Well some (1) \_\_\_\_\_ our luggage has arrived, so thing could be worse. I've got the books and papers, but I've lost most (2) \_\_\_\_\_ my clothes. I haven't got any (3) \_\_\_\_\_ socks at all, and in have to buy some more (4) \_\_\_\_\_ jeans, but at least I've got enough (5) \_\_\_\_\_ underwear for week. I'm going to buy a few (6) \_\_\_\_\_ those woolen shirts that you like, and one (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the big coats that we looked at. Unfortunately, they've got no (8) \_\_\_\_\_ shoes in my size, and none (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the jackets suit me. Anyway, I'm not alone. Everyone (10) \_\_\_\_\_ us has lost something. In fact, three (11) \_\_\_\_\_ people have got no (12) \_\_\_\_\_ luggage at all. Well, as they say, into each (13) \_\_\_\_\_ life a little (14) \_\_\_\_\_ rain must fall.

### XIII. Complete the sentences using the words in brackets. Sometimes no other words are necessary. Sometimes you need *the*, or *of the*.

1. I wasn't well yesterday. I spent most of the day in bed. (most/ day)
2. Some cars can go faster than others. (some/ cars)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ drive too fast. (many/ people)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you took on holiday were very good. (some / photographs)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ learn more quickly than others. (some/ people)
6. We've eaten \_\_\_\_\_ we bought. There's very little left. (most/ food)
7. Have you spent \_\_\_\_\_ you borrowed? (all/ money)
8. Peter can't stop talking. He talks \_\_\_\_\_. (all/ time)
9. We had a lazy holiday. We spent \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach. (most/ time)



10. George is easy to get on with. \_\_\_\_\_ like him: (most/ people)
11. The exam was difficult. I could only answer \_\_\_\_\_. (half/ questions)
12. It was a public holiday. \_\_\_\_\_ were open. (none/ shops)

**XIV. Complete the sentences with *all/ both/ neither/ either/ none/ each*.**

1. I took two books with me on holiday but I didn't read either of them.
2. We tried a lot of hotels but \_\_\_\_\_ of them had any rooms. \_\_\_\_\_ of them were full.
3. I tried twice to phone George but \_\_\_\_\_ times he was out.
4. There are two good hotels in the town but \_\_\_\_\_ of them had any rooms. \_\_\_\_\_ of them were full.
5. There are a few shops at the end of the street but \_\_\_\_\_ of them sell newspapers.
6. The book is divided into five parts and \_\_\_\_\_ of these has three sections.
7. I can meet you on the 6th or 7th. Would \_\_\_\_\_ of those days be convenient for you?
8. John and I couldn't get into the house because \_\_\_\_\_ of us had a key.
9. There were a few letters this morning but \_\_\_\_\_ of them were for me. \_\_\_\_\_ were for my father.
10. I've got two bicycles. \_\_\_\_\_ of them are quite old. I don't ride \_\_\_\_\_ of them anymore. \_\_\_\_\_ of them is in very good condition, I'm afraid.

**XV. Choose the right answer.**

1. I can't go to a party. I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ to wear.  
a. anything      b. everything      c. something      d. nothing
2. Take care \_\_\_\_\_, Ann.  
a. you      b. your      c. yours      d. yourself
3. \_\_\_\_\_ would be lovely to see you again.  
a. It      b. That      c. There      d. You
4. If you want some apples, I'll get you \_\_\_\_\_ at the shop.  
a. any      b. it      c. one      d. some
5. We've brought some food with \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. me      b. we      c. us      d. ourselves
6. Who's there? ~ Only \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. I      b. me      c. mine      d. myself

7. Is \_\_\_\_\_ a post office near here?  
a. here                      b. it                      c. there                      d. this
8. Everyone has to leave \_\_\_\_\_ bags outside.  
a. his                      b. their                      c. its                      d. her
9. The two girl often wear \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.  
a. each other              b. each other's              c. themselves              d. themselves'
10. Have you had enough to eat, or would you like \_\_\_\_\_ else?  
a. anything              b. nothing              c. something              d. thing
11. Have you seen my calculator? I can't find it \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. anywhere              b. nowhere              c. somewhere              d. where
12. Peter has two brothers, but he doesn't speak to \_\_\_\_\_ of them.  
a. any                      b. most                      c. either                      d. neither
13. Johnson spent \_\_\_\_\_ his life in the South.  
a. some                      b. most                      c. none of                      d. most of
14. We could all do more to keep healthy. We don't look after \_\_\_\_\_ properly.  
a. ourself                      b. ourselves                      c. ours                      d. each other
15. The two boxers did their best to knock \_\_\_\_\_ out.  
a. them                      b. themselves                      c. each other                      d. each other's

# DANH TỪ (NOUNS)

## I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (DEFINITION):

Danh từ là từ hoặc nhóm từ dùng để chỉ người (*John, teacher, mother,...*), vật (*chair, dog, ...*), nơi chốn (*city, church, England, ...*), tính chất (*beauty, courage, sorrow,...*) hay hoạt động (*travel, cough, walk,...*).

## II. CÁC LOẠI DANH TỪ (KINDS OF NOUNS):

Dựa trên các tiêu chí khác nhau danh từ có thể được phân thành nhiều loại:

### 1. Danh từ cụ thể và danh từ trừu tượng (Concrete nouns and abstract nouns):

1.1. Danh từ cụ thể (Concrete nouns): là danh từ chỉ những gì hữu hình; những gì mà chúng ta có thể cảm thấy trực tiếp qua giác quan (nhìn, nghe, sờ, ngửi,...) như: *house, man, cloud, cat, pen, mountain, v.v.* Danh từ cụ thể được phân thành hai tiểu loại:

a. Danh từ chung (common nouns) là danh từ dùng để gọi tên những sự vật thuộc cùng một loại.

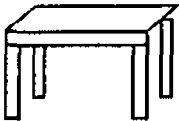
Eg:

table (cái bàn)

man (con người)

dog (con chó)

pen (cây bút)



Trong danh từ chung có danh từ tập hợp (collective nouns) dùng để chỉ một nhóm người, vật hoặc sự vật.

Eg:

family (gia đình)

crowd (đám đông)

team (đội)

police (cảnh sát)



b. Danh từ riêng (proper nouns) là tên riêng của từng sự vật, đối tượng riêng lẻ.

Eg:

France (nước Pháp)



the Thames (sông Thames)



**1.2. Danh từ trừu tượng (Abstract nouns):** là danh từ dùng để chỉ tính chất, trạng thái hoặc hoạt động.

Eg: beauty (vẻ đẹp), charity (lòng nhân ái), existence (sự tồn tại), fear (sự sợ hãi), departure (sự khởi hành), ...

## 2. Danh từ đếm được và danh từ không đếm được (Countable nouns and uncountable nouns)

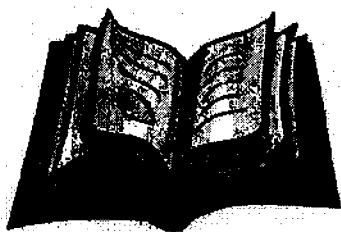
**2.1. Danh từ đếm được (countable nouns)** là danh từ chỉ những vật thể, con người, ý niệm, ... riêng rẽ có thể đếm được.

Eg: chair (cái ghế), book (cuốn sách), student (học sinh), dog (con chó),...

Danh từ đếm được có cả hình thức số ít và số nhiều. Chúng ta có thể dùng mạo từ *a/ an* với danh từ đếm được ở số ít (singular countable nouns), và các con số hoặc *some, any, many, few* với danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều (plural countable nouns).

Eg:

a book (một cuốn sách)



two dogs (hai con chó)



some bananas (vài quả chuối)



an accident (một tai nạn)

a few ideas (một vài ý tưởng)

many students (nhiều học sinh)



**2.2. Danh từ không đếm được (Uncountable nouns)** là danh từ chỉ những chất liệu, chất lỏng, những khái niệm trừu tượng, và những vật mà chúng ta xem như một khối không thể tách rời.

Eg: wool (*len*), butter (*bơ*), water (*nước*), furniture (*đồ gỗ*), rice (*gạo*), happiness (*niềm hạnh phúc*), news (*tin tức*), work (*công việc*),...

Phần lớn các danh từ không đếm được đều ở dạng số ít, không có hình thức số nhiều. Chúng ta có thể dùng *some*, *any*, *much*, *little* trước danh từ không đếm được nhưng không dùng số và mạo từ *a / an*.

Eg: some water (*một ít nước*), much rice (*nhiều gạo*), little information (*ít thông tin*), some advice (*một vài lời khuyên*), a little fear (*hơi sợ*), some bread (*một ít bánh mì*),...

### \* LƯU Ý:

♦ Con số và mạo từ *a/an* không được dùng trước danh từ không đếm được, nhưng chúng có thể được dùng kèm với danh từ chỉ sự đo lường.

Eg: Three bottles of milk (*ba chai sữa*), a bowl of rice (*một bát cơm*), a piece of information (*một mẫu tin*), two loaves of bread (*hai ổ bánh mì*),...

♦ Các danh từ riêng (proper nouns) là tên riêng của cá thể thường dùng ở số ít nhưng đôi khi cũng có thể dùng ở số nhiều.

Eg: The Smiths is going to Spain for their summer holiday.

(*Gia đình Smith sẽ đi nghỉ hè ở Tây Ban Nha.*)

There are three Davids in my class. (*Trong lớp tôi có ba người tên David.*)

♦ Nhiều danh từ có thể được dùng như danh từ đếm được hoặc không đếm được, thường khác nhau về nghĩa.

Eg: The window's made of unbreakable glass.

(*Cửa sổ được làm bằng kính không vỡ.*)

Would you like a glass of milk? (*Con uống một ly sữa nhé?*)

I'd like some tissue paper. (*Tôi muốn mua một ít giấy lụa.*)

I'm going out to buy some papers. (*Tôi sẽ đi mua vài tờ báo.*)

◆ Các từ chỉ thức uống: *coffee, beer, tea, juice*, v.v. thường không đếm được. Nhưng chúng có thể đếm được khi mang nghĩa 'tách, ly, chai, v.v.'.

Eg: Have you got any coffee? (*Bạn còn cà phê không?*)

Two coffees, please. (*Cho hai ly cà phê.*) [= two cups of coffee]

I don't drink beer very often. (*Tôi không uống bia thường xuyên.*)

Would you like a beer? (*Dùng một ly/chai/lon bia nhé?*)

[= a glass/ bottle/ can of beer]

### 3. Danh từ đơn và danh từ ghép (Simple nouns and compound nouns):

Về hình thức, một danh từ có thể là danh từ đơn (simple nouns) hay danh từ ghép (compound nouns).

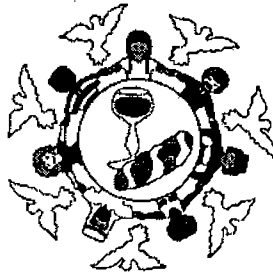
3.1. Danh từ đơn (Simple nouns) là danh từ chỉ có một từ.

Eg:

house (*ngôi nhà*)



peace (*hòa bình*)



train (*xe lửa*)

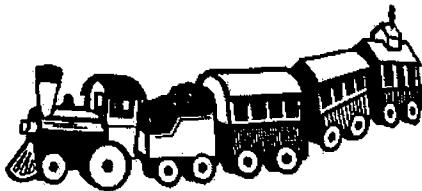
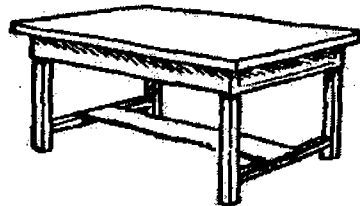


table (*cái bàn*)



3.2. Danh từ ghép (Compound nouns) là danh từ gồm hai hoặc nhiều từ kết hợp với nhau. Danh từ ghép có thể được viết thành hai từ riêng biệt, có gạch ngang giữa hai từ hoặc kết hợp thành một từ.

Eg: greenhouse (*nhà kính*), world peace (*hòa bình thế giới*), non-stop train (*tàu suốt*), writing-table (*bàn viết*)

→ Cách thành lập danh từ ghép

a. Danh từ + danh từ (noun + noun):

<u>Eg:</u> toothpick ( <i>tăm</i> )	tennis ball ( <i>bóng tennis</i> )
schoolboy ( <i>nam sinh</i> )	bus driver ( <i>tài xế xe buýt</i> )
kitchen table ( <i>bàn bếp</i> )	river bank ( <i>bờ sông</i> )
cupboard ( <i>tủ chén</i> )	postman ( <i>người đưa thư</i> )

b. Tính từ + danh từ (adjective + noun):

<u>Eg:</u> quicksilver ( <i>thủy ngân</i> )	blackboard ( <i>bảng đen</i> )
greenhouse ( <i>nhà kính</i> )	blackbird ( <i>chim sáo</i> )

c. Danh từ + danh động từ (noun + gerund)

Trong trường hợp này, danh từ ghép chỉ một loại công việc nào đó.

<u>Eg:</u> weight-lifting ( <i>việc cử tạ</i> )	fruit-picking ( <i>việc hái quả</i> )
lorry driving ( <i>việc lái xe tải</i> )	coal-mining ( <i>việc khai thác mỏ than</i> )
bird-watching ( <i>việc quan sát nhận dạng chim</i> )	

d. Danh động từ + danh từ (gerund + noun)

<u>Eg:</u> waiting-room ( <i>phòng đợi</i> )	swimming pool ( <i>hồ bơi</i> )
driving licence ( <i>bằng lái xe</i> )	washing-machine ( <i>máy giặt</i> )

e. Các trường hợp khác:

- Tính từ + động từ (adjective + verb): whitewash (*nước vôi*)
- Động từ + danh từ (verb + noun): pickpocket (*tên móc túi*)
- Trạng từ + động từ (adverb + verb): outbreak (*sự bùng nổ*)
- Động từ + trạng từ (verb + adverb): breakdown (*sự suy sụp*)
- Danh từ + giới từ (noun + preposition): passer-by (*khách qua đường*),  
looker-on (*người xem*)
- Danh từ + tính từ (noun + adjective): secretary-general (*tổng thư ký; tổng bí thư*)

\* Lưu ý: Danh từ ghép có thể được thành lập bởi nhiều hơn hai từ: *mother-in-law* (mẹ vợ/chồng), *glass dining-table* (bàn ăn bằng kính), *merry-go-round* (trò chơi ngựa quay),...

#### 4. Danh từ số ít và danh từ số nhiều (Singular nouns and plural nouns):

Danh từ đếm được thường có hai dạng: số ít (singular) và số nhiều (plural).

Eg: The girl is singing. (*Cô gái đang hát*) → singular

The girls are singing. (*Các cô gái đang hát*) → plural

#### 4.1. Cách thành lập danh từ số nhiều (Formation of the plural nouns):

a. Hầu hết các danh từ số nhiều được thành lập bằng cách thêm - s vào danh từ số ít.

Eg: boy (*con trai*) → boys (*những đứa con trai*)

house (*ngôi nhà*) → houses (*những ngôi nhà*)

dog (*con chó*) → dogs (*những con chó*)

Các chữ cái, chữ số, dấu hiệu và những từ loại khác không phải là danh từ mà được dùng như danh từ thì thường thêm 's.

Eg: There are two 9's in 99. (*Trong số 99 có hai số 9.*)

Dot your i's. (*Nhớ chấm dấu các chữ i.*)

She spelt 'necessary' with two c's.

(*Cô ta đánh vần từ 'necessary' có hai chữ c*)

b. Các danh từ tận cùng bằng s, sh, ch, x, z được tạo thành số nhiều bằng cách thêm -es.

Eg: dish (*cái đĩa*) → dishes (*những cái đĩa*)

church (*nhà thờ*) → churches (*những ngôi nhà thờ*)

box (*cái hộp*) → boxes (*những cái hộp*)

bus (*xe buýt*) → buses (*những chiếc xe buýt*)

quiz (*cuộc thi đố*) → quizzes (*các cuộc thi đố*)

c. Các danh từ tận cùng bằng phụ âm + y (consonant + y) được tạo thành số nhiều bằng cách đổi y thành i và thêm es.

Eg: baby (*em bé*) → babies (*những em bé*)

party (*bữa tiệc*) → parties (*những bữa tiệc*)

fly (*con ruồi*) → flies (*những con ruồi*)

Các danh từ tận cùng bằng một nguyên âm + y (vowel + y) thì chỉ thêm -s.

Eg: day (*ngày*) → days (*các ngày*)

key (*chìa khóa*) → keys (*những chiếc chìa khóa*)

play (*vở kịch*) → plays (*những vở kịch*)



Các danh từ riêng (proper nouns) tận cùng bằng -y, chỉ cần thêm -s.

Eg: Do you know the Kennedys. (*Bạn có biết gia đình Kennedy không?*)

I hate Februarys. (*Tôi ghét tháng Hai.*)

**d.** Một số danh từ tận cùng bằng *f* hoặc *fe*: *calf, half, knife, leaf, life, loaf, self, sheaf, chef, thief, wife, wolf* được tạo thành số nhiều bằng cách đổi *f* hoặc *fe* thành *-ves*.

Eg: knife (*con dao*) → knives (*những con dao*)  
calf (*con bê*) → calves (*những con bê*)  
thief (*tên ăn cắp*) → thieves (*những tên ăn cắp*)  
wife (*vợ*) → wives (*các bà vợ*)

Các danh từ tận, cùng bằng *-f* hoặc *-fe* khác thì thêm *s* theo cách thông thường.

Eg: roof (*mái nhà*) → roofs (*những mái nhà*)  
handkerchief (*khăn tay*) → handkerchiefs (*những chiếc khăn tay*)  
cliff (*vách đá*) → cliffs (*các vách đá*)

Một số danh từ tận cùng bằng *f* có thể có 2 hình thức số nhiều.

Eg: scarf (*khăn choàng cổ*) → scarfs, scarves (*những chiếc khăn choàng cổ*)  
dwarf (*người lùn*) → dwarfs, dwarves (*những người lùn*)  
wharf (*cầu tàu*) → wharfs, wharves (*những cầu tàu*)  
hoof (*móng vuốt*) → hoofs, hooves (*những móng vuốt*)

**e.** Một số danh từ tận cùng bằng một phụ âm + *o* (consonant + *o*) được tạo thành số nhiều bằng cách thêm *-es*.

Eg: tomato (*quả cà chua*) → tomatoes (*những quả cà chua*)  
hero (*anh hùng*) → heroes (*những anh hùng*)  
potato (*củ khoai tây*) → potatoes (*những củ khoai tây*)  
echo (*tiếng vang*) → echoes (*những tiếng vang*)

Các danh từ tận cùng bằng một nguyên âm + *o*, các từ vay mượn của nước ngoài hoặc các từ được viết tắt thì chỉ cần thêm *-s*.

Eg: radio (*máy radio*) → radios  
piano (*đàn dương cầm*) → pianos  
zoo (*sở thú*) → zoos  
photo (*bức ảnh*) → photos

Một số danh từ tận cùng bằng *o* có thể có hai hình thức số nhiều.

<u>Eg:</u> volcano ( <i>núi lửa</i> )	→ volcanos, volcanoes
tornado ( <i>con bão</i> )	→ tornados, tornadoes
mango ( <i>quả xoài</i> )	→ mangos, mangoes
mosquito ( <i>con muỗi</i> )	→ mosquitos, mosquitoes

**f. Số nhiều bất qui tắc (Irregular plurals):**

• Một số danh từ thay đổi khi ở số nhiều.

<u>Eg:</u> man ( <i>đàn ông</i> )	→ men	mouse ( <i>con chuột</i> )	→ mice
woman ( <i>đàn bà</i> )	→ women	louse ( <i>con rận</i> )	→ lice
tooth ( <i>răng</i> )	→ teeth	goose ( <i>con ngỗng</i> )	→ geese
foot ( <i>bàn chân</i> )	→ feet	person ( <i>người</i> )	→ people
child ( <i>đứa trẻ</i> )	→ children	ox ( <i>con bò</i> )	→ oxen

• Một số danh từ không thay đổi khi ở số nhiều.

sheep ( <i>con cừu</i> )	deer ( <i>con nai</i> )	fish ( <i>con cá</i> )
swine ( <i>con lợn</i> )	aircraft ( <i>máy bay</i> )	craft ( <i>tàu, thuyền</i> )
grouse ( <i>gà rừng</i> )	trout ( <i>cá hồi</i> )	squid ( <i>mực ống</i> )
salmon ( <i>cá hồi</i> )	plaice ( <i>cá bơn sao</i> )	carp ( <i>cá chép</i> )

Eg: There are a lot of sheep grazing in the fields.

(*Có nhiều cừu đang gặm cỏ ngoài đồng.*)

• Một số danh từ tận cùng bằng *-s* không thay đổi khi ở số nhiều.

means ( <i>phương tiện</i> )	works ( <i>nhà máy</i> )
species ( <i>loài</i> )	Swiss ( <i>người Thụy Sĩ</i> )
barracks ( <i>doanh trại</i> )	crossroads ( <i>ngã tư</i> )
headquarters ( <i>sở chỉ huy</i> )	series ( <i>dãy, chuỗi</i> )

**g. Một số danh từ chỉ có hình thức số nhiều (luôn được dùng với động từ số nhiều)**

- quần áo gồm hai phần: pants (*quần*), pyjamas (*đồ pijama*), trousers (*quần dài*), jeans (*quần jin*),...
- dụng cụ hoặc thiết bị gồm hai phần: scissors (*cái kéo*), glasses (*kính đeo mắt*), pincers (*cây kìm*), scales (*cái cân*), binoculars (*ống nhòm*), tongs (*cái kẹp*), spectacles (*kính đeo mắt*),...
- một số danh từ khác: arms (*vũ khí*), earnings (*tiền kiếm được*), stairs (*cầu thang*), savings (*tiền tiết kiệm*), surroundings (*vùng phụ cận*), riches (*tài sản*), goods (*hàng hóa*), outskirts (*vùng ngoại ô*), clothes (*quần áo*),...

**h. Một số danh từ có nguồn gốc từ tiếng Hy Lạp hoặc Latin thường có dạng số nhiều đặc biệt theo luật của tiếng Hy Lạp và Latin.**

<u>Eg:</u> formula ( <i>công thức</i> )	→	formulae, formulas
alumna ( <i>nữ sinh</i> )	→	alumnae
vertebra ( <i>xương sống</i> )	→	vertebrae, vertebrae
focus ( <i>tiêu điểm</i> )	→	foci, focuses
cactus ( <i>cây xương rồng</i> )	→	cacti
fungus ( <i>nấm</i> )	→	fungi, funguses
bacterium ( <i>vi khuẩn</i> )	→	bacteria
curriculum ( <i>chương trình giảng dạy</i> )	→	curricula
dictum ( <i>châm ngôn</i> )	→	dicta
datum ( <i>dữ kiện</i> )	→	data
criterion ( <i>tiêu chuẩn</i> )	→	criteria
phenomenon ( <i>hiện tượng</i> )	→	phenomena
dogma ( <i>giáo lý</i> )	→	dogmata
stigma ( <i>vết; đốm</i> )	→	stigmata
basis ( <i>nền tảng</i> )	→	bases
crisis ( <i>cuộc khủng hoảng</i> )	→	crises
analysis ( <i>sự phân tích</i> )	→	analyses
hypothesis ( <i>giả thuyết</i> )	→	hypotheses

**i. Một số danh từ có hai hình thức số nhiều với hai nghĩa khác nhau.**

<u>Eg:</u> brother ( <i>anh/em trai</i> )	→	brothers ( <i>các anh/em trai</i> )	→	brotheren ( <i>đồng đội</i> )
Cloth ( <i>vải</i> )	→	cloths ( <i>các mảnh vải</i> )	→	clothes ( <i>quần áo</i> )
Penny ( <i>đồng xu</i> )	→	pennies ( <i>các đồng xu</i> )	→	pence ( <i>số tiền xu</i> )
Staff ( <i>nhân viên</i> )	→	staffs ( <i>các nhân viên</i> )	→	staves ( <i>các khuôn nhạc</i> )

**j. Số nhiều của các danh từ ghép:**

- Trong hình thức danh từ ghép: danh từ + danh từ (noun + noun) thì danh từ thứ nhất thường ở dạng số ít và danh từ thứ hai được đổi ra số nhiều.

<u>Eg:</u> toothbrush	→	toothbrushes
boy-friend	→	boy-friends
ticket collector	→	ticket collectors

- Trong hình thức danh từ ghép: danh từ + trạng từ (noun + adverb), danh từ + giới từ + danh từ (noun + preposition + noun), danh từ + tính từ (noun + adjective) thì hình thức số nhiều được thành lập với danh từ đầu tiên.

Eg: passer-by	→ passers-by
looker-on	→ lookers-on
mother-in-law	→ mothers-in-law / mother-in-laws
lady-in-waiting	→ ladies-in-waiting
court-martial	→ courts-martial

- Trong các hình thức danh từ ghép còn lại: tính từ + danh từ (adj + noun), danh động từ + danh từ (gerund + noun), động từ + danh từ (verb + noun), ... thì hình thức số nhiều biến đổi ở thành phần sau cùng.

Eg: blackboard	→ blackboards
washing machine	→ washing machines
pickpocket	→ pickpockets
reakdown	→ breakdowns

- Một số danh từ biến đổi cả hai thành phần:

Eg: man driver	→ men drivers
woman doctor	→ women doctors

#### 4.2. Mâu thuẫn giữa hình thức số và nghĩa của danh từ.

a. Một số danh từ có hình thức số ít nhưng có nghĩa số nhiều (có thể dùng với động từ số nhiều)

Eg:

army ( <i>quân đội</i> )	police ( <i>cảnh sát</i> )	family ( <i>gia đình</i> )
team ( <i>đội</i> )	cattle ( <i>trâu bò</i> )	government ( <i>chính phủ</i> )

b. Trái lại một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều nhưng lại có nghĩa số ít (dùng với động từ số ít)

Eg:

news ( <i>tin tức</i> )	mumps ( <i>bệnh quai bị</i> )	measles ( <i>bệnh sởi</i> )
ricketts ( <i>bệnh còi xương</i> )	billards ( <i>trò chơi bida</i> )	dominoes ( <i>trò chơi domino</i> )

### III. CHỨC NĂNG CỦA DANH TỪ:

#### 1. Chủ ngữ của câu (subject of a sentence):

Eg: The children have gone to bed. (*Bọn trẻ đã đi ngủ.*)

- Chủ ngữ là danh từ, cụm danh từ hoặc đại từ chỉ người, vật hoặc sự vật thực hiện hành động.

**2. Tân ngữ trực tiếp hoặc gián tiếp của câu (direct object or indirect object of a sentence):**

Eg: I saw **the thief**. (*Tôi đã thấy tên trộm.*)

(the thief → tân ngữ trực tiếp)

The policeman asked **the thief a lot of questions**.

(*Cảnh sát đã hỏi tên trộm rất nhiều câu hỏi.*)

(the thief → tân ngữ gián tiếp; a lot of questions → tân ngữ trực tiếp)

- Tân ngữ trực tiếp là danh từ, cụm danh từ hoặc đại từ chịu sự tác động trực tiếp của động từ.
- Tân ngữ gián tiếp là danh từ hoặc đại từ chỉ người hoặc vật chịu sự tác động gián tiếp của động từ vì hành động được thực hiện là cho nó hoặc vì nó.

**3. Tân ngữ của giới từ:**

Eg: He is listening to **music**. (*Anh ấy đang nghe nhạc.*)

(music → tân ngữ của giới từ to)

- Danh từ nào đi sau giới từ cũng đều là tân ngữ cho giới từ đó.

**4. Bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ (subjective complement):**

Eg: He is **my close friend**. (*Anh ấy là người bạn thân của tôi.*)

- Bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ là danh từ, cụm danh từ hoặc tính từ mô tả chủ ngữ. Bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ dùng sau động từ "to be" và các động từ liên kết như *become, seem, feel, ...*

**5. Bổ ngữ của tân ngữ (objective complement):**

Eg: They elected him **president** of the club.

(*Họ bầu chọn anh ta làm chủ tịch câu lạc bộ.*)

- Bổ ngữ của tân ngữ là danh từ, cụm danh từ hoặc tính từ mô tả tân ngữ.

**6. Một phần của ngữ giới từ (part of prepositional phrases):**

Eg: He spoke in a **different tone**. (*Ông ta nói bằng một giọng khác hẳn.*)

**7. Đồng vị ngữ với một danh từ khác (appositive phrases):**

Eg: He told us about his father, **a general**, who died in the war.

(*Anh ấy kể cho chúng tôi nghe về cha của mình, một vị tướng, người đã hy sinh trong chiến tranh.*)

#### IV. SỰ TƯƠNG HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG (SUBJECT AND VERB AGREEMENT):

Chủ ngữ và động từ luôn phải tương hợp với nhau:

##### 1. Động từ số ít:

Động từ số ít được dùng khi:

###### a. Danh từ đếm được số ít hoặc danh từ không đếm được:

Eg: This book is very interesting. (*Cuốn sách này rất hay.*)

Traffic is always busy at this time of day. (*Giao thông luôn đông đúc vào thời điểm này trong ngày.*)

###### b. Hai danh từ nối với nhau bằng "and" cùng đề chỉ về một người, một vật hoặc một ý tưởng:

My best friend and adviser, Tom, is arriving tonight.

(*Tom, người bạn thân kiêm cố vấn của tôi sẽ đến tối nay.*)

Bread and butter is my favorite food.

(*Bánh mì và bơ là món ưa thích của tôi.*)

###### c. Each/ every/ either/ neither + danh từ số ít (singular noun):

Eg: Every seat has a number. (*Mỗi chỗ ngồi đều có số.*)

Come on Tuesday or Thursday. Either is OK. (*Đến vào ngày thứ ba hoặc thứ năm. Ngày nào cũng được.*)

Each door is different colour. (*Mỗi cánh cửa có màu khác nhau.*)

###### Each/ every/ either/ neither/ any/ none + of + danh từ / đại từ số nhiều (plural noun/ pronoun).

Eg: Each of the houses is slightly different. (*Mỗi ngôi nhà hơi khác nhau.*)

Neither of the oranges is ripe. (*Cả hai quả cam đều không chín.*)

Is there any of these old maps worth keeping?

(*Có tấm nào trong số những tấm bản đồ cũ này cần giữ lại không?*)

None of my friends lives near me.

(*Không người bạn nào của tôi sống gần tôi.*)

**Lưu ý:** Neither of, none of, any of + danh từ / đại từ số nhiều cũng có thể dùng với động từ số nhiều.

Eg: None of my friends lives/ live near me.

- Each/ every + danh từ số ít + and + each/ every + danh từ số ít.

Eg: Each boy and each girl has an English book.

(*Mỗi nam sinh và nữ sinh đều có một cuốn sách tiếng Anh.*)

**d. More than one + danh từ đếm được số ít.**

Eg: More than one person has know the news. (*Hơn một người đã biết tin này.*)

- **One of + danh từ số nhiều.**

Eg: One of my friend is going to Paris next week.

(*Tuần tới một người bạn của tôi sẽ tới Paris.*)

**e. Các đại từ bất định: everything, everybody, everyone, anybody, anything, anyone, somebody, someone, something ...**

Eg: Everything looks bright and clean.

(*Mọi thứ trông có vẻ sáng sủa và sạch sẽ.*)

Someone is knocking at the door. (*Ai đó đang gõ cửa.*)

**f. Một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều nhưng lại là số ít:**

- Môn học hoặc môn thể thao: mathematics (*môn toán*), physics (*môn vật lý*), economics (*môn kinh tế*), politics (*chính trị*), linguistics (*ngôn ngữ*), genetics (*di truyền học*), athletics (*môn điền kinh*), gymnastics (*môn thể dục*) ...

- Trò chơi: billards (*trò bi-a*), darts (*trò phi tiêu*), dominoes (*trò chơi domino*)

- Bệnh tật: measles (*bệnh sởi*), mumps (*bệnh quai bị*), rickets (*bệnh còi xương*) ...

- Quốc gia: the Philippines, the United States....

Eg: Physics is more difficult than chemistry.

*Lưu ý:* Một số tính từ tận cùng bằng đuôi "ics" có thể được dùng với động từ số ít hoặc số nhiều.

Eg: Politics is a complicated business. (*Chính trị là một hoạt động phức tạp.*)

What are your politics? (*Quan điểm chính trị của bạn là thế nào?*)

**g. Khoảng cách, thời gian, tiền bạc, sự đo lường:**

Eg: 3,6 kilometers is about 2 miles. (*3.6 km bằng khoảng 2 dặm.*)

Ten seconds was the winner's time.

(*Thời gian của người chiến thắng là 10 giây.*)

A thousand dollars is a large sum of money.

(*Một nghìn đô la là một khoảng tiền lớn.*)

*Lưu ý:* Động từ số ít thường dùng sau số thập phân, phân số và các cụm từ chỉ số lượng hoặc đo lường. Nhưng động từ số nhiều được dùng khi nói về số lượng người hoặc vật.

Eg: Three quarters of a ton is too much. (*3/4 tấn là quá nhiều.*)

A third of the students are from abroad.

(*1/3 số học sinh đến từ các nước khác.*)

**h. Tên một cuốn sách, một bài báo, một câu chuyện hoặc một bộ phim:**

Eg: Tom and Jerry is very well known all over the world.

*(Phim hoạt hình Tom và Jerry nổi tiếng trên toàn thế giới.)*

**i. Một mệnh đề, một danh động từ ...**

Eg: That you get a high position is very good.

*(Việc bạn đạt đến vị trí cao như thế này thì rất là tuyệt.)*

Smoking is bad for your health.

*(Hút thuốc không tốt cho sức khỏe của bạn.)*

## **2. Động từ số nhiều:**

Động từ số nhiều thường dùng khi chủ ngữ là:

**a. Danh từ số nhiều:**

Eg: These books are interesting. *(Những cuốn sách này rất hay.)*

The goods have been sent to you direct from our factory.

*(Các sản phẩm này được gửi trực tiếp cho bạn từ nhà máy của chúng tôi.)*

**b. Hai danh từ nối với nhau bằng "and" chỉ 2 người, 2 sự vật khác nhau:**

Eg: My best friend and my adviser are arriving.

*(Bạn thân và cố vấn của tôi đang đến.)*

Water and oil don't mix. *(Nước và dầu không thể hòa tan.)*

**c. The + adj → Noun.**

Eg: The rich are not always happy.

*(Người giàu không phải lúc nào cũng hạnh phúc.)*

After the accident, the injured were taken to hospital.

*(Sau tai nạn, những người bị thương được đưa tới bệnh viện.)*

**d. Some/ a few/ both/ many/ a lot of/ all ... + danh từ số nhiều:**

Eg: Some books I bought yesterday are in English.

*(Những cuốn sách tôi mua ngày hôm qua là sách tiếng Anh.)*

All the seats have a number.

*(Tất cả những chiếc ghế đều có số.)*

**e. Các danh từ tập hợp như: police, people, cattle ...**

Eg: The police have warned motorists to take extra care.

*(Cảnh sát đã cảnh báo những người lái xe cần cẩn thận hơn.)*



The cattle are suffering from a disease called BSE.

(Bò đang bị một căn bệnh gọi là BSE.)

3. Động từ số ít hay số nhiều? (singular or plural verb)

a. Các danh từ tập hợp (collective nouns) như: *family, team, government, staff, class, firm, crowd, public, orchestra, club, committee, audience, band, the BBC, the United Nations ...* (ngoại trừ *police, cattle, people*) có thể được dùng với động từ số ít hoặc số nhiều (tùy theo ý người nói muốn diễn đạt).

- Danh từ tập hợp đi với động từ số ít nếu người nói xem tập hợp này như một tổng thể hay một đơn vị duy nhất.

- Danh từ tập hợp đi với động từ số nhiều nếu người nói muốn nhấn mạnh đến các thành phần hay bộ phận của tập hợp này.

Eg: Our team is the best. It has a good chance of winning.

(Đội chúng tôi là đội hay nhất. Đội chúng tôi có cơ hội thắng trận.) → Đội bóng

Our team are wearing their new jerseys.

(Đội của chúng tôi mặc áo mới.) → các thành viên trong đội.

My family have decided to move to Nottingham.

(Gia đình tôi quyết định dọn đến Nottingham.)

The average British family has 3.6 members.

(Gia đình Anh trung bình có 3,6 thành viên) → Gia đình nói chung

Trong tiếng Anh của người Mỹ (American English), động từ số ít thường được dùng với các danh từ trên trong tất cả các trường hợp. (*family* có thể có động từ số nhiều.) Đại từ số nhiều có thể được dùng.

Eg: The team is in Detroit this weekend. They have a good chance of winning.

(Tuần này, đội bóng ở Detroit. Họ có cơ hội tốt giành chiến thắng.)

b. Hai danh từ/ đại từ kết hợp với nhau bằng: *with, along with, as well as, together with, accompanied by, besides, in addition to* → động từ được chia với danh từ/ đại từ thứ nhất.

**Noun<sub>1</sub> + with/ along with/ as well as ... + Noun<sub>2</sub> + Verb(noun<sub>1</sub>)**

Eg: The managing Director, together with his heads of department, is coming to the meeting.

(Giám đốc điều hành cùng với các trưởng ban sẽ đến dự cuộc họp.)

The horses as well as the horse-breaker are in the race course now.

(Hiện giờ, những con ngựa cũng như người dạy ngựa đang ở trường đua.)

c. Hai danh từ/ đại từ kết hợp với nhau bằng: *or, either...or, neither...nor, not...but, not only ... but also* → động từ được chia theo danh từ thứ hai.

Either		or	
Neither	+ noun <sub>1</sub>	nor	+ noun <sub>2</sub> + Verb (noun <sub>2</sub> )
No		but	
Not only		but also	

Eg: The room is too crowded – two chairs or a table has to be moved out.

(Căn phòng quá chật – hai cái ghế hoặc một cái bàn phải được chuyển ra ngoài.)

Either you or I am right. (Cả anh và tôi đều đúng.)

Neither she nor her daughters have arrived.

(Cả bà ấy lẫn các con gái của bà ấy đều chưa đến.)

Not Tom but his parents live here.

(Tom và bố mẹ của cậu ấy không sống ở đây.)

Not only the bathroom but also the rest of the house flooded.

(Không chỉ phòng tắm mà toàn bộ ngôi nhà đều bị ngập nước.)

+ Khi hai danh từ số ít được kết hợp bằng “Neither ... nor” thì động từ thường được chia ở số nhiều, nhưng động từ số ít cũng có thể được dùng trong lối văn trang trọng.

Eg: Neither she nor her daughter have arrived. (informal)

Neither she nor her daughter has arrived. (formal)

d. *The number of* + danh từ số nhiều → động từ chia ở số ít.

Eg: The number of books stolen from the library is large.

(Số sách bị mất ở thư viện là khá lớn.)

A number of + danh từ số nhiều → động từ chia ở số nhiều.

Eg: A number of problems have arisen. (Một số vấn đề đã nảy sinh.)

e. Chủ từ là một cụm danh từ được kết hợp bởi hai danh từ → động từ chia với danh từ thứ nhất.

Noun<sub>1</sub> + preposition + noun<sub>2</sub> + verb (Noun<sub>1</sub>)

f. Các từ như *all, some, none, part half, most, plenty, a lot, lots, majority, minority, the last, the rest, the remainder* + *of* được dùng với:

- Động từ số ít nếu danh từ theo sau ở số ít.
- Động từ số nhiều nếu danh từ theo sau ở số nhiều.

All, some, plenty, half, part, a lot, ...	+ of	+ singular Noun	→ singular verb
		+ plural Noun	→ plural verb

Eg: Some of the apples were rotten. (*Một vài quả táo đã bị hỏng.*)

Some of milk was sour. (*Một ít sữa đã bị chua.*)

A lot of time is needed to learn a language.

(*Để học một ngôn ngữ thì cần phải có nhiều thời gian.*)

A lot of my friends want to emigrate.

(*Nhiều bạn tôi muốn di cư.*)

g. No + danh từ số ít → động từ chia ở số ít

No + danh từ số nhiều → động từ chia ở số nhiều

Eg: No student is to leave the room. (*Không học sinh nào được rời khỏi phòng.*)

No people think alike. (*Không ai giống nhau cả.*)

h. Trong cụm từ *there + be ...*, động từ “be” phải tương hợp với chủ từ thật (real subject) đứng ngay sau nó.

Eg: There is a lot of noise in the street. (*Có nhiều tiếng ồn trên đường phố.*)

There were many people in the waiting room.

(*Có nhiều người trong phòng chờ.*)

## V. SỞ HỮU CÁCH (POSSESSIVE/ GENITIVE CASE):

Sở hữu cách được dùng để diễn đạt sự sở hữu.

### 1. Cách thành lập sở hữu cách (the formation of the possessive case):

Sở hữu cách được thành lập bằng cách:

a. Thêm “s” vào sau danh từ số ít và danh từ số nhiều không tận cùng bằng “s”.

Eg: My father's car (*xe ô tô của bố tôi*) = the car of my father.

Mary's dog (*con chó của Mary*) = the dog of Mary.

The bull's horns (*sừng bò*) = the horn of the bull.

The children's room (*phòng của bọn trẻ*) = the room of the children.

b. Thêm dấu phẩy (') vào sau các danh từ có tận cùng bằng “s”.

Eg: my parents' house (*ngôi nhà của cha mẹ tôi*)

= the house of my parents.

c. Thêm 's hoặc dấu phẩy (') vào các danh từ số ít hoặc tên riêng tận cùng bằng -s (nhưng s' được dùng phổ biến hơn).

Eg: My boss's office/ my boss' office. (*Văn phòng của ông chủ tôi*)

Charles's mother/ Charles's mother. (*Mẹ của Charles*)

**Lưu ý:** Các tên cổ điển tận cùng bằng -s thường chỉ thêm dấu (') vào từ cuối cùng.

Eg: Archimedes' law (*Luật của Archimedes*)

d. Với các danh từ ghép, thêm 's vào từ cuối cùng.

Eg: My brother-in-law's guitar (*Cây đàn ghi ta của anh rể tôi*)



e. 's cũng có thể được dùng sau các cụm từ:

Eg: Henry the Eighth's six wives (*Sáu người vợ của vua Henry VIII*)

The man next door's wife (*Vợ của người đàn ông nhà bên cạnh*)

Joe and Ann's children (*Các con của Joe và Ann*)

But: Joe's and Ann's children

(*Các con của Joe và các con của Ann*) (hai nhóm trẻ).

Lưu ý: Khi sử dụng sở hữu cách, các mạo từ (*a, an, the*) đứng trước người hay vật "bị sở hữu" phải được bỏ.

Eg: The daughter of the politician = the politician's daughter

(*Con gái của chính trị gia*)

The plays of Shakespeare = Shakespeare's plays

(*Những vở kịch của Shakespeare*)

2. Cách dùng sở hữu cách 's và of + danh từ. (Use of the possessive and of noun):

a. Cách dùng sở hữu cách:

♦ Sở hữu cách 's chủ yếu được dùng cho danh từ chỉ người hoặc động vật.

Eg: The girl's name. (*Tên cô gái*)

The horse's tail. (*Đuôi ngựa*)

Mr. Evans's daughter. (*Con gái của ngài Evans*)

- ◆ Không dùng sở hữu cách khi danh từ chỉ chủ sở hữu này là danh từ chỉ đồ vật hoặc ý tưởng. Trong trường hợp này ta thường dùng *of* + *danh từ*

Eg: The name of the book (not say: ~~the book's name~~) (*Tên của cuốn sách*)

Ngoài ra sở hữu cách còn có thể dùng với:

- ◆ Danh từ chỉ châu lục, quốc gia, thành phố, trường học...

Eg: The Europe's population. (*Dân số Châu Âu*)

The city's new theater. (*Nhà hát mới của thành phố*)

Italy's largest city. (*Thành phố lớn nhất của Ý.*)

- ◆ Danh từ chỉ thuyền bè, xe lửa, máy bay, xe hơi và các phương tiện khác; tuy nhiên trong trường hợp này *of* + *danh từ* thường được sử dụng hơn.

Eg: The train's heating system/ the heating system of the train.

(*hệ thống đốt nóng của xe lửa*)

A glider's wings/ the wings of a glider (*cánh của tàu lượn*)

- ◆ Danh từ chỉ một tổ chức hoặc một nhóm người (*of* + *danh từ* cũng có thể được dùng)

Eg: The government's decision/ the decision of the government.

(*quyết định của chính phủ*)

The company's success/ the success of the company.

(*thành công của công ty*)

- ◆ Từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ thời gian hoặc khoảng thời gian.

Eg: a week's holiday (*kỳ nghỉ dài một tuần*)

Today's paper (*báo hôm nay*)

Ten minute's break (*giờ giải lao 10 phút*)

Two year's time (*thời gian 2 năm*)

- ◆ Cụm từ chỉ tiền bạc hoặc giá trị.

Eg: a pound's worth of stamps (*Các con tem trị giá một bảng Anh*)

Fifty's dollars' worth of picture. (*Bức tranh giá 50 đô la*)

- ◆ Một số cụm từ khác:

A yard's distance (*khoảng cách một thước Anh*)

For God's sake (*Lạy Chúa*)

For children's sake (*Vì quyền lợi của trẻ em*)

A stone's throw (*Ném một hòn đá*)

Death's door (*Cánh cửa tử thần*)

Journey's end (*Kết thúc cuộc hành trình*)

The water's edge (*Bờ hồ, bờ sông*)

Lưu ý: Sở hữu cách 's là cách dùng bắt buộc khi danh từ chỉ chủ sở hữu là tên người. (Tom, Susan ...)

Eg: John's house. (not say: the house of John) (*Nhà của John*)

The house of London (not say: the London's house)

◆ Có thể dùng sở hữu cách mà không có danh từ chính theo sau khi:

Danh từ chính là một trong các từ *shop, school, house, church, hospital, office, surgery, firm*.

Eg: He is going to the **doctor's**. (*Anh ta sẽ đi bác sĩ.*) (= the doctor's surgery)

We had lunch at **Bill's**. (*Chúng tôi ăn trưa ở nhà Bill.*) (=Bill's house)

You can buy it at the **butcher's** (*Bạn có thể mua ở cửa hàng thịt.*)

She got married at **St. Joseph's** (*Cô ấy kết hôn tại nhà thờ thánh Joseph.*)  
(St. Joseph's church)

+ Danh từ chính đã hoặc sắp được nói đến.

This isn't my book. It's my **brother's**.

*Đây không phải là sách của tôi. Đây là sách của anh tôi.* (my brother's book)

Susan's is the only house that was painted violet.

*(Nhà của Susan là ngôi nhà duy nhất được sơn màu tím.)* (= Susan's house)

b. Cách dùng **of + danh từ** (of + noun):

◆ Sở hữu với **of** thường dùng cho danh từ chỉ sự vật hoặc ý tưởng.

Eg: The roof of the church. (*mái của nhà thờ*) (not: ~~the church's roof~~)

The result of the match. (*kết quả của trận đấu*) (not: ~~the match's result~~)

Đôi khi có thể dùng cấu trúc danh từ + danh từ.

Eg: the church roof, the match result.

Ngoài ra cấu trúc **of + danh từ** còn có thể dùng với:

◆ Danh từ có *a/ an* đứng trước.

Eg: I'm a big fan of Sting. (*Tôi rất hâm mộ Sting.*) (not: ~~sting's big fan~~)

- Các từ: *the beginning/ end/ top/ bottom/ fron/ back/ part/ middle/ side/ edge*.

Eg: the top of the page. (*đầu trang*)

The beginning of the month (*đầu tháng*)

◆ Danh từ chỉ người khi theo sau danh từ đó là một cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề.

Eg: The children obeyed the directions of the man with a whistle.

*(Bọn trẻ làm theo sự chỉ dẫn của người cầm còi.)*

Eg: I took the name card of a girl I met on the train.

*Tôi đã xin danh thiếp cô gái mà tôi gặp trên xe lửa.*

**Lưu ý:** Đôi khi chúng ta có thể gặp cấu trúc 's và of trong cùng một câu. Cách sở hữu này được gọi là sở hữu kép (double possessive)

Eg: We saw a play of Shaw's. = We saw one of Shaw's plays.

*(Chúng tôi đã xem một vở kịch của Shaw.)*

A daughter of Mr Brown's has arrived. One of Mr Brown daughter's has arrived.

*(Một người con gái của ông Brown đã đến rồi.)*

## EXERCISES:

I. Look at these nouns. Are they countable (C) or uncountable (U)?

1.	car(C)	6. golf	11. music	16. love
2.	work	7. banana	12. flower	17. furniture
3.	news	8. rice	13. money	18. electricity
4.	meat	9. song	14. ship	19. water
5.	photo	10. minute	15. advice	20. meal

II. Complete the sentences, using one of the following words. Use *a/an* where necessary.

accident	apple	milk	coat	sugar	key	electricity	sand
lack	cheese	blood	letter	moment	music	interview	

1. It wasn't your fault. It was *an accident*.
2. You'd better drink hot *milk* before going to bed.
3. I couldn't get into the house because I didn't have \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Do you take \_\_\_\_\_ in your tea?
5. The heart pumps \_\_\_\_\_ through the body.
6. John has got \_\_\_\_\_ for job tomorrow morning.
7. I didn't phone you. I wrote \_\_\_\_\_ instead.
8. I'm not ready yet. Can you wait \_\_\_\_\_, please?
9. It's very warm today. Why are you wearing \_\_\_\_\_?
10. Good \_\_\_\_\_ in your new job.
11. Listen! Can you hear \_\_\_\_\_?
12. Power station produce \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Are you hungry? Would you like \_\_\_\_\_?
14. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ in this soup?
15. Wait! There's \_\_\_\_\_ in my shoes.



### III. Complete the postcard. Choose the correct form.

The island is very peaceful. (0) Life/A life is good here. Everybody moves at a nice slow pace. People have (1) time/ a time to stop and talk. It's (2) experience/ an experience I won't forget a long time. There aren't many shops, so I can't spend all my money, although I did buy (3) painting/a painting yesterday. Now I'm sitting on the beach reading (4) paper/a paper. The hotel breakfast is so enormous that I don't need to have lunch. I've just brought (5) orange/ an orange with me to eat later. I've been trying all the different (6) fruit/ fruits grown in this part of the world, and they're all delicious.

### IV. Which of the underlined part of these sentences is correct?

1. Did you hear noise/ a noise just now?
2. There was somebody in the house because there was light/a light on inside.
3. What would it be like to travel at the speed of light/ a light?
4. I didn't have time/ a time for breakfast.
5. We had wonderful time/ a wonderful time in Paris.
6. It's very difficult to find a work/ job at the moment.
7. They offered me a job because I had a lot of experience/ experiences.
8. I haven't got a paper/ any paper to write on.
9. Bad news don't/ doesn't make people happy.
10. We had very good weather/ a very good weather while we were on holiday.
11. Your hair is/ Your hairs are too long. You should have it/ them cut.
12. Let me give you an advice/ a piece of advice.
13. The house is built of stone/ stones.
14. If you want to know the news, you can read paper/ a paper.
15. E-mail is a relative new mean/ means of communication.

### V. Choose the right answer:

1. It's important to brush your \_\_\_\_\_ at least twice a day.  
a. tooth                      b. teeth                      c. tooths                      d. toothes
2. We have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ near our house causing pollution.  
a. factorys                      b. factores                      c. factories                      d. factoris
3. There are a number of interesting \_\_\_\_\_ at my party.  
a. people                      b. persons                      c. peoples                      d. person
4. Have you ever seen the new \_\_\_\_\_ in that shop next door?  
a. radioes                      b. radies                      c. radiosos                      d. radios

5. They've put some lovely \_\_\_\_\_ in the city park.  
a. benches      b. benchies      c. benches      d. bench\
6. We usually buy three \_\_\_\_\_ of bread at the weekend.  
a. loaves      b. loafs      c. loafes      d. loave
7. You're really afraid of \_\_\_\_\_, aren't you?  
a. mouses      b. mice      c. mices      d. mouse
8. Those cows have got their \_\_\_\_\_ with them.  
a. ralfe      b. calves      c. scarves      d. calves
9. We've bought some new \_\_\_\_\_ to wear.  
a. clothies      b. cloths      c. clothes      d. cloth
10. They had to mend the \_\_\_\_\_ of the houses after the storm.  
a. roofes      b. rooves      c. roofs      d. roof
11. The nursery has places for 30 \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. childs      b. childes      c. childrens      d. children
12. We saw a flock of \_\_\_\_\_ grazing in the fields.  
a. sheep      b. sheeps      c. sheepes      d. ships
13. The farmer kept a flock of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. goose      b. geoses      c. geese      d. geeses .
14. Do you like these \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. photoes      b. photos      c. photo      d. photoies
15. Some types of \_\_\_\_\_ cause diseases.  
a. bacterium      b. bacteriums      c. bacterias      d. bacteria

**VI. Complete the sentences with the given nouns, adding final -s/-es if necessary.**

change	river	garbage	hardware	music
traffic	junk	thunder	screwdriver	homework

1. I put some banana peel, empty juice cartoons, and broken bottles in the waste can.  
The can is full of \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Tools that are used for turning screws are called \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The children got scared when they heard \_\_\_\_\_ during the storm.
4. I have some corns in my pocket. In other words, I have some \_\_\_\_\_ in my pocket.
5. They have a rusty car without an engine, broken chair, and an old refrigerator in their front yard. Their yard is full of \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The Mississippi, the Amazon, and the Nile are well-known \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The street is full of cars, trucks, and buses. It is full of \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I like to listen to operas, symphonies, and folk songs. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Tonight I have to read 20 page in my history book, do 30 algebra problem, and write a composition. In other word, I have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ to do tonight.
10. I went to the store to get some nail, hammers, and screws. In other word, I bought some \_\_\_\_\_.

**VII. Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural:**

1. The results of Dr. Noll's experiment was/were published in a scientific journal.
2. One of your children has/have lost a shoe.
3. A number of police officers here works/work with dogs.
4. There is/are some interesting pictures in today's paper.
5. No two teams wear the same. Each team wears/wear a different color.
6. Every man, woman, and child is/are protected under the law.
7. The cattle is/are going to be sold with the farm.
8. An officer and his dog has/have, to work closely together
9. My cat as well as my dogs likes/like cat food.
10. Gymnastics is/are an easy lesson at school.
11. The trousers you bought for me doesn't/don't fit me.
12. Where do/ does your family live?
13. Three days isn't/aren't long enough for a good holiday.
14. My cousin, along with my aunt and uncle, works/work in my grandpa's hardware store.
15. Measles is/are cured without much difficulty nowadays.
16. The United Nations has/have its headquarters in New York.
17. Neither the moon nor stars is/are visible in this dark night.
18. Why isn't/aren't there a hospital close to those villages?
19. The staff at the school wasn't/weren't happy with their working condition.
20. The new on the radio and TV Stations confirms/confirm that a serious storm is approaching our city.
21. I don't like very hot weather. Thirty degrees is/are too warm for me.
22. Not all policemen is/are allowed to carry guns.
23. One of our jobs is/are to prevent crime happening in the first place.

24. A lot of crime is/are caused by people being careless.
25. Each of my friends has/have a present.
26. The number of desks in that classroom is/are thirty-five.
27. The remains of the meal was/were thrown in the bin.
28. Three-fourths of the pizzas has/have been already eaten.
29. Can I borrow your scissors? Mine isn't/ aren't sharp enough.
30. Five times five is/ are twenty-five.

**VIII. Supply the correct form (singular or plural) of the verb in brackets:**

1. The Philippines \_\_\_\_\_ (have) signed the new human rights agreement.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (Be) bacon and eggs what you usually eat?
3. The police \_\_\_\_\_ (think) that more than one person \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in the stolen car.
4. The majority of children's parents \_\_\_\_\_ (be) unemployed.
5. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (be) pleased with her answer.
6. None of my brothers \_\_\_\_\_ (remember) my mother's birthday.
7. Both of these shirts \_\_\_\_\_ (be) dirty.
8. Fifty minutes \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the maximum length of time allowed for the exam.
9. Some of my friends \_\_\_\_\_ (live) abroad.
10. Ann, along with her friends \_\_\_\_\_ (be) playing volleyball.
11. I wonder if either of those alternatives \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a good idea.
12. A lot of the students in the class \_\_\_\_\_ (be) from Southeast Asia.
13. Alex, as well as his two older brothers, \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a good full-time job.
14. Two-thirds of the money \_\_\_\_\_ (be) mine.
15. The Japanese \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a long and interesting history.

**IX. Most of the sentences are wrong. Write "T" if the sentence is correct. If it is incorrect, cross the unnecessary or wrong word and write or correct it in the space.**

1. I like a classical music very much.  
a → omit a
2. The crowd are all enjoying the game.  
T
3. My grandmother wears glass when she reads.
4. We like Martin and Jill. They're nice persons.

5. The government want to increase taxes.
6. Cattle was driven hundreds of miles.
7. This scissors is not very sharp.
8. That's a wonderful news!
9. There was a police officer standing at the corner.
10. Leafs turn yellow in the fall.
11. I'm going to buy a new pyjama.
12. There is some luggages in the car.
13. Three pounds are not a big enough tip.
14. I heard an interesting piece of information.
15. Has the police arrived yet?

**X. What do we call these things and people? Use the structure noun + noun:**

1. A station from which trains leave is a train station
2. Shoes made of leather are \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A boy who is five years old is \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Clothes for working in are \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. Somebody whose job is to inspect factories is \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. The carpet in the dining room is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The Director of Marketing is \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A bottle containing medicine and made of glass is \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Shops that sell shoes are \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A card that gives you credit is \_\_\_\_\_.

**XI. Answer the questions using two of the following words each time.**

accident	belt	card	credit	editor	frying
newspaper	number	pan	road	room	seat
shop	weather	window	forecast		

1. This can be caused by bad driving. A road accident
2. If you're staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. Your \_\_\_\_\_.
3. You should wear this when you're in a car. A \_\_\_\_\_.
4. You can sometimes use this to pay for things instead of cash. A \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If you want to know if it's going to rain, you can read or listen to this. The \_\_\_\_\_.

6. This person is a top journalist. A \_\_\_\_\_.
7. You might stop to look in this when you're walking along a street. A \_\_\_\_\_.
8. This can be used for cooking. A \_\_\_\_\_.

**XII. Complete the sentences, using one of the following. Sometimes you need the singular (day/ page...) and sometimes the plural (days/ pages ...).**

- |              |             |                |                |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|
| 15 minute(s) | two hour(s) | five day(s)    | 60 minute(s)   |
| six mile(s)  | 500 year(s) | 20 pound(s)    | ten page(s)    |
| 450 page(s)  | two year(s) | five course(s) | 15 year(s) old |

1. It's quite a long book. There are 450 pages.
2. A few days ago I received a ten-page letter.
3. I didn't have any change. I only had a \_\_\_\_\_ note.
4. At work in the morning I usually have a \_\_\_\_\_ break for coffee.
5. There are \_\_\_\_\_ in an hour.
6. It's only a \_\_\_\_\_ flight from London to Madrid.
7. It was a big meal. There were \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Mary has just started a new job. She's got a \_\_\_\_\_ contract.
9. The oldest building in the city is the \_\_\_\_\_ old castle.
10. I work \_\_\_\_\_ a week. Saturday and Sunday are free.
11. We went for a \_\_\_\_\_ walk in the country.
12. I teach English for two \_\_\_\_\_ girls.

**XIII. Join the two (or three) nouns. Sometimes you have to use -'s or -s', and sometimes you have to use of.**

1. the mistake/ the policeman the policeman's mistake
2. the bottom/ the bottle the bottom of the bottle

3. the daughter/ Mr Hill _____	12. the tail/ the horse _____
4. the name/ this street _____	13. the house/ the people we met in Spain _____
5. the gardens/ our neighbors _____	14. the arm/ the chair _____

6. the children/ Don and Mary _____	15. the monthly meeting/ the club _____
7. the wedding/ the friend/ Helen _____	16. the work/ last year _____
8. the ground floor/ the building _____	17. the death/ someone important _____
9. the car/ the parents/ Mike _____	18. the middle/ the night _____
10. the economic policy/ the government _____	19. the room/ my sisters _____
11. the money/ the gangsters _____	20. the door/ the garage _____

**XIV. Rewrite the underlined phrases, using a possessive form:**

- The storm last week caused a lot of damage.  
*Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.*
- The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The only cinema in the town has closed down.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Exports from Britain to the United States have fallen recently.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Tourism is the main industry in the region.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The prices this year are even lower.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- A rest for five minutes is enough for me.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- From here it's a drive of two hours.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I'll see you in a week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The paper yesterday reported the assassination of the Prime Minister.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# TÍNH TỪ (ADJECTIVES)

## I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (DEFINITION):

Tính từ (adjectives) là từ chỉ tính chất của con người, vật, hoặc sự việc được biểu thị bằng một danh từ hoặc đại từ.

## II. CÁC LOẠI TÍNH TỪ (KINDS OF ADJECTIVES):

Dựa trên các tiêu chí khác nhau tính từ có thể được phân thành:

### 1. Tính từ mô tả và tính từ giới hạn (descriptive adjectives and limiting adjectives):

**1.1 Tính từ mô tả (descriptive adjectives):** là tính từ được dùng để mô tả hình dáng, kích thước, phẩm chất, đặc tính, màu sắc... của người, vật hoặc sự việc: tall (*cao*), fat (*mập*), heavy (*nặng*), rich (*giàu*), old (*già, cũ*), new (*mới*), intelligent (*thông minh*), blue (*màu xanh*), beautiful (*đẹp*), good (*tốt*)...

Eg: That man is a rich businessman.

(Người đàn ông đó là một thương gia giàu có.)

My school is small and old.

(Trường của tôi nhỏ và cũ.)

+ Tính từ mô tả chiếm phần lớn số lượng tính từ trong tiếng Anh.

**1.2 Tính từ giới hạn (limiting adjectives):** là tính từ được dùng để đặt giới hạn cho danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa. Tính từ giới hạn gồm:

a. Từ xác định hoặc tính từ chỉ sự sở hữu (Possessive determiners/ adjectives): được dùng trước danh từ để chỉ danh từ đó thuộc về người nào hoặc vật nào.

Personal pronouns (đại từ nhân xưng)	Possessive determiners/ adjectives (tính từ xác định/ tính từ sở hữu)	
I	my	(của tôi)
you	your	(của bạn/ anh/chị)
he	his	(của anh ấy)
she	her	(của cô ấy)
it	its	(của nó)
we	our	(của chúng tôi)
they	their	(của họ, của chúng)



Eg: Have you seen **my** new coat?

*(Bạn có thấy cái áo khoác mới của tôi không?)*

**Her** father is a teacher.

*(Cha của cô ấy là giáo viên.)*

The dog has just had **its** breakfast.

*(Con chó vừa ăn xong bữa sáng của nó.)*

**b. Từ xác định hoặc tính từ chỉ định (Demonstrative determiners/ adjectives) *this, that, these, those, other, another, the other.***

**This/ that**

+ danh từ số ít (singular noun).

**These/ those**

+ danh từ số nhiều (plural noun).

Eg: I like **these** earrings. Where did you get them?

*(Tôi thích đôi hoa tai này. Bạn mua ở đâu vậy?)*

**That** table is nice, isn't it? – Yes, but I don't like those chairs.

*(Cái bàn đó đẹp, phải không? – Vâng, nhưng tôi không thích những cái ghế đó.)*

+ **This/ these:** chỉ người hay vật ở khoảng cách gần với người nói.

Eg: **This** little boy says he's tired. *(Thằng bé này nói là nó bị mệt)*

Come and see **these** photos. *(Hãy đến xem những tấm hình này.)*

+ **That/ those:** chỉ người hay vật ở khoảng cách xa.

Eg: Tell **those** men to go away. *(Bảo những gã kia biến đi.)*

Give me **that** hammer. *(Đưa tôi cây búa đó.)*

◆ **This, these, that, those** thường được dùng với danh từ chỉ thời gian. **This / these** chỉ thời gian hiện tại hoặc khoảng thời gian sắp tới, **that / those** chỉ thời gian quá khứ hoặc khoảng thời gian xa hơn trong tương lai.

Eg: I'm taking my driving test **this** weekend, so I'm pretty busy **these** days.

*(Cuối tuần này tôi sẽ thi lấy bằng lái, nên những ngày này tôi khá bận rộn)*

Do you remember **that** summer we all went to Spain?

*(Bạn có nhớ mùa hè mà tất cả chúng ta cùng đi Tây Ban Nha không?)*

◆ *This, these, that, those* + danh từ + *of* + đại từ sở hữu có thể được dùng để nhấn mạnh, thay cho *tính từ sở hữu* + danh từ.

Eg: **This boy of yours** seems very intelligent.

(*Cậu con trai này của anh có vẻ rất thông minh.*)

• **Other** + danh từ số ít/ số nhiều (singular/ plural noun): một hoặc nhiều người, vật hoặc sự việc thêm vào cái đã được nêu lên hoặc ngụ ý trước đó.

Eg: In addition to Nicola, Mrs. Stanley has three **other children**.

(*Ngoài Nicola, bà Stanley còn có ba người con khác.*)

• **Another** + danh từ số ít (singular noun): một người hoặc vật khác ngoài cái đã có hoặc đã nêu.

Eg: I must find myself **another job**. (*Tôi phải tìm công việc khác.*)

She's got **another boy-friend** (*Cô ấy đã có bạn trai khác.*)

• **The other** + danh từ số ít: cái thứ hai trong hai cái.

Eg: The insurance office was on **the other side** of the street.

(*Công ty bảo hiểm ở bên kia đường.*)

• **The other** + danh từ số nhiều: những người hoặc những vật còn lại; phần còn lại.

Eg: When I return home I found my wife talking to our neighbor. **The other guests** had gone.

(*Khi về nhà, tôi thấy vợ tôi đang nói chuyện với người hàng xóm. Những khách khác đã ra về.*)

Where are **the other photos**? (*Còn những tấm hình khác đâu?*)

c. Từ xác định hoặc tính từ phân bố (**Distributive determiners/ adjectives**): *each, every, both, either, neither*.

• **Each/ every** + danh từ đếm được số ít (singular countable noun): chỉ nhóm người hoặc vật. Động từ theo sau ở số ít (singular verb).

Eg: **Each room/ Every room** has number. (*Mỗi phòng đều có số.*)

Trong nhiều trường hợp, cả *each* và *every* đều có thể được dùng mà không có sự khác biệt nhiều về nghĩa.

Eg: **Each time/ Every time** I see you, you look more beautiful.

(*Mỗi lần tôi gặp bạn, trông bạn càng đẹp hơn.*)

The police questioned **each person/ every person** in the building.

(*Cảnh sát thẩm vấn từng người trong tòa nhà.*)

Tuy nhiên, *each* và *every* không hoàn toàn giống nhau.

- Each (mỗi) hàm ý mỗi người, mỗi vật hoặc mỗi sự vật trong một nhóm. Every (mọi; mỗi) hàm ý tất cả mọi người, vật hoặc sự vật được xem như một nhóm.

Eg: **Every** student in the class passed the examination.

(Mọi học sinh trong lớp đều thi đỗ.)

**Each** student has his/ her own place in the library.

(Mỗi học sinh có chỗ ngồi riêng của mình trong thư viện.)

- **Each** được dùng khi nói về một số lượng nhỏ người hoặc vật. **Every** thường được dùng với một số lượng lớn.

Eg: I tried to phone her two or three times, but **each time** there was no reply.

(Tôi thử gọi cho cô ấy hai ba lần, nhưng không lần nào gọi được.)

**Every times** he phones, I always seem to be in the shower. [= all the time]

(Đường như lần nào anh ấy gọi đến tôi cũng đang tắm.)

- **Each** có thể được dùng để nói về hai người, hai vật hoặc sự vật.

Eg: In a football match, **each team** has 11 players.

(Trong một trận bóng đá, mỗi đội có 11 cầu thủ.) [NOT every-team...]

She has a child holding on to **each hand**.

(Cô ấy dắt mỗi tay một đứa trẻ.) [NOT ...every-hand]

- **Every** được dùng để nói điều gì đó đã xảy ra thường xuyên như thế nào.

Eg: There is a bus **every ten minutes**. (Mỗi 10 phút có một chiếc xe buýt.)

[NOT...each-ten-minutes]

• **Both** (cả hai), **either** (cái / người này hoặc cái / người kia), **neither** (không cái / người này hoặc không cái / người kia): được dùng để chỉ hai người, hai vật hoặc sự vật.

- **Both** + danh từ đếm được số nhiều (plural countable noun)

Eg: **Both** books are interesting. (Cả hai cuốn sách đều hay.)

- **Either/ neither** + danh từ đếm được số ít (singular countable noun)

Eg: **Neither** answer is correct. (Cả hai câu trả lời đều không đúng.)

Come on Tuesday and Thursday. **Either day** is OK

(Hãy đến vào thứ ba hoặc thứ năm. Ngày nào cũng được.)

d. Từ xác định hoặc tính từ chỉ số lượng (quantitative determiners/ adjectives) **all, most, some, several, many, few, much, little, a lot of/ lots of, no, one, twenty...**

• **All** (tất cả), **most** (phần lớn) + danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều (plural countable noun) hoặc danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun). Động từ theo sau ở hình thức số nhiều hay số ít tùy thuộc vào danh từ.

Eg: **All children** need love. (*Tất cả trẻ em đều cần tình thương.*)

They had given up **all hope**. (*Họ đã từ bỏ mọi hi vọng.*)

**Most business meetings** are held at the company's main office.

(*Hầu hết các cuộc họp đều được tổ chức ở văn phòng chính của công ty.*)

**Most cheese** is made from cow's milk.

(*Phần lớn phô mát được làm từ sữa bò.*)

• **Some** (một vài, một số), **any** (nào) + danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều (plural countable noun) hoặc danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun).

Eg: There were **some cornflakes** on the table, but there wasn't **any** milk.

(*Trên bàn có vài cái bánh bột ngô, nhưng không có sữa.*)

♦ **Some** thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định và **any** thường được dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi.

Eg: **Some modern music** sounds harsh and tuneless.

(*Một số nhạc hiện đại nghe chói tai và không có giai điệu.*)

Are there **any stamps** in the drawer?

(*Có con tem nào trong ngăn kéo không?*)

We bought **some flowers**, but we didn't buy **any roses**.

(*Chúng tôi đã mua một ít hoa, nhưng chúng tôi không mua hoa hồng.*)

♦ **Some** thường được dùng trong câu đề nghị và câu yêu cầu.

Eg: Would you like **some coffee**? (*Anh dùng chút cà phê nhé?*)

Could you post **some letters** for me?

(*Anh có thể gửi giúp tôi vài lá thư không?*)

♦ **Some** có thể được dùng với danh từ đếm được ở số ít để chỉ một người, một nơi chốn, một vật chưa được biết đến hoặc chưa xác định.

Eg: **Some man** at the door is asking to see you.

(*Ở ngoài cửa có người nào đó muốn gặp anh.*)

She lives in **some village** in Yorkshire.

(*Cô ấy sống trong một ngôi làng nào đó ở Yorkshire.*)

♦ **Any** có thể được dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít trong câu khẳng định để nhấn mạnh ý về chọn lựa tự do, với nghĩa 'bất cứ ai; bất cứ cái gì, điều gì.'

Eg: Ask **any doctor** – They'll all tell you that alcohol is a poison.

(*Hãy hỏi bất cứ bác sĩ nào – tất cả đều sẽ nói với bạn rằng rượu là chất độc.*)

I'm free all day. Call **any time** you like.

(*Tôi rảnh rỗi suốt ngày. Hãy gọi bất cứ lúc nào bạn muốn.*)

• **No** (= not any, not a: không nào) + danh từ đếm được số ít hoặc số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được. Động từ theo sau ở số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy thuộc vào danh từ.

Eg: I'm afraid I've got **no money**. (*Tôi e rằng tôi chẳng có đồng nào.*)

[= I haven't got any money]

**No rooms** are available. (*Không có phòng trống.*)

**No student** is to leave the room.

(*Không một sinh viên nào được ra khỏi phòng.*)

• **Many, much, a lot of/ lots of**: chỉ số lượng nhiều

- *Many* và *much* thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định và câu nghi vấn.

**many**

+ danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều (plural countable noun).

**much**

+ danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun).

Eg: There aren't **many customers** in the store.

(*Không có nhiều khách hàng trong cửa hàng.*)

I haven't got **much time** for reading.

(*Tôi không có nhiều thời gian đọc sách.*)

*Many* và *much* được dùng trong câu khẳng định sau **too, so** và **as**.

Eg: There are **too many** spelling mistakes in your writing.

(*Có quá nhiều lỗi chính tả trong bài viết của bạn.*)

[NOT ~~too a lot of/ lots of~~]

I've got **so much** work to do. (*Tôi có rất nhiều việc phải làm.*)

[NOT ~~so a lot of/ lots of~~]

Jane doesn't have **as many** friends as her sister.

(*Jane không có nhiều bạn bằng chị cô.*) [NOT ~~as a lot of~~]

\* **Lưu ý**: Trong lối văn trịnh trọng đôi khi chúng ta cũng có thể dùng *many* và *much* trong câu khẳng định.

Eg: **Many students** have financial problems.

(*Nhiều sinh viên gặp khó khăn về tài chính.*)

**Many** = a large number of, a good number of

**Much** = a great deal of, a good deal of, a large quantity of

- *A lot of/ lots of* thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định.

**A lot of/ lots of** + danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều (plural countable noun) hoặc danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun).

Eg: **A lot of people** were queuing for the film.

(Nhiều người đang xếp hàng mua vé xem phim.)

There was **a lot of money** in the safe. (Có nhiều tiền trong két.)

*A lot of/ lots of* cũng có thể được dùng trong câu phủ định hoặc câu nghi vấn trong lối văn thân mật.

Eg: I don't have **many/ a lot of** friends. (Tôi không có nhiều bạn.)

Do you eat **much/ a lot of** fruit? (Bạn có ăn nhiều trái cây không?)

\* Lưu ý: Không dùng *a lot of* sau *too, so, as* và *very*.

Eg: Sarah has **so many** friends. (Sarah có rất nhiều bạn) [NOT ~~so a lot of~~]

• **(a) few** và **(a) little**: chỉ số lượng nhỏ.

- *A few* và *a little* (một vài; một số) mang nghĩa khẳng định.

**A few** + danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều (plural countable noun)

**A little** + danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun)

Eg: I enjoy my life here. I have **a few friends** and we meet quite often.

(Tôi sống ở đây rất vui. Tôi có vài người bạn và chúng tôi gặp nhau khá thường xuyên.)

[a few friends = some friends]

Let's go and have a drink. We've got **a little time** before the train leaves.

(Chúng ta đi uống nước đi. Chúng ta vẫn còn một ít thời gian trước khi tàu chạy.)

[a little time = some time]

- *Few* và *little* (ít) mang nghĩa phủ định, hàm ý "không nhiều như mong đợi/ như người ta nghĩ".

**few** + danh từ đếm được số nhiều.

**little** + danh từ không đếm được.

Eg: He isn't popular. He has few friends.

(Anh ta không được mọi người yêu thích. Anh ta có ít bạn bè.)

[few friends = not many friends]

We must be quick. There is little time.

(Chúng ta phải nhanh lên. Không có nhiều thời gian đâu.)

[little time = not much time]

- Very little và very few cũng có thể được dùng.

Eg: We must be quick. There is very little time.

(Chúng ta phải nhanh lên. Có rất ít thời gian.)

➤ So sánh hai câu sau:

- He spoke little English, so it was difficult to talk to him.

(Anh ta nói được ít tiếng Anh, nên nói chuyện với anh ta thật khó khăn.)

(little English = not much English)

- He spoke a little English, so we can talk to him.

(Anh ta nói được một ít tiếng Anh, nên chúng ta có thể nói chuyện với anh ta.)

[a little English = some English]

\* Lưu ý: 'only a little' và 'only a few' có nghĩa phủ định.

Eg: We must be quick. We've only got a little time.

(Chúng ta phải nhanh lên. Chúng ta chỉ có một ít thời gian.)

[only a little time = not much time]

The village was very small. There were only a few houses.

(Ngôi làng rất nhỏ. Chỉ có một vài ngôi nhà.)

[only a few houses = not many houses]

e. Từ xác định hoặc tính từ nghi vấn (Interrogative determiners / adjectives) whose, what, which.

• Whose + danh từ đếm được hoặc không đếm được (countable/ uncountable noun)

Eg: Whose car are those outside?

(Những chiếc xe bên ngoài kia là của ai vậy?)

Whose money did you buy the car with?

(Anh mua xe bằng tiền của ai vậy?)

• What + danh từ đếm được hoặc không đếm được (countable/ uncountable noun)

Eg: What famous person said this?

(Nhân vật nổi tiếng nào đã nói điều này thế?)

What color are the baby's eyes? (Mắt bé màu gì?)

- **Which** + danh từ đếm được hoặc không đếm được (countable/ uncountable noun)

Eg: **Which secretary** sent the fax? (*Thư ký nào đã gửi bản fax này?*)

**Which color** do you want – green, red, yellow or brown?

(*Bạn thích màu nào? – xanh, đỏ, vàng hay nâu?*)

### **Lưu ý:**

- ◆ **which** và **what** thường được dùng để hỏi về vật. Nhưng khi đứng trước danh từ, **which** và **what** có thể được dùng để hỏi về người.

Eg: **Which/ what doctor** did you see? (*Anh đã gặp bác sĩ nào vậy?*)

- ◆ **Which** và **what** thường có thể được dùng không có sự khác biệt nhiều về nghĩa

Eg: **Which/ what train** will you catch? (*Anh sẽ đón chuyến xe lửa nào?*)

**Which/ what writers** do you like? (*Bạn thích những nhà văn nào?*)

Tuy nhiên **which** thường được dùng khi người nói nghĩ đến hoặc đưa ra một số lượng giới hạn để chọn lựa.

Eg: **Which size** do you want – small, medium or large?

(*Chị muốn kích cỡ nào – nhỏ, vừa hay lớn?*)

**Which phone** shall I use, this one or the one in the office?

(*Tôi nên dùng điện thoại nào, cái này hay cái trong văn phòng?*)

Khi người nói không nghĩ đến số lượng giới hạn thì dùng **what**.

Eg: **What sport** do you play? (*Anh chơi môn thể thao nào?*)

[tennis, or golf, or football, or hockey, or...?]

**What language** do they speak in Greenland?

(*Ở Greenland người ta nói tiếng gì?*)

[English, or Spanish, or Japanese, or Arabic, or...?]

## **2. Tính từ thuộc ngữ và tính từ vị ngữ (Attributive adjectives and predicative adjectives)**

2.1. **Tính từ thuộc ngữ** (attributive adjectives) là tính từ đứng trước danh từ mà nó mô tả.

Eg: He's a nice man. (*Ông ấy là người tốt.*)

2.2. **Tính từ vị ngữ** (predicative adjectives) là tính từ theo sau các hệ từ *be, become, feel, look, get, seem...*

Eg: She were asleep. (*Cô ấy đang ngủ.*)



### 3. Tính từ đơn và tính từ ghép (Simple adjectives and compound adjectives)

#### 3.1 Tính từ đơn (simple adjectives) là tính từ chỉ có một từ.

Eg:

beautiful (xinh đẹp)



sad (buồn)



3.2. Tính từ ghép (compound adjectives) là tính từ được thành lập bằng cách kết hợp hai hoặc nhiều từ lại với nhau và được dùng như một tính từ duy nhất. Tính từ ghép có thể được viết:

- Thành một từ duy nhất.

Eg: life + long = lifelong (*suốt đời, lâu dài*)

home + sick = homesick (*nhớ nhà, nhớ quê hương*)

- Thành hai từ và có dấu gạch nối (-) ở giữa.

Eg: duty-free (*miễn thuế*)

world-famous (*nổi tiếng khắp thế giới*)

\* Tính từ ghép có thể được tạo thành bởi:

- Danh từ + tính từ (noun + adjective)

Eg: seasick (*say sóng*)

blood-red (*đỏ như máu*)

world-weary (*chán đời, chán sống*)

lifelong (*suốt đời, lâu dài*)

- Tính từ + danh từ (adjective + noun)

Eg: long-distance (*đường dài*)

second-rate (*hạng nhì, loại thường*)

- Danh từ + phân từ (noun + present/ past participle)

Eg: man-made (*nhân tạo*)

machine-wound (*quán bằng máy*)

Heart-breaking (*làm đau lòng*)

time-consuming (*tốn thời gian*)

- Tính từ + phân từ (adjective + present/ past participle)

Eg: ready-made (*làm sẵn, may sẵn*)

clear-cut (*rõ ràng*)

easy-going (*thoải mái, dễ chịu*)

fine-looking (*trông đẹp mắt*)

- Trạng từ + phân từ (adverb + present/ past participle)

Eg: well-known (*nổi tiếng*)    outspoken (*trực tính*)  
       hard-working (*cần cù*)    everlasting (*đời đời, bất diệt*)

- Tính từ + tính từ (adjective + adjective)

Eg: white-hot (*rất nóng*)    absent-minded (*đãng trí*)  
       worldly-wise (*từng trải, lối đời*)

- Tính từ + danh từ + ED (adjective + noun + ED)

Eg: white-livered (*nhát gan, nhút nhát*)  
       Long-sighted (*viễn thị*)    good-humored (*vui tính, dễ dãi*)

### III. PHÂN TỬ DÙNG NHƯ TÍNH TỪ

#### (PARTICIPLE FUNCTIONING AS ADJECTIVES):

Hiện tại phân từ (present participle - V-ing) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle - V-ed/ V3) có thể được dùng như một tính từ trước danh từ hoặc sau động từ *to be* và các hệ từ khác.

1. **Hiện tại phân từ (present participle)** được dùng để mô tả người, vật hoặc sự việc tạo ra cảm xúc → nghĩa chủ động.

Eg: Jane's job is **boring**. (*Công việc của Jane thật tẻ nhạt.*)

[It makes Jane bored.]

Tom was very **interesting** person. (*Tom là một người rất thú vị.*)

[He made us interested.]

His idea seems **exciting**. (*Ý kiến của anh ấy có vẻ rất hay.*)

[It makes us excited.]

2. **Quá khứ phân từ (past participle)** được dùng để mô tả trạng thái hoặc cảm xúc của một người (đối với người, vật hoặc sự việc nào đó) → nghĩa thụ động (bị tác động).

Eg: Jane is **bored** (with her job). (*Jane chán công việc của mình.*)

**Boring** teachers make **bored** students. (*Thầy buồn tẻ khiến trò chán.*)

His explanation made me very **confused**.

(*Lời giải thích của anh ta làm cho tôi rất bối rối.*)

She's an **interesting** writer, and I'm very **interested** in the subjects that she writes about.

(*Bà ấy là một nhà văn thú vị, tôi rất thích những đề tài bà ấy viết.*)

### **Lưu ý:**

- Cách thành lập phân từ:

+ Hiện tại phân từ (present participle) được thành lập bằng cách thêm **-ing** vào sau dạng nguyên mẫu của động từ: *interesting, boring, exciting, developing...*

+ Quá khứ phân từ (past participle) được thành lập bằng cách thêm **-ed** vào sau các động từ có quy tắc. Quá khứ phân từ của các động từ bất quy tắc là động từ nằm ở cột 3 trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc: *interested, bored, excited, broken, grown, forgotten...*

- Một số nội động từ (intransitive verbs) có dạng quá khứ phân từ có thể được dùng như tính từ với nghĩa chủ động, nhất là khi đứng trước danh từ.

Eg: a fallen leaf (chiếc lá rụng) [= a leaf that has fallen]

developed countries (các nước phát triển) [= countries that have developed]

## **IV. DANH TỪ DÙNG NHƯ TÍNH TỪ (NOUNS FUNCTIONING AS ADJECTIVES):**

Trong tiếng Anh, danh từ có thể được dùng như tính từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ khác. Các danh từ này thường đứng trước từ mà nó bổ nghĩa và luôn ở dạng số ít (singular form).

Eg: We need some new **garden** tools.

(*Chúng ta cần một số dụng cụ làm vườn mới.*)

That **shoe** shop's closed down. (*Tiệm giày đó đã đóng cửa luôn rồi.*)

[NOT ~~That shoes-shop~~]

It's **vegetable** soup. (*Đó là món súp rau*) [NOT ...~~vegetables-soup~~]

Khi danh từ được dùng như từ bổ nghĩa kết hợp với một con số thì danh từ luôn ở hình thức số ít (ngay khi chúng bổ nghĩa cho danh từ số nhiều) và có dấu gạch ngang giữa danh từ và con số.

Eg: We took a tour that lasted **five weeks**. (noun)

→ We took a **five-week** tour. (adjective)

(*Chúng tôi đã đi một chuyến du lịch kéo dài 5 tuần.*)

That student wrote two reports that was **ten pages** long each.

→ That student wrote two **ten-page** reports.

(*Học sinh đó đã viết hai bài tường trình mỗi bài dài 10 trang.*)

Her son is **five years old**.

→ She has a **five-year-old** son.

(*Cô ấy có một đứa con trai 5 tuổi.*)

## V. VỊ TRÍ CỦA TÍNH TỪ (POSITION OF ADJECTIVES):

### 1. Vị trí thuộc ngữ và vị trí vị ngữ (attributive and predicative position):

#### 1.1. Vị trí thuộc ngữ (attributive position): đứng trước danh từ.

Eg: The **new** secretary doesn't like me. (*Người thư ký mới không thích tôi*)

He is an **intelligent** student. (*Anh ta là một học sinh thông minh*)

1.2. Vị trí vị ngữ (predicative position): đứng sau các hệ từ (linking verbs) be (*thì*), seem (*có vẻ, dường như*), look (*trông có vẻ*), become (*trở nên*), get (*trở nên*), feel (*cảm thấy*), sound (*nghe có vẻ*), taste (*có vị*), smell (*có mùi*), appear (*hình như, có vẻ*)...

Eg: The children seemed **happy**. (*Trông bọn trẻ có vẻ rất vui.*)

This dress is **new**, isn't it? (*Chiếc áo đầm này mới, phải không?*)

It's getting **cold**. (*Trời đang trở lạnh.*)

She appeared very **confident**. (*Cô ấy có vẻ rất tự tin.*)

\* Lưu ý: Phần lớn tính từ đều có thể đứng ở cả hai vị trí – trước danh từ và sau hệ từ (linking verbs – *be, seem, become, look, get...*)

Eg: He's a **rich** businessman. (*Ông ấy là một thương gia giàu có.*)

Or: He's very **rich**. (*Ông ấy rất giàu.*)

Claire's got a **new** car. (*Claire có xe hơi mới.*)

Or: Claire's car is **new**. (*Xe hơi của Claire thì mới.*)

Nhưng có một số tính từ chỉ có thể được dùng ở một vị trí trong câu:

- Một số tính từ chỉ có thể đứng trước danh từ như: main (*chính*), chief (*chính, chủ yếu*), indoor (*trong nhà*), outdoor (*ngoài trời*), elder (*hơn tuổi, lớn hơn*), eldest (*lớn tuổi nhất*), only (*duy nhất*), former (*trước, cũ*), upper (*bên trên*), outer (*bên ngoài*)...

Eg: Be careful crossing the **main** road.

(*Hãy cẩn thận khi băng qua con đường chính.*)

The **only** problem is I've got no money.

(*Vấn đề duy nhất là tôi không có tiền.*)

- Một số tính từ chỉ có thể được dùng sau hệ từ (linking verbs):

+ Tính từ bắt đầu bằng a-:

asleep:	<i>đang ngủ</i>	afraid:	<i>sợ</i>
alike:	<i>giống nhau</i>	awake:	<i>thức</i>
alone:	<i>một mình</i>	alive:	<i>còn sống</i>
ashamed:	<i>hổ thẹn</i>	afloat:	<i>nổi</i>
aware:	<i>hiếu</i>	alight:	<i>cháy</i>

+ Tính từ khác:

ill:	ốm đau	well:	khỏe
content:	hài lòng	unable:	không có khả năng
fine:	khỏe	glad:	vui mừng
upset:	làm khó chịu	except:	miễn trừ

Eg: The baby is **asleep**. (*Em bé đang ngủ.*)

But: a **sleeping** baby (*Một em bé đang ngủ.*) [~~NOT an asleep baby~~]

Vickey looked **ill**. (*Vickey có vẻ đang bệnh.*)

But: Nurses look after **sick** people.

(*Y tá chăm sóc người bệnh.*) [~~NOT ill people~~]

He was **afraid**. (*Anh ta hoảng sợ*)

But: **frightened** children. (*Những đứa trẻ hoảng sợ.*) [~~NOT afraid children~~]

## 2. Tính từ thuộc ngữ đứng sau danh từ (attributive adjectives after nouns):

Tính từ có thể đi sau danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa trong các trường hợp sau:

a. Tính từ được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho các đại từ bất định: *something, anything, nothing, everything, someone, anyone, somewhere* v.v

Eg: Did you meet anyone **interesting** at the party?

(*Tại bữa tiệc đó anh có gặp người nào làm cho anh chú ý không?*)

Let's go somewhere **quiet**. (*Chúng ta hãy đến nơi nào đó yên tĩnh đi.*)

I have something **important** to tell you.

(*Tôi có việc này quan trọng muốn nói với bạn.*)

b. Tính từ được dùng trong các cụm từ diễn tả sự đo lường (chiều dài, chiều cao, tuổi tác).

Eg: This table is two meters **long**. (*Cái bàn này dài 2 mét.*)

The lake is five meters **deep**. (*Hồ sâu 5 mét.*)

My daughter is six years **old**. (*Con gái tôi 6 tuổi.*)

c. Hai hoặc nhiều tính từ được nối với nhau bằng *and* hoặc *but* và cùng bổ nghĩa cho một danh từ.

Eg: He is a writer both **witty** and **wise**.

(*Ông ta là một nhà văn vừa dí dỏm vừa lịch duyệt.*)

d. Tính từ tận cùng bằng *-able* và *-ible*. (tính từ này cũng có thể đứng trước danh từ)

Eg: The dish is made with ingredients **available** in most supermarkets.

(Món ăn này được làm bằng các thành phần có thể mua được tại hầu hết các siêu thị.)

It's the only solution **possible**. (Đó là giải pháp duy nhất có tính khả thi)

I'd like to speak to person **responsible**.

(Tôi muốn nói chuyện với người có trách nhiệm.)

### 3. Động từ + tân ngữ + tính từ (verb + object + adjective):

Một vị trí khác nữa của tính từ là đứng sau tân ngữ trong cấu trúc *động từ + tân ngữ + tính từ*.

Eg: The students made their teacher **angry**.

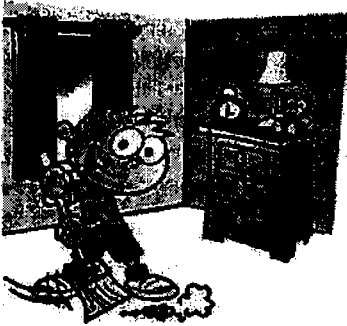
(Học sinh làm thầy giáo nổi giận.)

Let's paint the kitchen **yellow**.

(Chúng ta hãy sơn nhà bếp màu vàng đi.)

We should keep our room **clean and tidy**.

(Chúng ta nên giữ phòng sạch sẽ và ngăn nắp.)



## VI. TRẬT TỰ CỦA TÍNH TỪ ĐỨNG TRƯỚC DANH TỪ (ORDER OF ADJECTIVES BEFORE NOUNS)

Chúng ta có thể dùng hai hoặc nhiều tính từ trước một danh từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đó.

Eg: She lives in a nice new house on the hill.

(Cô ấy sống trong ngôi nhà mới xinh đẹp trên ngọn đồi này.)

There is a beautiful large round wooden table in the kitchen.

(Trong nhà bếp có một cái bàn gỗ tròn, to và đẹp.)

Các tính từ 'new, round, wooden, large' là tính từ miêu tả. Chúng cho ta những thông tin về kích thước, hình dáng, tuổi tác, chất liệu, v.v. Các tính từ 'nice, beautiful' là tính từ chỉ quan điểm thường được dùng trước tính từ miêu tả.

**\* Trật tự của các tính từ:**

Khi có hai hoặc nhiều tính từ đứng trước danh từ thì trật tự thường (nhưng không phải luôn luôn) được sắp xếp theo thứ tự sau (từ trên xuống).

GROUP	EXAMPLE
1. Determiners	a, the, this, my, those, some, several...
2. Cardinal adjectives	one, four, ten...
3. Option (how good?)	lovely, nice, wonderful, great, awful, terrible, beautiful...
4. Size (how big?)	big, small, long, large, short, tall, fat...
5. Quality	quiet, boring, shiny, important, famous, angry, wet, sunny, fast, difficult, warm, wise, modern...
6. Age (how old)	new, old, young, elderly...
7. Shape	round, oval, triangular...
8. Colour	red, blue, brown, green, black...
9. Origin (where from?)	Japanese, American, Chinese...
10. Material (made of?)	stone, plastic, steel, paper, leather...
11. Type (what kind?)	an electric kettle, political matters...
12. Purpose (what for?)	a bread knife, walking stick, riding boots, bath tower...

Eg: Who's that **fat old** lady over there? (*Bà lão mập mạp kia là ai vậy?*)

[NOT ~~that old fat~~ lady]

She bought two **beautiful wooden** picture frames.

(*Cô ấy đã mua hai khung hình bằng gỗ rất đẹp.*)

[option, material, purpose]

That poor man used to live in a **big, modern brick** house.

(*Người đàn ông nghèo khổ đó đã từng sống trong một ngôi nhà gạch lớn và hiện đại.*)

[size, quality, material]

Ann has a **small round pink** face.

(*Ann có gương mặt tròn, nhỏ hồng hào.*) [size, shape, colour]

Please give me that **old green plastic** bucket.

(*Đưa giúp tôi cái xô nhựa cũ màu xanh kia.*) [age, colour, material]

These **red Spanish leather riding** boots belong to Tom.

(*Đôi ủng cưỡi ngựa bằng da, màu đỏ được sản xuất tại Tây Ban Nha này là của Tom.*)

[colour, origin, material, purpose]

### **Lưu ý:**

- Tính từ chỉ kích thước và chiều dài (*big/ small/ tall/ long/ short/...*) thường đứng trước tính từ chỉ hình dáng và chiều rộng (*round/ oval/ fat/ thin/ wide/ narrow/...*)

Eg: a **tall thin** girl (*Một cô gái cao gầy*)

A **long narrow** street (*Một con đường dài và hẹp*)

- Tính từ chỉ thứ tự (ordinal adjectives – *first, second, third...*) đứng trước tính từ chỉ số lượng (cardinal adjectives – *one, two, three...*)

Eg: the **first two** days (*hai ngày đầu tiên*) [NOT the ~~two first~~ days]

- Nếu các tính từ cùng loại, thì tính từ ngắn thường được đặt trước tính từ dài.

Eg: It was a **cold windy** day. (*Đó là một ngày gió lạnh.*)

Basil was a **tall well-built** man. (*Basil là một người cao to lực lưỡng.*)

- Khi có hai hoặc hơn hai tính từ chỉ màu sắc, ta dùng liên từ **and**.

Eg: a **black and white** dress (*Một cái áo đầm màu đen và trắng.*)

A **red, white and green** flag (*Một lá cờ đỏ, trắng và xanh.*)

## **VII. TÍNH TỪ ĐƯỢC DÙNG NHƯ DANH TỪ:**

Một số tính từ có thể được dùng với “the” để nói về một nhóm người trong xã hội, nhất là những nhóm người có tình trạng thể lực hoặc hoàn cảnh xã hội đặc biệt.

Eg: the **blind** (*những người mù*), the **poor** (*những người nghèo*), the **old** (*những người già*), the **deaf** (*những người điếc*), the **disabled** (*những người tàn tật*), the **sick** (*những người bệnh*), the **under-fives** (*những đứa trẻ dưới 5 tuổi*), the **unemployed** (*những người thất nghiệp*)...

The gap between **the rich** and **the poor** is on the increase.

(*Khoảng cách giữa người giàu và người nghèo ngày càng tăng.*)

**The young** are usually keen on traveling.

(*Thanh niên thường thích đi du lịch.*)



Các cụm từ này có nghĩa số nhiều (the unemployed = all unemployed people) nên đi với động từ và đại từ số nhiều.

Eg: The unemployed **are** losing **their** hope.

(*Những người thất nghiệp đang mất dần hi vọng.*)

- The + adjective đôi khi còn được dùng để đề cập đến những khái niệm trừu tượng.

Eg: the good (*cái thiện*)

the beautiful (*cái đẹp*)

The evil (*cái ác*)

the supernatural (*hiện tượng siêu nhiên*)

He is a lover of **the beautiful** (*Ông ta là người yêu cái đẹp.*)

Are you interested in **the supernatural**?

(*Anh có quan tâm đến hiện tượng siêu nhiên không?*)

### Lưu ý:

- The + tính từ (the + adjective) chỉ được dùng để nói đến một nhóm người với nghĩa tổng quát. Nếu chúng ta muốn đề cập đến một nhóm người cụ thể nào đó, ta phải dùng thêm danh từ (people, person, man, woman...)

Eg: **The young** are usually keen on traveling.

(*Thanh niên thường thích đi du lịch.*)

None of **the young people** in the village can find jobs here.

(*Không một thanh niên nào trong làng tìm được việc làm ở đây*)

- Không dùng sở hữu cách 's với các cụm từ này.

Eg: the problems of the poor

Or poor people's problems

[~~NOT the poor's problems~~]

- Đôi khi chúng ta có thể dùng tính từ không có **the** sau các lượng từ như many và more trong cấu trúc cặp đôi **and** và **or**, và sau sở hữu cách.

Eg: There are **more unemployed** than ever before.

(*Chưa bao giờ người thất nghiệp lại nhiều như hiện nay.*)

They provided opportunities for **both rich and poor**.

(*Họ tạo cơ hội cho cả người giàu lẫn người nghèo.*)

## EXERCISES

---

### I. Underline all the adjectives in this description.

This comfortable hotel with its pleasant gardens is ideal for people who want a quiet holiday, yet it is only a short distance from the highly popular attractions of the area. There are lovely views from every room. The atmosphere is very friendly, and the staff are always helpful. The holiday here is very good value for money.

You can eat your meals at the hotel, where the food tastes marvellous. Or you can of course try some of the excellent local restaurants.

### II. Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word given + the ending -ing or -ed.

- The film wasn't as good as we had expected. (disappoint)
  - The film was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - We were \_\_\_\_\_ with the film.
- Diana teaches young children. It's a very hard job but she enjoys it. (exhaust)
  - She enjoys her job but it's often \_\_\_\_\_.
  - At the end of a day's work, she is often \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. (despress)
  - This weather is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - This weather makes me \_\_\_\_\_.
  - It's silly to get \_\_\_\_\_ because of the weather.
- Clare is going to the United States next month. She has never been there before. (excite)
  - It will be an \_\_\_\_\_ experience for her.
  - Going to new places is always \_\_\_\_\_.
  - She is really \_\_\_\_\_ about going to the United States.
- Jane doesn't enjoy her job any more and would like to do something different. (bore)
  - Jane is \_\_\_\_\_ with her job because she does the same thing every day.
  - Jane's job is so \_\_\_\_\_.

### III. Choose the correct word:

1. Are you interesting/ interested in football?
2. The football match was quite exciting/ excited. I enjoyed it.
3. It's sometimes embarrassing/ embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
4. Do you easily get embarrassing/ embarrassed?
5. I had never expected to get the job. I was really amazing/ amazed when I was offered it.
6. She has really learned very fast. She has made astonishing/ astonished progress.
7. I didn't find the situation funny. I was not amusing/ amused.
8. It was a really terrifying/ terrified experience. Afterwards everybody was very shocking/ shocked.
9. Why do you always look so boring/ bored? Is your life really so boring/ bored?
10. He's one of the most boring/ bored people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything interesting/ interested.
11. The two-hour delay was annoying/ annoyed.
12. This weather makes me so depressing/ depressed.
13. Going for a jog with Matthew is exhausting/ exhausted.
14. This computer has some very confusing/ confused instructions.
15. When I got onto the roof. I felt frightening/ frightened.
16. The journey took all day and night. They found it very tired/ tiring.
17. I thought the program on wildlife was fascinating/ fascinated.
18. The children always get exciting/ excited when the Granny comes.
19. What thrilling/ thrilled news this is! Congratulation!
20. I must say it made me puzzling/ puzzled. I just don't understand.

### IV. Complete the sentences, using one of the following words.

**bored/ boring**

**interested/ interesting**

**amused/ amusing**

**exhausted/ exhausting**

**confused/ confusing**

**excited/ exciting**

**surprised/ surprising**

**annoying/ annoyed**

1. He works very hard. It's not surprising that he's always tired.
2. The teacher's explanation was \_\_\_\_\_. Most of the students didn't understand it.
3. I seldom visit art galleries. I'm not particularly \_\_\_\_\_ in art.
4. The lecture was \_\_\_\_\_. I fell asleep.
5. Liz is always late. I'll be \_\_\_\_\_ if she gets here on time.
6. I've been working very hard all day and now I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I'm starting a new job next week. I'm quite \_\_\_\_\_ about it.
8. Tom is very good at telling funny stories. He can be very \_\_\_\_\_.
9. There is no need to get \_\_\_\_\_ just because I'm a few minutes late.
10. Liz is a very \_\_\_\_\_ person. She knows a lot, she's traveled a lot and she's done lots of different things.

**V. Complete the conversation, using the word ending in -ing or -ed.**

*Vicky:* That was an (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (excite) film, wasn't it?

*Rachel:* Oh, do you think so? I'm (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (surprise) you liked it. I thought it was rather (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (disappoint).

*Vicky:* Well, I was (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (puzzle) once or twice. I didn't understand the whole story. It was (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (confuse) in places. But the end was good.

*Rachel:* I was (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (bore) most of the time. I didn't find it very (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (interest).

**VI. Complete the conversations using a word ending in -ing or -ed:**

1. A: I'm surprised how warm it is for March.

B: Yes, all this sunshine is quite surprising.

2. A: I'm not very fit. I was pretty tired after climbing the mountain.

B: Yes, I think everyone felt \_\_\_\_\_.

3. A: I think I need to relax.

B: Well, lying by the pool should be \_\_\_\_\_.

4. A: It was annoying to lose my ticket.

B: You looked really \_\_\_\_\_ when you had to buy another one.

5. A: The cabaret was amusing.

B: Claire was certainly \_\_\_\_\_. She couldn't stop laughing.

6. A: The museum was interesting, wasn't it?  
 B: It was OK. I was quite \_\_\_\_\_ in those old maps.
7. A: I'm fascinated by these old photos.  
 B: I always find it \_\_\_\_\_ to see what people looked like as children.
8. A: Was it a big thrill meeting Tom Hanks?  
 B: You bet. It was just about the most \_\_\_\_\_ moment of my life.
9. A: You look exhausted. You should go to bed.  
 B: Driving down from Scotland was pretty \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A: I think the way Jessica behaved was quite shocking.  
 B: Yes, I was so \_\_\_\_\_ that I couldn't say a word.

**VII. Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.**

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. a table (wooden/ round)                 | <u>a round wooden table.</u> |
| 2. a vase (glass/ old/ lovely)             | _____                        |
| 3. a pullover (green/ new)                 | _____                        |
| 4. a box (metal/ black/ small)             | _____                        |
| 5. a basin (sugar/antique/silver)          | _____                        |
| 6. shoes (black/ leather/ big)             | _____                        |
| 7. a dress (new/ blue/ nice)               | _____                        |
| 8. a mirror (wall/ attractive)             | _____                        |
| 9. a seat (wooden/ expensive/ garden)      | _____                        |
| 10. a painting (French/ interesting/ old)  | _____                        |
| 11. a singer (opera/ famous/ Italian)      | _____                        |
| 12. hair (black/ straight/ long)           | _____                        |
| 13. stamps (postage/ valuable/ Australian) | _____                        |
| 14. chairs (kitchen/red/metal)             | _____                        |
| 15. a boat (model/ splendid/ old)          | _____                        |
| 16. a journey (boring/ train/ long)        | _____                        |
| 17. some questions (easy/ nice/ quiz)      | _____                        |
| 18. a day (sunny/ beautiful)               | _____                        |
| 19. an avenue (long/ wide)                 | _____                        |
| 20. a cat (fat/ black/ yellow/ big)        | _____                        |

**VIII. Write the information in a single sentence:**

1. This game is new. It's for the family. And it's exciting.

*This is an exciting new family game.*

2. This computer is for business. It's Japanese. And it's powerful.

3. This fire is electric. It's excellent. And it's small.

4. This is a chocolate bar. It's new. And it's a big bar.

5. This comedy is American. It's for television. And it's terrific.

6. These doors are aluminium. They're for your garage. And they're stylish.

7. Those shoes are modern. They're for sports. And they're wonderful.

8. This phone is a mobile. It's German. And it's very good.

**IX. Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective.**

**Verbs:** *smell, look (2), feel, seem, taste, sound, become (2), get*

**Adjectives:** *awful, fine, nice, interesting, violent, wet, upset, boring, hungry, terrible*

1. I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it *tastes awful*.

2. I wasn't very well yesterday but I \_\_\_\_\_ today.

3. What beautiful flowers! They \_\_\_\_\_ too.

4. You \_\_\_\_\_. Have you been out in the rain?

5. As the film went on, it \_\_\_\_\_ more and more \_\_\_\_\_. Therefore I fell asleep during the film.

6. Jim was telling me about his new job. It \_\_\_\_\_ quite \_\_\_\_\_, much better than his old job.

7. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ this morning. Do you know what was wrong?

8. Why don't we go for dinner? I \_\_\_\_\_.

9. You \_\_\_\_\_! Are you all right?

10. The man \_\_\_\_\_ when the manager of the restaurant asked him to leave.

**X. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first, using the structure noun + noun.**

1. Her call to California lasted ten minutes.  
She made a ten-minute call to California.
2. Sam's new apartment is in a building which has twelve storeys.  
Sam's new apartment is in a \_\_\_\_\_.
3. We teach languages.  
We are \_\_\_\_\_.
4. My parents saw a play in three acts last night.  
My parents saw a \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
5. The manager said that the sale would last for two days.  
The manager said that it would be a \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Mark bought a tool set containing 79 pieces.  
Mark bought a \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I need two cans of tomatoes that weigh 16 ounces each.  
I need two \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I'm looking for a pressure cooker that holds six quarts.  
I'm looking for a \_\_\_\_\_.
9. He is a specialist at building houses made of bricks.  
He is a specialist at building \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Mrs Brown just bought her daughter a bicycle with ten speeds.  
Mrs Brown just bought her daughter a \_\_\_\_\_.

**XI. Put in *each* or *every*:**

1. There were four books on the table. Each book was a different colour.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ guest watched as the President came in.
3. There were cars parked along \_\_\_\_\_ side of the street.
4. My father plays tennis \_\_\_\_\_ Thursday evening.
5. I understood most of what they said but not \_\_\_\_\_ word.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ of the six flats has its own entrance.
7. We had a great weekend. I enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ minute of it.
8. The book is divided into five parts and \_\_\_\_\_ of these has three sections.
9. Car seat belts save lives. \_\_\_\_\_ driver should wear one.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ day seemed to pass very slowly.

**XII. Complete the conversation. Put in *every, each, whole, both, either or neither*.**

*Assistant:* These plain sofas come in two different styles.

*Sarah:* I think (1) \_\_\_\_\_ styles are rather old-fashioned. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of them is really what I want. I don't like (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of them, I'm afraid.

*Assistant:* What about a patterned fabric? There are some lovely colour here.

*Sarah:* I feel more and more unsure with (4) \_\_\_\_\_ new fabric I look at.

*Mark:* We haven't have time to look at (5) \_\_\_\_\_ fabric in the shop. We've been in here a (6) \_\_\_\_\_ hour already, you know.

**XIII. Put in *a lot of, much or many*.**

1. We didn't spend much money on holiday.
2. Ron Mason owns a chain of supermarkets. He's made \_\_\_\_\_ money.
3. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ people in this town.
4. We are having a big party. We've invited \_\_\_\_\_ friends.
5. I feel really tired. I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ energy.
6. There are no need to hurry. We've got \_\_\_\_\_ time.
7. She's got too \_\_\_\_\_ relatives!
8. They've got so \_\_\_\_\_ money that they don't know what to do with it.
9. Are there \_\_\_\_\_ opera houses in London? ~ Not \_\_\_\_\_, but there are \_\_\_\_\_ theatres and cinemas.
10. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ trouble with English? ~ I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ trouble speaking, but I have \_\_\_\_\_ difficulty writing.

**XIV. Little or a little? Few or a few?**

1. I can't lift this box on my own. I need a little help.
2. Anne is very busy these days. She has \_\_\_\_\_ free time.
3. The postman doesn't often come here. We receive \_\_\_\_\_ letters.
4. Sandra is exhausted. She's having \_\_\_\_\_ days' holiday next week.
5. Trevor isn't finding it easy to fix the shelves. He's having \_\_\_\_\_ trouble.
6. I can speak \_\_\_\_\_ words of Swedish, but I'm not very fluent.
7. David quite likes golf, but he has \_\_\_\_\_ ability.



8. \_\_\_\_\_ tourists visited Northern Ireland in the 1980s because of the terrorism there.
- 9: Vicky has made \_\_\_\_\_ progress and so is feeling quite pleased.
10. We'd better hurry. Our bus goes in \_\_\_\_\_ minutes.

**XV. Put in *much, many, few, a few, little, a little*.**

1. Did you take \_\_\_\_\_ photographs when you were on holiday?
2. I'm not very busy today. I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ to do.
3. The museum was very crowded. There were too \_\_\_\_\_ people.
4. The weather has been very dry recently. We've had \_\_\_\_\_ rain.
5. Listen carefully. I'm going to give you \_\_\_\_\_ advice.
6. Do you mind if I ask you \_\_\_\_\_ questions?
7. I need some money. Have you got any? - Yes, but not \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Would you like milk in your coffee? ~Yes, please \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Have you ever been to Paris? ~Yes, I've been there \_\_\_\_\_ times.
10. Most of the town is modern. There are \_\_\_\_\_ old buildings.
11. The boys are making too \_\_\_\_\_ noise.
12. How \_\_\_\_\_ languages can you speak? Anh how \_\_\_\_\_ time do you spend on learning English?
13. There was \_\_\_\_\_ traffic, so the journey didn't take very long.
14. The island is very small and does not have \_\_\_\_\_ residents. The islanders do not have \_\_\_\_\_ money, and they have \_\_\_\_\_ contact with the outside world.
15. My home town is not a place attracting tourists. There are \_\_\_\_\_ shops, and there is \_\_\_\_\_ entertainment.

**XVI. Each of the sentences has a mistake in it. Write the correct sentence:**

1. Are you going on holiday that year?  
.....
2. That was a very good idea of you.  
.....
3. You've got a lot books, haven't you?  
.....

4. I don't know the meeting's time.  
.....
5. Nigel has hurt the leg.  
.....
6. All rooms in the house were cold.  
.....
7. Every of the four doors was locked.  
.....
8. I live my life, and my sister lives her.  
.....
9. The both socks have got holes in them.  
.....
10. Here's a copy of this week magazine.  
.....
11. This sweater is losing it's color.  
.....
12. I want some paper, but there's no in here.  
.....
13. Mark was only spending one night away. He quickly put a little things into a bag.  
.....
14. I take photos, but not as lots of as I used to.  
.....
15. There were cars parked along each street in town.  
.....

**XVII. Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.**

1. When I was on holiday, it rained all week. (whole)  
When I was on holiday, it rained the whole week.
2. I've lived here more than half my life. (most)  
.....

3. Your house is bigger than our house. (ours)  
.....
4. I've forgotten my doctor's name. (of)  
.....
5. We haven't had much warning of the changes. (little)  
.....
6. Such a large number of people have applied for the job. (so)  
.....
7. I met one of your old friends at a party. (an)  
.....
8. Both the chairs are uncomfortable. (neither)  
.....
9. All the hotels were full. (every)  
.....
10. My holiday starts ten days from now. (time)  
.....

# TRẠNG TỪ (ADVERBS)

## I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (DEFINITION):

Trạng từ là từ được dùng để cung cấp thêm thông tin về nơi chốn, thời gian, hoàn cảnh, cách thức, nguyên nhân, mức độ, v.v. cho một động từ, một tính từ, một cụm từ hoặc một trạng từ khác.

## II. CÁC LOẠI TRẠNG TỪ (KINDS OF ADVERBS):

Trạng từ có thể được phân loại theo ý nghĩa của chúng trong câu.

### 1. Trạng từ chỉ cách thức (adverbs of manner):

- Trạng từ chỉ cách thức cho biết sự việc xảy ra hoặc được thực hiện như thế nào. Trạng từ chỉ cách thức có thể được dùng để trả lời cho các câu hỏi với *how*.

Eg:

carefully: <i>cẩn thận</i>	fast: <i>nhanh</i>	angrily: <i>giận dữ</i>
noisily: <i>ồn ào</i>	well: <i>tốt, hay</i>	badly: <i>xấu, dở</i>
slowly: <i>chậm</i>	suddenly: <i>thình lình</i>	

- Trạng từ chỉ cách thức thường đứng ở vị trí cuối câu (end position). Trạng từ tận cùng là *-ly* đôi khi có thể đứng ở vị trí giữa câu (mid position) nếu trạng từ không phải là phần trọng tâm của thông tin.

Eg: He drove off **angrily**. (*Anh ta giận dữ lái xe đi.*)

She **angrily** tore up the letter. (*Cô ta giận dữ xé tan lá thư.*)

I don't remember him very **well**. (*Tôi không nhớ anh ta rõ lắm.*)

- Trạng từ chỉ cách thức thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm *-ly* vào sau tính từ.

**Adjective + ly -> adverb**

Eg: bad	+ ly	-> badly (xấu, dở)
happy	+ ly	-> happily (hạnh phúc)
quick	+ ly	-> quickly (nhanh, nhanh chóng)
terrible	+ ly	-> terribly (rất, rất tệ)
slow	+ ly	-> slowly (chậm, chậm chạp)

**Lưu ý:** Một số từ tận cùng bằng *-ly* nhưng là tính từ (adjective) như: friendly (thân thiện), lonely (cô đơn), lovely (đáng yêu), cowardly (hèn nhát), silly (ngớ ngẩn), ugly (xấu xí), likely (giống nhau), v.v. Không thể thành lập trạng từ với những tính từ này.

Eg: She gave me a friendly smile. (*Cô ấy mỉm cười thân thiện với tôi*)  
[NOT She smiled friendlily]

\* Một số từ có trạng từ cùng hình thức với tính từ:

hard ( <i>chăm chỉ</i> )	early ( <i>sớm</i> )	fast ( <i>nhanh</i> )
late ( <i>trễ</i> )	deep ( <i>sâu</i> )	right ( <i>đúng</i> )
wrong ( <i>sai</i> )	high ( <i>cao</i> )	near ( <i>gần</i> )

Eg: Simon loves **fast** cars. He drives very **fast**.

(*Simon rất thích những chiếc xe hơi chạy nhanh. Anh ta lái xe rất nhanh*)

Don't work too **hard**. (*Đừng làm việc quá vất vả.*)

Luckily I found a phone box quite **near**.

(*May thay tôi tìm thấy một trạm điện thoại ở khá gần.*)

The eagle circled **high** overhead. (*Con đại bàng lượn vòng cao trên đầu.*)

She arrived **right** after breakfast. (*Cô ấy đến ngay sau bữa điểm tâm.*)

Một số từ có thể có hai trạng từ, một trạng từ có cùng hình thức với tính từ, và một trạng từ tận cùng bằng *-ly* có nghĩa khác.

+ **hardly** (= almost not): rất ít hầu như không

Eg: I'm not surprised he didn't find a job. He **hardly** tried to find one.

(*Tôi không ngạc nhiên khi anh ta không tìm được việc. Anh ta hầu như không cố gắng để tìm.*)

+ **lately** (= recently): gần đây

Eg: He has come to see me **lately**. (*Gần đây anh ấy có đến thăm tôi.*)

+ **nearly** (= almost): gần như, suýt

Eg: I **nearly** missed the bus. (*Tôi suýt lỡ chuyến xe buýt.*)

+ **highly** (= very, very much): rất, rất nhiều

Eg: She's a **highly** intelligent young woman.

(*Cô ấy là một phụ nữ trẻ rất thông minh*)

+ **deeply** (= very, very much): rất, rất nhiều

Eg: He is **deeply** interested in this project.

(*Anh ta rất quan tâm đến kế hoạch này*)

\* **Lưu ý:** *Well* và *good* đều có nghĩa là 'tốt, giỏi', nhưng *good* là tính từ (adj) và *well* là trạng từ (adv).

Eg: I like that teacher. He is **good** and he teaches very **well**.

(*Tôi thích thầy giáo đó. Ông ấy tốt bụng và ông dạy rất giỏi.*)

She speaks English very **well**. (*Cô ấy nói tiếng Anh rất giỏi.*)

[NOT ~~goodly~~; NOT ~~she speaks well English~~]

## 2. Trạng từ chỉ thời gian (adverbs of time):

- Trạng từ chỉ thời gian cho biết sự việc xảy ra lúc nào. Trạng từ chỉ thời gian có thể được dùng để trả lời cho các câu hỏi với **when**:

then (lúc ấy)	now (bây giờ)
yesterday (hôm qua)	tomorrow (ngày mai)
immediately (ngay lập tức)	recently (gần đây)
at 2 o'clock (vào lúc 2 giờ)	today (hôm nay)
soon (chẳng bao lâu)	three days ago (ba ngày trước đây)

- Trạng từ chỉ thời gian thường đứng ở vị trí cuối câu (end position).

Eg: Can you do it **now**? (Bạn có thể làm ngay bây giờ không?)

What's going to happen **next**? (Kế đến chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra.)

We'll leave on **Monday morning**. (Sáng thứ hai chúng tôi sẽ ra đi.)

+ Trạng từ chỉ thời gian đôi khi có thể ở vị trí đầu câu (front position) để nhấn mạnh hoặc chỉ sự trái ngược.

Eg: Today I'm going to London (Hôm nay tôi sẽ đi London.)

[nhấn mạnh thời gian]

We're really busy this week. Last week we had nothing to do.

(Tuần này chúng tôi thực sự bận rộn. Tuần trước chúng tôi chẳng làm gì cả.) [chỉ sự trái ngược]

+ Một số trạng từ chỉ thời gian như: finally (cuối cùng), soon (chẳng bao lâu), already (đã rồi), last (lần cuối), now (bây giờ), still (vẫn còn), just (vừa mới), cũng có thể đứng ở vị trí giữa câu (mid position); still và just chỉ đứng ở vị trí giữa câu.

Eg: We'll **soon** be home (Chẳng bao lâu nữa chúng ta sẽ về đến nhà.)

My father **finally** agreed to let me go on the trip.

(Cuối cùng cha tôi đồng ý cho tôi đi du lịch.)

She is **still** busy (Cô ấy vẫn còn đang bận.)

Mr. Jonson has **just** gone out. (Ông Jonson vừa mới ra ngoài.)

## 3. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn (adverbs of place):

- Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn cho biết sự việc xảy ra nơi nào. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn có thể được dùng để trả lời cho câu hỏi với **where**.

Eg: upstairs (ở trên lầu), around (quanh), somewhere (đâu đó), here (ở đây), at the office (ở văn phòng)

- Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn thường đứng ở vị trí cuối câu (end position)

Eg: The children are playing **upstairs**. (*Bọn trẻ đang chơi trên lầu.*)

Her parents live **abroad**. (*Cha mẹ cô ấy sống ở nước ngoài.*)

I looked for it **everywhere**. (*Tôi tìm nó khắp nơi.*)

Don't throw orange peel **out of the window**.

(*Đừng ném vỏ cam ra ngoài cửa sổ.*)

+ Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn đôi khi cũng có thể đứng ở vị trí đầu câu, nhất là trong văn chương và khi trạng từ không phải là trọng tâm của câu.

Eg: **At the end of the garden** there was a very tall tree.

(*Cuối vườn có một cái cây rất to.*)

#### \* Lưu ý:

- Trạng từ chỉ phương hướng (sự chuyển động) đứng trước trạng từ chỉ vị trí.

Eg: The children are running **around the garden**.

(*Bọn trẻ đang chạy trong vườn.*)

- Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn thường đứng trước trạng từ chỉ thời gian.

Eg: She came **here a few minutes ago**. (*Cô ấy đến đây được vài phút.*)

My family moved to London **in 1987**.

(*Năm 1987 gia đình tôi chuyển tới London.*)

We arrived **at the airport early**. (*Chúng tôi đến phi trường sớm.*)

- Here and there có thể bắt đầu một mệnh đề: **Here/ there + verb + subject**

Eg: **Here** come our bus.

(*Xe buýt của chúng ta tới rồi kìa.*) [NOT ~~Here our bus comes~~]

**There** goes the train! (*Xe lửa chạy rồi!*) [NOT ~~there the train goes~~]

Nhưng chủ ngữ là đại từ (pronoun) đứng ngay sau **here/ there**.

Eg: **Here** it comes (*Nó đến đây rồi.*) [NOT ~~here comes it~~]

#### 4. Trạng từ chỉ tần suất (adverbs of frequency):

- Trạng từ chỉ tần suất cho biết sự việc xảy ra thường xuyên như thế nào. Trạng từ chỉ tần suất có thể được dùng để trả lời câu hỏi với **how often**:

always ( <i>luôn luôn</i> )	usually ( <i>thường xuyên</i> )
often ( <i>thường</i> )	occasionally ( <i>thỉnh thoảng</i> )
sometimes ( <i>thỉnh thoảng, đôi khi</i> )	seldom ( <i>ít khi</i> )
never ( <i>không bao giờ</i> )	rarely ( <i>hiếm khi</i> )
hardly ( <i>hầu như không</i> )	

- Trạng từ chỉ tần suất thường đứng ở vị trí giữa câu (mid position).

Eg: He is **constantly** in debt. (Ông ấy thường xuyên mắc nợ.)

I'll never agree to their demands.

(Tôi sẽ không bao giờ đồng ý với yêu cầu của họ.)

Mary **sometimes** goes to the cinema with Tom.

(Mary thỉnh thoảng có đi xem phim với Tom.)

She has **never** written to me. (Cô ấy chưa bao giờ viết thư cho tôi.)

Tuy nhiên trạng từ chỉ tần suất thường đứng trước trợ động từ khi trợ động từ được nhấn mạnh và khi trợ động từ đứng một mình trong câu trả lời ngắn.

Eg: I **never** can understand him. (Tôi không bao giờ hiểu được anh ta.)

Have you ever met her again? – Yes, I **sometimes** have.

(Anh có bao giờ gặp lại cô ta không? – Có, thỉnh thoảng tôi có gặp.)

- Một số trạng từ chỉ tần suất như *usually, normally, often, frequently, sometimes* và *occasionally* cũng có thể đứng ở vị trí đầu câu hoặc cuối câu để nhấn mạnh hoặc để chỉ sự tương phản.

Eg: **Usually** I get up early. (Thường thì tôi hay dậy sớm.)

[NOT always / never I get up early]

I feel depressed **sometimes**. (Đôi khi tôi cảm thấy chán nản.)

[NOT I feel depressed always]

- Các cụm trạng từ chỉ tần suất như *every day, every hour, once a week, three times a month,...* thường đứng ở vị trí đầu hoặc cuối câu.

Eg: The buses go **every 10 minutes**. (Cứ 10 phút lại có xe buýt.)

He plays tennis **three times a week**. (Anh ta chơi tennis 3 lần 1 tuần.)

**Every day** we go jogging. / We go jogging **every day**.

(Chúng tôi chạy bộ mỗi ngày.)

## 5. Trạng từ chỉ mức độ (adverbs of degree):

- Trạng từ chỉ mức độ cho biết mức độ (ít, nhiều...) của một tính chất hoặc một đặc tính:

too (quá)	absolutely (tuyệt đối)
extremely (vô cùng)	nearly (gần như)
very (rất)	quite (khá)
almost (gần như)	enough (đủ)
really (thực sự)	just (đúng, vừa đủ)



- Trạng từ chỉ mức độ thường đứng trước tính từ hoặc trạng từ mà nó bổ nghĩa.

Eg: I'm **very** pleased with your success. (*Tôi rất vui với thành công của bạn.*)

They spoke **too** quickly for us to understand.

(*Họ nói quá nhanh chúng tôi không thể hiểu được.*)

Nhưng **enough** đứng sau tính từ hoặc trạng từ.

Eg: The box isn't big **enough**. (*Cái hộp không đủ to.*)

You should write clearly **enough** for us to read.

(*Anh nên viết rõ để chúng tôi đọc được.*)

- Một số trạng từ chỉ mức độ có thể bổ nghĩa cho động từ như *almost, barely, hardly, just, nearly, quite, rather, really, scarcely* thường đứng ở vị trí giữa câu (trước động từ chính, sau động từ *be* và trợ động từ.)

Eg: I **really** enjoyed it. (*Tôi thực sự thích điều đó.*)

This hammer is **just** the thing I need. (*Cái búa này đúng là cái tôi cần.*)

## 6. Trạng từ nghi vấn (interrogative adverbs):

- Trạng từ nghi vấn là các trạng từ được dùng để đặt câu hỏi: *where, when, why, how*.

• **Where** (ở đâu): được dùng để hỏi nơi chốn.

Eg: **Where** do you live? – In London. (*Bạn sống ở đâu? - Ở London.*)

• **When** (khi nào): được dùng để hỏi thời gian

Eg: **When** have we got a history lesson? – On Monday.

(*Khi nào chúng ta có giờ lịch sử? – Thứ hai.*)

• **Why** (tại sao): được dùng để hỏi lý do

Eg: **Why** were you late? – Because my car broke down.

(*Sao bạn đến muộn vậy? – Vì xe tôi bị hư.*)

➤ **Why not** có thể được dùng để đưa ra một đề nghị hoặc đồng ý với một đề nghị.

Eg: **Why not** give her some flowers? (*Sao không tặng hoa cho cô ấy?*)

Let's go to the cinema. – **Why not?**

(*Chúng ta đi xem phim đi – Sao lại không nhỉ?*)

➤ **Why don't you/ we...?** Cũng có thể được dùng đưa ra lời đề nghị hoặc gợi ý.

Eg: **Why don't you** give her some flowers?

(*Sao bạn không tặng hoa cho cô ấy nhỉ?*)

• **How** (như thế nào, bằng cách nào): được dùng để hỏi cách thức

Eg: **How** do you spell the verb 'practice'? – P-R-A-C-T-I-C-E.

(*Bạn đánh vần động từ 'practice' như thế nào? - P-R-A-C-T-I-C-E.*)

**How** do you go to school? – By bicycle.

(*Bạn đi học bằng phương tiện gì? – Xe đạp.*)

► **How + be + (a person)** được dùng để hỏi về sức khỏe của người nào đó.

Eg: **How** are the children? – They're very well.

(*Bọn trẻ thế nào? – Chúng khỏe.*)

**How** are you? – Fine, thanks (*Bạn khỏe không? – Khỏe, cảm ơn.*)

**How** cũng có thể được dùng để hỏi về tâm trạng.

Eg: **How** does she look today? – Tired

(*Hôm nay trông cô ấy thế nào? – Mệt mỏi.*)

► **How + be + (a thing) ?** được dùng để yêu cầu mô tả điều gì đó.

Eg: **How** was the film? – Very good. [= **What** was the film like?]

(*Phim thế nào? – Rất hay*)

**How's** your new job? – So boring. [= **What's** your new job like?]

(*Công việc mới của bạn thế nào? – Chán ngắt*)

► **How + adjective/ adverb: how much, how many, how long, how old, how often, how far, how high, how fast,...** được dùng để hỏi kích thước, số lượng, mức độ, khoảng cách v.v

Eg: **How long** is this desk? – 135 centimeters.

(*Cái bàn này dài bao nhiêu? – 135cm*)

**How old** are you? – fifteen. (*Bạn bao nhiêu tuổi? - 15.*)

**How often** do you go swimming? – twice a week.

(*Bao lâu bạn đi bơi một lần? – 1 tuần 2 lần.*)

**How far** is your house? – about one kilometers.

(*Nhà bạn cách đây bao xa? – Khoảng 1km.*)

- Trạng từ nghi vấn luôn đứng đầu câu.

Eg: **Why** did you say that? (*Tại sao anh nói thế?*)

**How** did you come here? (*Anh đến đây bằng phương tiện gì?*)

## 7. Trạng từ quan hệ (relative adverbs):

Trạng từ quan hệ when (mà, khi), where (nơi mà), why (vì sao), có thể được dùng để giới thiệu các mệnh đề quan hệ sau các danh từ chỉ thời gian (when), nơi chốn (where) và lý do (why).

Eg: I'll never forget the day **when** I first met you.

(*Tôi sẽ không bao giờ quên cái ngày mà tôi gặp anh lần đầu.*)

I know a shop **where** you can find sandals.

(*Tôi biết một cửa hàng mà bạn có thể mua được xăng-đan.*)

Do you know the reason **why** he left her?

(Anh có biết lý do vì sao anh ta rời bỏ cô ta không?)

### III. CHỨC NĂNG CỦA TRẠNG TỪ (FUNCTIONS OF ADVERBS):

#### 1. Bổ nghĩa cho động từ:

Eg: He speaks English **fluently**. (Anh ấy nói tiếng Anh lưu loát.)

[*fluently* bổ nghĩa cho động từ *speaks*]

#### 2. Bổ nghĩa cho tính từ:

Eg: I led a **very** pleasant life there. (Ở đó tôi sống rất vui.)

[*very* bổ nghĩa cho tính từ *pleasant*]

#### 3. Bổ nghĩa cho trạng từ khác:

Eg: She acts **too** badly. (Cô ấy diễn quá dở.)

[*too* bổ nghĩa cho trạng từ *badly*]

#### 4. Bổ nghĩa cho cụm giới từ:

Eg: His remarks were not **quite** to the point.

(Những nhận xét của anh ta không đúng ngay vào vấn đề.)

[*quite* bổ nghĩa cho cụm giới từ *to the point*]

#### 5. Bổ nghĩa cho cả câu:

Eg: **Luckily**, he passed the final exam.

(May mắn thay, anh ấy đã đậu kỳ thi cuối khóa.)

[*luckily* bổ nghĩa cho cả câu *he passed the final exam*]

### IV. VỊ TRÍ CỦA TRẠNG TỪ (POSITIONS OF ADVERB):

Trạng từ có thể đứng ở 3 vị trí trong câu.

Các trạng từ nghi vấn (*when, where, why, how*) và trạng từ dùng để kết nối (*however, then, next, besides, anyway...*) thường đứng ở vị trí đầu câu.

Eg: **Where** do you live? (Bạn sống ở đâu?)

I worked until 5 o'clock. **Then** I went home.

(Tôi làm việc đến 5 giờ. Sau đó tôi về nhà.)

Trạng từ hoặc cụm trạng từ chỉ thời gian cũng có thể đứng ở đầu câu để nhấn mạnh.

Eg: **Yesterday morning** something very strange happened.

(Sáng hôm qua một điều rất lạ đã xảy ra.)

Một số các trạng từ như trạng từ chỉ tần suất, trạng từ chỉ mức độ, trạng từ chỉ cách thức có thể đứng ở vị trí giữa câu – nghĩa là:

**a. Trước động từ thường (ordinary verbs: go, come, see, hear...)**

Eg: We **usually** go to Scotland in August.

(Chúng tôi thường đi Scotland vào tháng 8.)

The ship **slowly** sailed away. (Con tàu chậm chậm ra khơi.)

**b. Sau các động từ be và các trợ động từ (auxiliary verbs: do, can, will, must, have...) hoặc giữa trợ động từ và động từ chính.**

Eg: The visitors are **just** leaving. (Khách vừa mới đi.)

We don't **often** go out in the evening.

(Chúng tôi thường không đi chơi vào buổi tối.)

She has **never** written to me. (Cô ấy chưa bao giờ viết thư cho tôi.)

**c. Khi có hai hoặc hơn hai trợ động từ, trạng từ thường đứng sau trợ động từ đầu tiên.**

Eg: The pictures have **definitely** been stolen.

(Rõ ràng là các bức tranh đã bị mất cắp.)

She would **never** have been promoted if she hadn't changed jobs.

(Cô ấy sẽ chẳng bao giờ được thăng chức nếu như không thay đổi việc làm)

Trạng từ chỉ cách thức hoặc chỉ sự hoàn tất khi ở vị trí giữa câu thường đứng sau tất cả các trợ động từ.

Eg: The problem has been **carefully** studied.

(Vấn đề đang được nghiên cứu kỹ.)

**\* Lưu ý:**

- Khi muốn nhấn mạnh động từ be hoặc trợ động từ, thì trạng từ thường đứng trước.

Eg: I **really** am sorry. (Tôi thực sự lấy làm tiếc.)

He **probably** has arrived by now. (Giờ này chắc là anh ta đã đến rồi.)

I **always** don't like her. (Tôi luôn không thích cô ta.)

- Trạng từ không được đứng giữa động từ và tân ngữ.

Eg: She speaks English **well**.

(Cô ta nói tiếng Anh rất giỏi.) [NOT she speaks ~~well~~ English]



Trạng từ chỉ cách thức, thời gian và nơi chốn thường đứng ở vị trí cuối câu.

Eg: Tom ate his breakfast **quickly**.

(Tom ăn nhanh bữa điểm tâm của anh ta.)

Did you have a nice time **in New York**?

(Anh ở New York có vui không?)

### \* Lưu ý:

- Khi có nhiều trạng từ hoặc cụm trạng từ cùng nằm ở vị trí cuối câu, thì trạng từ đơn (single-word adverb) thường đứng trước cụm trạng từ.

Eg: I always eat **here at lunch-time**. (Vào giờ ăn trưa tôi luôn ăn ở đây.)

- Ngoại từ những bổ ngữ cần thiết, trạng từ ở vị trí cuối câu thường theo thứ tự: cách thức (manner), nơi chốn (place), tần suất (frequency) và thời gian (time).

Eg: I worked **hard yesterday**. (Hôm qua tôi làm việc thật vất vả.)

He walked **slowly round the park after dinner**.

(Sau bữa tối, ông ta đi bộ quanh công viên.)

My parents traveled **to Florida twice last year**.

(Năm ngoái cha mẹ tôi đã đến Florida 2 lần.)

## V. PHÉP ĐẢO ĐỘNG TỪ SAU CÁC TRẠNG TỪ (Inversion of the verb after adverbs) (xem thêm chương INVERSION):

Phép đảo động từ là sự đảo ngược vị trí giữa động từ hoặc trợ động từ và chủ ngữ. Hình thức đảo trợ động từ được dùng khi:

a. Một trạng từ phủ định hay một trạng ngữ phủ định được đặt đầu câu hoặc mệnh đề để nhấn mạnh.

Eg: **Under no circumstances** should you agree to that proposal.

(Dù trong hoàn cảnh nào anh cũng đừng chấp thuận đề nghị đó.)

**Nowhere else** will you find such a kind man.

(Không ở đâu anh có thể tìm thấy một người tử tế như thế.)

**On no account** must this switch be touched.

(Bất cứ lý do gì cũng không được chạm vào nút này.)

b. Những từ giới hạn (restrictive words) như: *hardly, seldom, rarely, little, never*, và các thành ngữ có *only* được đặt ở đầu câu hoặc mệnh đề để nhấn mạnh.

Ex; **Never does my father** drink coffee in the evening.

(Không bao giờ bố tôi uống cà phê vào buổi tối.)

**Not only did we** lose our money, but we were nearly killed.

(Chúng tôi không những mất tiền mà còn suýt chết nữa.)

**Only with the full agreement of everyone can we** hope to succeed.

(Chỉ có khi nào được sự đồng ý hoàn toàn của mọi người, chúng ta mới thành công được.)

c. Cụm từ *so + adjective / adverb* hoặc *such + be + noun* được đặt ở đầu câu.

Eg: **So ridiculous did she** look that everybody burst out laughing.

(Trông cô ấy buồn cười tới nỗi mọi người cười phá lên.)

\* Một số trạng từ, trạng ngữ thường được theo sau bởi hình thức đảo ngữ:

*Hardly... (when), scarcely... (when), on no account, in / under no circumstances, only / only by, neither / nor, only in this way, never, only then / when / after / if, no sooner... than, rarely, not only... but also, not till / until, seldom, nowhere (else), so / such... that.*

\* **Lưu ý:** *only after / when / if... , not until, till...*, có hình thức đảo ngữ ở mệnh đề chính.

Eg: **Not until** you have finished your homework **can you** go out.

→ Hình thức đảo toàn bộ động từ được dùng khi cụm trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn, phương hướng, hoặc các trạng từ *here, there, first, last* đứng đầu câu.

Eg: Under the tree **was lying one of the biggest man** I had ever seen.

(Nằm dưới gốc cây là một trong những người đàn ông to nhất mà tôi từng gặp.)

Out into the street **ran the thieves.** (Bọn trộm chạy vụt ra đường.)

Here comes **Freddy!** (Freddy đến kìa!)



## EXERCISES

---

**I. Read this story. Underlined the words which are adverbs, and then say if their position is front, mid or end.**

Once a man called Alvin decided to rob a bank in Montgomery, Alabama. Alvin's parent had often told him that good manners were important. So Alvin went to the bank and stood in line. He waited patiently. Soon it was his turn. He dramatically pulled out a gun and threatened the cashier. She politely told him that he was in the wrong line and should go to another counter. Alvin immediately went to the correct place and stood in line again. Suddenly the police rushed in and arrested him. Alvin was amazed. They'd caught him before he'd even done the robbery. The moral of the story is that you shouldn't always do what your parent tell you.

**II. Is the word order right or wrong? Correct the ones that are wrong:**

1. Everybody enjoyed the party very much.

Right

2. I go always to work by car.

Wrong: always so

3. Jim doesn't like very much coffee.
- 

4. He drinks two cups of coffee every evening.
- 

5. I phoned Tom immediately after hearing it.
- 

6. Did you go late to bed last night?
- 

7. Steve gets hardly ever angry.
- 

8. We soon found the solution to the problem.
- 

9. Jane has usually to hurry in the morning.
-

10. What did you learn today at school?

---

11. We all were tired so we all fell asleep.

---

12. I met on my way home an old friend.

---

13. You aren't enough tall to play basketball.

---

14. Anne was fairly happy with the result.

---

15. The President died at his home peacefully.

---

**III. Complete the conversations using the words in brackets in the correct order.**

1. A: Do you know her?

B: Yes. But I can never remember her name. (remember/ never/ can)

2. A: Are you tired?

B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ tired at this time of day. (am/ always)

3. A: Where's Jim?

B: He \_\_\_\_\_ home early. (gone/has/probably)

4. A: Did you know the man who tried to steal your bag?

B: No, but I \_\_\_\_\_ him (certainly/ recognize/ would)

5. A: That was goal, wasn't it?

B: Yes, the ball \_\_\_\_\_ the line. (clearly/ crossed)

6. A: I hear weather is a lot better today.

B: It said on the radio it \_\_\_\_\_ later. (probably/rain/will)

7. A: How do we get to Mike's place?

B: I don't know. I \_\_\_\_\_ the direction. (didn't/understand/fully)

8. A: Where were Mark and Diana born?

B: They \_\_\_\_\_ in Manchester. (both/ were/ born)

9. A: Did the computers crash this morning?

B: Yes, but they \_\_\_\_\_ again. (soon/ were/ working)



10. A: Have you been to this place before?

B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ as a child. (it/ occasionally/ visited)

11. A: I saw Jane crossing the street hurriedly this morning.

B: Well, she \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning because she gets up so late. (has/ always/hurry)

12. A: Could you come to the party tonight?

B: I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ able to come. (probably/ be/ won't)

13. A: Your friend's late, Vicky.

B: Rachel \_\_\_\_\_ that we arranged to out. (forgotten/ has/ obviously)

14. A: It is quiet here today, isn't it?

B: Yes, the neighbors \_\_\_\_\_ out on a Sunday. (usually/are)

15. A: Was the final exam difficult?

B: No. It was \_\_\_\_\_. (easy/ surprisingly)

**IV. Put the words in the right order and write the statements:**

1. cleaned/ every day/is/ the office.

The office is cleaned every day.

2. afford/ can't/ certainly/ a new car/ we

\_\_\_\_\_.

3. Tom/ carefully/ cut/ the paper.

\_\_\_\_\_.

4. didn't/ far/ the tourists/ walk.

\_\_\_\_\_.

5. for a long time/ have lived/ in the same house/ they.

\_\_\_\_\_.

6. I/ been/ recently/ to the cinema/ haven't.

\_\_\_\_\_.

7. to the bank/ goes/ every Friday/ Mrs Brown.

\_\_\_\_\_.

8. last year/ saw/ Mrs Michael/occasionally/John/ in the supermarket.

\_\_\_\_\_.

9. the Queen/ since 1985/ the show/ has visited/ regularly.

\_\_\_\_\_.

10. to Greek/ the Prime Minister/ last year/ went.

---

11. didn't see/ you/I/ on Saturday night/ at the party.

---

12. yesterday/ the protesters/ marched/ through the streets

---

13. they/ at the theater/ arrived/ late/ last night

---

14. obviously/ Olga/ hard/ studying/ recently/ has/ been

---

15. safely/ landed/ they/ fortunately/ on a small airfield.

---

**V. Look at the information in the first sentences and put in the adverbs.  
Be careful with the spelling:**

1. Emma's toothache was terrible. Her tooth ached terribly.
2. Henry was angry. He shouted \_\_\_\_\_ at the waiter.
3. I'm happy sitting here. I can sit here \_\_\_\_\_ for hours.
4. The machine is automatic. It switches itself off \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The debate should be public. We need to debate the matter \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Everyone was enthusiastic. Everyone discussed the idea \_\_\_\_\_.
7. We should be reasonable. Can't we discuss the problem \_\_\_\_\_?
8. The building has to be secure. Did you lock all the doors \_\_\_\_\_?
9. Nobody expected George was coming to see us. He arrived \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Tom is good at English. He speaks English very \_\_\_\_\_.

**VI. Adverb or adjective? Choose the correct forms:**

A. I had a (1) strange/ strangely dream last night. I was in a garden. It was getting (2) dark/ darkly, and it was (3) terrible/ terribly cold. My head was aching (4) bad/ badly. I was walking out of the garden when (5) sudden/ suddenly I saw a man. He was sitting (6) quiet/ quietly on a seat. He seemed very (7) unhappy/ unhappily. He looked up and smiled (8) sad/ sadly at me. I don't know why, but I felt (9) curious/ curiously about him. I want to talk to him, but I couldn't think what to say. I just stood there (10) foolish/ foolishly.

---

B. Well, here I am in England. Thank you for your (1) kind/ kindly letter. You ask me what it's like here. I must say it's pretty (2) good/ well! The language school is very (3) efficient/ efficiently organised. On the first morning we had to do a test, which I found rather (4) hard/ hardly. However I got a (5) surprising/ surprisingly good mark, so I'm in the second class. I didn't talk much at first, because I couldn't think of the words (6) quick/ quickly enough, but (7) late/ lately I've become much more (8) fluent/ fluently. I'm staying with a family who live (9) near/ nearly the school. They are quite (10) pleasant/ pleasantly although I don't see them much because I'm always so (11) busy/ busily with my friends from school. I was surprised how (12) easy/ easily I made new friends here. They come from (13) different/ differently parts of the world and we have some (14) absolute/ absolutely fascinating discussions. I do hope you will be able to join me here next term. I'm sure we'd have (15) good/ well fun together. Aren't you impressed at how (16) accurate/ accurately my English is now?

**VII. Complete each sentence using a word from the list. Sometimes you need the adjective and sometimes the adverb:**

careful(ly)	happy/ happily	complete(ly)	nervous(ly)
fluent(ly)	continuous(ly)	perfect(ly)	financial(ly)
quick(ly)	special(ly)		

1. Our holiday was too short. The time passed very \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Tom doesn't take risks when he's driving. He's always \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Sue works \_\_\_\_\_. She never seems to stop.
4. Alice and Stan are very \_\_\_\_\_ married.
5. Monica's English is very \_\_\_\_\_ although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
6. I cooked this meal \_\_\_\_\_ for you, so I hope you like it.
7. Everything was very quiet. There was \_\_\_\_\_ silence.
8. I tried on the shoes and they fitted me \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Do you usually feel \_\_\_\_\_ before examinations?
10. I'd like to buy a car but it's \_\_\_\_\_ impossible for me at the moment.

**VIII. Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct the ones that are wrong.**

1. I tried hard but I didn't succeed. .....right.....
2. I've got hard any money left. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Luckily I found a phone box quite nearly. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Don't walk so fast. I can't keep up with you. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Natasha plays the violin very good. \_\_\_\_\_
6. How are you? Are you well? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Why are you walking so slow? \_\_\_\_\_
8. I've been very busy lately. \_\_\_\_\_
9. We played really bad in our tennis match. \_\_\_\_\_
10. They got into the concert freely. \_\_\_\_\_
11. We nearly missed the bus this morning. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Last night we went to bed lately. \_\_\_\_\_
13. The plane flew highly above the clouds. \_\_\_\_\_
14. The animals are allowed to wander freely. \_\_\_\_\_
15. This coat is practically unused. I've hard worn it. \_\_\_\_\_

**IX. Choose the correct word or phrase:**

1. I'm getting quite hungry/ hungrily.
2. We could walk free/ freely around the aircraft.
3. She went to bed late/ lately, and she was sleeping bad/ badly.
4. The man looked thoughtful/ thoughtfully around the room.
5. The young/ The young man with dark hair is my sister's boyfriend.
6. I'm sure you could win the match if you tried hard/ hardly.
7. They performed the experiment scientifically/ scientificly.
8. Mom called and said she'd be home soon/ soonly.
9. We became sick/ sickly after eating the contaminated food.
10. I think Egypt is a fascinated/ fascinating country.
11. He drove as fast/ fastly as he could to the hospital.
12. I'll happy/ happily make dinner if you want me to.
13. What's wrong? You look terrible/ terribly.

14. It wasn't a serious accident. The car was only slight/ slightly damaged.
15. Please keep quiet/ quietly! The baby is sleeping.
16. They hard/ hardly know each other.
17. The noise in the school makes learning difficult/ difficulty.
18. She invented a new kind of wheelchair for the disabled/the disabled people.
19. She fell and hurt herself quite bad/ badly.
20. Linda likes wearing colourful/ colourfully clothes.
21. I think you behaved very selfish/ selfishly.
22. Don't go up the ladder. It doesn't look safe/ safely.
23. I tried hard/ hardly to remember her name but I couldn't.
24. I'm very confused/ confusing about what to do.
25. Rachel arrived late/ lately, as usual.
26. Why are you walking so slow/ slowly? Are you tired?
27. The medicine tastes awful/ awfully.
28. It's a reasonable/ reasonably cheap restaurant and the food is extremely good/ well.
29. I'm pleased the plan worked so good/ goodly/ well.
30. The hostages must be very afraid/ frightened people.

**X. Write the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first:**

1. She has rarely travelled more than fifty miles from her village.  
Rarely has she travelled more than fifty miles from her village.
2. He only thought about having a holiday abroad after he retired.  
Not until he retired \_\_\_\_\_
3. He had just started driving his new car when he had an accident.  
Hardly \_\_\_\_\_
4. I only realized how dangerous the situation had been when I got home.  
Only when I got home \_\_\_\_\_
5. He no longer plays in an orchestra.  
No longer \_\_\_\_\_
6. He would never be allowed to set foot in their house again.  
Never again \_\_\_\_\_

7. The designs are seldom reproduced exactly as illustrated.  
Seldom \_\_\_\_\_
8. Miss Rose will not be offered the job under any circumstances.  
Under no circumstances \_\_\_\_\_
9. I have never heard such nonsense in all my life!  
Never in all my life \_\_\_\_\_
10. We had only just walked in the door when the phone rang.  
No sooner \_\_\_\_\_
11. A doctor should never break his confidence on any account.  
On no account \_\_\_\_\_
12. Tom was not only late, but he had left all his books behind.  
Not only \_\_\_\_\_
13. If you should need any help, just call.  
Should \_\_\_\_\_
14. A small stream ran at the end of the village.  
At the end of the village \_\_\_\_\_
15. I was never shown how to operate the machine.  
At no time \_\_\_\_\_

# ĐỘNG TỪ (VERBS)

## I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (DEFINITION):

Động từ (verbs) là từ hoặc cụm từ được dùng để diễn tả hành động (action) hoặc trạng thái (state).

## II. CÁC LOẠI ĐỘNG TỪ (KINDS OF VERBS):

Dựa trên các tiêu chí khác nhau, động từ có thể được phân thành nhiều loại:

### 1. Ngoại động từ và nội động từ (transitive and intransitive verbs):

#### 1.1 Ngoại động từ

(transitive verbs) diễn tả hành động tác động trực tiếp lên người nào đó hoặc vật nào đó; nói cách khác, ngoại động từ là động từ thường được theo sau bởi danh từ hoặc đại từ làm tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object).

Eg: Let's **invite** Sally. (*Chúng ta hãy mời Sally đi.*) [NOT ~~let's invite~~]

You **surprised** me. (*Anh làm tôi ngạc nhiên.*) [NOT ~~you surprised~~]

Động từ *invite* và *surprise* sẽ không đủ nghĩa nếu không có danh từ **Sally** và đại từ **me** làm tân ngữ.

#### 1.2 Nội động từ

(intransitive verbs) diễn tả hành động dừng lại ở người nói hoặc người thực hiện hành động đó; nói cách khác, nội động từ là động từ không cần có tân ngữ trực tiếp (danh từ hoặc đại từ) theo sau.

Eg: Do **sit** down. (*Hãy ngồi xuống.*)

The children are **playing**. (*Bọn trẻ đang chơi đùa.*)



Động từ *sit* và *play* không cần có tân ngữ trực tiếp cũng đã đủ nghĩa.

#### \* Lưu ý:

- Nhiều động từ có thể vừa là ngoại động từ vừa là nội động từ (nghĩa của chúng có thể thay đổi)

Eg: We **lost**. (*Chúng tôi đã thua.*)

We **lost** the match. (*Chúng tôi đã thua trận đấu.*)

He **ran** as fast as he could. (*Anh ta chạy nhanh hết sức.*)

He has no idea how to **run** a business. (*Anh ấy không biết cách quản lý một doanh nghiệp.*)

They **grow** flowers in the garden. (*Họ trồng hoa trong vườn.*)

Flowers **grow** in the garden. (*Hoa mọc trong vườn.*)

- Ngoại động từ có thể có 2 tân ngữ: tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) và tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object).

Eg: My friend has just sent **me a postcard**. Or: My friend has just sent **a postcard to me**. [direct object: postcard; indirect object: me]

- Tân ngữ theo sau nội động từ thường là tân ngữ của giới từ (prepositional object) chứ không phải là tân ngữ trực tiếp của động từ.

Eg: We walked **across the fields**. (*Chúng tôi đi ngang qua cánh đồng.*)

[NOT ~~we walk the fields~~]

Let's talk **about your plan**. (*Chúng ta hãy nói về kế hoạch của anh đi.*)

[NOT: ~~let's talk your plan~~]

- Một số ngoại động từ có thể được theo sau bởi một tân ngữ và một bổ ngữ của tân ngữ (verb + object + object complement). Bổ ngữ của tân ngữ thường là tính từ, danh từ hoặc danh ngữ.

Eg: I find **her attitude strange**. (*Tôi thấy thái độ của cô ta rất lạ.*)

They elected **him president**. (*Họ bầu ông ấy làm chủ tịch.*)

That boy regards **Bill as his father**. (*Cậu bé đó xem Bill như cha.*)

## 2. Động từ có quy tắc và động từ bất quy tắc (regular and irregular verbs):

2.1. Động từ có quy tắc (regular verbs) là động từ có hình thức quá khứ đơn (simple past) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle) được thành lập bằng cách thêm *-ed* vào động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitive).

Eg: <u>infinitive</u>	<u>past</u>	<u>past participle</u>
work (làm việc)	worked	worked
invite (mời)	invited	invited
study (học)	studied	studied
beg (van xin)	begged	begged



**2.2. Động từ bất quy tắc (irregular verbs)** là động từ có hình thức quá khứ đơn (simple past) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle) được thành lập không theo quy tắc nhất định nào. Hình thức quá khứ đơn và quá khứ phân từ của các động từ này nằm trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc (người học phải học thuộc lòng bảng động từ bất quy tắc).

Eg: <u>infinitive</u>	<u>past</u>	<u>past participle</u>
be (thì, là, ở)	was/were	been
see (nhìn, thấy)	saw	seen
teach (dạy)	taught	taught
give (cho)	gave	given

### 3. Trợ động từ và động từ thường (auxiliary and ordinary verbs):

#### 3.1. Trợ động từ (auxiliary verbs):

Trợ động từ là các động từ đặc biệt (special verbs) *be, have, do, can, may, must, ought, shall, will, need, dare, used* được chia thành 2 nhóm: trợ động từ chính (principal auxiliary verbs) và trợ động từ tình thái (modal auxiliary verbs).

a. Trợ động từ chính (principal auxiliary verbs) gồm *be, do, have*, được dùng với động từ khác để chỉ thì, thể, và để thành lập câu hỏi hoặc câu phủ định.

infinitive	present tense	past tense	past participle
to be	am, is, are	was, were	been
to do	do, does	did	done
to have	have, has	had	had

- **Be** được thêm vào động từ khác để tạo thành thể tiếp diễn hoặc bị động.

Eg: The children **are** playing in the yard. (*Bọn trẻ đang chơi trong sân.*)

He **was** imprisoned for three years. (*Ông ta bị bỏ tù 3 năm.*)

- **Do** được dùng để thành lập câu hỏi, câu phủ định và dạng nhấn mạnh của các động từ không có trợ động từ.

Eg: **Do** you smoke? (*Anh có hút thuốc không?*)

I **didn't** see them. (*Tôi không thấy họ.*)

She **does** like you. (*Cô ấy rất mến anh.*)

• **Have** được dùng để tạo thể hoàn thành.

Ex: We **have** lived here for a long time. (*Chúng tôi đã sống ở đây lâu rồi.*)

I realized that I **had** met him before.

(*Tôi nhận ra rằng trước đây tôi đã gặp anh ta.*)

\* Lưu ý: *be, do, have* cũng có thể được dùng như động từ thường (ordinary verbs).

Eg: He **is** lazy. (*Anh ta lười biếng*)

He **does** nothing. (*Anh ta chẳng làm gì cả.*)

He **has** no job. (*Anh ta không có việc làm.*)



b. Trợ động từ tình thái (modal auxiliary verbs) gồm *can, could, may, might, must, ought, had better, will, would, shall, should*, được dùng trước hình thức nguyên thể (bare-infinitive) của động từ khác để chỉ khả năng, sự chắc chắn, sự cho phép, nghĩa vụ v.v. Trợ động từ tình thái có những nét văn phạm sau:

- Ngôi thứ 3 số ít không có *-s*.

Eg: She **can** swim. (*Cô ấy biết bơi.*) [NOT she ~~can~~s...]

- Không dùng trợ động từ *do* trong câu hỏi, câu phủ định, câu hỏi đuôi và câu trả lời ngắn.

Eg: **Can** you speak French? (*Anh có biết nói tiếng Pháp không?*)

[NOT ~~do you can~~ speak...]

You **shouldn't** tell lies. (*Bạn không nên nói dối.*)

[NOT ~~you don't should~~ tell...]

- Động từ theo sau các trợ động từ tình thái (ngoại trừ *ought*) luôn ở nguyên mẫu không *to* (bare-infinitive)

Eg: I **must** water flowers. (*Tôi phải tưới hoa.*)

[NOT I ~~must to~~ water...]

You **should** drive more carefully. (*Anh nên lái xe cẩn thận hơn.*)

[BUT you **ought to drive** more carefully]

- Không có hình thức nguyên thể (~~to-can~~) và hình thức phân từ (~~maying; musted~~). Khi cần ta phải dùng những từ khác để thay thế.

Eg: I'd like **to be able to** stay here. (Tôi muốn là mình có thể ở lại đây.)

[NOT ...~~to-can-stay~~...]

She's going **to have to** leave soon. (Chẳng bao lâu nữa cô ta sẽ phải ra đi.)

[NOT ...~~to-must-leave~~...]

• **CAN** (có thể): can có hình thức phủ định là *cannot (can't)* và dạng quá khứ là *could*. *Can* được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Khả năng ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai – nói rằng điều gì đó có thể xảy ra hoặc người nào đó có khả năng hoặc cơ hội để làm việc gì.

Eg: I haven't got time today, but I **can** see you tomorrow.

(*Hôm nay tôi không có thời gian, nhưng ngày mai tôi có thể gặp anh.*)

Scotland **can** be very warm in September.

(*Vào tháng 9 Scotland có thể rất ấm.*)

They **can** speak English. (*Họ biết nói tiếng Anh.*)

- Sự xin phép và cho phép; *can't* được dùng để từ chối lời xin phép.

Eg: **Can** I use your phone? (*Tôi dùng điện thoại của anh có được không?*)

- Yes, of course you **can**. / No, I'm afraid you **can't**.

(*Vâng, tất nhiên là được/ không, không được.*)

You **can** take the car if you want. (*Nếu muốn anh có thể lấy ô tô mà đi.*)

You **can't** sit there. Those seats are reserved.

(*Anh không được ngồi ở đó. Những chỗ ngồi đó đã được đặt trước rồi.*)

- Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị hoặc gợi ý.

Eg: **Can** you wait a moment, please?

(*Xin vui lòng đợi một lát nhé*) -> yêu cầu (*request*)

**Can** I carry your bag? (*Tôi xách túi giúp bạn nhé?*) -> đề nghị (*offer*)

Let's have lunch together. We **can** go to that new restaurant.

(*Chúng ta cùng ăn trưa đi. Chúng ta có thể đến nhà hàng mới đó.*) -> gợi ý

(*suggestion*)

- Chúng ta có thể dùng *can't* để nói rằng chúng ta chắc chắn điều gì đó không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại.

Eg: Harry **can't** know how to ride a bike; He's never been on one.

(*Harry không thể nào biết đi xe đạp; Anh ấy chưa bao giờ đi xe đạp.*)

• **COULD** (có thể): *could* có hình thức phủ định là *could not (couldn't)*.  
*Could* vừa là hình thức quá khứ của *can* vừa là trợ động từ tình thái.

- *Could* là hình thức quá khứ của *can*, được dùng để diễn đạt khả năng ở quá khứ.  
Eg: My sister **could** play piano when she was five.

(*Em gái tôi biết chơi dương cầm khi lên 5.*)

In those days we had a car, so we **could** travel very easily.

(*Đạo đó, chúng tôi có ô tô nên chúng tôi có thể đi lại rất dễ dàng.*)

It was a place where anything **could** happen.

(*Đó là nơi mà bất cứ điều gì cũng có thể xảy ra.*)

- *Could* là trợ động từ tình thái, được dùng để diễn đạt:

+ Điều gì đó có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai, nhưng không chắc chắn.

Eg: The phone is ringing. It **could** be Tim.

(*Chuông điện thoại đang kêu. Có lẽ là Tim.*)

The story **could** be true, I suppose.

(*Tôi cho là câu chuyện có thể có thật.*)

It **could** rain this afternoon. (*Có thể chiều nay trời sẽ mưa.*)

+ Sự xin phép; *could* lễ phép và trịnh trọng hơn *can*. Nhưng không dùng *could/couldn't* để diễn đạt sự cho phép hoặc từ chối lời xin phép.

Eg: **Could** I ask you something? (*Tôi có thể hỏi anh vài điều được không ạ?*)

- Yes, of course you **can**. (*Vâng, tất nhiên là được.*)

[NOT of course you could]

**Could** we camp here? (*Chúng tôi cắm trại ở đây được không ạ?*)

- I'm afraid you **can't** (*Tôi e là không được.*)

[NOT I'm afraid you couldn't]

+ Lời yêu cầu lịch sự (lịch sự và trang trọng hơn *can*) hoặc để đưa ra lời đề nghị, gợi ý.

Eg: **Could** you mail this letter for me?

(*Nhờ anh gửi giúp tôi lá thư này được không?*) -> yêu cầu (request)

We **could** write a letter to the headmaster.

(*Chúng ta có thể viết thư cho hiệu trưởng.*) -> gợi ý (suggestion)

### \* Lưu ý:

- *Can* và *could* thường được dùng với các động từ chỉ sự nhận thức hoặc tri giác như: *see, smell, feel, hear, taste, understand, remember*, để diễn đạt sự việc (nghe, thấy, ngửi, hiểu...) ở một thời điểm cụ thể nào đó.

Eg: I **can** see Susan coming.

(Tôi nhìn thấy Susan đang đi đến.) [NOT I'm seeing]

When I went into the house, I **could** smell burning.

(Khi vào nhà, tôi ngửi thấy mùi khét.) [NOT I-was smelling]

- *Be able to* có thể được dùng thay cho *can* và *could*.

+ *am/ is/ are able to* có thể được dùng để chỉ khả năng thay cho *can*, hoặc được dùng thay cho *can* ở thì tương lai (*will be able to*), thì hoàn thành (*have been able to*) và dạng nguyên mẫu (*to be able to*).

Eg: I **can/ am able to** run very fast. (Tôi có thể chạy rất nhanh.)

A hundred year from now people **will be able to** visit Mars.

(Một trăm năm nữa con người sẽ có thể tham quan sao hỏa.)

I **haven't been able to** sleep recently. (Gần đây tôi không thể ngủ được)

It's nice **to be able to** go to the opera.

(Thật là thú vị khi được đi xem nhạc kịch.)

+ *Was/ were able to* có thể được dùng thay cho *could* để chỉ khả năng hoặc cơ hội trong quá khứ.

Eg: She **could/ was able to** read when she was four.

(Cô ấy biết đọc khi cô ấy 4 tuổi.)

Nhưng khi nói về sự việc đã xảy ra trong một tình huống đặc biệt, hoặc người nào đó đã cố xoay sở để thực hiện được việc gì, chúng ta dùng *was/ were able to* (= managed to) chứ không dùng *could*.

Eg: The plane **was able to** take off at 11 o'clock, after the fog had lifted.

(Máy bay đã có thể cất cánh lúc 11 giờ, sau khi sương mù tan.)

[NOT the plane could take off]

The fire spread through the building quickly but we all **were able to** escape.

(Lửa lan nhanh khắp tòa nhà nhưng tất cả chúng tôi đều thoát ra được.)

[NOT ...we all could escape]

• **MAY và MIGHT** (có thể, có lẽ): *may* có hình thức phủ định là *may not* (dạng tình lược *mayn't* rất ít được sử dụng); *might* có hình thức phủ định là *might not* (*mightn't*).

- *May* và *might* được dùng để diễn đạt điều gì đó có thể là thật hoặc có khả năng xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ex. It **may/ might** be a bomb. (Có thể đó là 1 quả bom.)

Where is Emma? – I don't know. She **may/ might** be out shopping.

(Emma đâu? – Tôi không biết. Có lẽ cô ấy đi mua sắm.)

Ann **may not/ might not** come to the party tonight. She isn't well.

(Tối nay có thể Ann sẽ không dự tiệc. Cô ấy không được khỏe.)

Trong trường hợp này *might* không được dùng như dạng quá khứ của *may*. Cả *may* và *might* đều được dùng để nói về hiện tại hoặc tương lai. Nhưng *might* ít khẳng định hơn *may*.

Ex: **I may** go to London next month. (*Tháng tới có thể tôi sẽ đi London*)

[cơ hội 50%]

My family **might** come with me. (*Có thể gia đình tôi sẽ đi cùng tôi*)

[cơ hội 30%]

- *May/might + be + V-ing*: diễn đạt điều gì đó có thể đang diễn ra trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ex: Malcolm isn't in his office. He **may/might be working** at home today.

(*Malcolm không có ở văn phòng. Hôm nay có lẽ anh ấy đang làm việc ở nhà.*)

John **may/might be waiting** at the station when we arrive.

(*Khi chúng ta đến có thể John đang đợi ở ga.*)

- *May* và *might* được dùng để xin phép. *May* và *might* có tính chất trang trọng, lễ phép hơn *can* và *could*. *Might* ít được dùng trong văn nói, chủ yếu được dùng trong cấu trúc câu hỏi gián tiếp.

Ex: **May I** put the TV on? (*Tôi mở ti vi được không?*)

I wonder if I **might** have a little more cheese.

(*Tôi muốn biết liệu tôi có thể dùng thêm một chút phô mát nữa được không?*)

[rất trịnh trọng, nhưng nghe tự nhiên hơn **Might I** have...]

- *May* được dùng để chỉ sự cho phép; *may not* được dùng để từ chối lời xin phép hoặc chỉ sự cảm đoán.

Eg: **May/might I** borrow the car? (*Tôi có thể mượn xe được không?*)

- Yes, of course you **may**./ No, I'm afraid you **may not**.

(*Dĩ nhiên là được/ Không, tôi e là không được.*)

Students **may not** use the staff car park.

(*Sinh viên không được dùng bãi đậu xe của cán bộ nhà trường.*)

- *May* được dùng trong những lời cầu trúc trang trọng (không dùng *might*)

Ex: **May** you both be very happy! (*Chúc hai bạn hạnh phúc!*)

**May** the New Year bring you all your heart desires.

(*Chúc bạn năm mới vạn sự như ý.*)

**Lưu ý:** Không dùng *may* trong câu hỏi trực tiếp để diễn đạt khả năng có thể xảy ra điều gì nhưng có thể dùng *may* trong câu hỏi gián tiếp.

Ex: Are you likely to go camping this summer?

(*Bạn có đi cắm trại vào mùa hè này không?*)

[NOT **May you go camping...**]

Do you think you **may** go camping this summer?

(*Bạn có nghĩ là mùa hè này bạn sẽ đi cắm trại không?*)

• **MUST** (phải): *must* có hình thức phủ định là *must not (mustn't)*. *Must* được dùng để:

- Diễn đạt sự cần thiết, hoặc sự bắt buộc ở hiện tại và tương lai.

Eg: Plants **must** get enough light and water.

(*Cây cần phải có đủ ánh sáng và nước*) -> *sự cần thiết (necessary)*

I haven't phoned Ann for ages. I **must** phone her tonight.

(*Lâu rồi tôi không gọi điện cho Ann. Tối nay tôi phải gọi cho cô ấy.*)

You **must** get up earlier in the morning.

(*Buổi sáng con phải dậy sớm hơn.*) -> *obligation (sự bắt buộc)*

- Đưa ra lời khuyên hoặc lời yêu cầu được nhấn mạnh.

Eg: She's a really nice girl. You **must** meet her.

(*Cô ấy thật sự là một cô gái tốt. Anh nên gặp cô ấy.*)

You **must** be here before 8 o'clock tomorrow.

(*Ngày mai bạn phải có mặt ở đây trước 8 giờ sáng.*)

- Đưa ra một suy luận hợp lý và chắc chắn.

Eg: You **must** be hungry after a long walk.

(*Sau chuyến đi bộ dài chắc là anh đói bụng.*)

John's lights are out. He **must** be asleep.

(*Đèn nhà John tắt. Chắc là anh ấy đang ngủ.*)

- *Must not/ mustn't* được dùng để chỉ sự cấm đoán – nói rằng điều gì không nên làm, hoặc bảo ai không được làm điều gì.

Ex: Look, double yellow lines. We **mustn't** park here.

(*Nhìn kìa, hai vạch vàng. Chúng ta không được đỗ xe ở đây.*)

You **must** keep it a secret, you **mustn't** tell anyone.

(*Bạn phải giữ kín chuyện đó, bạn không được nói với bất cứ ai.*)

You **mustn't** use the office phone for private calls.

(*Bạn không được dùng điện thoại công ty vào việc riêng.*)

• **HAVE TO** (phải): được dùng để diễn đạt sự cần thiết, hoặc sự bắt buộc.

- *Have to* có thể được dùng tương đương với *must* để diễn đạt sự cần thiết.

Eg: I **have to/ must** go to the hairdresser's soon.

(*Tôi phải đi ngay tới tiệm cắt tóc.*)

Tomato plants **have to/ must** be watered regularly.

(*Cây cà chua cần được tưới nước thường xuyên.*)

- *Have to* được dùng thay cho *must* trong các trường hợp không thể dùng *must*: thì tương lai, thì tiếp diễn, thì quá khứ, thì hiện tại hoàn thành, dạng nguyên thể, danh động từ, và sau các động từ tình thái.

Eg: You can borrow my car, but you **'ll have to** bring it back before ten.

(Anh có thể mượn xe của tôi, nhưng anh phải trả xe trước 10 giờ.)

[NOT you will must bring...]

I **'m having to** read this contract very carefully.

(Tôi đang phải đọc thật kỹ hợp đồng này.)

Emma **had to** go to the dentist yesterday.

(Hôm qua Emma phải đi nha sỹ) [NOT Emma must go...]

Mark **has had to** drive all the way to Glasgow.

(Mark đã phải lái xe suốt quãng đường đến Glasgow.)

[NOT Mark has must drive...]

I don't want **to have to** wait for ages. (Tôi không thích phải đợi quá lâu.)

[NOT I don't want to must wait...]

No one likes **having to** pay taxes. (Không ai thích phải nộp thuế.)

Ann has a headache. She **might have to** take an aspirin.

(Ann bị đau đầu. Có lẽ cô ấy phải uống một viên aspirin.)

- Trợ động từ *do* được dùng với *have to* trong câu hỏi và câu phủ định.

Eg: I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to** get up early.

(Ngày mai tôi không đi làm, vì vậy tôi không phải thức dậy sớm.)

When **does** Ann **have to** go? (Khi nào Ann phải đi?)

**Did** you **have to** pay for your second cup of coffee?

(Bạn có phải trả tiền tách cà phê thứ 2 không?)

**\* Lưu ý:** Cả *must* và *have to* đều được dùng để diễn đạt sự cần thiết phải thực hiện điều gì đó.

Eg: All applicants **must/ have to** take an entrance exam.

(Tất cả các ứng viên phải qua kỳ thi sát hạch.)

Tuy nhiên có sự khác nhau giữa *must* và *have to* và điều này đôi khi rất quan trọng.

- *Must* được dùng để diễn đạt sự bắt buộc đến từ phía người nói (cảm xúc và mong ước của người nói). *Have to* được dùng để diễn đạt sự bắt buộc do tình thế hoặc do sự kiện bên ngoài (như nội quy, luật pháp, qui định, mệnh lệnh của ai...)

Eg: I really **must** stop smoking.

(Thật sự tôi phải bỏ hút thuốc thôi.) [tôi muốn bỏ]



I **have to** stop smoking. Doctor's order.

(Tôi phải bỏ hút thuốc thôi. Lệnh bác sỹ đây.)

We **must** invite Claire. She's wonderful company.

(Chúng ta phải mời Claire. Cô ấy là một người bạn tuyệt vời.)

We **have to** invite Trevor and Laura. They invited us last time.

(Chúng ta phải mời Trevor và Laura. Lần trước họ đã mời chúng ta.)

You can't turn right here. You **have to** turn left.

(Anh không thể rẽ phải ở đây. Anh phải rẽ trái.)

[do hệ thống giao thông quy định]

- *Must not/ mustn't* chỉ sự cấm đoán; *do not have to/ don't have to* (= don't need to) chỉ sự không cần thiết.

Eg: Car **musn't** park in front of the entrance.

(Xe hơi không được đậu trước lối ra vào.)

You **don't have to** wash those glasses. They're clean.

(Bạn không phải rửa những cái ly đó. Chúng sạch mà.)

[you don't need to...]

You **mustn't** wear your new dress. You'll get them dirty.

(Con không được mặc áo đầm mới. Con sẽ làm dơ áo.)

Mark **doesn't have to** finish the report today. He can do it at the weekend.

(Hôm nay Mark không cần phải hoàn thành bản báo cáo. Anh ấy có thể làm nó vào cuối tuần.) [Mark doesn't need to...]

• **WILL** (sẽ): *will* ('ll) có hình thức phủ định là *will not* (*won't*) và có dạng quá khứ là *would*. *Will* được dùng để:

- Diễn đạt hoặc dự đoán sự việc, tình huống sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Eg: She **ll** be here in a few minutes. (Vài phút nữa cô ta sẽ có mặt ở đây.)

Tom **won't** pas the examination. He hasn't worked hard enough for it.

(Tom sẽ không thi đậu cho mà xem. Anh ta học thì không mấy chăm chỉ.)

Tomorrow **will** be warmer. (Ngày mai trời sẽ ấm hơn.)

- Dự đoán về hiện tại.

Eg: Don't phone to the office. He **ll** be home by this time.

(Đừng gọi đến văn phòng. Giờ này chắc là anh ấy ở nhà.)

- Đưa ra một quyết định ngay lúc đang nói.

Eg: Did you phone Ruth? – Oh no, I forgot. I **ll** phone her now.

(Anh đã gọi cho Ruth chưa? – Ôi chưa, tôi quên mất. Bây giờ tôi sẽ gọi cho cô ấy.)

- Chỉ sự sẵn lòng, sự quyết tâm.

Eg: He'll take you home if you want.

(Nếu bạn muốn anh ấy sẽ đưa bạn về nhà.)

I'll stop smoking! I really will!

(Tôi sẽ bỏ hút thuốc! nhất định tôi sẽ bỏ!)

- Diễn đạt lời đe dọa, lời hứa.

Eg: I'll hit you if you do that again. (Tao sẽ đánh mày nếu mày làm thế nữa.)

I won't tell anyone what happened, I promise.

(Tôi hứa là tôi sẽ không nói với bất cứ ai chuyện đã xảy ra.)

➤ I will được dùng để đưa ra lời đề nghị; You will được dùng để ra lệnh.

Eg: I'll peel the potatoes. – Oh, thank you.

(Tôi gọt vỏ khoai tây nhé. – Ồ, cảm ơn.)

You will carry out these instructions.

(Anh phải làm theo những chỉ dẫn này.)

➤ Will you...please? Được dùng để yêu cầu một cách lịch sự.

Eg: Will you post the letter for me, please?

(Anh vui lòng gửi giúp tôi lá thư nhé?)

[= Will you please post the letter for me?]

Will you (please) come in? (Mời anh vào.)

➤ Will/won't you...? Được dùng để diễn đạt lời đề nghị hoặc lời mời.

Eg: Will you have a cup of coffee? (Anh dùng một tách cà phê nhé?)

Won't you stay for lunch? (Anh ở lại dùng cơm trưa nhé?)

• **WOULD** (sẽ): would ('d) có hình thức phủ định là would not (wouldn't)

- Would là dạng quá khứ của will trong lối nói gián tiếp. Would được dùng sau động từ tường thuật ở quá khứ sau câu gián tiếp.

Eg: He said he would phone me on Sunday.

(Anh ấy nói chủ nhật sẽ gọi cho tôi.)

Ann promised that she wouldn't be late.

(Ann đã hứa là cô ấy sẽ không đến trễ.)

- Would được dùng để diễn tả một giả định ở quá khứ hay dự đoán về một tình huống có thể xảy ra.

Eg: At midnight Sarah was still working. She would be tired the next day.

(Lúc nửa đêm Sarah vẫn còn làm việc. Ngày hôm sau chắc là cô ấy sẽ bị mệt.)

It **would** be fun to have a beach party.

(Tổ chức một bữa tiệc ở bãi biển chắc là sẽ rất vui.)



- *Would* được dùng để chỉ một thói quen trong quá khứ.

Eg: On the winter evenings, we **would** all sit around the fire.

(Vào những tối mùa đông, tất cả chúng tôi thường ngồi quây quần quanh đống lửa.)

When I was a child, I **would** sing folk songs.

(Khi còn nhỏ tôi thường hát dân ca.)

- *Would* được dùng trong lời yêu cầu, lời đề nghị lịch sự. *Would* có tính trang trọng hơn *will*.

➤ *Would like/ love/ prefer...* + *to-infinitive* dùng để diễn đạt mong ước hoặc mong muốn một cách lịch sự (Lịch sự hơn dùng *want*).

Eg: I'd **like** to try on this jacket. (Tôi muốn mặc thử cái áo vét này.)

I'd **love** a cup of coffee. (Tôi muốn một tách cà phê.)

➤ *Would you like* + *to-infinitive/ noun...*? Được dùng để đưa ra lời đề nghị hoặc lời mời lịch sự.

Eg: **Would you like** to have lunch with us? – Yes, I'd love to. Thank you.

(Anh dùng cơm trưa với chúng tôi nhé? – Vâng, tôi rất thích. Cảm ơn.)

**Would you like** orange juice? (Bạn uống nước cam ép nhé.)

➤ *Would you...(please)?* Được dùng để yêu cầu một cách lịch sự.

Eg: **Would you pay** me in cash, **please**?

(Xin vui lòng thanh toán bằng tiền mặt.)

[= **would you please pay** me in cash?]

➤ *Would you mind* + *verb-ing...*? Được dùng để yêu cầu hoặc đề nghị một cách lịch sự.

Eg: **Would you mind** waiting outside? (Xin vui lòng đợi bên ngoài.)

➤ *Would rather = would prefer*: thích hơn

**Would rather + bare-infinitive**

**Would prefer + to-infinitive**

Eg: He'd **rather stay** at home and play video games.

(Anh ta thích ở nhà chơi trò chơi điện tử hơn.)

**Would you rather have** tea or coffee?

(Anh thích uống trà hay cà phê?)

I'd **prefer to spend** the weekend in the country.

(Tôi thích nghỉ cuối tuần ở vùng quê hơn.)



*Would rather + object + verb (past tense)*: muốn ai làm điều gì đó

Eg: I'd **rather you came** with us. (Tôi muốn bạn đi cùng chúng tôi.)

I'd **rather they didn't** tell anyone what I said.

(Tôi muốn họ đừng nói với ai những điều tôi đã nói.)

*Would rather...than = would prefer...rather than*

Eg: I'd **rather stay** at home tonight **than** go to the cinema.

(Tôi nay tôi thích ở nhà hơn là đi xem phim.)

Mark **would prefer to drive rather than take/ taking** the bus.

(Mark thích lái xe hơn đi xe buýt.)

- **SHALL** (sẽ): *shall ('ll)* chỉ được dùng cho ngôi thứ nhất (*I shall, we shall*). *Shall* có hình thức phủ định là *shall not (shan't)* và hình thức quá khứ là *should*.  
- *Shall* được dùng để diễn đạt hoặc dự đoán một sự việc hoặc tình huống sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Eg: We **shall** know the results next week.

(Tuần sau chúng ta sẽ biết được kết quả.) [or *We will know...*]

I **shall** be rich one day. (Một ngày nào đó tôi sẽ giàu.) [or *I will be...*]

\* **Lưu ý:** cả *will* và *shall* đều có thể dùng với ngôi thứ nhất (*I will/ shall, we will/ shall*) để chỉ tương lai. Tuy nhiên *will* được dùng phổ biến hơn *shall*. *Shall* không được dùng trong tiếng Anh của người Mỹ.

- *Shall* được dùng chủ yếu trong câu hỏi đề xin ý kiến hoặc lời khuyên.

Eg: **Where shall we** go this evening? (*Chiều nay chúng ta sẽ đi đâu?*)

I'm in terrible trouble. **What shall I** do?

(*Tôi đang gặp chuyện rất phiền phức. Tôi nên làm gì đây?*)

➤ *Shall I...?* dùng trong câu đề nghị

Eg: **Shall I** do the washing-up? (*Tôi rửa bát đĩa nhé?*)

[= Do you want me to do the washing-up?]

➤ *Shall we...?* Dùng trong câu gợi ý

Eg: **Shall we** go to the movies? – Good idea.

(*Chúng ta đi xem phim nhé? – Ý kiến hay đấy.*)

• **SHOULD** (sẽ, nên): *should* có hình thức phủ định là *should not (shouldn't)*

- *Should* (sẽ) là hình thức quá khứ của *shall*, được dùng trong câu tường thuật và trong cấu trúc 'tương lai ở quá khứ' (future in the past)

Eg: I told them we **should/ would** probably be late.

(*Tôi đã nói với họ có thể chúng tôi sẽ tới trễ.*)

If I had a free weekend, I **should/ would** go and see Liz.

(*Giá như cuối tuần tôi rảnh, tôi sẽ đi thăm Liz.*)

- *Should* (phải, nên) là động từ tình thái, được dùng để:

+ Chỉ sự bắt buộc hoặc bổn phận, nhưng nghĩa của *should* không mạnh bằng *must* (với *should* có thể có sự lựa chọn thực hiện hay không thực hiện, nhưng với *must* thì không có sự lựa chọn)

Eg: Applications **should** be sent before December 30<sup>th</sup>.

(*Đơn xin việc phải được gửi trước ngày 30 tháng 12.*)

You **shouldn't** drink and drive. (*Anh không được uống rượu rồi lái xe.*)

+ Đưa ra lời khuyên hoặc ý kiến

Eg: You **should** stop smoking. (*Anh nên bỏ hút thuốc.*)

Tom **shouldn't** drive so fast. It's very dangerous.

(*Tom không nên lái xe nhanh thế. Lái như vậy rất nguy hiểm.*)

I think the government **should** do more to help homeless people.

(*Tôi nghĩ rằng chính phủ nên làm nhiều việc hơn nữa để giúp những người vô gia cư.*)

I don't think you **should** work so hard.

(Tôi nghĩ rằng anh không nên làm việc cật lực như thế.)

+ Xin lời khuyên, ý kiến hoặc lời hướng dẫn.

Eg: **Should** we invite Susan to the party?

(Chúng ta có nên mời Susan tới dự tiệc không?)

What **should** I do now? (Giờ tôi nên làm gì đây?)

Do you think I **should** go and see the police?

(Bạn có nghĩ là tôi nên đi gặp cảnh sát không?)

+ Suy đoán hoặc kết luận điều gì đó có thể sẽ xảy ra (Người nói mong đợi điều đó xảy ra.)

Eg: We **should** arrive before dark. (Chắc là chúng ta sẽ đến trước lúc trời tối.)

[I expect that we will arrive before dark]

Ann has been studying hard for the exam, so she **should** pass.

(Ann đang ôn thi rất chăm, vì thế chắc là cô ấy sẽ thi đậu.)

• **UGHT** (nên): *ought* có hình thức phủ định là *ought not (oughtn't)*. Sau *ought* là động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive)

**Subject + ought + to-infinitive**

Eg: You **ought to tell** the truth. (Bạn nên nói sự thật.)

*Ought* được dùng tương tự như *should* để:

- Chỉ sự bắt buộc hoặc bổn phận. Nghĩa của *ought* tương tự như *should* và không mạnh bằng *must*.

Eg: We **ought to start** at once. (Chúng ta phải khởi hành ngay.)

They **oughtn't to let** their dog run on the road.

(Họ không được thả chó chạy rông ngoài đường.)

- Đưa ra lời khuyên hoặc kiến nghị.

Eg: You're not very well. Perhaps you **ought to see** a doctor.

(Bạn trông không được khỏe lắm. Có lẽ bạn nên đi khám bệnh.)

There **ought to be** traffic lights at this crossroads.

(Nên có đèn giao thông tại ngã tư này.)

It's a difficult problem. How **ought we to deal with** it?

(Đó là một vấn đề phức tạp. Chúng ta nên giải quyết như thế nào đây?)

- Dự đoán điều gì đó có thể xảy ra (Vì điều đó hợp logic hoặc thông thường)

Eg: The weather **ought to improve** after the weekend.

(Thời tiết chắc sẽ tốt hơn sau kỳ nghỉ cuối tuần.)

We're spending the winter in Miami. – That **ought** to be nice.

(Chúng tôi sẽ nghỉ đông ở Miami. – Chắc là sẽ thú vị lắm.)

• **HAD BETTER** (nên, tốt hơn): được dùng để đưa ra lời khuyên, hoặc bảo rằng người nào đó nên hoặc không nên làm điều gì trong một tình huống nào đó.

Eg: It's cold. The children **had better** wear their coat.

(Trời lạnh đấy. Bọn trẻ nên mặc áo khoác vào.)

The neighbors are complaining. We'd **better** turn the music down.

(Hàng xóm than phiền đấy. Tốt hơn là chúng ta nên vặn nhỏ nhạc.)

- **Had better** có hình thức phủ định là **had better not** và hình thức câu hỏi là **Had + S + better**.

Eg: You don't look very well. You'd **better not** go to work today.

(Trông bạn không được khỏe. Tốt hơn hết là hôm nay bạn không nên đi làm.)

**Had I better** leave now? (tôi có nên đi bây giờ không?)

[= **should I** leave now?]

\* **Lưu ý:** *had better* có nghĩa tương tự với *should*, nhưng không hoàn toàn giống nhau. *Had better* chỉ được dùng cho tình huống cụ thể, và có nghĩa mạnh hơn *should* và *ought* (người nói nhận thấy hành động đó là cần thiết và mong đợi hành động sẽ được thực hiện). *should* có thể được dùng trong tất cả các tình huống khi đưa ra ý kiến hay cho ai lời khuyên.

Eg: It's cold today. You **had better** wear a coat when you go out.

(Hôm nay trời lạnh quá. Tốt hơn là bạn nên mặc áo khoác khi ra ngoài.)

I think all the drivers **should** wear seat belts.

(Tôi cho là tất cả các tài xế nên thắt dây lưng an toàn.)

[NOT ...the drivers **had better** wear...]

### \* **Modal perfect:**

• *May/ might/ could have + past participle* được dùng để diễn đạt:

- Điều gì đó có thể đã xảy ra hoặc có thể đúng trong quá khứ.

Eg: You **may/ might have left** your wallet at home.

(Có thể bạn đã để ví ở nhà.) [= Perhaps you left it at home.]

Someone **could have stolen** your wallet. (Có thể người nào đó đã lấy cắp ví của bạn.) [= It's possible that someone stole it]

- Điều gì đó có thể xảy ra nhưng đã không xảy ra.

Eg: Why did you let him come home alone? He **might/ could have got** lost.

(Sao anh lại để nó đi về nhà một mình? Nó có thể bị lạc.)

→ But he didn't get lost.

- *May not/ mightn't have + past participle* được dùng để diễn đạt điều gì đó có thể đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Eg: I **may not/ mightn't have looked** the door.

(*Có lẽ tôi đã không khóa cửa.*)

- *Must have + past participle* được dùng để diễn đạt điều gì đó hầu như chắc chắn đã xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Eg: The phone rang but he didn't hear it. He **must have been** asleep.

(*Chuông điện thoại kêu nhưng anh ta không nghe. Chắc là anh ta đang ngủ.*)

I've lost one of my gloves. I **must have dropped** it somewhere.

(*Tôi bị mất một chiếc găng tay. Chắc là tôi đã đánh rơi nó ở đâu đó.*)

- *Should have + past participle* được dùng để diễn đạt một điều gì đó lẽ ra nên hoặc phải xảy ra nhưng đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ.

*Shouldn't have + past participle* được dùng để diễn đạt điều gì đó lẽ ra không nên xảy ra nhưng đã xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Eg: I **should have phoned** her this morning, but I forgot.

(*Lẽ ra sáng nay tôi phải gọi điện cho cô ấy, nhưng tôi quên mất.*)

You **shouldn't have called** him a fool. It really upset him.

(*Lẽ ra bạn không nên gọi anh ta là kẻ ngu xuẩn. Điều đó thực sự làm anh ta bực mình.*)

- *Ought (not) to have + past participle* được dùng tương tự như *should (not) have + past participle*.

Eg: It's disappointing. We **ought to/ should have won** the game easily.

(*Thật đáng thất vọng. Lẽ ra chúng tôi phải thắng trận đấu một cách dễ dàng.*)

[But we lost the game]

Ann is feeling sick. She **ought not to/ shouldn't have eaten** so much chocolate.

(*Ann cảm thấy buồn nôn. Lẽ ra cô ấy không nên ăn quá nhiều sô-cô-la như thế.*)

[But she ate too much chocolate.]

\* **Lưu ý:** Khi chúng ta hoàn toàn chắc chắn một điều gì đó là đúng thì chúng ta không cần dùng động từ tình thái. Nhưng chúng ta thường dùng động từ tình thái khi chúng ta đưa ra một suy luận về sự chắc chắn của một sự việc hoặc một sự kiện nào đó. Mức độ chắc chắn (degrees of certainty) được diễn đạt như sau:

- **Trong câu khẳng định** (positive sentences).

Why isn't John in class? (*Tại sao John nghỉ học?*)

100%                    He **is** sick. (*Anh ấy bị bệnh.*)

95%                     He **must** be sick. (*Chắc anh ấy bị bệnh.*)



Ít hơn 50% He **may/ might/ could** be sick. (Có thể anh ấy bị bệnh.)

- Trong câu phủ định (negative sentences).

Why doesn't Sam eat? (Tại sao Sam không ăn?)

100% Sam **isn't** hungry. (Sam không đói.)

99% Sam **can't/ couldn't** be hungry. He's just had dinner.  
(Sam không thể đói. Anh ấy vừa mới ăn tối xong.)

95% Sam **must not** be hungry. (Chắc là Sam không đói.)

Ít hơn 50% Sam **may not/ mightn't** be hungry. (Có lẽ Sam không đói.)

\* Mức độ chắc chắn ở quá khứ cũng được dùng tương tự như ở hiện tại.

\* Một số động từ vừa là trợ động từ tình thái (modal auxiliary verbs) vừa là động từ thường (ordinary verbs):

• **NEED** (cần, cần phải): dùng để diễn tả nhu cầu, sự cần thiết hoặc sự bắt buộc thực hiện điều gì đó.

- *Need* thường được dùng như một động từ thường (ordinary verb). Sau *need* là một động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* hoặc một danh từ.

**Need + to-infinitive/ noun**

Eg: She **needs** some warm clothes for the winter.

(Cô ấy cần một số quần áo ấm cho mùa đông.)

You **need to water** this plant twice a week.

(Anh cần phải tưới cây này hai lần một tuần.)

We've got plenty of time. We **don't need to** hurry.

(Chúng ta có nhiều thời gian. Chúng ta chẳng cần phải vội vã.)

**Do we need to** reserve seats on the train?

(Chúng ta có cần phải giữ chỗ trước trên xe lửa không?)

► *Need + verb-ing* có nghĩa bị động

Eg: This room **needs cleaning**.

(Căn phòng này cần được lau chùi.)

[= This room need to be cleaned.]

The batteries in the radio **need changing**.

(Cần phải thay pin trong radio.) [= They need to be changed.]

- *Need* cũng có thể được dùng như một trợ động từ tình thái (modal auxiliary verb); chủ yếu trong câu phủ định, câu hỏi, sau *if* và *whether* hoặc với các từ mang nghĩa phủ định *hardly*, *scarcely*, *never*, *only*, *nobody*, *anybody*, v.v. Sau *need* là động từ nguyên mẫu không *to*:

**Need + verb (infinitive without to)**

Eg: That shirt isn't dirty. **You needn't wash** it.

(Cái áo sơ mi đó không dơ. Anh không cần phải giặt.) [need not = needn't]

**Need I fill** in a form? (Tôi có cần phải điền vào đơn không?)

I wonder **if we need reserve** seats.

(Tôi tự hỏi không biết chúng tôi có cần đặt chỗ trước không?)

This is the only form you **need fill** in.

(Đây là mẫu đơn duy nhất mà bạn cần phải điền vào.)

➤ **Needn't have + past participle** được dùng để diễn đạt điều gì đó đã được thực hiện trong quá khứ, nhưng không cần thiết.

Eg: You **needn't have gone** to the supermarket. We already had a pizza for tonight.

(Anh đâu cần phải đi siêu thị làm gì. Tối nay chúng ta đã có bánh pizza rồi.)

Why did you wash that shirt? It wasn't dirty. You **needn't have washed** it.

(Sao em lại giặt cái áo đó? Nó đâu có dơ. Em không cần phải giặt nó.)

➤ **Will need + to-infinitive** được dùng để chỉ sự bắt buộc phải thực hiện điều gì trong tương lai hoặc đưa ra lời khuyên cho tương lai.

Eg: We **ll need to repair** the roof next year.

(Năm tới chúng ta cần phải sửa mái nhà.)

You **ll need to work** hard if you want to pass your exam.

(Nếu muốn thi đậu bạn cần phải cố gắng học tập.)

\* **Lưu ý:** Trong tiếng Anh của người Mỹ (American English), **need** rất ít được dùng như một trợ động từ tình thái.

Eg: That shirt isn't dirty. You **don't need** to wash it. [NOT **needn't** wash]

• **DARE** (dám)

- **Dare** thường được dùng như một động từ thường. Sau **dare** là một động từ nguyên mẫu có **to** (to-infinitive)

Eg: She **didn't dare to tell** him what happened.

(Cô ta không dám kể cho anh ấy nghe những gì đã xảy ra.)

He's a man who **dares to say** what he thinks.

(Anh ấy là người dám nói những gì mình nghĩ.)

How **did** you **dare to do** that? (Sao anh dám làm điều đó?)

- **Dare** cũng có thể được dùng như một trợ động từ tình thái trong các câu phủ định, câu hỏi, sau **if** và **whether** hoặc với **hardly**, **never**, **no one**, **nobody**, v.v. Sau **dare** là một động từ nguyên mẫu không **to** (infinitive without to)

Eg: I **daren't ask** her for a rise. (Tôi không dám yêu cầu bà ta tăng lương.)

[dare not = daren't]

**Dare** she tell him? (*Bà ta dám nói cho ông ấy biết sao?*)

Nobody **dared lift** their eyes from the ground.

(*Chẳng ai dám ngước mắt nhìn lên.*)

➤ **Dare + object + to-infinitive** được dùng để thách đố.

Eg: **I dare you to run** across the street with your eyes shut.

(*Tôi thách anh nhắm mắt chạy băng qua đường.*)

➤ **I dare say** = I think probably; I suppose

Eg: **I dare say** it'll rain soon. (*Tôi dám chắc lát nữa trời sẽ mưa.*)

• **USED TO** (đã thường, đã từng): được dùng để diễn đạt tình trạng hoặc thói quen trong quá khứ mà nay không còn nữa.

- *Used to* thường được dùng như một động từ thường. Sau *used to* là động từ nguyên mẫu không *to*.

Eg: My father **used to smoke**, but he stopped smoking two years ago.

(*Trước đây cha tôi thường hút thuốc, nhưng ông đã bỏ hút thuốc cách đây hai năm.*)

There **used to be** a dancehall here, but they knocked it down.

(*Trước kia nơi đây là một vũ trường, nhưng người ta đã phá bỏ nó.*)

Dùng *did* trong câu hỏi và câu phủ định.

Eg: **I didn't use to like** her, but we are best friends now.

(*Trước đây tôi không thích cô ta, nhưng nay chúng tôi đã là bạn thân.*)

**Did you use to play** tennis? (*Trước đây bạn có chơi tennis không?*)

- *Used to* cũng có thể được dùng như trợ động từ tình thái trong lối văn trịnh trọng (formal style). Hình thức câu hỏi *Used + S + to...?* ít được dùng.

Eg: **I used not / usedn't to like** opera, but now I do.

(*Trước đây tôi không thích nhạc kịch, nhưng nay tôi thích.*)

**Used you to go** there? (*Anh có thường đến đó không?*)

### \* Lưu ý:

- *Used to* không có hình thức hiện tại. Để nói về thói quen và tình trạng ở hiện tại, dùng thì hiện tại đơn (present simple tense)

Eg: My brother **used to play** basketball, but now he **plays** volleyball.

(*Trước đây anh trai tôi chơi bóng rổ, nhưng nay anh ấy chơi bóng chuyền.*)

We **used to live** in a small village, but now we **live** in London.

(*Trước đây chúng tôi sống trong một ngôi làng nhỏ nhưng hiện nay chúng tôi đang sống ở London.*)

- Trong câu hỏi đuôi (tag-question), *used to* không được dùng như một trợ động từ tình thái.

Eg: You used not to like him, **did you?** [NOT ...used-you?]

- Chúng ta không dùng *used to* khi chúng ta nói chính xác sự việc xảy ra bao nhiêu lần, trong thời gian bao lâu, hoặc vào thời điểm cụ thể nào đó trong quá khứ.

Eg: We **visited** Paris four times during the 1970s. [NOT we-used-to-visit...]

She **went** to Jamaica last month. [NOT She-used-to-go-to-Jamaicea...]

➤ *Be used to + verb-ing/ noun* (quen, quen với)

Eg: I **am used to** living alone. (*Tôi quen sống một mình.*)

We've lived in this town for ten years, so we **are used to** the noise here.

(*Chúng tôi sống ở thị trấn này đã 10 năm rồi, nên chúng tôi quen với tiếng ồn ở đây.*)

➤ *Get used to + verb-ing/ noun* (trở nên quen với)

Eg: You'll soon **get used to** living in the country.

(*Bạn sẽ sớm quen với việc sống ở miền quê.*)

Little by little, he **got used to** his new family.

(*Nó đã dần quen với gia đình mới của mình.*)

### 3.2. Động từ thường (ordinary verbs):

Động từ thường có những nét văn phạm sau:

- Ngôi thứ ba số ít có *-s*.

Eg: She **lives** in a small house. (*Cô ấy sống trong một ngôi nhà nhỏ.*)

- Câu hỏi và câu phủ định được thành lập với trợ động từ *do*.

Eg: Jane **doesn't** want to go to the party. (*Jane không thích đi dự tiệc.*)

Do you like my earrings? (*Bạn có thích đôi hoa tai của tôi không?*)

What **did** you tell to the police? (*Anh đã khai gì với cảnh sát?*)

- Sau động từ thường có thể là một động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive), động từ nguyên mẫu không *to* (bare-infinitive / infinitive without to) hoặc một danh động từ (gerund).

Eg: I hope **to see** you soon. (*Tôi hy vọng sẽ sớm gặp lại bạn.*)

Don't let the children **play** with match. (*Đừng cho trẻ con nghịch diêm.*)

They enjoyed **collecting** stamps. (*Họ thích sưu tầm tem.*)

Động từ thường có ba hình thức: nguyên mẫu (the infinitive), danh động từ (the gerund), và phân từ (the participle)

a. **Hình thức nguyên mẫu** (the infinitives) là hình thức cơ bản của động từ. Dạng nguyên mẫu của động từ gồm nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) và nguyên mẫu không *to* (infinitive without to/ bare-infinitive)

❖ **Động từ nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive):**

Động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* có thể được dùng làm:

- Chủ ngữ của câu (subject of a sentence)

Eg: **To lean** out of the window is dangerous.

(*Nhoài người ra cửa sổ thì thật nguy hiểm.*)

**To wait** for people who were late made him angry.

(*Đợi chờ những người đến trễ đã làm cho ông ta nổi cáu.*)

Trong tiếng Anh hiện đại, cấu trúc với chủ ngữ giả *it* thường được dùng; nhất là trong lối văn thân mật.

Eg: **It's** dangerous **to lean** out of the window.

(*Thật nguy hiểm khi nhoài người ra ngoài cửa sổ.*)

**It** made him angry **to wait** people who are late.

(*Ông ta nổi giận vì phải chờ đợi những người đi trễ.*)

- Bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ (subject complement).

Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) có thể được dùng sau *be* như một bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ (subject complement).

Eg: What I like is **to swim** in the sea and then to lie on the warm sand.

(*Những gì tôi thích là bơi lội ở biển rồi sau đó nằm trên bãi cát ấm.*)

His plan was **to keep** the affair secret. (*Chủ định của anh ấy là giữ kín chuyện.*)

- Tân ngữ của động từ (object of a verb).

Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* có thể được dùng như một tân ngữ trực tiếp sau các động từ:

afford	care	determine	help	manage
seem	agree	cease	demand	hesitate
prepare	strive	arrange	choose	desire
hope	need	promise	tend	ask
claim	expect	intend	neglect	propose
threaten	attempt	come	fail	learn
offer	refuse	try	continue	fear
like	omit	regret	want	beg
decide	forget	long	plan	start
wish	begin	deserve	hate	love
prefer	swear	mean	pretend	bear

Eg: She **agreed to pay** £50. (*Cô ấy đồng ý trả 50 bảng.*)

It was late, so we **decided to take** a taxi home.

(*Vi đã trễ nên chúng tôi quyết định đi taxi về nhà.*)

He **managed to put** the fire out. (*Anh ta đã tìm được cách dập tắt lửa.*)

The little girl **seems to be** crying. (*Hình như cô bé đang khóc.*)

Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* cũng có thể được dùng sau các cụm động từ như:  
*to make up one's mind, to take care, to take the trouble, to make sure...*

Eg: I've **made up my mind to be** a doctor.

(*Tôi đã quyết định sẽ trở thành bác sĩ.*)

**Take care not to drink** too much.

(*Hãy cẩn trọng đừng có uống quá nhiều rượu.*)

- Tân ngữ của tính từ (objects of an adjective):

Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* thường được dùng sau một số tính từ diễn tả phản ứng hoặc cảm xúc của con người và nhiều tính từ thông dùng khác.

(un)able	afraid	amused	annoyed
anxious	ashamed	astonished	boring
careful	certain	content	crazy
curious	dangerous	delighted	determined
difficult	distressed	due	eager
easy	free	fortunate	furious
frighten	good	glad	grateful
hard	happy	helpless	horrified
impatient	interested	keen	luckly
moved	pleased	(im)possible	proud
prepared	quick	ready	relieved
reluctant	right	resolved	safe
scared	surprised	slow	sorry
sufficient	thankful	(un)wise	(un)willing
wonderful	worthy		

Eg: I'm **pleased to see** you. (*Tôi rất vui được gặp bạn.*)

John was **surprised to get** Ann's letter.

(*John ngạc nhiên khi nhận được thư của Ann.*)

Be **careful not to wake** the children. (*Hãy cẩn thận đừng làm bọn trẻ thức giấc.*)

Your writing is **impossible to read**.

(*Chữ viết của anh thật không thể nào đọc được.*)

It's **boring to do** the same thing every day.

(*Thật là chán khi ngày nào cũng làm cùng một việc.*)

► Adjective + **for** + object + to-infinitive được dùng khi động từ nguyên mẫu có chủ ngữ riêng của nó. Cấu trúc này được dùng để diễn tả những mong ước, cảm xúc hoặc cảm nghĩ cá nhân đối với một tình huống nào đó.

Eg: She's **anxious for the children to go** home.

(*Bà ấy mong bọn trẻ về nhà.*)

It seems **unnecessary for him to start** work this week.

(*Có vẻ như anh ấy không cần phải bắt đầu công việc trong tuần này.*)

► Adjective + **of** + object + to-infinitive được dùng sau một số tính từ diễn tả cách cư xử như: *brave, careless, clever, foolish, generous, good, helpful, honest, intelligent, kind, nice, polite, silly, stupid, wrong...*

Eg: It's **kind of Melanie to put** you up for the night.

(*Melanie thật tốt bụng khi cho bạn trọ lại đêm.*)

It was **polite of you to write** and thank us.

(*Anh thật lịch sự khi viết thư cảm ơn chúng tôi.*)

- Bổ ngữ cho danh từ hoặc đại từ (complement of a noun/ pronoun)

Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* có thể được dùng sau một danh từ hoặc đại từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ hoặc đại từ đó: *verb + object (noun/ pronoun) + to-infinitive*

Eg: She doesn't want anybody **to know**. (*Cô ấy không muốn bất cứ ai biết.*)

He advised me **to visit** Westminster Abbey.

(*Anh ấy khuyên tôi nên đến thăm Tu viện Westminster.*)

Nick couldn't persuade Rita **to go** out with him.

(*Nick không thuyết phục được Rita đi chơi với anh ta.*)

\* Một số động từ thông dụng có thể được theo sau bởi tân ngữ + động từ nguyên mẫu (*object + to-infinitive*)

advise	allow	ask	assume
(can't) bear	beg	believe	cause
challenge	command	compel	consider
enable	encourage	expect	find
forbid	love	force	get

guess	hate	help	imagine
instruct	intend	invite	know
lead	like	leave	need
observe	order	permit	prefer
persuade	remind	mean	suspect
teach	tell	tempt	trust
think	urge	request	want
wish			

- Trong lời nói gián tiếp (indirected speech), động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) có thể được dùng sau các nghi vấn từ *what, who, which, when, where, how, ...* (nhưng thường không dùng sau *why*)

Eg: I don't know **what to say**. (Tôi không biết nên nói gì.)

Can you tell me **how to get** to the station?

(Bạn có thể cho tôi biết đường đến nhà ga được không?)

We were wondering **where to park** the car.

(Chúng tôi đang phân vân không biết đậu xe ở đâu.)

- Động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) có thể được dùng để thay cho mệnh đề quan hệ (relative clause).

Eg: The house **to be demolished** is very old indeed.

(Ngôi nhà bị phá hủy thật sự là rất cũ kĩ.)

[= The house which was demolished...]

- Động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) có thể được dùng sau một danh từ hoặc một đại từ bất định (*something, anything, somewhere, ...*) để diễn đạt mục đích hoặc kết quả đã dự tính.

Eg: I'm going to Australia **to learn** German.

(Tôi sẽ đi Áo để học tiếng Đức.)

I'd like **something to stop** my toothache.

(Tôi muốn cái gì đó có thể làm hết đau răng.)

- Động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) được dùng sau *too* và *enough*.

Eg: This suitcase is **too heavy** (for me) **to lift**.

(Cái va li này quá nặng (tôi) không thể nhấc nổi.)

The apples were ripe **enough to pick**.

(Những quả táo này đã đủ chín để hái.)



- Động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) được dùng trong các cấu trúc gọi là 'Absolute Phrase'.

Eg: **To tell the truth**, I don't know what the answer is.

(*Thú thật, tôi chẳng biết giải đáp ra sao.*)

**To cut a long story short**, he ended his life in prison.

(*Tóm lại là nó đã chết trong tù.*)

- Động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) còn được dùng trong các câu cảm thán hoặc câu diễn đạt mơ ước.

Eg: **To think** she met with such a death! (*Ai ngờ rằng nàng lại chết như thế!*)

Oh! **To be** young again. (*Ôi! Ước gì được trẻ lại.*)

❖ **Động từ nguyên mẫu không *to*** (bare-infinitive/ infinitive without *to*):

Động từ nguyên mẫu không *to* được dùng:

- Sau các trợ động từ tình thái *can, could, may, might, should, shall, must, will, would...*

Eg: We **must go** now. (*Chúng tôi phải đi bây giờ.*)

You **should stay** at home. (*Anh nên ở nhà.*)

I **can swim** across the river. (*Tôi có thể bơi qua bên kia sông.*)

- Sau các động từ *let, make, see, hear, feel, watch, notice* + tân ngữ (object).

Eg: I saw her **get off** the bus. (*Tôi thấy cô ta xuống xe buýt.*)

Don't **let the children stay** up late. (*Đừng để bọn trẻ thức khuya.*)

They **made him repeat** the whole story.

(*Họ buộc anh ấy kể lại toàn bộ câu chuyện.*)

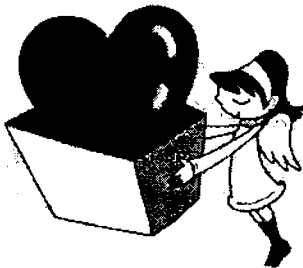
I suddenly **felt something brush** against my arm.

(*Thình lình tôi cảm thấy có cái gì chạm nhẹ vào tay.*)

*Help* có thể được dùng với động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* hoặc không *to*.

Eg: Could you **help me (to) move** this cupboard?

(*Anh giúp tôi chuyển cái tủ này nhé.*)



**Lưu ý:** Khi các động từ này (ngoại từ *let*) được dùng ở thể bị động (passive voice) thì phải được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive).

Eg: She **was seen to get off** the bus. (Người ta thấy cô ấy xuống xe buýt)

He **was made to repeat** the whole story. (Nó bị buộc phải kể lại toàn bộ câu chuyện)

Let không được dùng ở dạng bị động, allow thường được dùng hơn.

Eg: After questioning he **was allowed to go** home.

(Sau cuộc thẩm vấn, anh ta được phép về nhà.)

[NOT ...~~he was let to go home~~]

- Sau các cụm động từ *had better, would rather, had sooner,...*

Eg: You **had better tell** him the truth.

(Tốt hơn là bạn nên cho anh ấy biết sự thật.)

I **would rather stay** at home. (Tôi thích ở nhà hơn.)

- Sau *why* hoặc *why not*.

Eg: **Why get upset** just because of a bad mark?

(Sao lại lo lắng chỉ vì một điểm kém?)

**Why not stay** for lunch? (Sao không ở lại ăn trưa?)

**b. Danh động từ** (the gerunds): là hình thức động từ được thêm *-ing* và được dùng như một danh từ. Danh động từ có thể được dùng làm:

- Chủ ngữ của câu (subject of a sentence).

Eg: The **building** of the house will take at least six months.

(Việc xây ngôi nhà sẽ mất ít nhất 6 tháng.)

**Swimming** is my favourite sport.

(Bơi lội là môn thể thao yêu thích nhất của tôi.)



- Bổ ngữ của động từ (complement of a verb).

Eg: My hobby **is collecting** stamps. (Sở thích của tôi là sưu tầm tem)

The new agreement will mean **working** overtime.

(Hợp đồng mới đòi hỏi phải làm ngoài giờ.)

- Tân ngữ của động từ (object of a verb).

Danh động từ có thể được dùng như một tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) sau các động từ:

admit	deny	excuse	keep	put off
appreciate	escape	avoid	detest	fancy
mention	recall	save	delay	risk
dislike	finish	mind	resent	stop
suggest	burst	out	endure	give
up	miss	resist	practice	consider
enjoy	imagine	postpone	recollect	involve

Eg: I **enjoy travelling**. (*Tôi thích đi du lịch.*)

Would you mind closing the door? (*Xin hãy đóng giúp cánh cửa.*)

Harriet suggested having a party. (*Harriet gợi ý tổ chức một bữa tiệc.*)

She's **finished cleaning** the flat. (*Cô ấy đã lau dọn xong căn hộ.*)



Danh động từ cũng được dùng như một tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) sau một số thành ngữ: *can't bear, can't face, can't stand, can't help, can't resist, feel like, It's no use/ good, It's (not) worthy, There's no point in...*

Eg: She tried to be serious but she **couldn't help laughing**.

(*Cô ta đã cố tỏ ra nghiêm nghị nhưng rồi cũng không nhịn cười được.*)

I didn't **feel like talking** to him after what had happened.

(*Sau những gì đã xảy ra tôi không muốn nói chuyện với anh ta nữa.*)

**It's no use reading** this kind of book.

(*Đọc loại sách này chẳng ích lợi gì.*)

My house isn't far from here. **It's not worth taking** a taxi.

(*Nhà tôi cách đây không xa. Không đáng phải đi taxi.*)

- Bổ ngữ của tân ngữ (object complement).

Một số động từ có thể được theo sau bởi tân ngữ + danh động từ (verb + object + -ing form): *catch, discover, dislike, feel, find, hear, imagine, involve, keep, mind, notice, prevent, remember, risk, see, spend, stop, watch...*

Eg: Nobody can **stop him doing** what he wants to.

(*Không ai có thể ngăn anh ta làm điều mà anh ta muốn làm.*)

Sorry to **keep you waiting** so long. (*Xin lỗi vì đã để bạn đợi lâu.*)

I don't **mind you going** without me.

(*Tôi không quan tâm đến việc bạn đi mà không có tôi.*)

I don't **remember my mother complaining** about it.

(*Tôi không nhớ là mẹ đã than phiền về điều đó.*)

Hình thái sở hữu (possessives) được dùng với danh động từ trong lối văn trang trọng.

Eg: I don't **mind your going** without me.

(*Tôi không quan tâm đến việc bạn đi mà không có tôi.*)

I don't **remember my mother's complaining** about it.

(*Tôi không nhớ là mẹ đã than phiền về điều đó.*)

- Danh động từ được dùng sau tất cả các giới từ.

Eg: She entered the room **without knocking**.

(*Cô ấy vào phòng mà không gõ cửa.*)

The thief got in **by breaking** a window.

(*Kẻ trộm vào nhà bằng cách đập vỡ cửa sổ.*)

➤ *Verb + preposition + -ing form*

Eg: They are **talking about building** a new swimming-pool.

(*Họ đang bàn luận về việc xây một hồ bơi mới.*)

I'm **looking forward to seeing** you again. (*Tôi mong được gặp lại bạn.*)

Laura **insisted on paying** for meal.

(*Laura cứ nhất định đòi trả tiền bữa ăn.*)

\* Một số động từ + giới từ (verb + preposition) thường dùng:

agree with	consist of	lead to	return to	object to
approve of	depend on	count on	result in	insist on
threaten with	dream of	end in	safe from	rely on
think about	complain of	give up	succeed in	mean by
forget about	go back to	carry on	think of	
hesitate about	worry about	persist in	take to	
concentrate on	get to	plan on	talk of	
confess to	keep on	put off	believe in	
care for	apologise for	long for	look forward to	

➤ Verb + object + preposition + -ing form

Eg: I **congratulated Ann on passing** the exam.

(Tôi chúc mừng Ann thi đậu.)

Please **forgive me for not writing** to you.

(Xin hãy thứ lỗi cho tôi vì đã không viết thư cho bạn.)

\* Một số động từ + giới từ (*verb + preposition*) thường được dùng trong cấu trúc này: accused (of), blame (for), congratulate (on), discourage (from), forgive (for), prevent (from), stop (from), suspect (of), thank (for), warn (against),...

➤ Adjective + preposition + -ing form

Eg: Alice is **fond of dancing**. (Alice thích khiêu vũ.)

Are you **interested in working** for us?

(Anh có thích làm việc cho chúng tôi không?)

I'm **fed up with living** in this awful place.

(Tôi chán phải sống ở cái nơi khủng khiếp này.)

\* Một số tính từ + giới từ (*adjective + preposition*) thường dùng:

careful (about) in	absorbed in	fortunate in	afraid of
upset at	(un)conscious of	excited about	grateful for
annoy at	successful at (in)	happy in (at)	careless of
nice about	responsible for	content with	certain of
pleased at	embarrassed at	delighted at	skill in (at)
proud of	tired of (from)	frightened of	amused at
aware of	accustomed to	interested in	certain of
clever at	scared at (of)	surprised at	furious at
given to	worried about	thankful for	far from
good at	different from	ashamed of	fond of
keen on	bored with (in)	angry with	intent of
right in	capable of	fed up with	wrong in
set on	sick of	slow in	sorry for
sure of			

- Danh động từ cũng có thể được dùng sau một số tính từ *amusing, comfortable, difficult, easy, great, hopeless, lovely, nice, off, pleasant, strange, useless, wonderful, worth,...* trong cấu trúc với chủ ngữ giả *It*. Nhưng cách dùng này khá thân mật nên thường được dùng trong văn nói hơn là văn viết.

Eg: It was nice **seeing** you. (*Rất vui được gặp bạn.*)

It was useless **arguing** with them. (*Tranh cãi với họ thật vô ích.*)

- Danh động từ có thể được dùng sau các liên từ *after, although, before, since, when, while*.

Eg: I always have a shower **after playing** tennis.

(*Tôi luôn tắm sau khi chơi quần vợt.*)

You should lock the door **when leaving** your room.

(*Bạn nên khóa cửa khi ra khỏi phòng.*)

- Danh động từ có nghĩa bị động khi được dùng sau các động từ *deserve, need, want, require*.

Eg: I don't think his article **deserves reading**. [= deserves to be read]

(*Tôi cho là bài báo của ông ta không đáng đọc.*)

The plants **want/ need watering** daily. [= need to be watered]

(*Cây cối cần phải được tưới nước mỗi ngày.*)



- *For + -ing form* có thể được dùng sau danh từ hoặc đại từ bất định (*something, anything...*) để giải thích mục đích của đồ vật hay chất liệu.

Eg: A strimmer is a machine **for cutting** grass and weeds.

(*Máy cắt cỏ là máy dùng để xén cỏ và cắt cỏ dại.*)

I need something **for killing** flies. (*Tôi cần thứ gì đó để diệt ruồi.*)

\* **Danh động từ hay động từ nguyên mẫu (the gerunds or the infinitives)**

Một số động từ có thể được theo sau bởi cả hai dạng **-ing** và **infinitive**:

advise	continue	go on	intend	prefer
allow	forbid	go	like	propose
begin	forget	hate	love	regret
start	see	try hear	permit	remember
(can't)bear	(can't)stand	stop	watch	

Trong một số trường hợp có sự khác nhau về nghĩa giữa hai cấu trúc:

• **Remember (nhớ) và forget (quên).**

- *Remember / forget + to-infinitive*: chỉ hành động tương lai – hành động nhớ / quên xảy ra trước hành động cần phải thực hiện.

Eg: Please **remember to return** the book tomorrow.

*(Xin nhớ trả lại sách vào ngày mai.)*

The clothes are still dirty because I **forgot to switch** on the machine.

*(Quần áo vẫn còn dơ vì tôi đã quên mở máy giặt.)*

- *Remember / forget + verb-ing*: chỉ hành động đã qua – hành động nhớ / quên xảy ra sau hành động được diễn đạt bằng danh động từ. **Forget + verb-ing** được dùng chủ yếu trong cụm từ *I'll never...* và những cụm từ có nghĩa tương tự.

Eg: I'm sure I locked the door. I clearly **remember locking** it.

*(Chắc chắn là tôi đã khóa cửa. Tôi nhớ rõ ràng là tôi đã khóa.)*

I'll never **forget seeing** him the first time.

*(Tôi sẽ không bao giờ quên lần đầu tiên tôi gặp anh ấy.)*

• **Regret (tiếc, hối tiếc)**

- *Regret + to-infinitive*: chủ yếu được dùng khi thông báo tin xấu hoặc diễn đạt sự hối tiếc về điều đang làm.

Eg: We **regret to tell** you that we are unable to help you.

*(Chúng tôi rất tiếc phải nói là chúng tôi không thể giúp bạn được.)*

- *Regret + verb-ing*: diễn đạt sự hối tiếc về điều gì đó đã xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Eg: I **regret leaving** school at 14. – It was a big mistake.

*(Tôi thấy tiếc vì đã nghỉ học năm 14 tuổi – Đó là một sai lầm lớn.)*

• **Stop (ngừng).**

- *Stop + to-infinitive*: chỉ mục đích, có nghĩa 'ngừng lại để làm việc gì đó'

Eg: We **stopped to rest**. *(Chúng tôi ngừng lại để nghỉ ngơi.)*

- *Stop + verb-ing*: có nghĩa 'ngừng làm việc gì'

Eg: There is too much noise. Can you all **stop talking**, please?

*(Ồn ào quá. Xin tất cả các bạn ngừng nói chuyện có được không?.)*

• **Try (cố gắng, thử)**

- *Try + to-infinitive*: chỉ sự nỗ lực – cố gắng làm điều gì đó.

Eg: I **tried to move** the table, but it was too heavy.

(Tôi cố chuyển dịch cái bàn, nhưng nó quá nặng.)

- **Try + verb-ing**: chỉ sự thử nghiệm – làm điều gì đó nhằm thử nghiệm hoặc kiểm tra.

Eg: **Trying phoning** his home number. (Thử gọi về nhà ông ta xem.)

### • **Go on** (tiếp tục)

- **Go on + to-infinitive**: chỉ sự thay đổi cù hành động – tiếp tục làm việc gì sau khi đã làm xong một việc khác.

Eg: After discussing the economy, the minister **went on to talk** about foreign policy.

(Sau khi thảo luận về vấn đề kinh tế, ông bộ trưởng tiếp tục nói về chính sách đối ngoại.)

- **Go on + verb-ing**: chỉ sự liên tục của một hành động – tiếp tục làm một điều gì đó.

Eg: I can't **go on pretending** that everything is okay when it clearly isn't.

(Tôi không thể tiếp tục làm ra vẻ mọi chuyện vẫn ổn trong khi rõ ràng là nó không ổn.)

### • **Mean** (có ý định, có nghĩa).

- **Mean (+ object) + to-infinitive**: chỉ dự định hoặc ý định (= intend)

Eg: Sorry, I didn't **mean to interrupt** you. (Xin lỗi, tôi không định ngắt lời bạn)

- **Mean + verb-ing**: chỉ sự liên quan hoặc kết quả

Eg: Spending all the money today **means starving** tomorrow.

(Tiêu hết tiền hôm nay có nghĩa là ngày mai chết đói.)





• **Động từ chỉ tri giác (hear, see, notice...)**

- *Hear, see...* + object + bare-infinitive: chỉ sự hoàn tất của hành động – nghe hoặc thấy toàn bộ hành động hoặc sự việc đã diễn ra

Eg: I **saw Tom get** into his car and drive away.

(Tôi thấy Tom lên ô tô và lái đi.)

We all **felt the house shake**.

(Tất cả chúng tôi đều cảm thấy ngôi nhà rung lên.)

\* Cấu trúc này thường được dùng với các động từ: *feel, hear, listen to, notice, see, watch*.

- *Hear, see...* + object + verb-ing: chỉ sự tiếp diễn của hành động – nghe hoặc thấy hành động hoặc sự việc đang diễn tiến.

Eg: As I passed his house I **heard him practicing** the piano.

(Khi tôi đi ngang qua nhà anh ấy, tôi nghe thấy anh ấy đang tập piano.)

They **felt the earth shaking** beneath their feet.

(Họ cảm thấy mặt đất dưới chân đang rung chuyển.)

\* Cấu trúc này thường được dùng với các động từ: *feel, find, hear, listen to, notice, see, smell, watch*.

• **Like** (thích), **love** (yêu), **hate** (ghét), **prefer** (thích hơn).

Bốn động từ này đều có thể được theo sau bởi dạng *-ing* hoặc dạng nguyên mẫu có *to* (*to-infinitive*) của động từ mà không có sự khác nhau về nghĩa.

Eg: I **hate to stand/ standing** up while I'm eating.

(Tôi ghét phải đứng dậy khi đang ăn.)

We always **prefer to stay/ staying** in small hotel.

(Chúng tôi thích ở khách sạn nhỏ hơn.)

Harry **likes to do/ doing** parachute jumps. (Harry thích nhảy dù.)

Tuy nhiên trong tiếng Anh của người Anh, *like* + *to-infinitive* thường được dùng để diễn đạt sự chọn lựa và thói quen; *like* + *verb-ing* được dùng để diễn đạt sở thích.

Eg: On Sundays I **like to sleep** late. (Vào chủ nhật tôi thích ngủ dậy muộn.)

Do you **like cooking**? (Bạn có thích nấu ăn không?)

• **Advise** (khuyên), **allow, permit** (cho phép), **forbid** (cấm), **recommend** (đề nghị), **encourage** (khuyến khích)

Sau các động từ này ta dùng dạng *-ing* nếu không có tân ngữ, nếu có tân ngữ ta dùng dạng nguyên mẫu có *to* (*to-infinitive*)

- Advise, allow...+ object + to-infinitive

Eg: The teacher **permitted us to go out**.

(Thầy cho phép chúng tôi ra ngoài.)

She **encouraged her daughter to lose weight**.

(Bà ấy khuyến khích con gái giảm cân.)

- Advise, allow...+ verb-ing

Eg: The teacher **permitted going out**. (Thầy giáo cho phép ra ngoài.)

I wouldn't **advise taking** the car. There's nowhere to park.

(Tôi khuyên không nên đi xe hơi. Không có chỗ nào để đậu xe cả)

• Các động từ **begin, start** (bắt đầu), **continue** (tiếp tục), **intend** (dự định), **beginner** (làm phiên), **propose** (dự định) có thể được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc danh động từ. Giữa hai cấu trúc này không có sự khác biệt về nghĩa.

Eg: It has **started to rain/ raining** (Trời bắt đầu mưa.)

I **intend to tell/ telling** her what I think.

(Tôi định nói cho cô ta biết những gì tôi nghĩ)

\* **Lưu ý:** không nên dùng hai động từ dạng **-ing** cùng nhau

Eg: I'm **beginning to learn** karate. (Tôi bắt đầu học võ karate.)

[NOT I'm ~~beginning learning~~]

**c. Phân từ** (the participles): là hình thức của động từ được dùng trong các thì tiếp diễn và hoàn thành (is *going*, has *gone*...) hoặc được dùng như một tính từ (*interesting* book, *broken* heart)

Ngoại trừ các động từ tình thái, động từ nào cũng có hai phân từ: hiện tại phân từ (present participle) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle)

### Hiện tại phân từ (present participle)

Hiện tại phân từ (present participle) được thành lập bằng cách thêm **-ing** vào động từ nguyên mẫu.

Eg: work → working      love → loving

Interest → interesting      excite → exciting

Hiện tại phân từ (present participle) được dùng.

➤ Với trợ động từ **be** để tạo thành các thì tiếp diễn (progressive tenses)

Eg: Tim is **working** at the moment. (Lúc này Tim đang làm việc.)

It was **raining** when I got home. (Khi tôi về đến nhà thì trời đang mưa.)

➤ Như một tính từ để diễn tả người, vật hoặc sự việc tạo ra cảm xúc.

Eg: He told us an **amusing** story.

(Anh ấy kể cho chúng tôi nghe một câu chuyện vui.)

[= A story that amused us]

The game was really **exciting**. (Trò chơi rất hào hứng.)

[= It made the players excited]

George has become very **boring**. (George trở nên rất tẻ nhạt.)

[= He makes other people bored]

➤ Như một tính từ hoặc trạng từ, có nghĩa tương tự như động từ chủ động (active verb)

Eg: She swept up the **falling** leaves. (Bà ấy quét lá rụng lại thành đống.)

[= leaves that fall]

He ran **creaming** out of the room.

(Anh ta vừa la hét vừa chạy ra khỏi phòng.)

[ = He was **creaming**]

➤ Sau các động từ chỉ tri giác: *see, hear, fell, smell, taste...*

Eg: I **saw** flames **rising** and **heard** people **shouting**.

(Tôi thấy lửa bốc lên và nghe mọi người la hét.)

➤ Sau **catch, find, leave** + tân ngữ: **catch/ find/leave** + object + **V-ing**

Eg: I **caught them stealing** my apples.

(Tôi bắt gặp họ đang lấy cắp táo của tôi.)

Don't **leave her waiting** outside in the rain.

(Đừng để cô ấy đợi bên ngoài khi trời đang mưa như thế.)

➤ Sau *go, come, spend, waste, be busy*.

Eg: We'll **go skiing** this winter. (Mùa đông này chúng tôi sẽ đi trượt tuyết.)

He **spent** a lot of money **modernizing** the house.

(Ông ta bỏ ra rất nhiều tiền tân trang lại ngôi nhà.)

James **is busy practicing** for the school concert.

(James bận tập dượt cho buổi hòa nhạc của trường.)

- Hiện tại phân từ (present participle) dùng trong cụm phân từ (participle phrase) thay cho chủ ngữ + động từ ở dạng chủ động (subject + active verb) khi:

+ Hai hành động có cùng chủ ngữ xảy ra cùng một lúc → hành động sau được diễn đạt bằng hiện tại phân từ.

Eg: We had to stand in a queue. We waited for the bank open.

→ We had to stand in a queue **waiting** for the bank open.

(Chúng tôi phải xếp hàng đợi ngân hàng mở cửa.)

He walked along. He whistled a happy tune as he walked.

→ He walked along **whistling** a happy tune.

(Anh ta vừa đi vừa huýt sáo một giai điệu vui.)

+ Hai hành động có cùng chủ ngữ xảy ra liên tiếp nhau → hành động xảy ra trước có thể được diễn đạt bằng hiện tại phân từ.

Eg: Mike opened the bottle and then poured milk into his glass.

→ **Opening** the bottle, Mike poured milk into his glass.

(Mike mở nắp chai rồi rót sữa vào ly.)

We took off our shoes and crept along the passage.

→ **Taking** off our shoes we crept along the passage.

(Chúng tôi cởi giày ra rồi rón rén đi dọc theo hành lang.)

Nhưng khi hành động thứ hai là một phần hoặc là kết quả của hành động thứ nhất → hiện tại phân từ dùng cho hành động thứ hai.

Eg: She went out, **slamming** the door. (Cô ta đi ra đóng sầm cửa lại.)

I fell, **striking** my head against the door.

(Tôi ngã đập đầu vào cánh cửa.)

➤ Hiện tại phân từ dùng trong cụm phân từ thay cho mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do hoặc nguyên nhân.

Eg: The fans queued for hours **because** they hoped to get tickets.

→ The fans queued for hours, **hoping** to get tickets.

(Những người hâm mộ xếp hàng hàng giờ, hy vọng mua được vé.)

As Natasha is the youngest child, she was her father's favourite.

→ **Being** the youngest child, Natasha was her father's favourite.

(Là con út nên Natasha được cha yêu quý nhất.)

➤ Hiện tại phân từ dùng trong cụm phân từ thay cho mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

Eg: **While** I was walking along the street, I saw an accident.

→ **Walking** along the street I saw an accident.

(Khi đang đi bộ trên đường, tôi thấy một tai nạn.)



After he had put down his newspaper, he walked over the window.

→ **Putting** down his newspaper, he walked over the window.

(Đặt tờ báo xuống, anh ta bước đến bên cửa sổ.)

➤ Hiện tại phân từ dùng trong cụm phân từ thay cho mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định ở dạng chủ động (relative pronoun + active verb)

Eg: Do you know the woman **who is talking** to John?

→ Do you know the woman **talking** to John?

(Anh có quen người phụ nữ đang nói chuyện với John không?)

A lorry **which was carrying** concrete pipes has overturned.

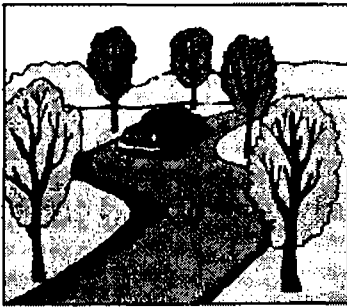
→ A lorry **carrying** concrete pipes has overturned.

(Một chiếc xe tải chở ống bê tông đã bị lật.)

The road **that joins** the two villages is very narrow.

→ The road **joining** the two villages is very narrow

(Con đường nối liền hai làng rất hẹp.)



**\* Lưu ý:** Chúng ta không dùng cụm phân từ (participle phrase) thay cho mệnh đề quan hệ để chỉ một hành động đơn trong quá khứ.

Eg: The police wanted to interview people **who saw** the accident.

(Cảnh sát muốn thẩm vấn những người chứng kiến tai nạn.) [NOT people

**Quá khứ phân từ (past participle)**

Quá khứ phân từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm *-ed* vào sau động từ có quy tắc; quá khứ phân từ của động từ bất quy tắc là động từ nằm ở cột thứ 3 (past participle) trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc.

Eg: bore → bored

work → worked

See → seen

go → gone

Quá khứ phân từ (past participle) được dùng:

➤ Với trợ động từ *be* và *have* để làm thành dạng bị động (passive form) và các thì hoàn thành (perfect tenses)

Eg: I **was given** a doll on my birthday.

(Tôi được tặng một con búp bê nhân dịp sinh nhật.)

The aircraft **has landed** safely. (Máy bay đã hạ cánh an toàn.)

➤ Như một tính từ để chỉ cảm giác của một người đối với một hành động hoặc sự việc.

Eg: The children always get **terribly excited** when Granny comes.

(Bọn trẻ luôn rất phấn khởi khi bà chúng đến.)

I **was disappointed** with the film. (Tôi thất vọng về bộ phim.)

➤ Như một tính từ hoặc trạng từ, có nghĩa tương tự như động từ bị động (passive verb)

Eg: The police has found the **stolen** jewellery.

[= The jewellery that **has been stolen**.]

(Cảnh sát đã tìm thấy số nữ trang bị đánh cắp.)

He lived alone, **forgotten** by everybody.

[= He **had been forgotten** by everybody.]

(Ông ấy sống một mình, bị mọi người quên lãng.)

➤ Quá khứ phân từ (past participle) dùng trong cụm phân từ (participle phrase) thay cho chủ ngữ + động từ bị động (subject + passive verb) để kết nối hoặc rút gọn hai câu có cùng chủ ngữ.

Eg: She enters. She **is accompanied** by her mother.

→ She enters, **accompanied** by her mother. (Cô ấy bước vào, cùng với mẹ.)

He **was aroused** by the crash, he leapt his feet.

→ **Aroused** by the crash, he leapt his feet.

(Bị tiếng nổ ầm đánh thức, anh ta ngồi bật dậy.)

Once the brain **is deprived** of oxygen, it dies.

→ Once **deprived** of oxygen, the brain dies. (Khi bị thiếu oxy, não sẽ chết.)

➤ Quá khứ phân từ (past participle) dùng trong cụm phân từ (participle phrase) thay cho mệnh đề quan hệ ở dạng bị động (relative pronoun + passive verb)

Eg: Half of the people **who were invited** to the party didn't turn up.

→ Half of the people **invited** to the party didn't turn up.

(Một nửa số người được mời dự tiệc đã không đến.)

I found him sitting at a table **which was covered** with papers.

→ I found him sitting at a table **covered** with papers.

(Tôi thấy anh ta ngồi ở một cái bàn đầy giấy tờ.)

We couldn't agree on any of the problems **that were discussed**.

→ We couldn't agree on any of the problems **discussed**.

(Chúng tôi không thể đồng ý với bất cứ vấn đề nào đã được thảo luận.)

[NOT ...the ~~discussed~~ problems]

\* **Lưu ý:** Một số động từ có quá khứ phân từ có thể được dùng như một tính từ mang nghĩa chủ động, nhất là khi đứng trước danh từ.

Eg: a **fallen** leaf (một chiếc lá rụng) [= a leaf that has fallen]

A **retired** general (một vị tướng về hưu) [= a general who has tired]

**4. Hệ từ (copular verbs/ linking verbs)** là một loại động từ đặc biệt (special verb) được dùng để kết nối chủ ngữ (subject) của câu với bổ ngữ của nó (subject complement). Các hệ từ thông dụng: **be** (*thì, là, ở*), **seem** (*có vẻ như, dường như*), **appear** (*hình như, có vẻ*), **look** (*trông như, trông có vẻ*), **sound** (*nghe như*), **smell** (*có mùi*), **taste** (*có vị*), **feel** (*cảm thấy*), **become** (*trở thành*), **get** (*trở nên*).

Eg: My father is a doctor. (*Cha tôi là bác sĩ.*)

São Paulo has **become** the largest city in South America.

(*São Paulo đã trở thành thành phố lớn nhất Nam Mỹ.*)

It's **getting** dark. (*Trời đang tối dần.*)

- Bổ ngữ theo sau hệ từ có thể là một danh từ hoặc một tính từ.

Eg: Your argument **sounds** right. (*Lý lẽ của bạn nghe có lý.*)

She has **turned** dressmaker. (*Cô ấy đã trở thành thợ may.*)

He **looks** intelligent. (*Anh ấy có vẻ thông minh.*)

- Một số hệ từ được dùng để nói về sự thay đổi (hoặc không thay đổi): *become, get, grow, go, turn, stay, remain, keep*.

Eg: It's **becoming/ getting/ growing** colder. (*Trời đang trở lạnh*)

How does she **stay** so young? (*Làm thế nào mà cô ấy cứ trẻ mãi thế nhỉ?*)

The leaves are **turning** brown. (*Lá đang ngả dần sang nâu*)

\* **Lưu ý:** một số hệ từ cũng có thể được dùng như động từ thường (ordinary verb), nhưng có nghĩa khác với động từ đặc biệt: *look, taste, feel, appear*. Khi các động từ này được dùng như động từ thường thì chúng thường được dùng với trạng từ (không dùng với tính từ)

Eg: You **look** very unhappy. What's the matter?

(*Trông bạn có vẻ không vui. Có chuyện gì vậy?*) [look là hệ từ]

The boss **looked** at me **angrily**. (*Sếp nhìn tôi một cách giận dữ.*)

[NOT the boss ~~looked~~ at me **angry**]

## EXERCISES

---

1. Complete the sentences with *must (not) or (do not) have to* (in the correct form). Sometimes it's possible to use either; sometimes only have to is possible.

1. I *have to* go to the airport. I'm meeting someone.
2. It's too late. I *must / have to* go now.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ lock the door when you go out. There have been a lot of break-ins recently.
4. Jack left before the end of the meeting. He \_\_\_\_\_ go home early.
5. I've already finished all my work, so I \_\_\_\_\_ study tonight.
6. Students \_\_\_\_\_ wear uniform when they go to school.
7. You really \_\_\_\_\_ hurry up, Vicky. We don't want to be late.
8. I don't want anyone to know. You \_\_\_\_\_ tell anyone.
9. When you come to London again, you \_\_\_\_\_ come and see us.
10. A person \_\_\_\_\_ become rich and famous in order to live a successful life.
11. Julia wears glasses. She \_\_\_\_\_ wear glasses since she was very young.
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ work late tomorrow. We are very busy at the office.
13. Johnny! You \_\_\_\_\_ play with sharp knives.
14. Caroline may \_\_\_\_\_ go away next week.
15. You really \_\_\_\_\_ work harder if you want to pass the examination.
16. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the doctor. I'm feeling much better.
17. We couldn't repair the car ourselves. We \_\_\_\_\_ take it to a garage.
18. You really \_\_\_\_\_ make less noise. I'm trying to concentrate.
19. Don't make so much noise. We \_\_\_\_\_ wake the baby.
20. The food was free, so we \_\_\_\_\_ pay.
21. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ pay to park here. I'll just go and read that notice.
22. Daniel \_\_\_\_\_ go to the bank. He hasn't any money.
23. You \_\_\_\_\_ wash those glasses. They're clean.
24. You \_\_\_\_\_ wear your best clothes. You'll get them dirty.
25. I \_\_\_\_\_ put the heating on. I feel really cold.



## II. Put in *must*, *mustn't*, *needn't*.

- Laura: You \_\_\_\_\_ take an umbrella. It isn't going to rain.  
John: Well, I don't know. It might do.  
Laura: Don't lose it then. You \_\_\_\_\_ leave it on the bus.
- Vicky: Come on. We \_\_\_\_\_ hurry. We \_\_\_\_\_ be late.  
Rachel: It's only ten past. We \_\_\_\_\_ hurry. There's lots of time.
- Tom: What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?  
Susan: Well, it \_\_\_\_\_ be big - that's not important. But it \_\_\_\_\_ have a nice garden - that's essential.
- Claire: My sister and I are going a different way.  
Guide: Oh, you \_\_\_\_\_ go off on your own. It isn't safe. We \_\_\_\_\_ keep together in a group.
- David: I'll put these cups in the dishwasher.  
Melanie: No, you \_\_\_\_\_ put them in there. It might damage them. In fact, we \_\_\_\_\_ wash them at all. We didn't use them.
- Secretary: I \_\_\_\_\_ forget to type this letter.  
Mark: Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_ do in the post today because it's quite urgent. But the report isn't so important. You \_\_\_\_\_ type the report today.
- Sandra: Thanks for the book, Mom.  
Mom: Well, it's a valuable book. You \_\_\_\_\_ look after it carefully and you \_\_\_\_\_ lose it.
- Anne: I think I \_\_\_\_\_ go shopping. We've run out of food.  
Susan: We have enough food for dinner, so I \_\_\_\_\_ go shopping today.

## III. Complete the sentences with *can(not)*, *could(not)* or *be (not) able to*. Sometimes it's possible to use either.

- Natasha could/was be able to play the piano when she was four.
- George has travelled a lot. He \_\_\_\_\_ speak four languages.
- I used to \_\_\_\_\_ to stand on my head but I can't do it now.
- I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ come to the party tonight.
- The computer went wrong, but luckily Emma \_\_\_\_\_ put it right again.
- Ask Catherine about your problem. She might \_\_\_\_\_ help you.
- I learned to read music as a child. I \_\_\_\_\_ read it when I was five

8. Suddenly all the lights went out. We \_\_\_\_\_ see a thing.
9. The drivers \_\_\_\_\_ stop before they crashed into each other.
10. I'm sorry I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ come and see you before. ~ I'm OK thanks I \_\_\_\_\_ walk around now. The doctor says I \_\_\_\_\_ go back to work soon.
11. People heard warning about the flood, and they \_\_\_\_\_ move out in time.
12. There was a big party last night. You \_\_\_\_\_ hear the music half a mile away.
13. Let's have lunch together. We \_\_\_\_\_ go to that new restaurant.
14. The train was full. I \_\_\_\_\_ find a seat anywhere.
15. She spoke in a very low voice, but I \_\_\_\_\_ understand what she said.

**IV. For each situation write a sentence with should or shouldn't + one of the following.**

*go away for a few days*

*go to bed so late*

*take an aspirin*

*use her car so much*

*look for another job*

*take a photograph*

*put some pictures on the walls*

*drive so fast*

1. Daisy's got a headache. She should take an aspirin.
2. My salary is very low. You \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Liz needs a change. She \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Sue drives everywhere. She never walks. She \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Bill's room isn't very interesting. He \_\_\_\_\_.
6. There's a police car behind you. You \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Jack always has difficulty getting up. He \_\_\_\_\_.
8. What a beautiful view! You \_\_\_\_\_.

**V. Put in should, shouldn't, ought or oughtn't.**

*Vicky:* I can't come out tonight. I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to do some more work. I'm behind with everything. I've got so much to do.

*Rachel:* You (2) \_\_\_\_\_ worry so much, Vicky. Don't panic. You (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to relax sometimes. You (4) \_\_\_\_\_ take a break.

*Vicky:* I know I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ panic, but I do, I can't help it.

*Rachel:* Anyway, you're doing OK, aren't you? Your results have been good.  
You (6) \_\_\_\_\_ be pleased. You (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to invent problem for yourself.

**VI. Complete the conversations using *can/ could/ might/ must/ should/ would...* + the verb in brackets. In some sentences you need to use have (must have .../ should have ...). In some sentences you need the negative (can't/ couldn't ...)**

1. A: I'm hungry.  
B: But you've just had lunch. You can't be hungry already. (be)
2. A: I haven't seen your neighbors for ages.  
B: No. They must have gone away. (go)
3. A: What's the weather like? Is it raining?  
B: Not at the moment but it \_\_\_\_\_ later. (rain)
4. A: Where has Julia gone?  
B: I'm not sure. She \_\_\_\_\_ to the bank. (go)
5. A: I didn't see you at John's party last week.  
B: No, I had to work that evening, so I \_\_\_\_\_. (go)
6. A: I saw you at John's party last night.  
B: No, you didn't. You \_\_\_\_\_ me. I didn't go to John's party. (see)
7. A: When did you post the letter to Mary?  
B: This morning. So she \_\_\_\_\_ it tomorrow. (get)
8. A: When was the last time you saw Bill?  
B: Years ago. I \_\_\_\_\_ him if I saw him now. (recognize)
9. A: Did you hear the explosion?  
B: What explosion?  
A: There was a loud explosion a few minutes ago. You \_\_\_\_\_ it. (hear)
10. A: We weren't sure which way to go. In the end we turned right.  
B: You went the wrong way. You \_\_\_\_\_ left. (turn)

**VII. Make sentences from the words in brackets.**

1. Don't phone Ann now. (she might/ have/ lunch)  
She might be having lunch.

2. I ate too much. Now I feel sick. (I shouldn't/ eat/ so much)  
*I shouldn't have eaten so much.*
3. Why did you go home early? (you needn't/ go/ home early)
4. I wonder why Tom didn't phone me. (he must/ forget)
5. You've signed the contract, (it/ can't/ change/ now)
6. What's Linda doing? - I'm not sure, (she may/ watch/ television)
7. Ann was standing outside the cinema, (she must/ wait/ for somebody)
8. He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed, so (he couldn't/ do/ it)
9. Why weren't you here earlier? (you ought/ be/ here earlier)
10. Why didn't you ask me to help you? (I would/ help/ you)
11. I'm surprised nobody told you that the road was very dangerous, (you should/ warn)
12. George was in strange mood yesterday, (he might not/feel/very well)

**VIII. Write the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.**

1. Perhaps Susan knows the address, (may) *Susan may know the address.*
2. We should be careful, (ought)
3. I managed to finish all my work, (able)
4. I realize that it was a terrible experience for you, (must)
5. It's against the rules for players to have a drink, (allowed)
6. The best thing for you to do is to sit down, (better)
7. The report must be on my desk tomorrow, (has)
8. It's possible that Joanna did not receive my message, (might)
9. It's impossible for Martin to be jogging in this weather, (can't)
10. It was not necessary for Nancy to clean the flat, (didn't)

**IX. Put in *used to + infinitive* or *be/get used to + -ing form*. Use the verbs in brackets.**

1. When I was a child. I \_\_\_\_\_ (dream) of being an astronaut.
2. I'm terribly nervous. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ speak) to a large audience.
3. It took us ages to \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a block of flat.

4. Lots of trains \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) here, but not many do now.
5. Didn't Nick \_\_\_\_\_ (work) on a building site?
6. I'll have an orange juice, please. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ drink) alcohol.
7. David doesn't seem to mind being in hospital. I suppose he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) there.
8. When Laura was at college, she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a picture of Elvis Presley on her bedroom wall.
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a small village but now we live in London.
10. I feel very full after that meal. I \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) so much.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a car but I sold it a few months ago.
12. There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a cinema here but it was knocked down a few years ago.
13. In the old days we \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ have) electricity and things \_\_\_\_\_ (be) different from the way they are now.
14. After her husband died, the old woman had to \_\_\_\_\_ (live) on her own.
15. Most visitors to Britain \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ drive) on the left.

**X. Complete the conversations. Put in a *to*-infinitive or an *ing*-form.**

1. A: I hear you sometimes sail to France in your boat.  
B: That's right. I really enjoy sailing.
2. A: Are you going to organize our trip?  
B: Yes, of course. I've agreed \_\_\_\_\_ it.
3. A: You wear a uniform at work, don't you?  
B: Yes, I have to, although I dislike \_\_\_\_\_ it.
4. A: Do you think they'll approve the plan?  
B: Yes, I'm quite sure they'll decide \_\_\_\_\_ it.
5. A: What time will you be back?  
B: Oh, I expect \_\_\_\_\_ back sometime around nine.
6. A: Did I remind you about the dinner tonight?  
B: Yes, thank you. You keep \_\_\_\_\_ me.
7. A: Was your decision the right one, do you think?  
B: Yes, luckily. In the end it proved \_\_\_\_\_ the best thing for everyone.
8. A: Do you still work at the post office?  
B: No, I gave up \_\_\_\_\_ there last year.

9. A: Have ICM bought the company?

B: Well, they've offered \_\_\_\_\_ it.

10. A: I'm sorry you had to wait all that time.

B: Oh, it's all right. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_.

**XI. Complete the conversation. Put in the *to*-infinitive or *ing*-form.**

Matthew: Are we going to have a holiday this year?

Natasha: Didn't we all decide (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) our holiday on a Greek island?

Matthew: Lovely, I enjoy (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) on the beach. I might manage (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a suntan.

Daniel: I'd love a holiday. I can't wait (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) this place behind.

Emma: I don't fancy (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in one place all the time. I really dislike (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) on the beach all day.

Natasha: Well, I don't mind (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (tour) around somewhere.

Emma: Matthew, you promised (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Scotland with me. We were planning (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (hire) a car.

Matthew: Scotland? Are you sure? But I couldn't face (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) all the time.

Jessica: I'm afraid I can't afford (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) too much money.

Andrew: And I can't justify (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) all that time off from my studies.

**XII. Put in the *to*-infinitive or *ing*-form of these verbs.**

I used to like (1) going to our local cinema. It was old and rather uncomfortable, but it had character. Now they've stopped (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (show) films there. The owner would like (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) on (4); \_\_\_\_\_ (run) the cinema, but he would need (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a lot of improvements, which would mean (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) ten of thousands of pounds. I remember (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) the last film at the cinema. It was a murder mystery. It was five minutes from the end, and we were trying (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (work) out who the murderer was when suddenly all the lights went out and the film stopped. We sat in the dark for a few minutes, and then the owner appeared with a torch. 'I regret (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) you,' he said, 'that our electricity has failed. I don't mean (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (disappoint) you, but I'm afraid we can't show you the end of the

film. We've tried (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) the electricity company, but they say they can't help.' He went on (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (explain) to the audience how the film ended. I didn't understand the story. But I don't regret (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the cinema that evening.

### XIII. Put the verb into the correct form.

1. How old were you when you learned *to drive*? (drive)
2. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) home but I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a taxi.
3. I can't make a decision. I keep \_\_\_\_\_ (change) my mind.
4. He had made his decision and refused \_\_\_\_\_ (change) his mind.
5. The film was very sad. It made me \_\_\_\_\_ (cry).
6. It was a really good holiday. We really enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ (be) by the sea again.
7. They don't have much money. They can't afford \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out very often.
8. Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember \_\_\_\_\_ (say) that.
9. Remember \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) Tom tomorrow.
10. I pretended \_\_\_\_\_ be interested in the conversation but really it was very boring
11. The water here as not very good. I'd avoid \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) it if I were you.
12. I got up and look out of the window \_\_\_\_\_ (see) what the weather was like
13. I have a friend who claims \_\_\_\_\_ (be) able to speak five languages.
14. He likes \_\_\_\_\_ (think) carefully about things before \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a decision.
15. Steve used \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a footballer. He had to stop \_\_\_\_\_ (play) because of an injury.
16. After \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) by the police, the man admitted \_\_\_\_\_ (steal) the car but denied \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) at 100 miles an hour.
17. How do you make this machine (work)?  
~ I'm not sure. Try \_\_\_\_\_ (press) that button and see what happen.
18. They don't allow \_\_\_\_\_ (smoke) in the auditorium, they don't want \_\_\_\_\_ (risk) \_\_\_\_\_ (set) it on fire.
19. Would you like me \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) down the radio?  
~ No, it's all right. I'm used to \_\_\_\_\_ (work) with the radio on.

20. I always try \_\_\_\_\_ (come) in quietly but they always hear me \_\_\_\_\_ (go) up-stairs. It's impossible \_\_\_\_\_ (climb) an old wooden staircase at night without \_\_\_\_\_ (make) noise.

**XIV. Make sentences from the notes.**

1. Tessa/want/buy/a new coat/soon.      Tessa wants to buy a new coat soon.  
.....

2. we/ must/ avoid/ waste/ so much time  
.....

3. it/ not/ worth/ take/ a taxi  
.....

4. Jane/ like/ see/ the Rocky Mountain/ some day  
.....

5. I/not/fancy/go/for a walk  
.....

6. we/ mean/ give/ Judy/ a nice welcome/ yesterday  
.....

7. Tom/ not/ like/ swim/ much  
.....

8. I/ can't face/ get up/ at five/ tomorrow  
.....

9. last year/ we/ make/ an agreement/ work/ together  
.....

10. yesterday/ you/ promise/ carry on/ shoot/ the film  
.....

11. my father/ seem/ get/ better/ now  
.....

12. I'd rather/ you/ do/ the shopping  
.....

13. my mother/ not/ used/ walk/ so far  
.....

14. he/ insist/ show/ his photographs/ me  
.....



15. Bill/ suggest/ have/ dinner/ early

.....

**XV. Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first**

1. I was surprised I passed the exam. I didn't expect to pass the exam
2. Did you manage to get hold of the CD? Did you succeed \_\_\_\_\_
3. I don't read newspapers any more. I've given up \_\_\_\_\_
4. I'd prefer not to go out tonight. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_
5. My father said I could use his car. My father allowed \_\_\_\_\_
6. He can't walk very well. He has difficulty \_\_\_\_\_
7. Don't stop him doing what he wants. Let \_\_\_\_\_
8. He looks older when he wears glasses. Glasses make \_\_\_\_\_
9. They said I was a cheat. I was accused \_\_\_\_\_
10. At first I didn't like to apply for the job but Sarah persuaded me.  
Sarah persuaded \_\_\_\_\_
11. It will be good to see them again. I'm looking forward \_\_\_\_\_
12. I'm sorry that I didn't take your advice. I regret \_\_\_\_\_
13. My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police.  
My lawyer advised \_\_\_\_\_
14. It's a pity I couldn't go out with you. I'd like \_\_\_\_\_
15. I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says.  
I was warned \_\_\_\_\_

**XVI. Choose the correct forms of the verbs.**

1. Police found the woman to lie/ lying dead on the floor.
2. I don't mind to be shouted/ being shouted at by him. He threatened to sack/ sacking me last week, but he apologised very politely later.
3. We had arranged to meet/ meeting in my office so that he could check/ checking the documents.
4. We found it very difficult to work/ working with Gemma. She keeps forgetting to pass/ passing on important message, and she won't let anybody to help/ help her.

5. Thank you for invite/ inviting me to come and see you next month. I'm already excited about to see/ seeing you again.
6. Look! We aren't allowed to park/ parking here. The car needs to park/ parking on the right position.
7. I came here to see/ seeing Janet. She must have forgotten I was coming.  
~ It seems rather careless of her to forget/ forgetting.
8. You say you need some advice? -Yes, I'm sorry to bother/ bothering you, but I don't know who to ask/ to be asked.
9. I planned to visit/ visiting my parents last week, but they suggested to postpone/ postponing the visit for a week because they hadn't finished to decorate/ decorating the spare room.
10. The orator stopped talking/ to talk. He felt thirsty so he stopped to have/ having a drink.
11. I had difficulty to find/ finding way to solve the situation. ~ There's nothing you can do about this situation, so it's no use to worry/ worrying about it.
12. I congratulated Ann on to pass/ passing the exam. She spent a lot of time to study/ studying.
13. Did you accuse Nigel of to break/ breaking a plate?  
~ Well, I saw him knock/ knocking it off the table with his elbow.
14. Are you going to have a rest now after to do/ doing all the cleaning?  
~ No, I've got some letter to write/ writing.
15. I'm annoyed about to be/ being late.  
~ Well, I told you to set/ setting off in good time, didn't I?
16. She would like him to wear/ wearing a tie because they are going to a concert.
17. I'm sorry to keep/ keeping you to wait/ waiting. But I'm really afraid to go/ going out in the rain.
18. I can't read when I'm traveling. It makes me feel/ to feel sick, even in a train. I'd rather just look/ looking out of the window.
19. I need to know/ knowing what's in the letter. Why don't you let me read/ reading it?
20. We'd hate the house to be left/ being left empty.

## CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS)

### I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (DEFINITION):

Cụm động từ (phrasal verbs) là một động từ kết hợp với một trạng từ (adverb) hoặc một giới từ (preposition), hoặc đôi khi cả hai, để tạo thành một động từ mới thường có nghĩa đặc biệt.

Eg: come in (vào trong), take off (cởi ra), look forward to (mong chờ).....

### II. NGHĨA CỦA CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (MEANING OF PHRASAL VERBS):

Một số cụm động từ có nghĩa rõ ràng và dễ hiểu vì nghĩa của chúng dựa trên nghĩa thường dùng của động từ và trạng từ hoặc giới từ.

Eg: Would you like to **come in** and have a drink?

*(Anh vào nhà uống chút gì nhé?)*

The man in front **turned round** and stared at me.

*(Người đàn ông phía trước quay lại nhìn tôi chăm chăm.)*

Sally is leaving tomorrow and **coming back** on Saturday.

*(Ngày mai Sally sẽ đi và thứ bảy sẽ trở về.)*

Tuy nhiên phần lớn các cụm động từ (verb + adverb) thường có nghĩa đặc biệt – khác hẳn nghĩa của các từ riêng rẽ trong cụm.

Eg: We had to **put off** the meeting till Tuesday.

*(Chúng tôi đã phải hoãn buổi họp cho đến thứ ba.)*

[nghĩa của *put off* không giống nghĩa của *put* và *off*.]

Could you **look after** the kids while I'm out?

*(Cô có thể trông giúp bọn trẻ khi tôi đi vắng không?)*

[nghĩa của *look after* không giống nghĩa của *look* và *after*]

Một số cụm động từ có thể có nhiều nghĩa

Eg: The bomb **went off**. *(Quả bom phát nổ.)*

The lights **went off** last night. *(Tối qua đèn bị tắt.)*

The milk **went off** this morning. *(Sáng nay sữa bị chua.)*

### III. CÁCH DÙNG (USE):

Phần lớn các cụm động từ thường được dùng trong đàm thoại, thay cho những từ có cùng nghĩa nhưng nghe có vẻ trịnh trọng hơn. Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng cụm động từ trong lối viết thân mật như trong thư viết cho bạn bè hoặc người thân.

Eg: What time are you planning to **turn up**? [turn up = arrive]

(*Bạn định đến lúc mấy giờ?*) → thân mật

Please let us know when you plan to **arrive**.

(*Vui lòng cho chúng tôi biết ông định khi nào đến*) → trình trọng hơn

- Cụm động từ có thể là ngoại động từ (transitive) hoặc nội động từ (intransitive). Một số cụm động từ có thể được dùng cả hai cách.

Eg: She **tore up** the letter. (*Cô ấy xé lá thư.*) [transitive]

Shall we **eat out** tonight? (*Tối nay chúng ta ăn tiệm nhé?*) [intransitive]

He told me to **shut up**. (*Anh ta bảo tôi câm mồm.*) [intransitive]

Can't you **shut** the kids **up** for just five minutes?

(*Anh không thể bảo bọn trẻ im lặng 5 phút được à?*) [transitive]

- Một số cụm động từ có tân ngữ (objects) có thể tách rời động từ và trạng từ: nếu tân ngữ là danh từ thì ta có thể đặt tân ngữ ở trước hoặc sau trạng từ (adverbs)

Eg: She **tore** the letter **up**. Or: She **tore up** the letter. (*Cô ấy xé lá thư.*)

I'll **throw** these newspapers **away**. Or: I'll **throw away** these newspapers.

(*Tôi sẽ vứt những tờ báo này.*)

Nhưng nếu tân ngữ là đại từ (*me, it, him, them...*), tân ngữ luôn được đặt trước trạng từ.

Eg: She read the letter and then **tore it up**.

(*Cô ấy đọc lá thư rồi xé nó.*) [NOT ...~~tore up it~~]

Do you want these newspapers or shall I **throw them away**?

(*Bạn có cần những tờ báo này nữa không, nếu không thì tôi vứt chúng nhé?*)

[NOT ...~~throw away them~~]

- Một số cụm động từ có tân ngữ (objects) nhưng không thể tách rời động từ và trạng từ: tân ngữ luôn đứng sau trạng từ.

Eg: Sally **looks after her younger sister** while her mother's at work.

(*Sally chăm sóc em gái khi mẹ đi làm.*)

[NOT ...~~looks her younger sister after~~]

I **came across an old photo** in my drawer.

(*Tôi tình cờ tìm thấy một tấm ảnh trong ngăn kéo.*)

[NOT ...~~came an old photo across~~]

+ Tân ngữ là một cụm từ dài thường đứng sau trạng từ.

Eg: She **tore up all the letters he had sent her**.

(*Cô ấy xé tất cả những lá thư mà anh ta đã gửi cho cô ấy.*)

Why don't you **try on that dress in the window**?

(Sao bạn không thử chiếc áo trong ô kính?)

➤ Các cụm động từ có 3 thành phần (verb + adverb + preposition) thường có nghĩa đặc biệt và không thể tách rời.

Eg: Childrens **look forward to** Christmas. (Trẻ em mong chờ lễ Giáng sinh.)

You're walking too fast. I can't **keep up with** you.

(Anh đi nhanh quá. Tôi không thể theo kịp.)

#### IV. MỘT SỐ CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG DÙNG:

• **Account for**: là lý do hoặc giải thích nguyên nhân (điều gì đó tồn tại hoặc xảy ra)

Eg: His illness **accounted for** his absence.

(Đau ốm là lý do anh ấy vắng mặt.)

• **Bear out**: xác nhận, chứng thực (= confirm)

Eg: Some witnesses will **bear out** what I say.

(Một số nhân chứng sẽ chứng thực lời tôi nói.)

• **Blow out**: dập tắt (lửa) bằng cách thổi

Eg: The wind **blew out** the candle. (Gió thổi tắt nến.)

• **Blow up**: phá hủy (bằng bom, thuốc nổ)

Eg: The soldiers **blew up** the bridge so that the enemy couldn't follow them.

(Những người lính phá hủy cây cầu để quân địch không thể đuổi theo họ)

• **Break down**: (máy) hư, hỏng; (cửa, tường...) phá vỡ

Eg: His car **broke down** on the way to the airport.

(Xe của anh ấy bị hư trên đường ra phi trường.)

• **Break in/ into**: xông vào, đột nhập vào

Eg: Thieves **broke in/ into** while she was asleep and took all her jewellery.

(Bọn trộm đã đột nhập vào nhà khi bà ấy đang ngủ và lấy đi tất cả nữ trang.)

• **Break out**: bùng nổ, bùng phát

Eg: Civil war **broke out** in 1991 (Nội chiến bùng nổ năm 1991.)

• **Break off**: đột nhiên ngừng lại; kết thúc (một mối quan hệ, một cuộc thảo luận)

Eg: The two countries have **broken off** diplomatic relations.

(Hai nước đã phá vỡ mối quan hệ ngoại giao.)

- **Break up:** kết thúc (khóa học, năm học, cuộc họp, bữa tiệc...)

Eg: Some schools have already **broken up**, but we've got another week.

*(Một số trường đã kết thúc năm học, nhưng chúng tôi vẫn còn học một tuần nữa.)*

- **Bring in:** đưa ra, giới thiệu (= introduce)

Eg: They're going to **bring in** a new law against drinking and driving.

*(Họ sẽ đưa ra một đạo luật mới chống lại việc lái xe khi say.)*

- **Bring up:** nuôi nấng; dạy dỗ (= raise)

Eg: After his parents died, he was **brought up** by his grandmother.

*(Sau khi cha mẹ qua đời, anh ấy được bà nuôi dưỡng.)*

- **Burn down:** thiêu hủy, thiêu trụi

Eg: The mob **burnt** the embassy **down**.

*(Đám đông nổi loạn đã thiêu trụi tòa đại sứ.)*

- **Burst out:** bật (khóc, cười)

Eg: It was such a funny story – even the newsreader **burst out** laughing.

*(Câu chuyện thật buồn cười – ngay cả phát thanh viên cũng phải bật cười.)*

- **Call for:** ghé qua (để đón ai hoặc lấy cái gì)

Eg: He's **calling for** me at eight. (8 giờ anh ấy sẽ ghé qua đón tôi.)

- **Call in (on):** ghé thăm, ghé qua

Eg: **Call in** on your way home to tell me how the interview went.

*(Trên đường về nhà hãy ghé qua cho tôi biết cuộc phỏng vấn diễn ra như thế nào nhé.)*

- **Call off:** hủy bỏ (= cancel)

Eg: They had to **call off** the match as the ground was too wet to play on.

*(Họ phải hủy bỏ trận đấu vì mặt đất quá ướt không thể chơi.)*

- **Call on:** thăm; viếng thăm (= visit)

Eg: He stopped in Chicago to **call on** an old friend.

*(Ông ấy dừng ở Chicago để thăm một người bạn cũ.)*

- **Call up:** gọi điện thoại (= telephone)

Eg: I **called Tom up** and told him the news.

*(Tôi gọi cho Tom để báo cho anh ấy biết tin.)*

- **Carry on:** tiếp tục (= continue)

Eg: Everybody **carried on** working as usual.

*(Mọi người tiếp tục làm việc như bình thường.)*

- **Carry out:** tiến hành; thực hiện (= execute)

Eg: Police **carried out** a series of raids on the homes of drug dealers.

*(Cảnh sát đã thực hiện một loạt các cuộc đột kích vào hang ổ của bọn buôn ma túy.)*

- **Catch up/ catch up with:** bắt kịp, theo kịp

Eg: You've missed a whole term; you'll have to work hard to **catch up with** the rest of class.

*(Em đã vắng mặt cả một học kỳ; em sẽ phải học thật tích cực mới có thể theo kịp các bạn.)*

- **Clear up:** dọn dẹp (= tidy); (thời tiết) sáng sủa hơn

Eg: You must **clear** your room **up** every day. *(Con phải dọn phòng mỗi ngày.)*

- **Close down:** đóng cửa hẳn (một cửa hàng hoặc một doanh nghiệp)

Eg: Trade was so bad that many small shops **closed down**.

*(Việc kinh doanh trì trệ đến nỗi nhiều cửa hiệu nhỏ phải đóng cửa.)*

- **Come about:** xảy ra (= happen)

Eg: How did the argument **come about**?

*(Cuộc tranh luận diễn ra như thế nào?)*

- **Come across:** tình cờ gặp (người nào); tình cờ tìm thấy (vật gì)

Eg: I **came across** an old school friend this morning.

*(Sáng nay tôi tình cờ gặp lại một người bạn học cũ.)*

I **came across** her diary while I was tidying her room.

*(Tôi tình cờ tìm thấy nhật ký của cô ấy khi đang dọn phòng của cô ấy.)*

- **Come off:** thành công (= succeed)

Eg: Fortunately the plan **came off**. *(May thay kế hoạch đã thành công)*

- **Come along/ on:** nhanh lên

Eg: **Come on**, or we'll late. *(Nhanh lên, nếu không chúng ta sẽ bị trễ)*

- **Come over/ round:** ghé nhà

Eg: I'll **come over** after dinner and tell you the plan.

*(Sau bữa tối tôi sẽ qua nhà anh bàn kế hoạch.)*

- **Come up:** xảy ra, xuất hiện

Eg: I'm going to have to cancel our lunch – something is **come up**.

*(Tôi sẽ phải hủy bữa ăn trưa của chúng ta – có chuyện xảy ra.)*

- **Come up against:** gặp phải đương đầu

Eg: In the first week, we **came up against** a pretty tricky problem

*(Trong tuần đầu chúng tôi đã gặp phải một vấn đề khá phức tạp.)*

- **Come up (to):** đạt được, đáp ứng được

Eg: We loved the island, but the hotel didn't really **come up to** our expectation.  
(Chúng tôi thích hòn đảo, nhưng khách sạn thật sự không như chúng tôi mong đợi.)

- **Count on/ upon:** tin vào, dựa vào

Eg: You can **count on** me. I won't let you down.  
(Bạn có thể tin tôi. Tôi sẽ không làm bạn thất vọng.)

- **Cut down/ back (on):** giảm bớt (= reduce)

Eg: We need to **cut down (on)** our expenses.  
(Chúng ta cần giảm bớt các khoản chi tiêu.)

- **Cut off:** ngừng cung cấp (điện, nước, chất đốt...); cắt đứt (mối quan hệ gia đình, bạn bè)

Eg: The Company has **cut off** our electricity supply because we haven't paid our bill.  
(Công ty điện lực đã cắt điện nhà chúng tôi vì chúng tôi không thanh toán hóa đơn tiền điện.)

- **Die out:** mất hẳn; tuyệt chủng

Eg: Many wild plants and animals are in danger of **dying out**.  
(Nhiều thực vật và động vật hoang dã đang có nguy cơ bị tuyệt chủng.)

- **Do away with:** bỏ, hủy bỏ, bãi bỏ

Eg: They should **do away with** these useless traditions.  
(Họ nên bỏ những hủ tục này.)

- **Drop in (on):** ghé thăm, ghé qua (trong một khoảng thời gian ngắn)

Eg: I'll **drop in on** Jill on my way home.  
(Trên đường về nhà tôi sẽ ghé thăm Jill.)

- **Be fed up (with):** buồn phiền, chán, chán ngán

Eg: She got **fed up with** being treated like a servant.  
(Cô ấy thấy buồn vì bị đối xử như người ăn kẻ ở.)

- **Fill in:** điền thông tin vào

Eg: Please **fill** your name, address and telephone number **in** the form.  
(Hãy điền tên, địa chỉ và số điện thoại của bạn vào mẫu đơn này.)

- **Fix up:** sắp xếp, thu xếp (= arrange)

Eg: Can we **fix up** the time when we can meet?  
(Chúng ta sắp xếp thời gian gặp nhau nhé?)

- **Get by:** xoay sở, đối phó (= manage)



Eg: How does she **get by** on such a small salary?

(*Cô ấy xoay sở như thế nào với tiền lương ít ỏi như thế?*)

• **Get down:** làm chán nản, làm thất vọng

Eg: I'd been unemployed since I left college, and it was really **getting me down**.

(*Từ khi tốt nghiệp đại học đến nay tôi vẫn chưa có việc làm, và điều đó thật sự khiến tôi chán nản.*)

• **Get off:** xuống (xe buýt, xe lửa, máy bay, tàu...); rời đi; khởi hành

Eg: This is where I **get off** – I'll call you!

(*Tôi xuống ở đây – Tôi sẽ gọi điện thoại cho bạn nhé!*)

• **Get on:** lên (xe, tàu, máy bay...)

Eg: I **got on** the train at Glasgow. (*Tôi lên tàu tại Glasgow.*)

• **Get on with/ in:** sống, làm việc,...hòa thuận (với ai); xoay sở, làm (một việc, một tình huống)

Ex: How did you **get on in** the test? (*Bạn làm bài kiểm tra có tốt không?*)

• **Get over:** vượt qua, khắc phục

Eg: He used to be afraid of heights but he has **got over** that now

(*Trước đây anh ấy sợ độ cao nhưng nay anh ấy đã khắc phục được.*)

• **Get up:** thức dậy

Eg: What time do you **get up**? (*Mấy giờ bạn thức dậy?*)

• **Give out:** phân phát (= distribute)

Eg: Protesters were **giving out** leaflets in front of the embassy.

(*Những người biểu tình phát truyền đơn ngay trước tòa đại sứ.*)

• **Give up:** bỏ, từ bỏ (= stop)

Eg: He **gave up** alcohol over three years ago.

(*Ông ấy đã bỏ rượu cách đây 3 năm*)

• **Go away:** (con đau, vấn đề, điều khó chịu) biến mất, tan đi (= disappear)

Eg: After about an hour, the pain started to **go away**.

(*Sau khoảng một giờ thì cơn đau biến mất.*)

• **Go in for:** tham gia (cuộc thi đấu, kỳ thi) (= enter, compete)

Eg: I have decided to **go in for** the contest.

(*Tôi quyết định tham gia cuộc thi.*)

• **Go off:** (chuông) reo; (sung, bom) nổ; (sữa) chua; (thức ăn) ương, thối; (đèn) tắt; (máy móc) hư

Eg: A bomb **went off** in East London last night, killing two people.

(*Tối qua một quả bom phát nổ ở phía Đông Luân Đôn, làm chết hai người.*)

- **Go on:** tiếp tục (= continue)

Ex; If you **go on** like this, you'll end up in hospital.

*(Nếu anh cứ tiếp tục làm việc như thế này, thì anh sẽ phải vào bệnh viện đấy.)*

- **Go out:** (ánh sáng, lửa, đèn) tắt

Ex; The fire has **gone out**. (Lửa đã tắt)

- **Go over:** xem xét, kiểm tra (= examine)

Eg; He **went over** the plan again and discovered two very serious mistakes.

*(Anh ấy xem lại bản vẽ và phát hiện hai lỗi rất nghiêm trọng.)*

- **Grow up:** lớn lên, trưởng thành

Ex; The kids have all **grown up** now, so we want to move to a bigger house.

*(Giờ đây bọn trẻ đều đã lớn, nên chúng tôi muốn chuyển đến ngôi nhà lớn hơn)*

- **Hand in:** nộp, đệ trình (= submit)

Eg; All essays must be **handed in** by Friday.

*(Tất cả các bài luận phải được nộp vào thứ 6.)*

- **Hold on:** đợi (= wait)

Eg; Just **hold on** for a minute, please. (Vui lòng đợi một lát)

- **Hold up:** ngừng (= stop); hoãn lại (= delay)

Ex; My flight was **held up** because of the thick fog.

*(Chuyến bay của tôi bị hoãn vì sương mù dày đặc.)*

- **Keep on:** tiếp tục (= continue)

Eg; My sister **kept on** asking me question after question.

*(Em gái tôi cứ liên tục hỏi tôi hết câu này đến câu khác.)*

- **Keep up (with):** theo kịp, bắt kịp

Eg; She had to walk fast to **keep up with** him.

*(Cô ấy phải đi thật nhanh mới bắt kịp anh ta.)*

- **Leave out:** bỏ qua, bỏ sót, bỏ quên (= omit)

Eg; Right at the end of the exam, I realized I'd **left out** something important.

*(Ngay khi thi xong, tôi nhận ra tôi đã bỏ sót một điều quan trọng.)*

- **Let down:** làm thất vọng

Eg; Joey promised he'd phone today, but he **let me down** again.

*(Joey hứa hôm nay sẽ gọi điện, nhưng anh ấy lại làm tôi thất vọng.)*

- **Look after:** chăm sóc, trông nom (= take care of)

Ex; Will you **look after** my parrot when I'm away?

*(Khi tôi đi vắng, nhờ anh trông giúp con vẹt nhé?)*

- **Look back (on):** nhớ, nhớ lại (= remember)

Ex: I **look back on** my childhood with a great deal of happiness.

*(Tôi thấy rất hạnh phúc khi nhớ lại thời thơ ấu của mình.)*

- **Look down on:** coi thường

Eg: Adam always felt that we **looked down on** him because he hadn't been to university.

*(Adam luôn có cảm giác chúng tôi coi thường anh ấy vì anh ấy không học đại học.)*

- **Look for:** tìm kiếm (= search for, seek)

Eg: What are you **looking for**? *(Anh đang tìm gì vậy?)*

- **Look forward to:** mong đợi

Ex; I'm really **looking forward to** seeing my family again.

*(Tôi rất mong được gặp lại gia đình.)*

- **Look into:** điều tra (= investigate)

Ex; There is a mystery about his death and the police are **looking into** it.

*(Cái chết của ông ta có điều gì đó bí mật nên cảnh sát đang điều tra.)*

- **Look on/ upon:** xem như, coi như

Eg: We've always **looked on** Jack as one of the family.

*(Chúng tôi luôn xem Jack như người trong gia đình.)*

- **Look out:** coi chừng (dùng để cảnh báo)

Eg: **Look out!** There's a lorry coming! *(Coi chừng! xe tải đang đến kia!)*

- **Look up:** tìm; tra cứu (trong sách, từ điển...)

Eg: If you don't know what the word means, **look it up** in a dictionary.

*(Nếu bạn không biết từ này có nghĩa gì, hãy tra nó trong từ điển.)*

- **Look up to:** coi trọng, kính trọng, ngưỡng mộ

Ex; Schoolboys usually **look up to** great athletes.

*(Các nam sinh thường ngưỡng mộ các vận động viên có tên tuổi.)*

- **Make out:** hiểu được, đọc được, nghe rõ, nhìn thấy rõ

Eg: I can't **make out** if it's a man or woman over there.

*(Tôi không thấy rõ người đứng ở kia là đàn ông hay đàn bà.)*

I can't **make out** why she did that, can you?

*(Tôi không hiểu tại sao cô ấy lại làm thế, anh có hiểu không?)*

- **Make up:** bịa đặt, sáng tác (một câu chuyện, một bài thơ...) (= invent); trang điểm, hóa trang

Eg: I don't believe your story. I think you are just **making it up**.

*(Tôi không tin câu chuyện của anh. Tôi cho là anh đang bịa chuyện.)*

She takes forever to **make up** in the morning.

(Buổi sáng cô ấy trang điểm rất lâu.)

- **Make up for:** bù, đền bù (= compensate for)

Eg: You'll work very hard today to **make up for** the time you wasted yesterday.

(Hôm nay bạn sẽ phải làm việc cật lực để bù lại khoảng thời gian bạn đã phung phí hôm qua.)

- **Pick out:** chọn, chọn ra; nhận ra (trong một nhóm người hoặc vật)

Ex: Here are six rings. **Pick out** the one you like best.

(Ở đây có 6 chiếc nhẫn. Hãy chọn chiếc bạn thích nhất.)

I know that you are in this photograph but I can't **pick you out**.

(Tôi biết là có bạn trong tấm hình này, nhưng tôi không thể nhận ra bạn.)

- **Pick up:** đón ai (bằng xe); cho đi nhờ xe

Ex: I won't have time to come to your house but I could **pick you up** at the end of the road.

(Tôi không có thời gian đến nhà bạn, nhưng tôi có thể đón bạn ở cuối đường.)

- **Pull down:** phá hủy, phá sập (= demolish)

Eg: The old houses were **pulled down** to build the trade center.

(Những ngôi nhà cũ bị phá sập để xây trung tâm thương mại.)

- **Put aside/ by:** để dành, dành dụm (tiền)

Eg: Don't spend all your salary. Try to **put something by** each month.

(Đừng tiêu hết tiền lương. Mỗi tháng cố dành dụm một ít.)

- **Put forward:** đề nghị; gợi ý (= suggest)

Eg: A number of theories were **put forward** about the cause of his death.

(Một số giả thuyết về nguyên nhân cái chết của ông ta đã được đưa ra.)

- **Put in for:** đòi hỏi, yêu sách, xin

Eg: Why don't you **put in for** a pay rise? (Sao anh không đòi tăng lương?)

- **Put off:** hoãn lại (= postpone, delay)

Eg: I'll **put off** my visit to Scotland till the weather is warmer.

(Tôi sẽ hoãn chuyến đi Scotland cho đến khi thời tiết ấm hơn.)

- **Put on:** mặc (quần áo), mang (giày), đội (mũ), mở (đèn hoặc các thiết bị điện), tăng (cân)

Eg: She **put on** her coat and went outside.

(Cô ấy mặc áo khoác vào rồi đi ra ngoài.)

She **put on** the kettle for her morning cup of coffee.

(Cô ấy bật ấm điện pha cà phê sáng.)

- **Put out:** tắt (đèn, lửa), (= extinguish)

Eg: Please stay in your seats and **put out** your cigarettes.

*(Vui lòng ngồi tại chỗ và tắt hết thuốc lá.)*

- **Put up:** dựng, xây dựng (= erect)

Eg: He **put up** a shed in the garden. (Ông ấy dựng một nhà kho trong vườn)

- **Put up with:** chịu đựng

Eg: I'm surprised that she's **put up with** him for so long.

*(Tôi ngạc nhiên là cô ấy chịu đựng được anh ta lâu đến thế.)*

- **Run across/ into:** tình cờ gặp (ai), tình cờ thấy (cái gì)

Eg: He **ran across** his old friend as he was coming out of a restaurant.

*(Khi đang ra khỏi nhà hàng, anh ấy tình cờ gặp một người bạn cũ.)*

- **Run out (of):** hết, cạn kiệt

Eg: I **run out of** milk. Put some lemon in your tea instead.

*(Tôi hết sữa rồi. Thay cho sữa, hãy cho một ít chanh vào trà của bạn)*

- **See off:** tiễn (ai)

Ex; My best friend Judy came to the airport to **see me off**.

*(Bạn thân Judy của tôi đã ra sân bay tiễn tôi)*

- **See through:** nhận ra, thấy rõ (bản chất con người hoặc sự việc)

Eg: Eventually I **saw through** her lies and ended the relationship.

*(Cuối cùng tôi cũng nhận ra những lời dối trá của cô ta nên đã cắt đứt quan hệ)*

- **Sell off:** bán giảm giá (hàng tồn kho)

Eg: We are **selling off** the remainder of our stock.

*(Chúng tôi đang bán giảm giá số hàng tồn kho)*

- **Send for:** mời đến, gọi đến, triệu tập (= summon)

Eg: The director **sent for** me and asked for an explanation.

*(Giám đốc gọi tôi đến và yêu cầu giải thích)*

- **Send out:** gửi đi, phân phát (= distribute)

Eg: The papers had all been **sent out**. *(Tất cả báo đã được phân phát.)*

- **Set off/ out:** khởi hành

Ex; I wanted to **set off** early to avoid the traffic jam.

*(Tôi muốn khởi hành sớm để khỏi bị kẹt xe.)*

- **Set up:** lập, thành lập (= establish)

Eg: The United Nations was **set up** to settle conflicts peacefully.

*(Liên Hợp Quốc được thành lập để giải quyết các cuộc xung đột một cách hòa bình.)*

- **Show around/ round:** đưa đi tham quan

Eg: Our guides will **show you round** the museum.

*(Hướng dẫn viên của chúng tôi sẽ đưa các bạn đi thăm viện bảo tàng.)*

- **Show off:** phô trương, khoe khoang (kỹ năng, kiến thức...) (= display)

Eg: He is always picking up very heavy things just to **show off** his strength.

*(Anh ta luôn nhắc những vật rất nặng chỉ để phô trương sức mạnh của mình.)*

- **Show up:** đến (= arrive)

Eg: We spent half an hour waiting for Martin to **show up**.

*(Chúng tôi mất cả nửa giờ để đợi Martin đến.)*

- **Shut up:** ngừng nói, làm cho ngừng nói

Eg: I can't stand that woman – she never **shut up**.

*(Tôi không thể chịu đựng được người đàn bà đó – bà ta nói liên tục.)*

- **Stand for:** thay thế cho, tượng trưng cho, đại diện cho (= represent)

Eg: In literature, the swan has **stood for** purity and virtue.

*(Trong văn chương, thiên nga tượng trưng cho sự tinh khiết và trong sáng.)*

- **Stand out:** nổi bật

Eg: She **stood out** from the crowd because of her height and her flaming red hair.

*(Cô ấy nổi bật giữa đám đông nhờ chiều cao và mái tóc đỏ rực của mình.)*

- **Take after:** giống (= resemble)

Ex; Daisy's really pretty. She **takes after** her mother.

*(Daisy thật xinh đẹp. Cô ấy giống hệt mẹ.)*

- **Take off:** cởi (quần áo, giày, mũ...); (máy bay) cất cánh

Eg: He **took off** his coat when he entered the house and put it on again when he went out.

*(Khi vào nhà anh ấy cởi áo khoác ra và khi ra ngoài anh ấy lại mặc áo vào.)*

The plane **took off** into the night sky.

*(Máy bay cất cánh bay vào bầu trời đêm.)*

- **Take on:** nhận, đảm nhận (công việc)

Eg: Don't **take on** too much work – The extra cash isn't worth it.

*(Đừng nhận quá nhiều việc – Tiền phụ trợ chẳng đáng bao nhiêu đâu.)*

- **Take over:** đảm nhiệm, tiếp tục

Ex; We stop work at ten o'clock and the night shift **takes over** until the following morning.

*(Chúng tôi nghỉ việc lúc 10 giờ và ca đêm sẽ tiếp tục tới sáng hôm sau.)*

- **Take up:** chiếm (thời gian, không gian, sức lực...)

Ex: The grand piano **takes up** most of the space in the room.

*(Cây đại dương cầm chiếm gần hết căn phòng.)*

- **Talk over:** thảo luận, bàn luận (= discuss)

Eg: **Talk it over** with your wife and give me your answer tomorrow.

*(Hãy bàn với vợ anh rồi cho tôi câu trả lời vào ngày mai.)*

- **Think over:** suy nghĩ kỹ; cân nhắc (= consider)

Eg: I'll **think over** your idea and let you know what I decide.

*(Tôi sẽ nghĩ kỹ về ý kiến của anh rồi sẽ cho anh biết quyết định của tôi.)*

- **Throw away/ out:** ném đi, vứt đi (= discard)

Eg: **Throw away** those old shoes. (Hãy vứt đôi giày cũ đó đi)

- **Try on:** mặc thử (quần áo)

Eg: I like this dress. Could I **try it on**?

*(Tôi thích cái áo này. Tôi mặc thử được không?)*

- **Turn down:** từ chối (= refuse); bác bỏ, loại bỏ (= reject)

Eg: He was offered £500 for the picture but he **turned it down**.

*(Có người đề nghị trả 500 bảng cho bức tranh nhưng anh ấy đã từ chối.)*

They **turned me down/ turned down** my application because I didn't know German.

*(Họ đã loại tôi/ bác đơn xin việc của tôi vì tôi không biết tiếng Đức.)*

- **Turn into:** trở thành, biến thành, chuyển thành (= convert)

Ex: I'm going to **turn** my garage **into** a playroom for the children.

*(Tôi sẽ biến nhà để xe của tôi thành phòng chơi cho bọn trẻ.)*

- **Turn off:** tắt, khóa (đèn, máy móc, động cơ, bếp gas, vòi nước...)

Eg: Don't forget to **turn off** all the lights when you go to bed.

*(Đừng quên tắt hết đèn khi đi ngủ.)*

- **Turn on:** mở, bật (đèn, máy móc, động cơ, bếp gas, vòi nước...)

Eg: I **turned on** the television and watched the World News.

*(Tôi mở ti vi xem tin thế giới.)*

- **Turn up:** đến (= arrive); xuất hiện (= appear)

Ex: We arranged to meet at the station but she didn't **turn up**.

*(Chúng tôi hẹn gặp nhau tại nhà ga nhưng cô ấy đã không đến.)*

- **Turn up/ down:** tăng/ giảm (âm lượng, nhiệt độ, áp suất, ánh sáng, v.v của các thiết bị, máy móc)

Eg: **Turn up** the gas; it is too low.

*(Hãy vặn bếp ga lớn lên, lửa thấp quá.)*

Could you **turn** that music **down** a little? We can't hear ourselves speak!  
(Anh vặn nhạc nhỏ một chút có được không? Chúng tôi không nghe được tiếng của chính mình nữa.)

- **Wash up:** rửa bát đĩa

Eg: Since you made lunch, I'll **wash up**.

(Vì bạn đã làm cơm trưa, nên tôi sẽ rửa bát đĩa.)

- **Wear out:** làm mòn, làm rách, làm kiệt sức

Eg: Children **wear out** their shoes very quickly.

(Trẻ em mang giày rất mau mòn.)

She was **worn out** from taking care of her sick mother.

(Cô ấy kiệt sức vì phải chăm sóc người mẹ đau ốm.)

- **Work out:** tính toán (= calculate)

Ex; I'm trying to **work out** how much money I've spent.

(Tôi đang cố tính xem tôi đã tiêu hết bao nhiêu tiền.)





15. Bill/ suggest/ have/ dinner/ early

.....

**XV. Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first**

1. I was surprised I passed the exam. I didn't expect to pass the exam
2. Did you manage to get hold of the CD? Did you succeed \_\_\_\_\_
3. I don't read newspapers any more. I've given up \_\_\_\_\_
4. I'd prefer not to go out tonight. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_
5. My father said I could use his car. My father allowed \_\_\_\_\_
6. He can't walk very well. He has difficulty \_\_\_\_\_
7. Don't stop him doing what he wants. Let \_\_\_\_\_
8. He looks older when he wears glasses. Glasses make \_\_\_\_\_
9. They said I was a cheat. I was accused \_\_\_\_\_
10. At first I didn't like to apply for the job but Sarah persuaded me.  
Sarah persuaded \_\_\_\_\_
11. It will be good to see them again. I'm looking forward \_\_\_\_\_
12. I'm sorry that I didn't take your advice. I regret \_\_\_\_\_
13. My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police.  
My lawyer advised \_\_\_\_\_
14. It's a pity I couldn't go out with you. I'd like \_\_\_\_\_
15. I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says.  
I was warned \_\_\_\_\_

**XVI. Choose the correct forms of the verbs.**

1. Police found the woman to lie/ lying dead on the floor.
2. I don't mind to be shouted/ being shouted at by him. He threatened to sack/ sacking me last week, but he apologised very politely later.
3. We had arranged to meet/ meeting in my office so that he could check/ checking the documents.
4. We found it very difficult to work/ working with Gemma. She keeps forgetting to pass/ passing on important message, and she won't let anybody to help/ help her.

5. Thank you for invite/ inviting me to come and see you next month. I'm already excited about to see/ seeing you again.
6. Look! We aren't allowed to park/ parking here. The car needs to park/ parking on the right position.
7. I came here to see/ seeing Janet. She must have forgotten I was coming.  
~ It seems rather careless of her to forget/ forgetting.
8. You say you need some advice? -Yes, I'm sorry to bother/ bothering you, but I don't know who to ask/ to be asked.
9. I planned to visit/ visiting my parents last week, but they suggested to postpone/ postponing the visit for a week because they hadn't finished to decorate/ decorating the spare room.
10. The orator stopped talking/ to talk. He felt thirsty so he stopped to have/ having a drink.
11. I had difficulty to find/ finding way to solve the situation. ~ There's nothing you can do about this situation, so it's no use to worry/ worrying about it.
12. I congratulated Ann on to pass/ passing the exam. She spent a lot of time to study/ studying.
13. Did you accuse Nigel of to break/ breaking a plate?  
~ Well, I saw him knock/ knocking it off the table with his elbow.
14. Are you going to have a rest now after to do/ doing all the cleaning?  
~ No, I've got some letter to write/ writing.
15. I'm annoyed about to be/ being late.  
~ Well, I told you to set/ setting off in good time, didn't I?
16. She would like him to wear/ wearing a tie because they are going to a concert.
17. I'm sorry to keep/ keeping you to wait/ waiting. But I'm really afraid to go/ going out in the rain.
18. I can't read when I'm traveling. It makes me feel/ to feel sick, even in a train. I'd rather just look/ looking out of the window.
19. I need to know/ knowing what's in the letter. Why don't you let me read/ reading it?
20. We'd hate the house to be left/ being left empty.

## CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS)

### I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (DEFINITION):

Cụm động từ (phrasal verbs) là một động từ kết hợp với một trạng từ (adverb) hoặc một giới từ (preposition), hoặc đôi khi cả hai, để tạo thành một động từ mới thường có nghĩa đặc biệt.

Eg: come in (vào trong), take off (cởi ra), look forward to (mong chờ).....

### II. NGHĨA CỦA CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (MEANING OF PHRASAL VERBS):

Một số cụm động từ có nghĩa rõ ràng và dễ hiểu vì nghĩa của chúng dựa trên nghĩa thường dùng của động từ và trạng từ hoặc giới từ.

Eg: Would you like to **come in** and have a drink?

*(Anh vào nhà uống chút gì nhé?)*

The man in front **turned round** and stared at me.

*(Người đàn ông phía trước quay lại nhìn tôi chăm chăm.)*

Sally is leaving tomorrow and **coming back** on Saturday.

*(Ngày mai Sally sẽ đi và thứ bảy sẽ trở về.)*

Tuy nhiên phần lớn các cụm động từ (verb + adverb) thường có nghĩa đặc biệt – khác hẳn nghĩa của các từ riêng rẽ trong cụm.

Eg: We had to **put off** the meeting till Tuesday.

*(Chúng tôi đã phải hoãn buổi họp cho đến thứ ba.)*

[nghĩa của **put off** không giống nghĩa của **put** và **off**.]

Could you **look after** the kids while I'm out?

*(Cô có thể trông giúp bọn trẻ khi tôi đi vắng không?)*

[nghĩa của **look after** không giống nghĩa của **look** và **after**]

Một số cụm động từ có thể có nhiều nghĩa

Eg: The bomb **went off**. *(Quả bom phát nổ.)*

The lights **went off** last night. *(Tối qua đèn bị tắt.)*

The milk **went off** this morning. *(Sáng nay sữa bị chua.)*

### III. CÁCH DÙNG (USE):

Phần lớn các cụm động từ thường được dùng trong đàm thoại, thay cho những từ có cùng nghĩa nhưng nghe có vẻ trịnh trọng hơn. Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng cụm động từ trong lối viết thân mật như trong thư viết cho bạn bè hoặc người thân.

Eg: What time are you planning to **turn up**? [turn up = arrive]

(*Bạn định đến lúc mấy giờ?*) → thân mật

Please let us know when you plan to **arrive**.

(*Vui lòng cho chúng tôi biết ông định khi nào đến*) → trịnh trọng hơn

➤ Cụm động từ có thể là ngoại động từ (transitive) hoặc nội động từ (intransitive). Một số cụm động từ có thể được dùng cả hai cách.

Eg: She **tore up** the letter. (*Cô ấy xé lá thư.*) [transitive]

Shall we **eat out** tonight? (*Tối nay chúng ta ăn tiệm nhé?*) [intransitive]

He told me to **shut up**. (*Anh ta bảo tôi câm mồm.*) [intransitive]

Can't you **shut** the kids **up** for just five minutes?

(*Anh không thể bảo bọn trẻ im lặng 5 phút được à?*) [transitive]

➤ Một số cụm động từ có tân ngữ (objects) có thể tách rời động từ và trạng từ: nếu tân ngữ là danh từ thì ta có thể đặt tân ngữ ở trước hoặc sau trạng từ (adverbs)

Eg: She **tore** the letter **up**. Or: She **tore up** the letter. (*Cô ấy xé lá thư.*)

I'll **throw** these newspapers **away**. Or: I'll **throw away** these newspapers.

(*Tôi sẽ vứt những tờ báo này.*)

Nhưng nếu tân ngữ là đại từ (*me, it, him, them...*), tân ngữ luôn được đặt trước trạng từ.

Eg: She read the letter and then **fore it up**.

(*Cô ấy đọc lá thư rồi xé nó.*) [NOT ...~~tore up it~~]

Do you want these newspapers or shall I **throw them away**?

(*Bạn có cần những tờ báo này nữa không, nếu không thì tôi vứt chúng nhé?*)

[NOT ...~~throw away them~~]

➤ Một số cụm động từ có tân ngữ (objects) nhưng không thể tách rời động từ và trạng từ: tân ngữ luôn đứng sau trạng từ.

Eg: Sally **looks after** her younger sister while her mother's at work.

(*Sally chăm sóc em gái khi mẹ đi làm.*)

[NOT ...~~looks her younger sister after~~]

I **came across** an old photo in my drawer.

(*Tôi tình cờ tìm thấy một tấm ảnh trong ngăn kéo.*)

[NOT ...~~came an old photo across~~]

+ Tân ngữ là một cụm từ dài thường đứng sau trạng từ.

Eg: She **tore up all the letters he had sent her**.

(*Cô ấy xé tất cả những lá thư mà anh ta đã gửi cho cô ấy.*)

Why don't you **try on that dress in the window**?

(Sao bạn không thử chiếc áo trong ô kính?)

➤ Các cụm động từ có 3 thành phần (verb + adverb + preposition) thường có nghĩa đặc biệt và không thể tách rời.

Eg: Childrens **look forward to** Christmas. (Trẻ em mong chờ lễ Giáng sinh.)

You're walking too fast. I can't **keep up with** you.

(Anh đi nhanh quá. Tôi không thể theo kịp.)

#### IV. MỘT SỐ CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG DÙNG:

• **Account for**: là lý do hoặc giải thích nguyên nhân (điều gì đó tồn tại hoặc xảy ra)

Eg: His illness **accounted for** his absence.

(Đau ốm là lý do anh ấy vắng mặt.)

• **Bear out**: xác nhận, chứng thực (= confirm)

Eg: Some witnesses will **bear out** what I say.

(Một số nhân chứng sẽ chứng thực lời tôi nói.)

• **Blow out**: dập tắt (lửa) bằng cách thổi

Eg: The wind **blew out** the candle. (Gió thổi tắt nến.)

• **Blow up**: phá hủy (bằng bom, thuốc nổ)

Eg: The soldiers **blew up** the bridge so that the enemy couldn't follow them.

(Những người lính phá hủy cây cầu để quân địch không thể đuổi theo họ)

• **Break down**: (máy) hư, hỏng; (cửa, tường...) phá vỡ

Eg: His car **broke down** on the way to the airport.

(Xe của anh ấy bị hư trên đường ra phi trường.)

• **Break in/ into**: xông vào, đột nhập vào

Eg: Thieves **broke in/ into** while she was asleep and took all her jewellery.

(Bọn trộm đã đột nhập vào nhà khi bà ấy đang ngủ và lấy đi tất cả nữ trang.)

• **Break out**: bùng nổ, bùng phát

Eg: Civil war **broke out** in 1991 (Nội chiến bùng nổ năm 1991.)

• **Break off**: đột nhiên ngưng lại; kết thúc (một mối quan hệ, một cuộc thảo luận)

Eg: The two countries have **broken off** diplomatic relations.

(Hai nước đã phá vỡ mối quan hệ ngoại giao.)

- **Break up:** kết thúc (khóa học, năm học, cuộc họp, bữa tiệc...)  
Eg: Some schools have already **broken up**, but we've got another week.  
(Một số trường đã kết thúc năm học, nhưng chúng tôi vẫn còn học một tuần nữa.)
- **Bring in:** đưa ra, giới thiệu (= introduce)  
Eg: They're going to **bring in** a new law against drinking and driving.  
(Họ sẽ đưa ra một đạo luật mới chống lại việc lái xe khi say.)
- **Bring up:** nuôi nấng; dạy dỗ (= raise)  
Eg: After his parents died, he was **brought up** by his grandmother.  
(Sau khi cha mẹ qua đời, anh ấy được bà nuôi dưỡng.)
- **Burn down:** thiêu hủy, thiêu trụi  
Eg: The mob **burnt** the embassy **down**.  
(Đám đông nổi loạn đã thiêu trụi tòa đại sứ.)
- **Burst out:** bật (khóc, cười)  
Eg: It was such a funny story – even the newsreader **burst out** laughing.  
(Câu chuyện thật buồn cười – ngay cả phát thanh viên cũng phải bật cười.)
- **Call for:** ghé qua (để đón ai hoặc lấy cái gì)  
Eg: He's **calling for** me at eight. (8 giờ anh ấy sẽ ghé qua đón tôi.)
- **Call in (on):** ghé thăm, ghé qua  
Eg: **Call in** on your way home to tell me how the interview went.  
(Trên đường về nhà hãy ghé qua cho tôi biết cuộc phỏng vấn diễn ra như thế nào nhé.)
- **Call off:** hủy bỏ (= cancel)  
Eg: They had to **call off** the match as the ground was too wet to play on.  
(Họ phải hủy bỏ trận đấu vì mặt đất quá ướt không thể chơi.)
- **Call on:** thăm; viếng thăm (= visit)  
Eg: He stopped in Chicago to **call on** an old friend.  
(Ông ấy dừng ở Chicago để thăm một người bạn cũ.)
- **Call up:** gọi điện thoại (= telephone)  
Eg: I **called** Tom **up** and told him the news.  
(Tôi gọi cho Tom để báo cho anh ấy biết tin.)
- **Carry on:** tiếp tục (= continue)  
Eg: Everybody **carried on** working as usual.  
(Mọi người tiếp tục làm việc như bình thường.)

- **Carry out:** tiến hành; thực hiện (= execute)

Eg: Police **carried out** a series of raids on the homes of drug dealers.

*(Cảnh sát đã thực hiện một loạt các cuộc đột kích vào hang ổ của bọn buôn ma túy.)*

- **Catch up/ catch up with:** bắt kịp, theo kịp

Eg: You've missed a whole term; you'll have to work **hard to catch up with** the rest of class.

*(Em đã vắng mặt cả một học kỳ; em sẽ phải học thật tích cực mới có thể theo kịp các bạn.)*

- **Clear up:** dọn dẹp (= tidy); (thời tiết) sáng sủa hơn

Eg: You must **clear** your room **up** every day. *(Con phải dọn phòng mỗi ngày.)*

- **Close down:** đóng cửa hẳn (một cửa hàng hoặc một doanh nghiệp)

Eg: Trade was so bad that many small shops **closed down**.

*(Việc kinh doanh trì trệ đến nỗi nhiều cửa hiệu nhỏ phải đóng cửa.)*

- **Come about:** xảy ra (= happen)

Eg: How did the argument **come about**?

*(Cuộc tranh luận diễn ra như thế nào?)*

- **Come across:** tình cờ gặp (người nào); tình cờ tìm thấy (vật gì)

Eg: I **came across** an old school friend this morning.

*(Sáng nay tôi tình cờ gặp lại một người bạn học cũ.)*

I **came across** her diary while I was tidying her room.

*(Tôi tình cờ tìm thấy nhật ký của cô ấy khi đang dọn phòng của cô ấy.)*

- **Come off:** thành công (= succeed)

Eg: Fortunately the plan **came off**. *(May thay kế hoạch đã thành công)*

- **Come along/ on:** nhanh lên

Eg: **Come on**, or we'll late. *(Nhanh lên, nếu không chúng ta sẽ bị trễ)*

- **Come over/ round:** ghé nhà

Eg: I'll **come over** after dinner and tell you the plan.

*(Sau bữa tối tôi sẽ qua nhà anh bàn kế hoạch.)*

- **Come up:** xảy ra, xuất hiện

Eg: I'm going to have to cancel our lunch – something is **come up**.

*(Tôi sẽ phải hủy bữa ăn trưa của chúng ta – có chuyện xảy ra.)*

- **Come up against:** gặp phải đương đầu

Eg: In the first week, we **came up against** a pretty tricky problem

*(Trong tuần đầu chúng tôi đã gặp phải một vấn đề khá phức tạp.)*

- **Come up (to):** đạt được, đáp ứng được

Eg: We loved the island, but the hotel didn't really **come up to** our expectation.  
(Chúng tôi thích hòn đảo, nhưng khách sạn thật sự không như chúng tôi mong đợi.)

- **Count on/ upon:** tin vào, dựa vào

Eg: You can **count on** me. I won't let you down.  
(Bạn có thể tin tôi. Tôi sẽ không làm bạn thất vọng.)

- **Cut down/ back (on):** giảm bớt (= reduce)

Eg: We need to **cut down (on)** our expenses.  
(Chúng ta cần giảm bớt các khoản chi tiêu.)

- **Cut off:** ngừng cung cấp (điện, nước, chất đốt...); cắt đứt (mối quan hệ gia đình, bạn bè)

Eg: The Company has **cut off** our electricity supply because we haven't paid our bill.  
(Công ty điện lực đã cắt điện nhà chúng tôi vì chúng tôi không thanh toán hóa đơn tiền điện.)

- **Die out:** mất hẳn; tuyệt chủng

Eg: Many wild plants and animals are in danger of **dying out**.  
(Nhiều thực vật và động vật hoang dã đang có nguy cơ bị tuyệt chủng.)

- **Do away with:** bỏ, hủy bỏ, bãi bỏ

Eg: They should **do away with** these useless traditions.  
(Họ nên bỏ những hủ tục này.)

- **Drop in (on):** ghé thăm, ghé qua (trong một khoảng thời gian ngắn)

Eg: I'll **drop in on** Jill on my way home.  
(Trên đường về nhà tôi sẽ ghé thăm Jill.)

- **Be fed up (with):** buồn phiền, chán, chán ngán

Eg: She got **fed up with** being treated like a servant.  
(Cô ấy thấy buồn vì bị đối xử như người ăn kẻ ở.)

- **Fill in:** điền thông tin vào

Eg: Please **fill** your name, address and telephone number **in** the form.  
(Hãy điền tên, địa chỉ và số điện thoại của bạn vào mẫu đơn này.)

- **Fix up:** sắp xếp, thu xếp (= arrange)

Eg: Can we **fix up** the time when we can meet?  
(Chúng ta sắp xếp thời gian gặp nhau nhé?)

- **Get by:** xoay sở, đối phó (= manage)



Eg: How does she **get by** on such a small salary?

(*Cô ấy xoay sở như thế nào với tiền lương ít ỏi như thế?*)

- **Get down:** làm chán nản, làm thất vọng

Eg: I'd been unemployed since I left college, and it was really **getting me down**.

(*Từ khi tốt nghiệp đại học đến nay tôi vẫn chưa có việc làm, và điều đó thật sự khiến tôi chán nản.*)

- **Get off:** xuống (xe buýt, xe lửa, máy bay, tàu...); rời đi; khởi hành

Eg: This is where I **get off** – I'll call you!

(*Tôi xuống ở đây – Tôi sẽ gọi điện thoại cho bạn nhé!*)

- **Get on:** lên (xe, tàu, máy bay...)

Eg: I **got on** the train at Glasgow. (*Tôi lên tàu tại Glasgow.*)

- **Get on with/ in:** sống, làm việc,...hòa thuận (với ai); xoay sở, làm (một việc, một tình huống)

Ex: How did you **get on in** the test? (*Bạn làm bài kiểm tra có tốt không?*)

- **Get over:** vượt qua, khắc phục

Eg: He used to be afraid of heights but he has **got over** that now

(*Trước đây anh ấy sợ độ cao nhưng nay anh ấy đã khắc phục được.*)

- **Get up:** thức dậy

Eg: What time do you **get up**? (*Mấy giờ bạn thức dậy?*)

- **Give out:** phân phát (= distribute)

Eg: Protesters were **giving out** leaflets in front of the embassy.

(*Những người biểu tình phát truyền đơn ngay trước tòa đại sứ.*)

- **Give up:** bỏ, từ bỏ (= stop)

Eg: He **gave up** alcohol over three years ago.

(*Ông ấy đã bỏ rượu cách đây 3 năm*)

- **Go away:** (con đau, vấn đề, điều khó chịu) biến mất, tan đi (= disappear)

Eg: After about an hour, the pain started to **go away**.

(*Sau khoảng một giờ thì cơn đau biến mất.*)

- **Go in for:** tham gia (cuộc thi đấu, kỳ thi) (= enter, compete)

Eg: I have decided to **go in for** the contest.

(*Tôi quyết định tham gia cuộc thi.*)

- **Go off:** (chuông) reo; (sung, bom) nổ; (sữa) chua; (thức ăn) ươn, thối; (đèn) tắt; (máy móc) hư

Eg: A bomb **went off** in East London last night, killing two people.

(*Tôi qua một quả bom phát nổ ở phía Đông Luân Đôn, làm chết hai người.*)

- **Go on:** tiếp tục (= continue)

Ex: If you **go on** like this, you'll end up in hospital.

*(Nếu anh cứ tiếp tục làm việc như thế này, thì anh sẽ phải vào bệnh viện đấy.)*

- **Go out:** (ánh sáng, lửa, đèn) tắt

Ex: The fire has **gone out**. (Lửa đã tắt)

- **Go over:** xem xét, kiểm tra (= examine)

Eg: He **went over** the plan again and discovered two very serious mistakes.

*(Anh ấy xem lại bản vẽ và phát hiện hai lỗi rất nghiêm trọng.)*

- **Grow up:** lớn lên, trưởng thành

Ex: The kids have all **grown up** now, so we want to move to a bigger house.

*(Giờ đây bọn trẻ đều đã lớn, nên chúng tôi muốn chuyển đến ngôi nhà lớn hơn)*

- **Hand in:** nộp, đệ trình (= submit)

Eg: All essays must be **handed in** by Friday.

*(Tất cả các bài luận phải được nộp vào thứ 6.)*

- **Hold on:** đợi (= wait)

Eg: Just **hold on** for a minute, please. (Vui lòng đợi một lát)

- **Hold up:** ngừng (= stop); hoãn lại (= delay)

Ex: My flight was **held up** because of the thick fog.

*(Chuyến bay của tôi bị hoãn vì sương mù dày đặc.)*

- **Keep on:** tiếp tục (= continue)

Eg: My sister **kept on** asking me question after question.

*(Em gái tôi cứ liên tục hỏi tôi hết câu này đến câu khác.)*

- **Keep up (with):** theo kịp, bắt kịp

Eg: She had to walk fast to **keep up with** him.

*(Cô ấy phải đi thật nhanh mới bắt kịp anh ta.)*

- **Leave out:** bỏ qua, bỏ sót, bỏ quên (= omit)

Eg: Right at the end of the exam, I realized I'd **left out** something important.

*(Ngay khi thi xong, tôi nhận ra tôi đã bỏ sót một điều quan trọng.)*

- **Let down:** làm thất vọng

Eg: Joey promised he'd phone today, but he **let me down** again.

*(Joey hứa hôm nay sẽ gọi điện, nhưng anh ấy lại làm tôi thất vọng.)*

- **Look after:** chăm sóc, trông nom (= take care of)

Ex: Will you **look after** my parrot when I'm away?

*(Khi tôi đi vắng, nhờ anh trông giúp con vẹt nhé?)*

- **Look back (on):** nhớ, nhớ lại (= remember)

Ex: I **look back on** my childhood with a great deal of happiness.

*(Tôi thấy rất hạnh phúc khi nhớ lại thời thơ ấu của mình.)*

- **Look down on:** coi thường

Eg: Adam always felt that we **looked down on** him because he hadn't been to university.

*(Adam luôn có cảm giác chúng tôi coi thường anh ấy vì anh ấy không học đại học.)*

- **Look for:** tìm kiếm (= search for, seek)

Eg: What are you **looking for**? *(Anh đang tìm gì vậy?)*

- **Look forward to:** mong đợi

Ex: I'm really **looking forward to** seeing my family again.

*(Tôi rất mong được gặp lại gia đình.)*

- **Look into:** điều tra (= investigate)

Ex: There is a mystery about his death and the police are **looking into** it.

*(Cái chết của ông ta có điều gì đó bí mật nên cảnh sát đang điều tra.)*

- **Look on/ upon:** xem như, coi như

Eg: We've always **looked on** Jack as one of the family.

*(Chúng tôi luôn xem Jack như người trong gia đình.)*

- **Look out:** coi chừng (dùng để cảnh báo)

Eg: **Look out!** There's a lorry coming! *(Coi chừng! xe tải đang đến kia!)*

- **Look up:** tìm; tra cứu (trong sách, từ điển...)

Eg: If you don't know what the word means, **look it up** in a dictionary.

*(Nếu bạn không biết từ này có nghĩa gì, hãy tra nó trong từ điển.)*

- **Look up to:** coi trọng, kính trọng, ngưỡng mộ

Ex: Schoolboys usually **look up to** great athletes.

*(Các nam sinh thường ngưỡng mộ các vận động viên có tên tuổi.)*

- **Make out:** hiểu được, đọc được, nghe rõ, nhìn thấy rõ

Eg: I can't **make out** if it's a man or woman over there.

*(Tôi không thấy rõ người đứng ở kia là đàn ông hay đàn bà.)*

I can't **make out** why she did that, can you?

*(Tôi không hiểu tại sao cô ấy lại làm thế, anh có hiểu không?)*

- **Make up:** bịa đặt, sáng tác (một câu chuyện, một bài thơ...) (= invent); trang điểm, hóa trang

Eg: I don't believe your story. I think you are just **making it up**.

*(Tôi không tin câu chuyện của anh. Tôi cho là anh đang bịa chuyện.)*

She takes forever to **make up** in the morning.

(*Buổi sáng cô ấy trang điểm rất lâu.*)

- **Make up for:** bù, đền bù (= compensate for)

Eg: You'll work very hard today to **make up for** the time you wasted yesterday.

(*Hôm nay bạn sẽ phải làm việc cật lực để bù lại khoảng thời gian bạn đã phung phí hôm qua.*)

- **Pick out:** chọn, chọn ra; nhận ra (trong một nhóm người hoặc vật)

Ex: Here are six rings. **Pick out** the one you like best.

(*Ở đây có 6 chiếc nhẫn. Hãy chọn chiếc bạn thích nhất.*)

I know that you are in this photograph but I can't **pick you out**.

(*Tôi biết là có bạn trong tấm hình này, nhưng tôi không thể nhận ra bạn.*)

- **Pick up:** đón ai (bằng xe); cho đi nhờ xe

Ex: I won't have time to come to your house but I could **pick you up** at the end of the road.

(*Tôi không có thời gian đến nhà bạn, nhưng tôi có thể đón bạn ở cuối đường.*)

- **Pull down:** phá hủy, phá sập (= demolish)

Eg: The old houses were **pulled down** to build the trade center.

(*Những ngôi nhà cũ bị phá sập để xây trung tâm thương mại.*)

- **Put aside/ by:** để dành, dành dụm (tiền)

Eg: Don't spend all your salary. Try to **put something by** each month.

(*Đừng tiêu hết tiền lương. Mỗi tháng cố dành dụm một ít.*)

- **Put forward:** đề nghị; gợi ý (= suggest)

Eg: A number of theories were **put forward** about the cause of his death.

(*Một số giả thuyết về nguyên nhân cái chết của ông ta đã được đưa ra.*)

- **Put in for:** đòi hỏi, yêu sách, xin

Eg: Why don't you **put in for** a pay rise? (Sao anh không đòi tăng lương?)

- **Put off:** hoãn lại (= postpone, delay)

Eg: I'll **put off** my visit to Scotland till the weather is warmer.

(*Tôi sẽ hoãn chuyến đi Scotland cho đến khi thời tiết ấm hơn.*)

- **Put on:** mặc (quần áo), mang (giày), đội (mũ), mở (đèn hoặc các thiết bị điện), tăng (cân)

Eg: She **put on** her coat and went outside.

(*Cô ấy mặc áo khoác vào rồi đi ra ngoài.*)

She **put on** the kettle for her morning cup of coffee.

(*Cô ấy bật ấm điện pha cà phê sáng.*)

- **Put out:** tắt (đèn, lửa), (= extinguish)

Eg: Please stay in your seats and **put out** your cigarettes.

*(Vui lòng ngồi tại chỗ và tắt hết thuốc lá.)*

- **Put up:** dựng, xây dựng (= erect)

Eg: He **put up** a shed in the garden. (Ông ấy dựng một nhà kho trong vườn)

- **Put up with:** chịu đựng

Eg: I'm surprised that she's **put up with** him for so long.

*(Tôi ngạc nhiên là cô ấy chịu đựng được anh ta lâu đến thế.)*

- **Run across/ into:** tình cờ gặp (ai), tình cờ thấy (cái gì)

Eg: He **ran across** his old friend as he was coming out of a restaurant.

*(Khi đang ra khỏi nhà hàng, anh ấy tình cờ gặp một người bạn cũ.)*

- **Run out (of):** hết, cạn kiệt

Eg: I **run out of** milk. Put some lemon in your tea instead.

*(Tôi hết sữa rồi. Thay cho sữa, hãy cho một ít chanh vào trà của bạn)*

- **See off:** tiễn (ai)

Ex: My best friend Judy came to the airport to **see me off**.

*(Bạn thân Judy của tôi đã ra sân bay tiễn tôi)*

- **See through:** nhận ra, thấy rõ (bản chất con người hoặc sự việc)

Eg: Eventually I **saw through** her lies and ended the relationship.

*(Cuối cùng tôi cũng nhận ra những lời dối trá của cô ta nên đã cắt đứt quan hệ)*

- **Sell off:** bán giảm giá (hàng tồn kho)

Eg: We are **selling off** the remainder of our stock.

*(Chúng tôi đang bán giảm giá số hàng tồn kho)*

- **Send for:** mời đến, gọi đến, triệu tập (= summon)

Eg: The director **sent for** me and asked for an explanation.

*(Giám đốc gọi tôi đến và yêu cầu giải thích)*

- **Send out:** gửi đi, phân phát (= distribute)

Eg: The papers had all been **sent out**. *(Tất cả báo đã được phân phát.)*

- **Set off/ out:** khởi hành

Ex: I wanted to **set off** early to avoid the traffic jam.

*(Tôi muốn khởi hành sớm để khỏi bị kẹt xe.)*

- **Set up:** lập, thành lập (= establish)

Eg: The United Nations was **set up** to settle conflicts peacefully.

*(Liên Hợp Quốc được thành lập để giải quyết các cuộc xung đột một cách hòa bình.)*

- **Show around/ round:** đưa đi tham quan

Eg: Our guides will **show you round** the museum.

*(Hướng dẫn viên của chúng tôi sẽ đưa các bạn đi thăm viện bảo tàng.)*

- **Show off:** phô trương, khoe khoang (kỹ năng, kiến thức...) (= display)

Eg: He is always picking up very heavy things just to **show off** his strength.

*(Anh ta luôn nhặt những vật rất nặng chỉ để phô trương sức mạnh của mình.)*

- **Show up:** đến (= arrive)

Eg: We spent half an hour waiting for Martin to **show up**.

*(Chúng tôi mất cả nửa giờ để đợi Martin đến.)*

- **Shut up:** ngừng nói, làm cho ngừng nói

Eg: I can't stand that woman – she never **shut up**.

*(Tôi không thể chịu đựng được người đàn bà đó – bà ta nói liên tục.)*

- **Stand for:** thay thế cho, tượng trưng cho, đại diện cho (= represent)

Eg: In literature, the swan has **stood for** purity and virtue.

*(Trong văn chương, thiên nga tượng trưng cho sự tinh khiết và trong sáng.)*

- **Stand out:** nổi bật

Eg: She **stood out** from the crowd because of her height and her flaming red hair.

*(Cô ấy nổi bật giữa đám đông nhờ chiều cao và mái tóc đỏ rực của mình.)*

- **Take after:** giống (= resemble)

Ex; Daisy's really pretty. She **takes after** her mother.

*(Daisy thật xinh đẹp. Cô ấy giống hệt mẹ.)*

- **Take off:** cởi (quần áo, giày, mũ...); (máy bay) cất cánh

Eg: He **took off** his coat when he entered the house and put it on again when he went out.

*(Khi vào nhà anh ấy cởi áo khoác ra và khi ra ngoài anh ấy lại mặc áo vào.)*

The plane **took off** into the night sky.

*(Máy bay cất cánh bay vào bầu trời đêm.)*

- **Take on:** nhận, đảm nhận (công việc)

Eg: Don't **take on** too much work – The extra cash isn't worth it.

*(Đừng nhận quá nhiều việc – Tiền phụ trợ chẳng đáng bao nhiêu đâu.)*

- **Take over:** đảm nhiệm, tiếp tục

Ex; We stop work at ten o'clock and the night shift **takes over** until the following morning.

*(Chúng tôi nghỉ việc lúc 10 giờ và ca đêm sẽ tiếp tục tới sáng hôm sau.)*

- **Take up:** chiếm (thời gian, không gian, sức lực...)

Ex: The grand piano **takes up** most of the space in the room.

(*Cây đại dương cầm chiếm gần hết căn phòng.*)

- **Talk over:** thảo luận, bàn luận (= discuss)

Eg: **Talk it over** with your wife and give me your answer tomorrow.

(*Hãy bàn với vợ anh rồi cho tôi câu trả lời vào ngày mai.*)

- **Think over:** suy nghĩ kỹ; cân nhắc (= consider)

Eg: I'll **think over** your idea and let you know what I decide.

(*Tôi sẽ nghĩ kỹ về ý kiến của anh rồi sẽ cho anh biết quyết định của tôi.*)

- **Throw away/ out:** ném đi, vứt đi (= discard)

Eg: **Throw away** those old shoes. (Hãy vứt đôi giày cũ đó đi)

- **Try on:** mặc thử (quần áo)

Eg: I like this dress. Could I **try it on**?

(*Tôi thích cái áo này. Tôi mặc thử được không?*)

- **Turn down:** từ chối (= refuse); bác bỏ, loại bỏ (= reject)

Eg: He was offered £500 for the picture but he **turned it down**.

(*Có người đề nghị trả 500 bảng cho bức tranh nhưng anh ấy đã từ chối.*)

They **turned me down/ turned down** my application because I didn't know German.

(*Họ đã loại tôi/ bác đơn xin việc của tôi vì tôi không biết tiếng Đức.*)

- **Turn into:** trở thành, biến thành, chuyển thành (= convert)

Ex: I'm going to **turn** my garage **into** a playroom for the children.

(*Tôi sẽ biến nhà để xe của tôi thành phòng chơi cho bọn trẻ.*)

- **Turn off:** tắt, khóa (đèn, máy móc, động cơ, bếp gas, vòi nước...)

Eg: Don't forget to **turn off** all the lights when you go to bed.

(*Đừng quên tắt hết đèn khi đi ngủ.*)

- **Turn on:** mở, bật (đèn, máy móc, động cơ, bếp gas, vòi nước...)

Eg: I **turned on** the television and watched the World News.

(*Tôi mở ti vi xem tin thế giới.*)

- **Turn up:** đến (= arrive); xuất hiện (= appear)

Ex: We arranged to meet at the station but she didn't **turn up**.

(*Chúng tôi hẹn gặp nhau tại nhà ga nhưng cô ấy đã không đến.*)

- **Turn up/ down:** tăng/ giảm (âm lượng, nhiệt độ, áp suất, ánh sáng, v.v của các thiết bị, máy móc)

Eg: **Turn up** the gas; it is too low.

(*Hãy vặn bếp ga lớn lên, lửa thấp quá.*)

Could you **turn** that music **down** a little? We can't hear ourselves speak!  
(Anh vặn nhạc nhỏ một chút có được không? Chúng tôi không nghe được tiếng của chính mình nữa.)

- **Wash up:** rửa bát đĩa

Eg: Since you made lunch, I'll **wash up**.

(Vì bạn đã làm cơm trưa, nên tôi sẽ rửa bát đĩa.)

- **Wear out:** làm mòn, làm rách, làm kiệt sức

Eg: Children **wear out** their shoes very quickly.

(Trẻ em mang giày rất mau mòn.)

She was **worn out** from taking care of her sick mother.

(Cô ấy kiệt sức vì phải chăm sóc người mẹ đau ốm.)

- **Work out:** tính toán (= calculate)

Ex; I'm trying to **work out** how much money I've spent.

(Tôi đang cố tính xem tôi đã tiêu hết bao nhiêu tiền.)





## EXERCISES

---

I. Fill in each gap, either with one of the verbs or one of the particles. Put the verb in the correct form.

*bring*      *give*      *put*      *look (2)*      *out*  
*on*      *away*      *up*      *off*      *pick*  
*turn*      *fall*      *break*      *take*      *after*  
*down*      *round*      *across*      *try*      *back*

1. Put \_\_\_\_\_ your warm coat. It's rather cold today.
2. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ for yesterday's newspaper. Did you throw it \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Could I \_\_\_\_\_ on that dress in the window?
4. Oh, dear! The lights have gone \_\_\_\_\_. I can't see anything.
5. She told me her computer \_\_\_\_\_ down, so she couldn't do the work.
6. You must remember to take the book \_\_\_\_\_ to the library.
7. I live in Bristol now, but I grew \_\_\_\_\_ in Leicester.
8. It was my first flight. I was nervous as the plane \_\_\_\_\_ off.
9. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ forward to meeting her very much.
10. Don't worry about the baby. I'll look \_\_\_\_\_ her while you're out.
11. Well, I'll \_\_\_\_\_ you up at 8.00 and we can go to the cinema together.
12. I heard someone running behind me. I turned \_\_\_\_\_ and saw a girl in a track suit.
13. She \_\_\_\_\_ off the horse and hurt her wrist.
14. You can \_\_\_\_\_ the television off. Nobody is watching it.
15. Look \_\_\_\_\_! The glass is going to fall! Oh! Too late!
16. Please turn \_\_\_\_\_ the music. It's too loud!
17. Did you \_\_\_\_\_ up biting your nails?
18. Each month she \_\_\_\_\_ some money aside for her retirement.
19. She \_\_\_\_\_ up three children on her own.
20. Yesterday I came \_\_\_\_\_ the book I had lost, completely by chance.

**II. Complete the sentences, using one of these phrasal verbs (in the correct form). Use a dictionary if you need.**

<i>go on</i>	<i>cross out</i>	<i>turn up</i>	<i>break into</i>	<i>put off</i>
<i>come across</i>	<i>make up</i>	<i>wear out</i>	<i>set up</i>	<i>see off</i>
<i>give up</i>	<i>show round</i>	<i>run out of</i>	<i>carry out</i>	<i>put out</i>
<i>catch up</i>	<i>turn down</i>	<i>take off</i>	<i>cut down</i>	<i>blow up</i>

1. Would you like to see the factory? Would you like me to \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?
2. The children \_\_\_\_\_ a little poem and wrote it in the card.
3. Sue was offered a job as a translator but she \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. His shoes are quite \_\_\_\_\_. He'll have to get a new pair.
5. They have had to \_\_\_\_\_ the football match \_\_\_\_\_ because of snow.
6. Kathy is going to Australia tomorrow. I'm going to the airport to \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_.
7. He's missed so much school that he's going to find it very hard to \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It took firefighters three hours to \_\_\_\_\_ the blaze.
9. Rachel knew that Ross would be worried if she didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
10. They never seemed to \_\_\_\_\_ things to say to each other.
11. Terrorists had threatened to \_\_\_\_\_ the embassy.
12. Can you imagine who I \_\_\_\_\_ while I was in Paris?
13. An investigation was \_\_\_\_\_ by the local police.
14. A house in our neighborhood was \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
15. The doctor advised him to \_\_\_\_\_ his working hours.
16. If you make a mistake on the form, just \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Burton smiled and \_\_\_\_\_ with his work.
18. He's been feeling much better since he \_\_\_\_\_ smoking.
19. She \_\_\_\_\_ her clothes \_\_\_\_\_ and got into bed.
20. Zedco wants to \_\_\_\_\_ a new sales office in Germany.

**III. Rewrite the sentences, using the correct synonym of the underlined phrasal verbs:**

appear, cancel, consider, continue, delay, delete, demolish, discover, discuss, display, erect, examine, execute, occupy, omit, postpone, prepare, reduce, reject, represent, explode, resemble, return, stop, select, review, calculate, tolerate

1. You'll have to cut down your living expenses a little.
2. I must think that matter over carefully before I answer you.
3. That company is going to put up a new building on this corner.
4. The two girls take after their mother very much in appearance.
5. Look each sentence over carefully. Cross out the incorrect words.
6. Mr. Lam's job seems to take up all of his spare time.
7. They are going to pull that building down.
8. We had to call off the picnic because of the bad weather.
9. We heard the bomb go off five miles away.
10. These books are overdue. When are you going to take them back?
11. When you make up that list for me, don't leave any names out.
12. We worked out how much of our salaries we would have to save each year.
13. That woman certainly tried hard to show off her abilities.
14. When I was looking through my papers, I came across this picture.
15. I suggest that you talk the matter over with your boss first of all.
16. Did the workers carry out the foreman's instructions carefully?
17. Is the committee going to turn down his application for admission?
18. Should we go over the lesson now or put it off until later tonight?
19. How many people do you expect to show up at the meeting tonight?
20. I think this storm will hold up the flights.
21. There are some pens here. Why don't you pick out one or two?
22. I tried to interrupt the two men, but they went on arguing anyway.
23. Trevor gave up playing football years ago.
24. Those three letters are an abbreviation. They stand for something.
25. I don't see how you can put up with such bad working conditions.

**IV. Put in a phrasal verb that means the same as the verb in brackets. Use the correct form of the phrasal verb.**

*Rachel:* I've (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (discovered) what the problem is with the exam.

*Vicky:* Oh, good. Tell me.

*Rachel:* When they printed the papers, they (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (omitted) a page. No one noticed until the papers had all been (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (distributed). Now they'll have to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (discard) all the papers and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (postpone) the exam.

Vicky: Are you sure you haven't (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (invent) this whole story?

Rachel: It's true, I tell you. And isn't it good news?

Vicky: I don't know about that. It means we'll have to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (continue) revising.

**V. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.**

1. I'm trying to find my diary, (looking)

.....

2. You're too young to stop working, (give)

.....

3. This bag is Janet's, (belongs)

.....

4. The police continued to watch the house, (carried)

.....

5. They talked about the plan, (discussed)

.....

6. I haven't got any money left, (run)

.....

7. The staff all have great respect for their boss, (look)

.....

8. I wouldn't tolerate such terrible conditions, (put)

.....

9. They'll have to postpone the game, (off)

.....

10. I visited some old friends while I was in Manchester, (called)

.....

11. I'm trying to reduce the amount of coffee I drink, (cut)

.....

12. We're trying to arrange a holiday together, (up)

.....

13. The teacher was dictating so fast, we couldn't go as fast as her. (keep)

.....

14. I always like to enter quiz competition, (go)  
.....
15. We got some money from the insurance company, but nothing could  
compensate for losing my wedding ring, (make)  
.....
16. I found this film quite disappointing, (let)  
.....
17. I don't think Jack's story about seeing the ghost was true, (made)  
.....
18. I'm bored with waiting for her to telephone, (fed)  
.....
19. The fire suddenly started in the early hours of the morning, (broke)  
.....
20. If you don't know the number, you can find it in the phone book, (up)  
.....

**VI. Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb.**

1. We've arranged a meeting for next Tuesday.
2. Be careful! There's a car coming.
3. The government is introducing a new tax on computers.
4. I was always nervous as the plane went into the air.
5. The problem isn't going to just disappear.
6. Everything is so expensive. Prices seem to be increasing all the time.
7. How did the accident happen?
8. There used to be a restaurant here, but it went out of business a year ago.
9. A: They're going to demolish this beautiful old building.  
B: I know'. Some protesters were distributing leaflets about it.
10. Tom often pays us short visits without warning.
11. I didn't expect to win the competition. I only entered it for a joke.
12. Before you accept this offer, please consider it carefully.
13. We can't continue if you don't co-operate.
14. He was offered a new job, but he refused it because he didn't want to move house.
15. I'm sure we'll all remember this holiday with great pleasure.

## MẠO TỪ (ARTICLE)

### 1. Cách dùng quán từ không xác định "a" và "an":

Dùng **a** hoặc **an** trước một danh từ số ít đếm được và dùng để chỉ một người hoặc vật lần đầu được đề cập đến.

Eg: I saw a boy in the street.

*Tôi đã nhìn thấy một cậu bé ở trên đường.*

(Chúng ta không biết cậu bé nào, chưa được đề cập ở trước.)

### 2. Dùng "a", "an" khi:

- Dùng **a** trước các từ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm.
- Mạo từ **an** được dùng trước từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm (trong cách phát âm, chứ không phải trong cách viết). Bao gồm:
  - ✓ Các từ bắt đầu bằng các nguyên âm a, e, i, o: an aircraft, an empty glass, an object.
  - ✓ Một số từ bắt đầu bằng u, y: an uncle, an umbrella.
  - ✓ Một số từ bắt đầu bằng h câm: an heir, haft an hour.
  - ✓ Các từ mở đầu bằng một chữ viết tắt: an S.O.S/ an M.P.

### 3. Cách dùng quán từ xác định "The"

Dùng **the** trước một danh từ đã được xác định cụ thể về mặt tính chất, đặc điểm, vị trí đã được đề cập đến trước đó, hoặc những khái niệm phổ thông mọi người đều biết.

Eg: The earth is round. The sun gives us light.

*(Trái Đất hình tròn. Mặt trời cung cấp ánh sáng cho chúng ta.)*



**Bảng dùng the và không dùng the trong một số trường hợp điển hình**

Dùng the	Không dùng the
<p>+ Dùng trước tên các đại dương, sông ngòi, biển, vịnh và các cụm hồ (số nhiều)</p> <p>The Red Sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the Persian Gulf, the Great Lakes</p> <p>+ Trước tên các dãy núi:</p> <p>The Rocky Mountains</p> <p>+ Trước tên những vật thể duy nhất trong vũ trụ hoặc trên thế giới:</p> <p>The earth, the moon</p> <p>+ The schools, colleges, universities + of + danh từ riêng</p> <p>The University of Florida</p> <p>+ The + số thứ tự + danh từ</p> <p>The third chapter.</p> <p>+ Trước tên các nước có hai từ trở lên (trừ <i>Great Britain</i>): The United States</p> <p>+ Trước tên các nước được coi là một quần đảo hoặc một quần đảo</p> <p>The Philipines, The Virgin Islands, The Hawaii</p> <p>+ Trước tên các nhóm dân tộc thiểu số</p> <p>the Indians</p>	<p>+ Trước tên một hồ</p> <p>Lake Geneva</p> <p>+ Trước tên một ngọn núi</p> <p>Mount Vesuvius</p> <p>+ Trước tên các hành tinh hoặc các chòm sao:</p> <p>Venus, Mars</p> <p>+ Trước tên các trường này nếu trước nó là một tên riêng</p> <p>Stetson University</p> <p>+ Trước các danh từ đi cùng số đếm</p> <p>Chapter three, Word War One</p> <p>+ Trước tên các nước chỉ có một từ:</p> <p>China, France, Venezuela, Vietnam</p> <p>+ Trước tên các nước mở đầu bằng New, hoặc một tính từ chỉ hướng:</p> <p>New Zealand, North Korean, France</p> <p>+ Trước tên bất kỳ môn thể thao nào</p> <p>baseball, basketball</p> <p>+ Trước các danh từ trừu tượng (trừ một số trường hợp đặc biệt):</p> <p>+ Trước tên các môn học nói chung</p> <p>Eg: mathematics</p> <p>+ Trước tên các ngày lễ, tết</p> <p>Christmas, Thanksgiving</p>

## EXERCISES

---

I. Put in *a/an* where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave an empty space.

1. What's wrong with you? Have you got a headache?
2. I know a lot of people. Most of them are \_\_\_\_\_ students.
3. When I was \_\_\_\_\_ child, I used to be very shy.
4. Would you like to be \_\_\_\_\_ actor?
5. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ violence.
6. Do you collect \_\_\_\_\_ stamps?
7. I don't feel very well this morning. I've got \_\_\_\_\_ sore throat.
8. I've been walking for three hours. I've got \_\_\_\_\_ sore feet.
9. Jack is \_\_\_\_\_ engineer. His parents were \_\_\_\_\_ engineers too.
10. I don't believe him. He's \_\_\_\_\_ liar. He's always telling \_\_\_\_\_ lies.
11. What \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful garden!
12. Do you know him? He's \_\_\_\_\_ MP, isn't he?
13. I clean my teeth with \_\_\_\_\_ toothpaste. I use \_\_\_\_\_ toothbrush to clean my teeth.
14. Enjoy your holiday! I hope you have \_\_\_\_\_ good weather.
15. John has got interview for \_\_\_\_\_ job tomorrow.

II. Put in *the* where necessary. If you don't need, leave an empty:

1. I haven't been to the cinema for ages.
2. I lay down on \_\_\_\_\_ ground and looked up at \_\_\_\_\_ sky.
3. She spends most of her free time watching \_\_\_\_\_ television.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ television was on but nobody was watching it.
5. Have you had \_\_\_\_\_ dinner yet?
6. Mary and I arrived at \_\_\_\_\_ same time.
7. You'll find \_\_\_\_\_ information you need at \_\_\_\_\_ top of page 15.
8. Peru is a country in the South America. \_\_\_\_\_ capital is Lima.
9. What is \_\_\_\_\_ longest river in \_\_\_\_\_ world?
10. The man is in \_\_\_\_\_ prison. He went to \_\_\_\_\_ prison two years ago. His wife goes to \_\_\_\_\_ prison to visit him every month.



### III. Complete this story. Put in *a/ an or the*.

(1) A man decided to rob (2) \_\_\_\_\_ bank in the town where he lived. He walked into (3) \_\_\_\_\_ bank and handed (4) \_\_\_\_\_ note to one of (5) \_\_\_\_\_ cashiers. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ cashier read (7) \_\_\_\_\_ note, which told her to give (8) \_\_\_\_\_ man some money. Afraid that he might have (9) \_\_\_\_\_ gun, she did as she was told. (10) \_\_\_\_\_ man then walked out of (11) \_\_\_\_\_ building, leaving (12) \_\_\_\_\_ note behind. However, he had no time to spend (13) \_\_\_\_\_ money because he was arrested (14) \_\_\_\_\_ same day. He had made (15) \_\_\_\_\_ mistake. He had written (16) \_\_\_\_\_ note on (17) \_\_\_\_\_ back of (18) \_\_\_\_\_ envelope. And on (19) \_\_\_\_\_ other side of (20) \_\_\_\_\_ envelope was his name and address. This clue was quite enough for (21) \_\_\_\_\_ detectives on the case.

### IV. Complete the conversations. Put in *a/ an or the*.

- A: Look outside. The sky is getting very dark.  
B: I hope there isn't going to be a storm.
- A: I'm going out for \_\_\_\_\_ walk. Have you seen my shoes?  
B: Yes, they're on \_\_\_\_\_ floor in \_\_\_\_\_ kitchen.
- A: Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ tomato? There's one in \_\_\_\_\_ fridge.  
B: Oh, yes, please. I'll make myself \_\_\_\_\_ cheese and tomato sandwich.
- A: If you are going into \_\_\_\_\_ city center, can you post these letters for me?  
B: Yes, I'll take them to \_\_\_\_\_ main post office.
- A: I've got \_\_\_\_\_ problem with my phone bill. Can I see someone about it?  
B: Yes, go to \_\_\_\_\_ fifth floor. \_\_\_\_\_ lift is along the corridor.
- A: I didn't know Melanie had \_\_\_\_\_ dog.  
B: It isn't hers. She's just taking it for a walk while \_\_\_\_\_ owner is away.
- A: I've got \_\_\_\_\_ headache. I've had it all day.  
B: Why don't you go to \_\_\_\_\_ health center?
- A: Guess what. I found \_\_\_\_\_ £50 note on the pavement this morning.  
B: You really ought to take it to \_\_\_\_\_ police station.
- A: How was your trip to \_\_\_\_\_ coast?  
B: Wonderful. \_\_\_\_\_ sun shone all day. We had \_\_\_\_\_ great time.
- A: What's your brother doing now? Has he got \_\_\_\_\_ good job?  
B: Yes, he's \_\_\_\_\_ soldier. He's in \_\_\_\_\_ army. He loves it. It's \_\_\_\_\_ great life, he says.

11. A: I went to see Doctor Pascoe yesterday. She's \_\_\_\_\_ best doctor I've ever had.  
 B: She's very nice, isn't she? You couldn't meet \_\_\_\_\_ nicer person.
12. A: Why were you late for your meeting?  
 B: Well, first I had to go to \_\_\_\_\_ hotel I'd booked into. I took \_\_\_\_\_ taxi from \_\_\_\_\_ airport, and \_\_\_\_\_ driver got completely lost. It was \_\_\_\_\_ terrible nuisance \_\_\_\_\_ man was \_\_\_\_\_ complete idiot.
13. A: Is this book you were telling me about?  
 B: Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_ really interesting story.  
 A: What did you say it's about?  
 B: It's \_\_\_\_\_ science fiction story. It's about \_\_\_\_\_ beginning of \_\_\_\_\_ universe.
14. A: You were \_\_\_\_\_ long time at \_\_\_\_\_ supermarket.  
 B: Yes, I know. There was \_\_\_\_\_ enormous queue. I was thinking of complaining to \_\_\_\_\_ manager.
15. A: We spent all our money because we stayed at \_\_\_\_\_ most expensive hotel in town.  
 B: Why didn't you stay at \_\_\_\_\_ cheaper hotel?

**V. Complete the sentences. Use in, at or to and these words: *bed, church, home, college, factory, hospital, library, prison, shop, town, work, school, sea, cinema, pub*. Decide if you need the.**

1. This sweater was cheap. I bought it at the shop by the railway station.
2. We'll eat out tonight. I'll meet you \_\_\_\_\_ later.
3. The weather was awful. We stayed \_\_\_\_\_ all weekend.
4. Melanie had an early night. She was \_\_\_\_\_ at ten.
5. Bill was injured in the accident and now he's \_\_\_\_\_. We're going \_\_\_\_\_ to visit him tomorrow.
6. In Britain, children from the age of five have to go \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Vicky's parents are religious. They go \_\_\_\_\_ every Sunday.
8. Laura doesn't like her job. She just goes \_\_\_\_\_ to earn some money.
9. I've read these books. I'm taking them back \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The man who did the robbery is no longer \_\_\_\_\_. He was let out last month.

11. If you want to get a degree, you normally have to study \_\_\_\_\_.
12. It's very quiet \_\_\_\_\_ when they've turned all the machines off.
13. Let's go \_\_\_\_\_ for a drink.
14. Tom is a sailor. He spends most of his life \_\_\_\_\_.
15. Melissa is a popular actress. When she was a child, her greatest pleasure was going \_\_\_\_\_.

**VI. Choose the correct form, with or without *the*.**

1. A: Did you see football/ the football on television/ the television last night?  
B: No, I hate football/ the football. I was listening to news/ the news on radio/ the radio.
2. A: Do your family have a dog?  
B: No, I'm afraid of dogs/ the dogs. I didn't like dogs/ the dogs that are running around on the street.
3. A: You know that cars/ the cars cause pollution/ the pollution, don't you?  
B: Yes, but cars/ the cars these days are cleaner than they used to be. Isn't it aeroplanes/ the aeroplanes that are mainly responsible for pollution/ the pollution of atmosphere/ the atmosphere?
4. A: I've put some bread out in the garden for birds/ the birds.  
B: You like birds/ the birds, don't you?  
A: Yes. I love wildlife/ the wildlife.
5. A: Do you play sports/ the sports?  
B: Yes, my favorite sport is basketball/ the basketball. I also like skiing/ the skiing but I'm not very good at it.
6. A: What's the noise?  
B: My sister is listening to music/ the music. Music/ The music is too loud, isn't it?
7. A: What did you have for breakfast/ the breakfast?  
B: Nothing. I never eat breakfast/ the breakfast.
8. A: Will you be in America for Thanksgiving/ the Thanksgiving?  
B: Oh, no. That's in November/ the November, isn't it? I'm often very busy at that time, but I'll be back at Christmas/ the Christmas.

9. A: Do you think rich/ the rich should pay more taxes to help poor/ the poor?
- B: That's right. And one of our biggest social problems is unemployment/ the unemployment.
10. A: You're always reading books about history/ the history, aren't you?
- B: It was my favorite subject. Do you know anything about history/ the history of this area?
- A: No, but if you like looking round museums/ the museums and old buildings/ the old buildings, we could find out it together.
11. A: Can you play guitar/ the guitar?
- B: Just a little. But piano/ the piano is my favorite instrument.
12. A: Do you know who invented telescope/ the telescope?
- B: Yes. Galileo developed telescope/ the telescope for use in astronomy/ the astronomy.

**VII. How much do you know about geography? Put in these names: *Andes, Irish Republic, Italy, West Indies, Lake Michigan, River Nile, North, Pennsylvania, Tasmania, United Kingdom*. Decide if you need the.**

- Harrisburg is the capital of Pennsylvania.
- Dublin is in \_\_\_\_\_.
- Chicago lies on the shore of \_\_\_\_\_.
- Sicily is a part of \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland.
- \_\_\_\_\_ are a mountain range in South America.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is an island to the south of Australia.
- Jamaica is an island in \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ flows through Egypt.
- Manchester is in \_\_\_\_\_ of England.

**VIII. Some of these sentences are correct, but some need the (perhaps more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary. Put "right" if the sentence is already correct.**

- Everest was first climbed in 1953. right
- Milan is in north of Italy. the north of Italy

3. Africa is much larger than Europe. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I visited Mexico and United States. \_\_\_\_\_
5. South of England is warmer than north. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Portugal is in western Europe. \_\_\_\_\_
7. France and Britain are separated by Channel. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Jim has travelled a lot in Middle East. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Chicago is on Lake Michigan. \_\_\_\_\_
10. The highest mountain in Africa is Kilimanjaro. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Next year we are going skiing in Swiss Alps. \_\_\_\_\_
12. United Kingdom consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean. \_\_\_\_\_
14. River Volga flows into Caspian Sea. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Ritz is an elegant hotel. \_\_\_\_\_

**IX. Complete these sentences. Put in the words and decide if you need the.**

1. Have you ever been to \_\_\_\_\_ (British Museum)?
2. The train to Paris leaves from \_\_\_\_\_ (Waterloo Station).
3. You can take a trip by boat along \_\_\_\_\_ Thames).
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (Grand Hotel) is in Baker Street).
5. If you are looking for a good clothes shop. I would recommend \_\_\_\_\_ (Harrison's).
6. The Serpentine is a lake in \_\_\_\_\_ (Hyde Park).
7. John works for \_\_\_\_\_ (IBM) now. He used to work for \_\_\_\_\_ (British Telecom).
8. From there you get a view of \_\_\_\_\_ (Houses of Parliament).
9. The Queen lives at \_\_\_\_\_ (Buckingham Palace).
10. \_\_\_\_\_ (Everest) is the highest mountain in the world.
11. We've just been to (States)\_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ (New York).
12. \_\_\_\_\_ (Statue of Liberty) is at the entrance to \_\_\_\_\_ (New York harbour).
13. Earl's Court is in \_\_\_\_\_ (West London).
14. Frank is a student at \_\_\_\_\_ (Cambridge University).

15. We spent a day in \_\_\_\_\_ (Metropolitan Museum of Art). And we walked along \_\_\_\_\_ (Broadway) and around \_\_\_\_\_ (Macy's department store).

**X. Put in a /an or the where necessary. Leave an empty space if the sentence is already complete.**

1. I don't usually like staying at \_\_\_\_\_ hotels, but last summer we spent \_\_\_\_\_ few days at a very nice hotel by \_\_\_\_\_ sea.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ tennis is my favorite sport. I play once or twice \_\_\_\_\_ week if I can, but I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ very good player.
3. I won't be home for \_\_\_\_\_ dinner this evening. I'm meeting some friends after \_\_\_\_\_ work and we are going to \_\_\_\_\_ cinema.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ unemployment is very high at the moment and it's very difficult for \_\_\_\_\_ people to find \_\_\_\_\_ work.
5. There was \_\_\_\_\_ accident as I was going \_\_\_\_\_ home last night. Two people were taken to \_\_\_\_\_ hospital. I think \_\_\_\_\_ most accidents are caused by \_\_\_\_\_ people driving too fast.
6. Carol is \_\_\_\_\_ economist. She used to work in \_\_\_\_\_ investment department of \_\_\_\_\_ Lloyds Bank. Now she works for \_\_\_\_\_ American bank in \_\_\_\_\_ United States.
7. What's \_\_\_\_\_ name of \_\_\_\_\_ hotel where you're staying? ~ \_\_\_\_\_ Imperial. It's in \_\_\_\_\_ Queen Street in \_\_\_\_\_ city centre. It's near \_\_\_\_\_ station.
8. I have two brothers. \_\_\_\_\_ older one is training to be \_\_\_\_\_ pilot with \_\_\_\_\_ British Airway. \_\_\_\_\_ younger one is still at \_\_\_\_\_ school. When he leaves \_\_\_\_\_ school, he hopes to go to \_\_\_\_\_ Cambridge University to study law.
9. Frank Lloyd Wright is \_\_\_\_\_ name of \_\_\_\_\_ famous architect. He is \_\_\_\_\_ architect who designed \_\_\_\_\_ Guggenheim Museum in New York. He also designed \_\_\_\_\_ hotel in Tokyo. \_\_\_\_\_ hotel was designed to withstand \_\_\_\_\_ earthquakes.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ meals we had weren't very good. We had \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast in the hotel, and that wasn't too bad. We usually went out for \_\_\_\_\_ lunch because \_\_\_\_\_ lunch they served in the hotel was always the same. And \_\_\_\_\_ dinner we had at the hotel on our first evening was pretty awful, so we tried a few restaurants. On our last evening we had \_\_\_\_\_ marvellous meal in a Chinese restaurant.

# GIỚI TỪ (PREPOSITIONS)

## I) PHÂN LOẠI GIỚI TỪ:

### 1. Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn: IN, ON, AT

#### a) IN (trong): được dùng

➤ Chỉ một người hoặc vật ở trong một nơi nào đó.

in a box / room / building / park / garden / bag / pocket / kitchen / cinema / restaurant / book / lesson / newspaper / picture / pool / sea / river / water / sky / world / queue / row / line ...

Eg: My mother is cooking in the kitchen.

(Mẹ tôi đang nấu ăn ở trong bếp)

➤ Với phương tiện xe hơi, taxi hoặc đường phố.

in a car / taxi, in/on the street

Eg: Peter arrived at the party in a taxi. (Peter đến bữa tiệc bằng taxi)

They live in Hung Vuong Street. (Họ sống trên phố Hùng Vương.)

➤ Với danh từ không có mạo từ để diễn tả một người đang ở tại đó.

in bed / hospital / prison

Eg: Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still in bed.

(Tom vẫn chưa dậy, cậu ấy vẫn còn trên giường.)

➤ Trước các đất nước, thành phố, phương hướng.

in Vietnam / England / France / Hanoi / London / Paris / the east / west / south / north

Eg: Ho Chi Minh City is in the south of Vietnam.

(Thành phố Hồ Chí Minh nằm ở phía Nam của Việt Nam.)

➤ Để tạo thành cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn.

in the front/back of (a car/room/theater ...), in the middle of (the room ...)

Eg: I was in the back of the car when the accident happened.

(Tôi ở phía sau của chiếc ô tô khi tai nạn xảy ra.)

There's a computer in the middle of the room.

(Có một chiếc máy tính ở giữa căn phòng.)

**b) ON (trên): được dùng:**

➤ Chỉ vị trí bên trên và tiếp xúc với bề mặt của một vật gì đó.

on the door / floor / wall / ceiling / river / beach / coast ...

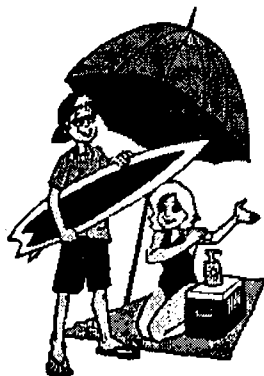
on/in the street, on a page

Eg: They live on Wall Street. (Tôi sống trên phố Wall.)

The picture you're looking for is on page 7.

(Bức tranh mà bạn đang tìm ở trang 7.)

I sat on the beach. (Tôi ngồi trên bãi biển.)

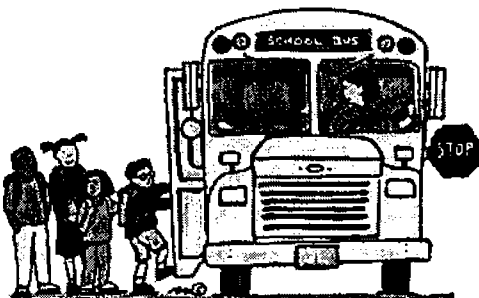


➤ Với phương tiện đi lại công cộng hoặc cá nhân (xe đạp, xe máy).

on a bus/ train/ ship/ plane/ bycicle/ motorbike/ horse.

Eg: Mary passed me on her bycicle. (Mary đi đạp xe ngang qua tôi.)

There were too many people on the bus. (Có rất nhiều người trên xe buýt.)



➤ Để tạo thành cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn.

on the right / left, on horseback, on the way to (school ...)

on the back/front of (the envelope/paper ...)

on top of (the wardrobe ...)

on/at the corner of a street



Eg: In Britain people drive on the left.

(Ở nước Anh, mọi người đi xe phía bên trái.)

Write your name on the front of the envelope.

(Hãy viết tên của bạn vào mặt trước của phong thư.)

### c) AT (ở): được dùng

➤ Để diễn tả một vị trí được xác định trong không gian hoặc số nhà.

at the door / bus stop / traffic lights / party / meeting / desk ..., at 69 Tran Hung Dao Street

Eg: Someone is standing at the door. (Có ai đang đứng ở trước cửa.)

She lives at 69 Tran Hung Dao Street.

(Cô ấy sống ở số nhà 69 Trần Hưng Đạo.)

➤ Để tạo thành cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn.

at home / school / college / university / work ...

at the top/bottom of (the page ...)

at the end of (the street ...)

at the front/back of (the line ...)

at/on the corner of the street

Eg: Peter's house is at the end of the street. (Nhà của Peter ở cuối phố.)

The garden is at the back of the building. (Khu vườn ở phía sau tòa nhà.)

## 2. Giới từ chỉ thời gian: IN, ON, AT

### a) IN: được dùng:

➤ Để chỉ buổi trong ngày nói chung, tháng, năm, mùa, thập niên, thế kỷ, thiên niên kỷ.

in the morning / afternoon / evening.

in February, in 1999.

in (the) spring / summer / autumn / winter.

in the 1990s, in the 21st century, in the 3rd millennium.

➤ Trong một số cụm từ để chỉ một khoảng thời gian trong tương lai.

in a few minutes, in an hour, in a day / week / month ...

Eg: Daisy has gone away. She'll be back in a week.

(Daisy đã đi khỏi. Cô ấy sẽ trở về trong một tuần.)

➤ Trong cụm từ **in the end** với nghĩa cuối cùng (finally, at last), in time với nghĩa kịp lúc.

Eg: Peter got very angry. In the end, he walked out of the room.

(Peter rất giận. Cuối cùng, nó ra khỏi phòng.)

Will you be home in time for dinner?

(Bạn sẽ về nhà kịp giờ ăn tối?)

### **b) ON: được dùng**

➤ Để chỉ thứ trong tuần, ngày trong tháng.

on Monday, on 5th March, on this/that day

Eg: I was born on 27th June, 1983. (Tôi sinh vào ngày 27 tháng 6 năm 1983.)

➤ Để chỉ buổi trong ngày cụ thể hoặc một ngày cụ thể.

on Friday morning/ Christmas Day/ New Year's Day/ my birthday

Eg: See you on Friday morning. (Hẹn gặp bạn vào sáng thứ 6.)

### **c) AT: được dùng**

➤ Để chỉ thời gian, các bữa ăn trong ngày.

at 5 a.m., at sunrise/ sunset/ dawn / noon/ twilight/ night / midnight/ at breakfast/ lunch / dinner/ supper.

Eg: I get up at 5 o'clock every morning. (Tôi dậy lúc 5h hàng sáng)

➤ Để chỉ một dịp lễ hội, một thời khắc nào đó.

at/on the weekend, at Christmas / Easter

at present / the moment / the same time / this (that) time

Eg: Mr. Brown is busy at the moment. (Hiện tại ông Brown đang rất bận.)

➤ Để tạo thành các cụm giới từ.

at the end/beginning of, at the age of, at first/last

Eg: He came to live in London at the age of 25.

(Anh ấy chuyển đến sống ở Luân Đôn lúc 25 tuổi.)

**\* Lưu ý:** KHÔNG dùng IN, ON, AT trước all, every, this month/year, next, last, tomorrow, yesterday, today.

Eg: He has worked hard all morning. (in all morning)

(Anh ấy đã làm việc vất vả cả buổi sáng.)

I hope to see you next Friday. (on next Friday)

(Tôi hi vọng sẽ gặp bạn vào sáng thứ 6.)

### Các giới từ chỉ thời gian khác:

- FROM ... TO/UNTIL/TILL (từ ... đến) (= BETWEEN ... AND)

Eg: Every morning he plays tennis from 6 to 7.

(Every morning he plays tennis between 6 and 7.)

(Anh ấy chơi tennis từ lúc 6 giờ đến 7 giờ sáng hàng ngày.)

- SINCE (từ khi - mốc thời gian)

Eg: I've been waiting for her since 5pm. (Tôi đợi cô ấy từ lúc 5 giờ chiều.)

- FOR (khoảng)

Eg: He has lived in Paris for three months.

(Anh ấy sống ở Paris được ba tháng.)

- DURING (trong suốt)

Eg: You have to be quiet during the performance.

(Bạn phải giữ im lặng trong suốt buổi biểu diễn.)

- UNTIL/TILL (cho tới khi)

Eg: She'll be here until Thursday. (Cô ấy sẽ ở đây cho đến thứ năm.)

- BY (vào khoảng - trước hoặc đến một thời điểm nào đó)

Eg: You must be home by 9. (Bạn phải về nhà lúc 9 giờ.)

- BEFORE (trước lúc)/ AFTER (sau khi)

Eg: Come and see me before / after lunch.

(Hãy đến và gặp tôi trước/sau bữa trưa.)

## II) GIỚI TỪ THEO SAU TÍNH TỪ:

### 1. Adj + TO

acceptable: có thể chấp nhận	kind: tử tế
accustomed: quen	known: được biết đến
agreeable: có thể đồng ý	likely: có khả năng/có thể thích hợp
applicable: có thể ứng dụng	loyal: trung thành
appropriate: thích hợp	lucky: may mắn
contrary: trái với	married: kết hôn

dedicated: <i>hiền dăng</i>	open: <i>mở</i>
essential: <i>cần thiết</i>	pleasant: <i>vui</i>
friendly (to/with): <i>thân thiện</i>	pleasing: <i>làm vui lòng</i>
generous: <i>hào phóng</i>	polite: <i>lịch sự</i>
harmful: <i>có hại</i>	preferable: <i>thích hơn</i>
important: <i>quan trọng</i>	related: <i>liên quan</i>
strange: <i>xa lạ</i>	rude: <i>thô lỗ</i>
subject: <i>dễ bị, khó tránh</i>	similar: <i>giống</i>
	true: <i>trung thành</i>

## 2. Adj + OF

afraid: <i>sợ</i>	forgetful: <i>quên</i>
aware: <i>ý thức</i>	full: <i>đầy</i>
boastful: <i>khoe khoang</i>	glad: <i>vui mừng</i>
capable: <i>có khả năng</i>	innocent: <i>vô tội</i>
careful (of/with/about): <i>cẩn thận</i>	jealous: <i>ghen tị</i>
careless: <i>bất cẩn</i>	proud: <i>tự hào</i>
certain: <i>chắc chắn</i>	sure (of/about): <i>chắc chắn</i>
confident: <i>tin</i>	thoughtful: <i>chu đáo, ân cần</i>
desirous: <i>khao khát</i>	thoughtless: <i>không chu đáo, ân cần</i>
fond: <i>thích</i>	tolerant: <i>khoan dung</i>
worthy: <i>xứng đáng</i>	

## 3. Adj + FOR

anxious (for/about): <i>lo âu</i>	necessary: <i>cần thiết</i>
appropriate: <i>thích hợp</i>	perfect: <i>hoàn hảo</i>
available: <i>có thể dùng được</i>	responsible: <i>có trách nhiệm</i>
difficult: <i>khó</i>	sorry: <i>lấy làm thương hại</i>
eager: <i>háo hức, hăm hở</i>	sufficient: <i>đầy đủ</i>
enough: <i>đủ</i>	suitable (for/to): <i>thích hợp</i>
famous: <i>nổi tiếng</i>	useful: <i>có lợi ích</i>
good (for health/so.): <i>tốt</i>	late: <i>trễ</i>
grateful (for s.th.): <i>biết ơn</i>	

#### 4. Adj + AT

amazed (at/by): <i>ngạc nhiên</i>	excellent: <i>xuất sắc</i>
angry (at/with s.o./to s.th.): <i>giận giữ</i>	good (at st): <i>giỏi</i>
annoyed (at/by): <i>bực mình</i>	hopeless: <i>vô vọng</i>
astonished (at/by): <i>ngạc nhiên</i>	present: <i>có mặt</i>
bad (at s.th.): <i>dở</i>	quick: <i>nhANH</i>
clever: <i>thông minh</i>	skilful: <i>có năng khiếu</i>

#### 5. Adj + WITH

acquainted: <i>quen</i>	disappointed: <i>thất vọng</i>
annoyed: <i>giận</i>	pleased: <i>hài lòng</i>
bored/ fed up: <i>chán</i>	popular: <i>nổi tiếng</i>
covered: <i>bao phủ</i>	satisfied: <i>thỏa mãn</i>
crowded: <i>đông</i>	

#### 6. Adj + IN

honest: <i>liêm thiện</i>	interested: <i>thích thú</i>
proficient (at/in): <i>thành thạo</i>	rich: <i>giàu</i>
successful: <i>thành công</i>	weak: <i>yếu kém</i>

#### 7. Adj + FROM

absent: <i>vắng</i>	different: <i>khác</i>
distinct: <i>khác biệt</i>	free: <i>được miễn</i>
safe: <i>an toàn</i>	separate: <i>riêng lẻ</i>

#### 8. Adj + ABOUT

confused: <i>bối rối</i>	curious: <i>tò mò, hiếu kỳ</i>
enthusiastic: <i>nhiệt tình</i>	excited: <i>hứng thú</i>
happy: <i>vui vẻ</i>	sad: <i>buồn</i>
serious: <i>đứng đắn, nghiêm túc</i>	worried: <i>bồn chồn, lo lắng</i>

### III) GIỚI TỪ THEO SAU ĐỘNG TỪ:

accuse ... of: <i>buộc tội</i>	live on: <i>sống nhờ vào</i>
apologise to sb for sth: <i>xin lỗi ai đó về việc gì</i>	look after: <i>chăm sóc</i>
apologize for: <i>xin lỗi về</i>	look around: <i>nhìn quanh</i>
apply for: <i>nộp đơn xin việc</i>	look at: <i>nhìn</i>
arrive in/at: <i>đến (nơi)</i>	look back on: <i>nhìn về quá khứ</i>
ask ... for: <i>hỏi ... cho</i>	look down on: <i>khinh rẻ</i>
believe in: <i>tin tưởng vào</i>	look for: <i>tìm</i>
belong to: <i>thuộc về</i>	look forward to: <i>mong đợi</i>
blame ... for: <i>đổ lỗi</i>	look into: <i>điều tra</i>
borrow ... from: <i>mượn</i>	object to: <i>phản đối</i>
care about: <i>quan tâm về</i>	participate in: <i>tham gia vào</i>
care for: <i>chăm sóc/thích/yêu cầu</i>	pay for: <i>trả tiền cho</i>
charge ... with: <i>phạt</i>	point / aim at: <i>chỉ ... vào</i>
come across: <i>tình cờ gặp</i>	prefer ... to: <i>thích ... hơn</i>
complain to ... about: <i>than phiền</i>	prepare for: <i>chuẩn bị</i>
concentrate on: <i>tập trung</i>	provide ... with: <i>cung cấp</i>
congratulate ... on: <i>chúc mừng</i>	regard ... as: <i>coi ... như</i>
consist of: <i>bao gồm</i>	rely ... on: <i>dựa vào</i>
crash into: <i>va chạm vào</i>	remind ... of: <i>nhắc nhở</i>
deal with: <i>giải quyết</i>	result from: <i>do bởi</i>
decide on: <i>quyết định về</i>	result in: <i>gây ra</i>
depend on: <i>thuộc vào</i>	run into: <i>tình cờ gặp</i>
die of: <i>chết vì</i>	search for: <i>tìm kiếm</i>
divide into: <i>chia (ra)</i>	send for: <i>cho mời (ai) đến</i>
dream of / about: <i>mơ về</i>	shout at: <i>la, hét</i>
escape from: <i>thoát khỏi</i>	speak/talk to: <i>nói với</i>
explain ... to: <i>giải thích</i>	spend ... on: <i>chi tiêu ... cho</i>
feel like: <i>cảm thấy như</i>	succeed in: <i>thành công về</i>

happen to: <i>xảy đến</i>	suffer from: <i>đau, chịu đựng</i>
hear about/from/of: <i>nghe về</i>	take after: <i>giống</i>
hope for: <i>hi vọng về</i>	think about / of: <i>nghĩ về</i>
insist on: <i>khăng khăng</i>	throw ... at: <i>ném ... vào</i>
invite ... to: <i>mời</i>	translate ... from ... into: <i>dịch...từ...sang</i>
laugh/smile at: <i>cười vào</i>	wait for: <i>chờ</i>
leave ... for: <i>rời ... để đến</i>	warn ... about: <i>cảnh báo ... về</i>
listen to: <i>nghe</i>	write to: <i>viết thư cho</i>

\* LƯU Ý: Go + preposition

go after: <i>đuổi theo, theo sau</i>	go down: ( <i>giá cả</i> ) <i>giảm</i> (# go up)
go ahead: <i>tiến hành, thẳng tiến</i>	go off: <i>cháy, nổ</i>
go along: <i>tiến triển</i>	go on: <i>xảy ra, diễn ra, tiếp tục</i>
go away: <i>đi khỏi</i>	go out: <i>tắt, bị dập tắt</i>
go back: <i>trở về</i>	go over: <i>xem xét, kiểm tra kỹ</i>
go by: ( <i>thời gian</i> ) <i>trôi qua</i>	go with: <i>hợp với</i>

IV) V + N + Giới từ:

catch sight of: <i>thoáng thấy</i>	pay attention to: <i>chú ý đến</i>
give place to: <i>dành chỗ cho</i>	put a stop to: <i>chấm dứt</i>
give way to: <i>nhường bộ</i>	put an end to: <i>chấm dứt</i>
keep pace with: <i>theo kịp</i>	set fire to: <i>làm cháy, đốt</i>
lose sight of: <i>mất hút</i>	take account of: <i>tính đến</i>
lose touch with: <i>mất liên lạc với</i>	take advantage of: <i>lợi dụng, tận dụng</i>
lose track of: <i>quên mất</i>	take care of: <i>chăm sóc</i>
make room for: <i>nhường chỗ cho</i>	take note of: <i>ghi chú, ghi nhận</i>
make use of: <i>sử dụng, tận dụng</i>	take notice of: <i>lưu ý, để ý</i>

## EXERCISES

---

### I. Put in at, on or in.

1. Mozart was born in Salzburg \_\_\_\_\_ 1756.
2. I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesday.
3. The price of electricity is going up \_\_\_\_\_ October.
4. I've been invited to the wedding \_\_\_\_\_ 14 February.
5. Hurry up! We've got to go \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes.
6. I'm busy now but I'll be with you \_\_\_\_\_ a moment.
7. Jenny's brother is out of work \_\_\_\_\_ the moment.
8. There are usually a lot of parties \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's Eve.
9. I hope the weather will be nice \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday night I went to bed \_\_\_\_\_ 11 o'clock.
11. I don't like travelling \_\_\_\_\_ night.
12. We travelled overnight to Paris and arrived \_\_\_\_\_ 5 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
13. The course begins \_\_\_\_\_ 7 January and ends sometime \_\_\_\_\_ April.
14. It was quite a short book and easy to read. I read it \_\_\_\_\_ a day.
15. The telephone and the door bell rang \_\_\_\_\_ the same time.
16. I might not be at home \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesday morning but I'll probably be there \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
17. Mary and Henry always go out for a meal \_\_\_\_\_ their wedding anniversary.
18. Henry is 63. He'll be retiring from his job \_\_\_\_\_ two years' time.
19. My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready \_\_\_\_\_ two hours.
20. We usually have a holiday \_\_\_\_\_ the summer.

### II. Mark is arranging a business meeting. Decide if you need in, on or at. If you do not need a preposition, put a cross (\*).

*Mark:* I'm sorry I was out when you called (1) \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday afternoon, *Alice:*  
Look, I'm free (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the fifteenth of March. Can we meet then?

*Alice:* I'm pretty busy (3) \_\_\_\_\_ next week, I'm afraid. I can't see you (4)  
\_\_\_\_\_ Friday.



*Mark:* I'd like to have a meeting (5) \_\_\_\_\_ this month if possible. I'll be very busy (6) \_\_\_\_\_ April.

*Alice:* I'm going away (7) \_\_\_\_\_ Easter, so how about the week after? Shall we meet (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the twenty-seventh? That's a Wednesday.

*Mark:* I've got an appointment (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the morning but nothing (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon. Let's meet (11) \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday afternoon (12) \_\_\_\_\_ half past two.

### III. Complete the conversation, using prepositions of time: *in, on, at, by, during, until, for, since.*

1. A: You only bought that book \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday. Have you finished it already?

B: I read it \_\_\_\_\_ about three hours yesterday evening.

2. A: Let's go shopping.

B: I think it's too late to go shopping. The shops are only open \_\_\_\_\_ 5.30. They'll be closed \_\_\_\_\_ now.

3. A: Your mother's birthday is \_\_\_\_\_ 23rd May, isn't it?

B: Yes, I just hope this card gets there \_\_\_\_\_ time.

4. A: Did you take notes \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture?

B: Yes, I did.

A: Can you lend me your notebook \_\_\_\_\_ Friday?

B: Sorry, I can't. I'll have to finish my report \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the week.

5. A: How long have you been learning English?

B: Well, I studied it \_\_\_\_\_ five years at school, and I've been having evening classes \_\_\_\_\_ last summer. That's when I left school.

6. A: Will the bank be open \_\_\_\_\_ half past nine?

B: Yes, it always opens absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ time.

7. A: Where are the children? I suppose they'll be here.

B: Well. The children aren't here \_\_\_\_\_ the moment, but they'll be back \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes.

8. A: We're leaving \_\_\_\_\_ half past, and you haven't even changed.

B: It's OK. I can easily shower and change \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes.

9. A: When did you see Lucy last?

B: I went to the theater three days ago, and I met Lucy \_\_\_\_\_ the interval.  
But I haven't seen her \_\_\_\_\_ then.

10. A: We're having a party \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday evening. Can you come?

B: Sorry, we can't. We've got some friends staying with us \_\_\_\_\_ the moment. They're staying \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.

11. A: We were all very hungry when we arrived. We hadn't had anything to eat \_\_\_\_\_ the journey.

B: Oh, god! You hadn't had anything \_\_\_\_\_ ten hours, had you?

12. A: Please hand in your complete assignment \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

B: I can't finish it \_\_\_\_\_ the day after tomorrow, I'm afraid.

#### IV. Complete the description with *at, for, during, by, until or in*.

The city of London was found by the Romans (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the year 43 AD. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the next few years it quickly became the main trading centre in Britain. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ two hundred years after the Romans left, the city was almost forgotten. Its full importance did not return (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the eleventh century. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the end of that century, the government of England was based in Westminster and the Tower of London had been started. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the Middle Ages London continued to grow, and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the time of Shakespeare it had become a prosperous capital city with many fine buildings. Unfortunately, most of these buildings were made of wood and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ 1666 they were almost all destroyed by a fire which lasted (9) \_\_\_\_\_ several days. This was a great tragedy for the people living there (10) \_\_\_\_\_ that time, but it is true that many of the areas which are most attractive today were planned (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the rebuilding which followed.

#### V. Complete the sentences with *in, at or on*.

1. Write your name \_\_\_\_\_ the top of the page.

2. I like that picture hanging \_\_\_\_\_ the wall \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen.

3. There was an accident \_\_\_\_\_ the crossroads this morning.

4. I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name \_\_\_\_\_ the door.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the street there is a path leading to the river.

6. You'll find the sports results \_\_\_\_\_ the back page of the newspaper.
7. I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting \_\_\_\_\_ a desk.
8. My brother lives \_\_\_\_\_ a small village \_\_\_\_\_ the south-west of England.
9. The man the police are looking for has a scar \_\_\_\_\_ his right cheek.
10. Natasha now lives \_\_\_\_\_ 32 The Avenue.
11. It can be dangerous when children play \_\_\_\_\_ the street.
12. If you walk to the end of the street, you'll see a small shop \_\_\_\_\_ the corner.
13. Is Tom \_\_\_\_\_ this photograph? I can't find him.
14. My office is \_\_\_\_\_ the first floor. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the left as you come out of the lift.
15. We normally use the front entrance but there's another entrance \_\_\_\_\_ the back.
16. Is there anything interesting \_\_\_\_\_ the paper today? ~ Well, there's an unusual photograph \_\_\_\_\_ the back page.
17. I love to look up at the stars \_\_\_\_\_ the sky at night.
18. When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit \_\_\_\_\_ the front.
19. It's a very small village. You probably won't find it \_\_\_\_\_ your map.
20. London is \_\_\_\_\_ the Thames.
21. I didn't see you \_\_\_\_\_ the party on Saturday. Where were you?
22. It was a very slow train. It stopped \_\_\_\_\_ every station.
23. I don't know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.
24. Shall I travel \_\_\_\_\_ your car or mine?
25. We stayed \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice hotel when we were \_\_\_\_\_ Amsterdam.
26. Tom is ill. He wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ work today. He was \_\_\_\_\_ home \_\_\_\_\_ bed.
27. I wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ when you phoned. I was \_\_\_\_\_ my sister's house.
28. It's always too hot \_\_\_\_\_ my sister's house. The heating is always on too high.
29. I haven't seen Kate for some time. I last saw her \_\_\_\_\_ Dave's wedding.
30. Paul lives \_\_\_\_\_ London. He's a student \_\_\_\_\_ London University.

**VI. Fill in the blank space with the correct preposition from the brackets.**

1. We have a bakery \_\_\_\_\_ the house so I don't have to walk far. (in, near, on)
2. Is there a cinema \_\_\_\_\_ your house, on the other side of the street?  
(opposite, over, at)
3. There's a sweetshop \_\_\_\_\_ my first floor flat. (inside, below, across)
4. There's a kiosk \_\_\_\_\_ the street. Can't you see it? (between, below, across)
5. Nancy is wearing a thick jersey \_\_\_\_\_ her shirt. (over, in, at)
6. Adam sat \_\_\_\_\_ Melissa and Barbara at the cinema. (among, at, between)
7. I could hear someone \_\_\_\_\_ me, but I didn't dare turn round. (in front of, behind, near)
8. There was a big crowd \_\_\_\_\_ the shop waiting for it to open. (inside, outside, beside)
9. Let's sit \_\_\_\_\_ the shade where it's cooler. (at, over, - in)
10. Come and walk \_\_\_\_\_ me so we can talk. (between, among, beside)
11. There's such a crowd. You won't find your friend \_\_\_\_\_ all these people. (between, in, among)
12. The passengers had to stand \_\_\_\_\_ a queue. (in, on, at)
13. Our flight was delayed. We had to wait \_\_\_\_\_ the airport for four hours.  
(inside, at, in)
14. I was standing \_\_\_\_\_ the counter in the baker's shop, waiting to be served.  
(in, at, on)
15. The village is 10,000 meters \_\_\_\_\_ the sea. (under, over, above)

**VII. Put in to, at, in, into or through where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, put a cross (\*).**

1. Three people were taken to hospital after the accident.
2. I met Caroline on my way \* home.
3. We left our luggage \_\_\_\_\_ the station and went to find something to eat.
4. Shall we take a taxi \_\_\_\_\_ the station or shall we walk?
5. I must go \_\_\_\_\_ the bank today to change some money.
6. The river Rhine flows \_\_\_\_\_ the North sea.
7. I'm tired. As soon as I get \_\_\_\_\_ home, I'm going \_\_\_\_\_ bed.
8. "Have you got your camera?" - "No, I left it \_\_\_\_\_ home."
9. Marcel is French. He has just returned France after two years

10. When did they arrive \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel?
11. Have you ever been \_\_\_\_\_ China?
12. I had lost my key but I managed to climb \_\_\_\_\_ the house a window.
13. We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way \_\_\_\_\_ the airport.
14. Welcome \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
15. She got \_\_\_\_\_ the car and drove away.
16. Don't wait outside. Come \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
17. The sheep got out \_\_\_\_\_ a hole \_\_\_\_\_ the fence.
18. Carl was born \_\_\_\_\_ Chicago but his family moved \_\_\_\_\_ New York when he was three. Now he still lives \_\_\_\_\_ New York.
19. That man is an idiot. He pushed me \_\_\_\_\_ the swimming-pool.
20. What time does this train arrive \_\_\_\_\_ London?

**VIII. Put in the correct preposition: *by, in, on or with.***

1. Who is that man standing \_\_\_\_\_ the window?
2. I managed to put the fire out \_\_\_\_\_ a fire extinguisher.
3. These photographs were taken \_\_\_\_\_ a friend of mine.
4. These photographs were taken \_\_\_\_\_ a very good camera.
5. I don't mind going \_\_\_\_\_ car but I don't want to go \_\_\_\_\_ your car.
6. Shall we get a taxi or shall we go \_\_\_\_\_ foot?
7. What's that music? I know it's \_\_\_\_\_ Beethoven but I can't remember what it's called.
8. There was a small table \_\_\_\_\_ the bed \_\_\_\_\_ a lamp and a clock \_\_\_\_\_ it.
9. Our team lost the game only because of a mistake \_\_\_\_\_ one of our players.
10. I didn't feel like walking home, so I came home \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi.

**IX. Put in *on, in, at or by.***

1. Water boils \_\_\_\_\_ 100 degrees celsius.
2. My cellphone was stolen while I was \_\_\_\_\_ a business trip.
3. Could you be quiet for a minute, please? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ the phone.
4. In Britain, children start school \_\_\_\_\_ the age of five.
5. We sat \_\_\_\_\_ the shade. It was too hot to sit \_\_\_\_\_ the sun.
6. Did you go to Germany \_\_\_\_\_ business or \_\_\_\_\_ holiday?

7. Can I pay \_\_\_\_\_ credit card?  
-Yes, of course. But it's cheaper if you pay \_\_\_\_\_ cash.
8. He got married \_\_\_\_\_ 17, which is rather young to get married.
9. There was an interesting program \_\_\_\_\_ the radio this morning.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ my opinion, violent films should not be shown \_\_\_\_\_ television.
11. When you do the exam, you're not allowed to write \_\_\_\_\_ pencil.
12. The earth travels round the sun \_\_\_\_\_ a speed of 107,000 kilometers an hour.
13. Look! That car is \_\_\_\_\_ fire! Please call the fire brigade.
14. I pressed the wrong number \_\_\_\_\_ mistake.
15. It's a long journey. Let's stop somewhere \_\_\_\_\_ the way and have a meal.

**X. Complete the sentences using one of the following nouns + correct preposition.**

<i>connection</i>	<i>difference</i>	<i>demand</i>	<i>contact</i>	<i>solution</i>
<i>reason</i>	<i>damage</i>	<i>need</i>	<i>invitation</i>	<i>attitude</i>
<i>increase</i>	<i>cheque</i>	<i>cause</i>	<i>advantage</i>	<i>difficulty</i>

1. The cause of the fire at the hotel last night is still unknown.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ living alone is that you can do what you like.
3. Money isn't the \_\_\_\_\_ every problem.
4. There has been an \_\_\_\_\_ the number of road accidents recently.
5. There are some \_\_\_\_\_ British and American English.
6. When Paul left home, his \_\_\_\_\_ his parents seemed to change.
7. The firm closed down because there wasn't enough \_\_\_\_\_ its product.
8. When I opened the envelope, I was delighted to find a \_\_\_\_\_ £500.
9. Bill and I used to be good friends but I don't have much \_\_\_\_\_ him now.
10. Carol has decided to give up her job. I don't know her \_\_\_\_\_ doing this.
11. I've had an \_\_\_\_\_ Laura's barbecue.
12. The accident caused some \_\_\_\_\_ the car.
13. Unfortunately there was some \_\_\_\_\_ the arrangement.
14. We need to provide more shelters for the homeless, so there's a \_\_\_\_\_ more houses.
15. The two companies are completely independent. There is no \_\_\_\_\_ them.

**XI. Complete the advertisement for a supermarket. Put in between, for, in, of or with.**

Why not shop at Greenway Supermarket? You'll find the cost (1) \_\_\_\_\_ your weekly shopping is much lower. There's quite a contrast (2) \_\_\_\_\_ other stores. Here's one example (3) \_\_\_\_\_ this from today many of our products have a price reduction (4) \_\_\_\_\_ five percent! But this is not the only one reason (5) \_\_\_\_\_ Greenway's success. We're proud of our good relationship (6) \_\_\_\_\_ our customers. We believe there is simply no substitute (7) \_\_\_\_\_ quality. And there is no lack (8) \_\_\_\_\_ choice at Greenway. That's the difference (9) \_\_\_\_\_ Green way and ordinary stores.

**XII. Say what these people's feelings are. Use the adjective in brackets and a preposition.**

1. The children are going on a trip to the zoo. (excited)

They're excited about the trip to the zoo.

2. Vicky doesn't like the dark. (afraid)

She's \_\_\_\_\_

3. Nick is watching a video, but he is going to switch it off. (bored)

He's \_\_\_\_\_

4. Emma is reading about computers. (interested)

She's \_\_\_\_\_

5. Mark has just heard some news that he didn't expect. (surprised)

He's \_\_\_\_\_

6. United have won a victory, (proud)

They're \_\_\_\_\_

7. Olivia's children are being very silly. (annoyed)

She's \_\_\_\_\_

8. The Zedco staff don't think their pay increase is big enough. (satisfied)

They aren't \_\_\_\_\_

9. I'm not used to speaking in front of the crowd. (nervous)

I'm \_\_\_\_\_

10. Our team lost in the final. (disappointed)

We're all \_\_\_\_\_

### XIII. Put in the correct preposition.

1. I was delighted \_\_\_\_\_ the present you gave me.
2. It was very nice \_\_\_\_\_ you to do my shopping.
3. Why are you so rude \_\_\_\_\_ your sisters? Can't you be nice \_\_\_\_\_ them?
4. Were you disappointed \_\_\_\_\_ your exam results?
5. We always have the same food every day. I'm fed up \_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. I can't understand the people who are cruel \_\_\_\_\_ animals.
7. Linda doesn't look very well. I'm worried \_\_\_\_\_ her.
8. It was a bit careless \_\_\_\_\_ you to leave the door unlocked.
9. Are you angry \_\_\_\_\_ what happened?
10. I'm sorry \_\_\_\_\_ what I said. I hope you're not angry \_\_\_\_\_ me.
11. The people next door are furious \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_ making so much noise last night.
12. Are you excited \_\_\_\_\_ going on holiday next week?
13. I was shocked \_\_\_\_\_ what I saw.
14. We weren't very impressed \_\_\_\_\_ his appearance.
15. Are you still upset \_\_\_\_\_ what I said to you?
16. I felt sorry \_\_\_\_\_ the children when we went on holiday.
17. His letter was full \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes.
18. The Italian city of Florence is famous \_\_\_\_\_ its art treasures.
19. Kate is very fond \_\_\_\_\_ her younger brother.
20. Are you afraid \_\_\_\_\_ snakes. -Yes, I'm terrified \_\_\_\_\_ them.
21. You don't seem interested \_\_\_\_\_ what I'm saying.
22. Did you know that Liz is engaged \_\_\_\_\_ a friend of mine?
23. I'm not ashamed \_\_\_\_\_ what I did. In fact I'm quite proud \_\_\_\_\_ it.
24. I suggested we should all go out for a meal but nobody else was keen \_\_\_\_\_ the idea.
25. These days everybody is aware \_\_\_\_\_ the dangers of smoking.
26. The station was crowded \_\_\_\_\_ people waiting for the train.
27. Why are you always so jealous \_\_\_\_\_ other people?
28. I'm tired \_\_\_\_\_ doing the same thing every day.
29. Her children have all been successful \_\_\_\_\_ their chosen careers.
30. I'm a bit short \_\_\_\_\_ money. Can you lend me some?



31. I'm not very good \_\_\_\_\_ repairing things.
32. The film is different \_\_\_\_\_ what I'd expected.
33. I'm sure you are capable \_\_\_\_\_ passing the exam.
34. Who was responsible \_\_\_\_\_ all that noise last night?
35. Our house is similar \_\_\_\_\_ yours. Perhaps yours is a bit larger.
36. She's totally dependent \_\_\_\_\_ her parents.
37. The fungus is not harmful \_\_\_\_\_ humans. Smoking is harmful \_\_\_\_\_ your health.
38. Many young people want to be independent \_\_\_\_\_ their parents nowadays.
39. I'm very grateful \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ her help.
40. He didn't trust me. He was suspicious \_\_\_\_\_ my intentions.

**XIV. Complete these paragraphs. Use these adjectives and put a preposition after each one: *different, famous, full, interested, late, ready, responsible, similar, used.***

Everything was strange here at first because this new job is (1) different from any I've had before. But I've got (2) \_\_\_\_\_ it now, and I'm really enjoying it. I'm mainly (3) \_\_\_\_\_ controlling the costs of the project. The work is quite hard, and I must feel (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday.

I've got a nice flat, which is very (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the one I had in London. The only difference is that my flat here is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ horrible old furniture. I keep falling over it! I live right by the harbour. It's a pity that I've never been (7) \_\_\_\_\_ boats. The noise of the motor boats wakes me up every morning, so I'm never (8) \_\_\_\_\_ work. The area is (9) \_\_\_\_\_ its seafood, which is great, because I love eating fish, as you know.

**XV. Complete the replies using a verb + object + preposition.**

1. A: I've bought a lot of books. I've spent £300.  
B: What? Have you really spent £300 on books?
2. A: I don't like wine. I prefer water.  
B: I don't believe that. Do you really \_\_\_\_\_
3. A: You heard about David's accident. Well, he's blaming Tom.  
B: But why? Why is he \_\_\_\_\_

4. A: I gave Claire a present, but she didn't thank me.  
B: Did you say she didn't \_\_\_\_\_
5. A: The police say it's murder. They're accusing the head teacher.  
B: What evidence? How can they \_\_\_\_\_
6. A: We had no towels. The hotel didn't provide them.  
B: Really? Why didn't they \_\_\_\_\_
7. A: It's my sister's wedding today, -but she didn't invite me.  
B: What! Do you mean she didn't \_\_\_\_\_
8. A: The team won a great victory, but no one congratulated them.  
B: Oh! And why didn't anyone \_\_\_\_\_
9. A: A man pointed a gun. Melanie was terrified.  
B: You mean someone \_\_\_\_\_
10. A: After the match, Mark hit an opponent, and then he was punished.  
B: Did you say they \_\_\_\_\_

**XVI. Put in these verbs and add a preposition after each one: *agree, applied, ask, care, caring, concentrate, decided, pay, suffering.***

I'm working in a hospital now. I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a nurse's job last July and started in August. I don't earn much money, and even I had to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ my uniform out of my own money. Perhaps I should (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a pay rise. But I don't really (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the money. The work is the important thing. Of course it's very hard work (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the patients, and at the moment I'm (6) \_\_\_\_\_. backache. But I knew it would be like this when I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a career in nursing. I just try to forget all the problems and (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the job. I think it's a worthwhile thing to do, and I'm sure you (9) \_\_\_\_\_ me.

**XVII. Decide which word is correct:**

1. I saw a really funny program \_\_\_\_\_ television.  
a. at                      b. from                      c. in                      d. on
2. Are these pictures \_\_\_\_\_ sale?  
a. at                      b. in                      c. for                      d. to
3. The audience clapped \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the show.  
a. at                      b. to                      c. in                      d. for

4. I've lived here \_\_\_\_\_ last year.  
 a. after                      b. by                              c. for                              d. since
5. We could see the balloon high \_\_\_\_\_ the town.  
 a. above                      b. on                              c. onto                              d. up
6. There was a fall \_\_\_\_\_ ten percent in prices.  
 a. at                              b. by                              c. in                              d. of
7. What time did they arrive \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel?  
 a. to                              b. at                              c. in                              d. on
8. What's the difference \_\_\_\_\_ a boat and a ship?  
 a. between                      b. from                              c. under                              d. with
9. His new car looks more \_\_\_\_\_ an aeroplane.  
 a. as                              b. like                              c. near                              d. similar
10. We're all bored \_\_\_\_\_ this game.  
 a. about                      b. at                              c. for                              d. with
11. We get lots of requests \_\_\_\_\_ help.  
 a. at                              b. for                              c. of                              d. on
12. I don't understand. Can you explain this word \_\_\_\_\_ me?  
 a. to                              b. for                              c. with                              d. on
13. The babysitter will stay there \_\_\_\_\_ we get home.  
 a. by                              b. for                              c. to                              d. until
14. We do most of our business \_\_\_\_\_ summer.  
 a. along                      b. at                              c. in                              d. on
15. The job is similar \_\_\_\_\_ my old one.  
 a. as                              b. at                              c. to                              d. with
16. Do you believe \_\_\_\_\_ God?  
 a. in                              b. on                              c. at                              d. to
17. Could you let me know \_\_\_\_\_ Friday at the latest?  
 a. by                              b. to                              c. up to                              d. until
18. The cameras prevent motorists \_\_\_\_\_ speed.  
 a. by                              b. from                              c. for                              d. with
19. What's the matter \_\_\_\_\_ your car?  
 a. for                              b. on                              c. by                              d. with
20. The bus didn't come, so we started out \_\_\_\_\_ foot.  
 a. by                              b. in                              c. on                              d. with

**XVIII. Write the missing words. Use one word only in each space.**

This is our first real holiday (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for ages, and I'm enjoying it tremendously. I love being (2) \_\_\_\_\_ an island. We arrived here almost a week (3) \_\_\_\_\_, and I can't believe the time is going so fast. We finally completed the journey here (4) \_\_\_\_\_ Friday evening (5) \_\_\_\_\_ about eleven o'clock. The journey wasn't too bad, but we had to wait ages (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the airport for our flight.

Our apartment here is fine. It's (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the top floor. The beach isn't far away - we can walk there (8) \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes. The only problem is that we have to get (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a busy main road, which can be difficult. We don't do much (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the day, but we go out every evening. Last night's disco went on very late, and today we slept (11) \_\_\_\_\_ eleven.

# LIÊN TỪ (CONJUNCTIONS)

## I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (DEFINITION):

Liên từ (conjunction) là từ được dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề hoặc câu.

Eg: and (và), but (nhưng), or (hoặc)...

## II. CÁC LOẠI LIÊN TỪ (KINDS OF CONJUNCTIONS):

Liên từ được phân làm hai loại: Liên từ kết hợp (co-ordinating conjunctions) và liên từ phụ thuộc (subordinating conjunctions)

### Liên từ kết hợp

(**co-ordinating conjunctions**): dùng để nối các từ, nhóm từ có chức năng giống nhau (danh từ với danh từ, động từ với động từ, tính từ với tính từ...) hoặc các mệnh đề độc lập về mặt ngữ pháp. Loại liên từ này được chia làm 4 nhóm:

a. **Nhóm AND:** chỉ sự thêm vào

Gồm các liên từ: *and, both...and, not only...but also, as well as*; các trạng từ (conjunctive adverbs) *besides, furthermore, moreover* và cụm từ *in addition* được dùng để nối hai mệnh đề hoặc câu độc lập.

Eg: Arlene Black has a yacht **and** a helicopter. **In addition**, she has five cars.

(*Arlene Black có một chiếc du thuyền và một chiếc trực thăng. Ngoài ra bà ấy còn có 5 chiếc ô tô.*)

**Both she and** her sister now live in New Orleans.

(*Hiện giờ cả cô ấy và chị cô ấy đều đang sống ở New Orleans.*)

I don't want to go shopping. **Besides**, I haven't got any money.

(*Tôi không thích đi mua sắm. hơn nữa, tôi cũng không có tiền.*)

She is a talented musicians **as well as** being a professional photographer.

(*Cô ấy là nhạc sĩ có tài và cũng là một nhà nhiếp ảnh chuyên nghiệp.*)



b. **Nhóm BUT:** chỉ sự mâu thuẫn hoặc trái ngược

Gồm các liên từ: *but, yet, still*; các trạng từ *however, nevertheless*, và cụm từ *on the other hand* được dùng để nối hai mệnh đề hoặc câu độc lập

Eg: He's intelligent **but** lazy.

(Anh ta thông minh nhưng lười biếng.)

We thought that Emma should accept the offer. **Nevertheless**, she turned it down.

(Chúng tôi tưởng Emma sẽ chấp nhận lời đề nghị. Thế nhưng cô ấy đã từ chối.)

I don't want to be late for the meeting. **On the other hand**, I don't want to get there too early.

(Tôi không muốn đến dự họp trễ. Tuy nhiên, tôi cũng không muốn đến đó quá sớm.)

She worked hard, **yet** she failed.

(Cô ấy học hành chăm chỉ thế mà lại trượt.)



c. **Nhóm OR:** chỉ sự lựa chọn hoặc đoán chừng.

Gồm các liên từ: *or, or else, otherwise, either...or, neither...*

Eg: Which color do you want – red, yellow, blue **or** grey?

(Bạn thích màu nào – đỏ, vàng, xanh hay xám?)

Hurry up **or else** you'll be late. (Nhanh lên kẻo bạn sẽ bị trễ đấy.)

When will you get the results? – **Either** tomorrow **or** the day after.

(Khi nào bạn có kết quả? – Ngày mai hoặc ngày kia.)

d. **Nhóm SO:** chỉ hậu quả, kết quả

Gồm các liên từ: *so, therefore, for*; trạng từ *consequently*, và cụm từ *as a result*

Eg: There weren't enough beds, **so** we had to sleep on the floor.

(Không có đủ giường nên chúng tôi phải ngủ trên sàn.)

Someone switched the fridge off and **consequently** all food was spoilt.

(Người nào đó đã tắt tủ lạnh làm tất cả thức ăn bị hư.)

## Subordinating conjunctions

(**subordinating conjunctions**): dùng để mở đầu một mệnh đề phụ (mệnh đề danh từ hoặc mệnh đề trạng từ). Liên từ phụ thuộc gồm:

a. **Nhóm WHEN**: chỉ mối quan hệ về thời gian

Gồm các liên từ *when, whenever, while, as, as soon as, after, before, until/ till, since, by the time...*

Eg: I'll phone you **as soon as** I get home from work.

(Tôi sẽ điện thoại cho anh ngay khi đi làm về.)

**Whenever** I hear that song, I think of you.

(Mỗi lần nghe bài hát đó tôi lại nhớ đến anh.)

We are going to tidy up **after** everyone has gone.

(Chúng ta sẽ dọn dẹp sau khi mọi người đã ra về.)

**When** he saw me, he waved. (Anh ấy vẫy tay khi trông thấy tôi.)

b. **Nhóm BECAUSE**: chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do

Gồm các liên từ *because, as, since, now (that), seeing (that/ as)*.

Eg: **Because/ As/ Since** I liked him, I tried to help him.

(Tôi có giúp đỡ anh ta vì tôi mến anh ta.)

**Now/ Seeing (that)** it's your money, I suppose you can buy whatever you want.

(Vì đó là tiền của bạn nên tôi cho rằng bạn có thể mua bất cứ thứ gì bạn thích.)

c. **Nhóm IF**: chỉ điều kiện

Gồm các liên từ *if, unless, in case, provided (that), supposing (that)*

Eg: **If** you need help, just let me know.

(Nếu bạn cần được giúp đỡ, hãy cho tôi biết.)

You can go out to play **provided that** you finish your homework first.

(Con có thể đi chơi với điều kiện là con phải làm xong bài tập về nhà trước đã.)

d. **Nhóm THOUGH**: chỉ sự tương phản

Gồm các liên từ *though, although, even though, even if*

Eg: **Although/ Though** I don't agree with him, I think he's honest.

(Dù rằng tôi không đồng ý với anh ấy, tôi vẫn nghĩ anh ấy thật lòng)

**Even though/ Even if** you dislike Jessica, you should try to be nice to her.

(Dù cho bạn không thích Jessica nhưng bạn cũng nên đối xử tốt với cô ấy)

Các từ hoặc cụm từ *whether...or not, no matter what, whatever, whenever, wherever, whoever*, hoặc *however* + tính từ / trạng từ cũng có thể dùng như liên từ chỉ sự tương phản.

Eg: I'm not opening the door, **whoever** you are.

(Tôi sẽ không mở cửa cho dù ông là ai đi nữa.)

Keep calm **whatever** happens

(Hãy bình tĩnh cho dù có điều gì xảy ra đi nữa.)

They'll find out the truth **whether** you tell them **or not**.

(Họ sẽ tìm ra sự thật cho dù bạn có nói với họ hay không.)

e. **Nhóm IN ORDER THAT**: chỉ mục đích

Gồm các liên từ *in order that, so that, for fear that*.

Eg: Send the letter express, **so that/ in order that** they'll get it before Tuesday.

(Hãy gửi thư chuyển phát nhanh để họ nhận được nó trước thứ 3.)

We spoke in whispers **for fear (that)** we might wake the baby.

(Chúng tôi nói thì thầm vì sợ làm em bé thức giấc.)

f. **Nhóm SO... THAT**: chỉ kết quả

• *So* + adj/ adv + *that*

Eg: Emma was **so angry that** she couldn't speak.

(Emma giận đến nỗi không nói được.)

• *Such* + (a/ an) + adj + noun + *that*

Eg: It was **such a boring speech that** I fell asleep.

(Bài diễn văn quá tẻ nhạt đến nỗi tôi ngủ thiếp đi.)

g. **Nhóm THAT**: đưa ra 1 lời tuyên bố, 1 ý kiến, 1 sự kiện hoặc 1 lý do

Eg: I understood **that** he was innocent. (Tôi hiểu rằng anh ta vô tội.)

It's possible **that** he hasn't received the letter.

(Có thể là anh ta đã không nhận được thư.)



## EXERCISES

---

**I. Rewrite the following as one sentence, using *and*, *but*, *so*, or.**

1. It was raining. I felt cold. I went indoors.

*It was raining and I felt cold so I went indoors.*

2. He loves her. She loves him. They are getting married.

.....

3. I can paint the lounge. I can clean the fridge. I can't do both.

.....

4. Mr Downes seemed poor. In fact, he had a lot of money.

.....

5. Tim is sleeping. You can't speak to him at the moment.

.....

6. The postman banged the gate. He shouted at Lulu. She bit him.

.....

7. My mother wanted me to become a doctor. I didn't.

.....

8. Nick didn't understand the lesson. He couldn't do the homework.

.....

9. A bee flew into the classroom this morning. It stung me.

.....

10. You mustn't put this in the washing machine. You must wash it by hand.  
You must dry-clean it.

.....

11. We lay in the sun. We got hot. We swam. We cooled off.

.....

12. Louis broke her watch. Then she borrowed mine.

.....

13. We might go to Spain. We might go to France.

.....

14. Mike could speak French. He could speak Spanish. He couldn't write them.

.....

15. We went to the museum. It was closed. We went to the cinema.

.....

**II. Put in these word: *although, because, but, if, in case, in order to, in spite of, so, so that, unless.***

1. Olivia booked a babysitter so that she could go out for the evening.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ it was late, Nick didn't seem in a hurry to leave.
3. They put video cameras in shops \_\_\_\_\_ stop people stealing things.
4. We decided not to go out for a meal \_\_\_\_\_ we were simply too tired.
5. Our room was very small, \_\_\_\_\_ we didn't really mind.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ you're ready, we can start now.
7. No one was watching the television, \_\_\_\_\_ I switched it off.
8. You can't drive a car \_\_\_\_\_ you've got a licence.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ having absolutely no talent, Guy became a popular TV personality and chat show host.
10. I think my answers are right, but can I just check them with yours \_\_\_\_\_ I've made a mistake?

**III. Match the sentences in column A to the sentences in column B.**

**A**

1. Although he was very bad-tempered,
2. Always brush your teeth
3. Always wash your hands
4. As Liz told you,
5. Because I knew her family,
6. Talk to me like that again
7. Don't do that again
8. He had a terrible temper
9. Liz explained to you
10. I was sorry for her
11. If you do that again,
12. There'll be trouble

**B**

- a. after you have a meal.
- b. and I'll hit you.
- c. before you have a meal
- d. but everybody liked him.
- e. he had lots of friends.
- f. I did what I could for her.
- g. her mother left for Paris last week.
- h. or I'll hit you.
- i. so I tried to help her.
- j. that her mother went back home last week
- k. unless you stop that.
- l. you'll be sorry.

1. e ; 2. \_\_\_\_\_ ; 3. \_\_\_\_\_ ; 4. \_\_\_\_\_ ; 5. \_\_\_\_\_ ; 6. \_\_\_\_\_ ; 7. \_\_\_\_\_ ;  
8. \_\_\_\_\_ 9. \_\_\_\_\_ ; 10. \_\_\_\_\_ ; 11. \_\_\_\_\_ ; 12. \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Rewrite the following sentences, using these word instead of the underlined ones: *as soon as, before, since, when, while, until, after.***

1. I'll love you up to the day I die.

*I'll love you until I die.*

2. I must get to the post office earlier than it closes.

3. My leg hurts at the time I walk.

4. Mark heard the news on the radio during the time he was driving home.

5. We're going to tidy up later than everyone has gone.

6. It started to rain immediately after she had left.

7. You have to wait up to the time the light changes to green.

8. I've been sad from the time you left me.

9. Think of me during the time I'm away.

10. Come back earlier than I forget you.

**V. Put in a suitable conjunction: *after, before, when, while, until, as soon as, since, as if.***

1. I usually have a snack \_\_\_\_\_ going to bed.

2. He had a heart attack \_\_\_\_\_ watching a video.

3. You look \_\_\_\_\_ you've seen the ghost.

4. How many jobs have you had \_\_\_\_\_ leaving school?

5. Have a rest every hour or so \_\_\_\_\_ driving long distances.

6. We haven't heard anything from her \_\_\_\_\_ getting that letter last month.

7. I'll look after the kids \_\_\_\_\_ you get back,

8. Put this on \_\_\_\_\_ shaving and you'll smell wonderful.

9. Always wear goggles \_\_\_\_\_ working with metal.

10. I fell in love \_\_\_\_\_ we met.

## VI. Complete the conversation. Choose the correct linking word.

*Daniel:* What are you going to do (1) after/ before you finish college, Rachel?

*Rachel:* Vicky and I will be off to the States (2) as soon as/ in spite of this term is over.

We may go to Canada (3) so that/ to see some friends of Vicky. We've been thinking about nothing else (4) since/ until we bought our plane tickets.

*Daniel:* It sounds great. How are you getting around in the States?

*Rachel:* By Greyhound bus. I know it takes more longer than flying, (5) but/ in spite of it'll be more interesting. We are going to buy a special ticket (6) in order to/ so that we can go anywhere we like on the way.

*Daniel:* Yes, it's better by bus (7) because/ unless you can stop off at interesting places.

Maybe you should take plenty of money (8) if/ in case you decide to fly instead.

*Rachel:* I'm hoping to stay out there (9) unless/ until I have to come back and start my job in September. I'm really looking forward to the trip, (10) although/ because I will be sad to leave here. And what about you? What are you doing this summer?

*Daniel:* I'd go away somewhere (11) if/ in case I could afford to. But I'm working. I've got no money, (12) because/ so I'll have to earn some.

*Rachel:* Have you really got no money (13) although/ in spite of the fact that you've had a part-time job this term?

*Daniel:* You know me, Rachel. If I've got money, I spend it.

## VII. Complete the letter to a local newspaper with the words or phrases from the box.

however

after all

furthermore

as a result

in other words

for example

on the contrary

There's been a lot of talk about a 'spaceship' seen over the town at about eleven o'clock on Friday night. (1) \_\_\_\_\_, hundreds of enthusiastic sky-watchers

have arrived in town, hoping that it will return. But was it really a spaceship? About twenty people say they saw it. (2) \_\_\_\_\_, there is a photograph which is supposed to show the object in the sky. We know, (3) \_\_\_\_\_, that trick photos are easy to produce. (4) \_\_\_\_\_, it is almost certainly a fake. But it would be wrong to treat the whole thing as a joke. (5) \_\_\_\_\_. all such reports should be carefully investigated. (6) \_\_\_\_\_, the arrival of a spacecraft from another world would indeed be a serious matter. But usually there is a more simple explanation. Many supposed spaceship turn out to be weather balloons, (7) \_\_\_\_\_. A similar mistake probably lies behind the belief that someone from another world really did pay us a visit last Friday.

**VIII. Join each pair of sentences. Use the words in brackets.**

1. Mary came to class late. Her motorbike had a puncture.(because)  
Mary came to class late because her motorbike had a puncture.
2. Nick used to smoke. He seems to be in good health. (although)  
 .....
3. Our team won by a large margin. No one thought we would win the championship. (but)  
 .....
4. I could not see his face clearly. He was standing in the shadow. (so)  
 .....
5. We couldn't get tickets. We queued for an hour. (in spite of)  
 .....
6. Tom was late. So was Ann. (both... and)  
 .....
7. You don't practice. You won't learn to use a keyboard properly. (unless)  
 .....
8. The man spoke very slowly. He wanted me to understand what he said. (so that)  
 .....
9. We can leave today. We can leave tomorrow.(either ... or)  
 .....
10. You can use my car. You drive carefully. (as long as)  
 .....

11. She earned her living by selling newspaper. She got a B.A. degree. (even though)  
.....
12. This prize will mean an honour for him. It will mean an honour for us. (not only... but also)  
.....
13. Our flight was delay. We decided to take along walk around the terminal. (Since)  
.....
14. I'm sorry to say that Paul has no patience. He has no sensitivity to others.(neither... nor)  
.....
15. Success in karate requires balance and skill. Success in karate requires concentration and mental alertness. (not only... but also)  
.....

# TỪ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG (QUANTITATIVE WORD)

## I. SOME, ANY:

Cả *some* và *any* đều được dùng để chỉ một số lượng không xác định khi không thể hay không cần phải nêu rõ số lượng chính xác.

### 1. Some (một vài, một ít):

**Some** thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định, trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều (countable plural nouns) hoặc danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns)

Eg: My mother bought **some eggs**. (*Mẹ tôi đã mua vài quả trứng.*)

He is busy. He's got **some work** to do.

(*Anh ta bận. Anh ta có một số việc phải làm*)

There's **some milk** in the fridge. (*Có một ít sữa trong tủ lạnh.*)

I need **some stamps** – There are some in the drawer.

(*Tôi cần vài con tem – Có vài con tem trong ngăn kéo.*)

**Some** được dùng trong câu hỏi khi chúng ta mong chờ câu trả lời *Yes* (có)

Eg: Have you brought **some** paper and a pen?

(*Bạn có mang theo giấy, viết chứ?*)

→ người nói hy vọng người nghe có mang theo giấy và viết.

Did you buy **some** oranges? (*Bạn có mua cam chứ?*)

→ người nói hy vọng người nghe đã mua.

**Some** còn được dùng trong câu yêu cầu, lời mời hoặc lời đề nghị

Eg: Would you like **some** more coffee? (*Anh dùng thêm một ít cà phê nữa nhé?*)

Can I have **some** sugar, please? (*Vui lòng cho tôi xin một ít đường.*)

Let's go out for **some** drink (*Chúng ta hãy đi uống nước đi.*)

### 2. Any (...nào):

**Any** thường được dùng trong câu phủ định hoặc nghi vấn, trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được,

Eg: Have you got **any butter**? – Sorry, I haven't got **any butter**.

(*Bạn có tí bơ nào không? – Rất tiếc là tôi không có bơ.*)

There aren't **any chairs** in the room. (*Không có cái ghế nào trong phòng.*)

[= There are no chairs in the room.]

**Any** có nghĩa 'bất cứ' được dùng trong mệnh đề khẳng định, trước danh từ số ít (đếm được hoặc không đếm được) hoặc sau các từ có nghĩa phủ định (*never, hardly, scarcely, without...*)

Eg: I'm free all day. Come and see me **any time** you like.

(Tôi rảnh rỗi cả ngày. Hãy đến thăm tôi bất cứ lúc nào anh thích.)

He's lazy. He **never** does **any work**.

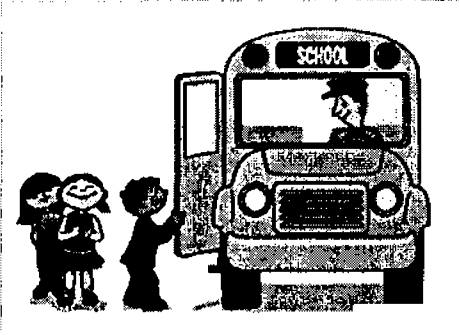
(Anh ta thật lười nhác. Anh ta chẳng bao giờ làm bất cứ việc gì.)

They crossed the frontier without **any difficulty**.

(Họ vượt qua biên giới không chút khó khăn.)

You can catch **any bus**. They all go to the center.

(Bạn có thể đón bất cứ chiếc xe buýt nào. Tất cả chúng đều đến khu trung tâm.)



**Any** có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề *If* (if-clause)

Eg: If there are **any** letters for me, can you send them on to this address?

(Nếu có lá thư nào gửi cho tôi, bạn có thể gửi chúng đến địa chỉ này được không?)

If you need **any** more money, please let me know.

(Nếu anh cần thêm tiền, xin hãy cho tôi biết.)

**\* Lưu ý:**

- Khi danh từ đã được xác định, chúng ta có thể dùng *some* và *any* không có danh từ theo sau.

Eg: Tim wanted **some** milk, but he couldn't find **any**.

(Tim muốn uống sữa nhưng anh ấy không tìm được chút nào.)

If you have no stamps, I will give **some**.

(Nếu bạn không có tem, tôi sẽ cho bạn vài con.)

- Các đại từ phiếm chỉ *something, anything, someone, anyone, somebody, anybody, somewhere, anywhere...* được dùng tương tự như cách dùng *some* và *any*.



Eg: There's **somebody** at the front door. (*Có ai đó ở cửa trước.*)

Is there **anybody** here? (*Có ai ở đây không?*)

Would you like **something** to drink? (*Anh uống chút nhé?*)

I'm not thirsty. I don't want **anything** to drink.

(*Tôi không khát. Tôi không muốn uống gì cả*)

Let's go **somewhere** for dinner. – Is there **anywhere** we can go?

(*Chúng ta đi đâu đó ăn tối đi – Chúng ta đi đâu đây?*)

## II. MUCH, MANY, A LOT OF, LOTS OF, A GREAT DEAL OF, A LARGE NUMBER OF,...

**Much, many, a lot of,...** là các từ chỉ lượng bất định, có nghĩa một số lượng lớn người, vật hoặc sự việc.

với danh từ đếm được số nhiều (with countable plural nouns)	với danh từ không đếm được (with uncountable nouns)
many	much
a large number of	a large amount of
a great number of	a great deal of
plenty of	plenty of
a lot of	a lot of
lots of	lots of

Eg: I haven't got **much time** for reading.

(*Tôi không có nhiều thời gian để đọc sách.*)

There are so **many people** here that I feel tired.

(*Ở đây có nhiều người đến nỗi tôi cảm thấy mệt.*)

**A large amount of** information is stored in the computer.

(*Một lượng lớn thông tin được lưu trữ trong máy tính.*)

She has got **a great deal of** homework today.

(*Hôm nay cô ấy có nhiều bài tập về nhà.*)

Did you spend **much money** for the cars. – Yes, I spent **a lot of money** for them. But I want to have **a lot of cars**.

(*Bạn có tốn nhiều tiền để mua những chiếc ô tô này không? – Có, tôi đã tốn nhiều tiền để mua chúng. Nhưng tôi thích có nhiều ô tô.*)

Don't hurry – We have **plenty of time**.

(*Đừng vội – chúng ta có nhiều thời gian mà.*)

There are **plenty of** eggs in the fridge. (*Có nhiều trứng trong tủ lạnh.*)

He is making **lots of** money. (*Anh ta đang kiếm được nhiều tiền.*)

George used to have **lots of** friends in New York.

(*Trước đây George có nhiều bạn ở New York.*)

**A large number of** students have part-time jobs nowadays.

(*Ngày nay, nhiều sinh viên làm việc bán thời gian.*)

- Theo nguyên tắc chung, chúng ta dùng *many*, *much* trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi và dùng *a lot of*, *lots of* trong câu khẳng định.

Eg: We didn't spend **much** money for Christmas presents. But we spent **a lot of** money for the party.

(*Chúng tôi đã không tốn nhiều tiền mua quà giáng sinh. Nhưng chúng tôi đã tiêu nhiều tiền cho bữa tiệc.*)

Do you know **many** people here?

(*Anh có quen nhiều người ở đây không?*)

He's got **lots of/ a lot of** men friends, but he doesn't know many women.

(*Anh ta có nhiều bạn trai nhưng anh ta không quen nhiều bạn gái.*)

- Tuy nhiên trong lối văn trang trọng, đôi khi chúng ta có thể dùng *many* và *much* trong câu xác định. Và trong lối nói thân mật, *a lot of* cũng có thể được dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi.

Eg: **Many** students have financial problem.

(*Nhiều sinh viên gặp khó khăn về tài chính.*)

There was **much** bad driving on the road.

(*Có nhiều xe chạy ẩu trên đường.*)

I don't have **many/ a lot of** friends. (*Tôi không có nhiều bạn.*)

Do you eat **much/ a lot of** fruit? (*Bạn có ăn nhiều trái cây không?*)

- Chúng ta dùng *much* và *many* (không được dùng *a lot of*, *lots of*, *plenty of*...) sau các từ *so*, *as*, và *too*.

Eg: There was **so much** traffic that it took me an hour to get home.

(*Có quá nhiều xe cộ đến nỗi tôi phải mất một giờ đồng hồ mới về đến nhà.*)

[NOT ...~~so a lot of~~ traffic...]

You made **too many** mistakes in your writing.

(*Bạn đã phạm quá nhiều lỗi trong bài viết.*)

Jason has a lot of friends, but I think I have **as many** friends as him.

(*Jason có nhiều bạn, nhưng tôi cho rằng tôi cũng có nhiều bạn không kém anh ấy.*)

+ *Very much* thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định như một trạng từ chứ không phải là từ hạn định.

Eg: I **very much** enjoy travelling. (*Tôi rất thích đi du lịch.*)

- *Many of, much of* + determiner/ pronoun

Eg: I won't pass the exam; I've missed too **many of my** lessons.

(*Tôi không thể thi đậu; Tôi đã bỏ qua nhiều bài vở.*)

You can't see **much of a** county in a week.

(*Trong một tuần bạn không thể tham quan được nhiều nơi trong một nước.*)

### III. FEW, A FEW, LITTLE, A LITTLE:

**Few** và **a few** được dùng trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều (countable plural nouns). **Little** và **a little** được dùng trước các danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns)

➤ **Few, little** (ít, không nhiều) thường có nghĩa phủ định và chỉ một số lượng rất ít (ít hơn những gì bạn muốn hoặc mong đợi)

Eg: He isn't popular. He has **few** friends.

(*Anh ta không được mọi người yêu mến. Anh ta có ít bạn bè.*)

[few friends = not many friends]

**Few** customers have come into the shop. It has been quiet.

(*Ít khách hàng vào cửa hiệu, nó rất vắng lặng.*)

[few customers = not many customers]

Hurry up! There is **little** time. (*Nhanh lên nào! Còn ít thời gian lắm.*)

[little time = not much time, not enough time]

He spoke **little** English, so it was difficult to communicate with him.

(*Anh ta nói được ít tiếng Anh, nên rất khó giao tiếp với anh ta.*)

[little English = not much English]

➤ **A few, a little** (một vài, một ít) thường có nghĩa khẳng định và chỉ một số lượng nhỏ (gần nghĩa với *some*)

Eg: I enjoy my life here. I have **a few** friends and we meet quite often.

(*Tôi thích sống ở đây. Tôi có vài người bạn và chúng tôi rất thường gặp nhau.*)

[a few friends = some friends, a small number of friends]

**A few** customers have come into the shop. It has been fairly busy.

(*Một số khách hàng vào cửa hiệu. Nó khá nhộn nhịp.*)

[a few customers = some customers, a small number of customers]

Let's go and have a drink. We've got **a little** time before the train leaves.

(Chúng ta đi uống nước nhé. Chúng ta còn một ít thời gian trước khi tàu chạy.)

[a little time = some time, a small amount of time]

He spoke **a little** English, so we were able to communicate with him.

(Anh ta nói được một ít tiếng Anh, nên chúng tôi có thể giao tiếp với anh ta.)

[a little English = some English = a small amount of English]

Would you like **a little** salt on your vegetables?

(Cho một chút muối vào rau của bạn nhé?)

[a little salt = some salt = a amount of salt]

### **Lưu ý:**

- *Only a little* và *only a few* có nghĩa phủ định

Eg: We must be quick. We've got **only a little** time.

(Chúng ta phải nhanh lên. Chúng ta chỉ còn một ít thời gian.)

[only a few = not much]

**Only a few** customers have come in.

(Chỉ có một vài khách hàng bước vào.) [*only a few = not many*]

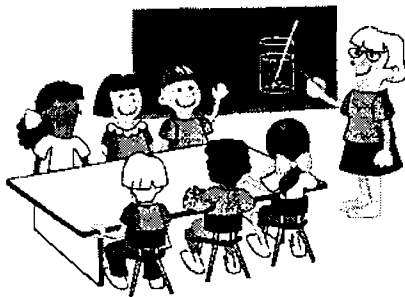
- (a) little of/ (a) few of + determiner / pronoun

Eg: Could I try a little of your wine?

(Tôi uống thử một chút rượu của anh có được không?)

Only a few of the children in this class like math.

(Chỉ vài đứa trẻ trong lớp này thích toán.)



#### **IV. ALL, MOST, SOME, NO, ALL OF, MOST OF, SOME OF, NONE OF:**

1. **All** (tất cả), **most** (phần lớn; đa số), **some** (một vài), **no** (không), được dùng như từ hạn định (determiner) trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được.

**All/ most/ some/ no (+ adjective) + plural noun/ uncountable noun**

Eg: **All children** are fond of candy. (tất cả trẻ con đều thích kẹo)

**Most cheese** is made from cow's milk.

(Phần lớn phô mát được làm từ sữa bò.)

**Some food** makes me ill. (Một số thức ăn làm tôi buồn nôn.)

**Most Swiss people** understand French.

(Đa số người Thụy Sĩ hiểu tiếng Pháp.)

**All classical music** sends me to sleep.

(Tất cả các loại nhạc cổ điển đều làm cho tôi buồn ngủ.)

2. **All of, most of, some of, none of** được dùng trước các danh từ hạn định (determiners: *a, an, the, my, his, this...*) và các đại từ (pronouns)

Eg: Have **all (of) the plants** died? – No, not **all of them**.

(Tất cả cây cối đều chết hết sao? – Không, không phải tất cả.)

**Most of her friends** live abroad.

(Phần lớn bạn bè của cô ta sống ở nước ngoài.)

**Some of those people** are very friendly.

(Một vài người trong số đó rất thân thiện.)

These books are all Jane's. **None of them** belong to me.

(Tất cả sách này là của Jane. Không có cuốn nào của tôi cả.)



**\* Lưu ý:**

- Chúng ta có thể bỏ **of** sau **all** hoặc **half** khi **of** đứng trước từ hạn định (không được bỏ **of** khi **of** đứng trước đại từ)

Eg: All (of) my friends live in London, but all of them have been to the meeting.

(Tất cả bạn bè tôi đều sống ở London, nhưng tất cả đều đã đến dự cuộc họp mặt.)

Half (**of**) this money is mine, and half **of** it is yours.

(Phần nửa số tiền này là của tôi, còn phần nửa của anh.)

- Chúng ta thường không dùng *of* khi không có từ hạn định (mạo từ hoặc từ sở hữu) đứng trước danh từ. Tuy nhiên trong một vài trường hợp *most of* cũng có thể được dùng mà không có từ hạn định theo sau, ví dụ như trước các tên riêng và địa danh.

Eg: The Romans conquered **most of England**.

(Người La Mã đã xâm chiếm phần lớn nước Anh.)

- Các cụm danh từ đứng sau *all of, most of, some of...* thường xác định (phải có *the, these, those...*, hoặc các tính từ sở hữu *my, his, her...*)

Eg: **Most of the boys** in my class want to choose well-paid jobs.

(Phần lớn nam sinh trong lớp tôi muốn chọn công việc được trả lương cao)

- Chúng ta có thể bỏ danh từ sau *all, most, some, none* nếu nghĩa đã rõ ràng

Eg: The band sang a few songs. **Most** were old ones, but **some** were new.

(Ban nhạc hát một vài bài. Phần lớn là các bài cũ, nhưng cũng có một số bài mới.)

I wanted some cake, but there was **none** left.

(Tôi muốn ăn một ít bánh, nhưng chẳng còn tí bánh nào.)

## V. EACH, EVERY:

**Every** và **each** thường được dùng trước các danh từ đếm được ở số ít (singular countable nouns)

Eg: The police questioned **every/ each person** in the building.

(Cảnh sát thẩm vấn từng người trong tòa nhà.)

[NOT ...**every/each people**]

**Every/ each room** has a number. (Mỗi phòng đều có số.)

[NOT **every/ each rooms**]

Trong nhiều trường hợp, *every* và *each* có thể dùng với nghĩa tương tự nhau.

Eg: You look more beautiful **each/ every** time I see you.

Tuy nhiên *every* và *each* vẫn có sự khác nhau về nghĩa

- **Every** (mỗi, mọi)

Chúng ta dùng *every* khi chúng ta nghĩ về người hoặc vật một như một tổng thể hoặc một nhóm. (cùng nghĩa với *all*)

Eg: **Every** guest watched as the President came in. [= all guests]

(Khi Tổng thống bước vào, mọi quan khách đều nhìn theo.)

I go for a walk **every** day. (Tôi đi dạo mỗi ngày) [=all days]

*Every* có thể được dùng để nói về ba hoặc nhiều hơn ba người hoặc vật, thường là một số lượng lớn.

Eg: There were cars parked along **every** street in town. [=all the streets]

(*Ô tô đậu dọc theo mọi con đường trong thị xã.*)

- **Each** (mỗi):

Chúng ta dùng *each* khi chúng ta nghĩ về người hoặc vật một cách riêng rẽ, từng người hoặc từng vật trong một nhóm.

Eg: **Each** person in turn shook hand with him.

(*Lần lượt từng người bắt tay với ông ấy.*)

**Each** day seemed to pass very slowly.

(*Đường như từng ngày trôi qua chậm chạp.*)

*Each* có thể được dùng để nói về hai hoặc nhiều hơn hai, thường là một nhóm nhỏ người hoặc vật.

Eg: There are four books on the table. **Each** book was a different color.

(*Trên bàn có bốn cuốn sách. Mỗi cuốn có màu khác nhau.*)

There were cars parked along each side of the street. [both sided]

(*Ô tô đậu dọc hai bên đường.*)

*Each* có thể được dùng một mình hoặc dùng với *of* (each of + determiner/ pronoun)

Eg: There are six flats. **Each** has its own entrance.

(*Có 6 căn hộ. mỗi căn đều có lối đi riêng.*)

**Each of** the houses has a backyard.

(*Mỗi ngôi nhà đều có sân sau.*)

**Each of** us sees the world differently.

(*Mỗi người trong chúng ta có cái nhìn khác nhau về cuộc đời.*)

## EXERCISES

---

### I. Complete the sentences with some or any:

1. We didn't buy \_\_\_\_\_ flowers.
2. This evening I'm going out with \_\_\_\_\_ friends of mine.
3. I didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ money, so I had to borrow \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_ milk on my coffee, please?
5. I was too tired to do \_\_\_\_\_ work.
6. Have you seen \_\_\_\_\_ good films recently?
7. Can you give me \_\_\_\_\_ information about places of interest in the town?
8. With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on \_\_\_\_\_ train you like.
9. If there are \_\_\_\_\_ words you don't understand, use a dictionary.
10. She went out without \_\_\_\_\_ money.

### II. Complete the conversations. Put in some, any, anyone, someone, something, anything, somewhere, anywhere.

1. A: We haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ bread.  
B: You'd better go to the shop, then. We need \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes, too.
2. A: Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ cheese and biscuits?  
B: Oh, no thank you. That was delicious, but I couldn't eat \_\_\_\_\_ else.
3. A: There's \_\_\_\_\_ at the door.  
B: Are you expecting \_\_\_\_\_ visitors?
4. A: Has \_\_\_\_\_ offered to help you with the tea?  
B: No, but I'd be very grateful for \_\_\_\_\_ help you can give .
5. A: I was looking for \_\_\_\_\_, and now I can't remember what it was.  
B: You said you were looking for \_\_\_\_\_ matches.
6. A: Does \_\_\_\_\_ mind if I open the window?  
B: No, please do. We all need \_\_\_\_\_ fresh air.
7. A: Where shall we go on holiday?  
B: Let's go \_\_\_\_\_ warm and sunny.
8. A: What happened to Sally last night?  
B: I don't know exactly. She was upset about \_\_\_\_\_ and refused to talk to \_\_\_\_\_.



9. A: Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to eat?

B: No, I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ to eat. But I'm thirsty, I want \_\_\_\_\_ to drink.

A: What would you like?

B: I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_.

10. A: Do you live \_\_\_\_\_ near Jim?

B: No, he lives in another part of town.

**III. Complete the conversation. Put in a lot of, many or much. More than one answer may be correct.**

*Matthew:* There are (1) \_\_\_\_\_ athletes taking part in the International Games in London. There's been (2) \_\_\_\_\_ coverage in the papers.

*Daniel:* Our runners haven't won (3) \_\_\_\_\_ medals, have they?

*Matthew:* No, not as (4) \_\_\_\_\_ as last time. But there is plenty of time. There are still (5) \_\_\_\_\_ events to come. I'd like to go and see some of the track events, but I haven't got (6) \_\_\_\_\_ time at the moment.

*Daniel:* No, not with exams coming up. We're having so (7) \_\_\_\_\_ lessons to study.

*Matthew:* I'm hoping to go at the weekend if I can get a ticket. Apparently there aren't (8) \_\_\_\_\_ seats left.

*Daniel:* I've heard the cheapest tickets are £25. I think that's too (9) \_\_\_\_\_.

**IV. Put in a few, few, a little or little.**

1. I don't think I can lift this box on my own. I need \_\_\_\_\_ help.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ tourists visited Northern Ireland in the 1980s because of the terrorism there.

3. The postman doesn't often come here. We receive \_\_\_\_\_ letters.

4. The snow was quite deep. There seemed \_\_\_\_\_ hope of completing our journey.

5. Trevor doesn't find it easy to fix the shelves. He's having \_\_\_\_\_ trouble.

6. Sarah is exhausted. She's having \_\_\_\_\_ days' holiday next week.

7. David quite likes golf, but unfortunately he has \_\_\_\_\_ ability.

8. I can speak \_\_\_\_\_ words of Swedish, but I'm not very fluent.

9. Listen carefully. I'm going to give you \_\_\_\_\_ advice.

10. 'Have you ever been to Paris?' 'Yes, I've been there \_\_\_\_\_ times.'

**V. Complete this paragraph from the travel book. Put in *many, few, much* or *little*.**

The main town of the island is very small and does not have (1) \_\_\_\_\_ important buildings. The islanders do not have (2) \_\_\_\_\_ money, and they have (3) \_\_\_\_\_ contact with the outside world. There is not (4) \_\_\_\_\_ chance of the place attracting large numbers of tourists. The roads are not very good. There are lots of bicycles but not (5) \_\_\_\_\_ cars. And there are hardly any of the modern facilities which visitors expect. There are (6) \_\_\_\_\_ shops, and there is (7) \_\_\_\_\_ entertainment.

**VI. Choose the correct words:**

1. We didn't spend many/ much money.
2. You must be quick. We have little/ a little time.
3. They've got so much/ lots of money that they don't know what to do with it.
4. Did you take much/ many photographs when you were on holiday?
5. Would you like less/ fewer coffee than this?
6. The tickets cost too much/ too many, so we can't afford them.
7. 'Would you like some/ any sugar in your tea?' 'Yes, please. Just a little/ a few.'
8. If you have some/ any problems, you can discuss them with your group leaders.
9. I take photos, but not as many/ a lot of as I used to. At one time I took many/ a lot.
10. How much/ How many butter do we put in?
11. Quick, let's go! There's somebody/ anybody coming and I don't want somebody/ anybody to see us.
12. He can speak little/ a little English, so it's not difficult to communicate with him.
13. My father drinks a lot of/ much tea.
14. This town is not a very interesting place to visit, so a few/ few tourists come here.
15. She spent a large number of/ a great deal of time on the project.
16. A large number of/ A great deal of paintings have been sold.
17. We get much/ a lot of rain here, but we don't get many/ much storms.

18. Do you mind if I asked you a few/ a little questions?
19. The shop is very quiet. There are a few/ only a few customers have come in.
20. How many/ How much cups of coffee have you taken?

**VII. Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use of where necessary.**

*that food      my friends   plants      a chicken      birds*  
*European      countries      accidents      my life      these*  
*clothes      cars*

1. All \_\_\_\_\_ need water.
2. None \_\_\_\_\_ will be at the party.
3. I have lived in this town most \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Sarah travels a lot. She has been to most \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Some \_\_\_\_\_ from the party was all right, but I threw some of it away.
6. He's eaten two pizzas and most \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Many \_\_\_\_\_ are caused by bad driving.
8. Not all \_\_\_\_\_ can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.
9. None \_\_\_\_\_ are in fashion now.
10. Some \_\_\_\_\_ can go faster than others.

**VIII. Complete the conversations, use the word in brackets with *all, all the, most, most of the, no* or *none of the*.**

1. A: I wonder where they make this milk.  
 B: It isn't made in a factory, Andrew. \_\_\_\_\_ (milk) comes from animals.
2. A: What do you usually do on a Sunday?  
 B: Not much. We spend \_\_\_\_\_ (time) reading the papers.
3. A: In general, people aren't interested in politics, are they?  
 B: I think \_\_\_\_\_ (people) are bored by the subject.
4. A: These new flats are supposed to be for students.  
 B: That's ridiculous. \_\_\_\_\_ (student) in the world could possibly afford such a high rent.
5. A: Who's paying for the new ice-rink to be built?

B: Well, \_\_\_\_\_ (money) will come from the government, but the city has to pay a quarter of the cost.

6. A: We should ban cars. \_\_\_\_\_ (cars) pollute the air, don't they?

B: Well, except electric ones, I suppose.

7. A: What kind of fruit should you eat to stay healthy?

B: I don't think it matters. \_\_\_\_\_ (fruit) is good for you, isn't it?

8. A: I knew there had been a power cut because it was so dark everywhere.

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ (lights) in our street went out.

### IX. Put in each or every. Sometimes both are possible.

1. She had a child holding on to \_\_\_\_\_ hand.
2. The World Cup is held \_\_\_\_\_ four years.
3. None of the rooms was the same \_\_\_\_\_ room was different.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ parent worries about their children.
5. In a game of tennis there are two or four players. \_\_\_\_\_ player has a racket.
6. Melanie is a religious person. She goes to church \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.
7. We had a great holiday. I enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ minute of it.
8. The book is divided into five parts and \_\_\_\_\_ of these has three sections.
9. Car seat belts save lives. \_\_\_\_\_ driver should wear one.
10. In a football match, \_\_\_\_\_ team has 11 players.

### X. Fill in each blank with a proper expression of quantity. Use of where necessary.

1. I feel lonely here because I have \_\_\_\_\_ friends in this city.
2. These books are all Jane's. \_\_\_\_\_ them belong to me.
3. Not all the people I work with are very friendly. \_\_\_\_\_ them are unfriendly at all.
4. Are those people English? No, just \_\_\_\_\_ them.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ schools open in September.
6. Let's go and have a drink. We've got \_\_\_\_\_ time before the train leaves.
7. Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ money? ~ Yes, but not .
8. Hurry or we'll be late. We have very \_\_\_\_\_ time.
9. I have done \_\_\_\_\_ the exercises of grammar in this book, so I'm going to buy another book.

10. We all got wet in the rain because \_\_\_\_\_ us had an umbrella.
11. We'll have to work quickly because I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ time.
12. I do not know \_\_\_\_\_ about biology, but I have knowledge about genetics.
13. The librarian says that you may borrow as \_\_\_\_\_ books as you want to.
14. The boys are making too \_\_\_\_\_ noise.
15. I watched \_\_\_\_\_ the film but not all of it.
16. I'm very poor. I have \_\_\_\_\_ money. But my brother is richer than I. He has \_\_\_\_\_ money in the bank.
17. Before mixing the cake, weight \_\_\_\_\_ ingredient precisely.
18. When my rich uncle died, he left \_\_\_\_\_ his fortune to his cat. He hadn't left \_\_\_\_\_ it' to us.
19. How \_\_\_\_\_ languages can you speak? And how \_\_\_\_\_ time do you spend on learning English?
20. When my rich uncle died, he left \_\_\_\_\_ his fortune to his cat and the other half to a distant cousin! We had never expected to receive \_\_\_\_\_ it, but we were disappointed that he hadn't left \_\_\_\_\_ it to us.

### **XI. Choose the correct word or phrase.**

Last week I made the mistake of revisiting the village where I grew up. It was a small, friendly community with two farms and a number of old cottages round the village green. I realized very quickly that although in (1) many/ few ways it appears unchanged, in reality hardly (2) nothing/ anything is the same. (3) All/ Every the pretty cottages are there, of course, and (4) both/ most the picturesque farmhouses. But (5) none of the/ none of inhabitants are country people. All of (6) they/ them are commuters, who leave early (7) every morning/ all the morning for the nearby town. (8) Neither of/ Neither the farmhouses is attached to a farm these days; the land has been sold and is managed by (9) somebody/ anyone in an office (10) anywhere/ somewhere who has (11) little/ a little interest in the village itself. There are (12) few/ a few new houses, but they have (13) no/none of local character; you can see the same style (14) anywhere/ somewhere in the country. (15) The whole/ Whole of the village, in fact, has been tidied up so much that it has become (16) anything/ nothing more than just another suburb.

**XII. Choose the correct answer.**

1. Bill is very lazy. He never does \_\_\_\_\_ work.  
a. some                      b. any                      c. no                      d. few
2. It was a great party. \_\_\_\_\_ enjoyed it.  
a. Somebody      b. All                      c. All of us                      d. Every of us
3. The bus service is very good. There's a bus \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes.  
a. each                      b. every                      c. all                      d. any
4. When we were on holiday, we spent too \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
a. a lot of                      b. many                      c. much                      d. lots of
5. What would you like to eat? I don't mind. \_\_\_\_\_ whatever you've got.  
a. Something      b. Anything                      c. Nothing                      d. Any food
6. We couldn't buy anything because \_\_\_\_\_ of the shops were open.  
a. all                      b. half                      c. most                      d. none
7. I think that \_\_\_\_\_ lemon juice on fish makes it taste better.  
a. few                      b. a few                      c. little                      d. a little
8. The village was very small. There were \_\_\_\_\_ houses.  
a. a few                      b. only a few                      c. some                      d. only a little
9. \_\_\_\_\_ don't visit this part of the town.  
a. The most tourists                      b. Most of tourists  
c. Most tourists                      d. Most the tourists
10. \_\_\_\_\_ has left a bicycle outside.  
a. Anyone                      b. Anything                      c. Someone                      d. Something
11. Ron Mason owns a chain of supermarket. He's made \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
a. a lot of                      b. many  
c. much                      d. a great number of
12. Diana's previous employer gave her a good recommendation because she makes \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes in her work.  
a. a few                      b. little                      c. very few                      d. some
13. It's so boring here. \_\_\_\_\_ ever happens in this place.  
a. Anything                      b. Something                      c. Things                      d. Nothing
14. All the guests were dancing. \_\_\_\_\_ having a good time.  
a. All were                      b. Every was                      c. Everyone was                      d. Someone were
15. There's \_\_\_\_\_ use in complaining. They probably won't do anything about it.  
a. a few                      b. a little                      c. few                      d. little

16. I don't want to buy any of these books. I've got \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. all                      b. all them                      c. everything                      d. them all
17. I asked all the children and \_\_\_\_\_ had a different excuse for being late  
a. every                      b. each                      c. no                      d. some
18. I spend \_\_\_\_\_ my spare time gardening.  
a. most                      b. the most of                      c. most of                      d. most of the
19. We tried a lot of hotel but \_\_\_\_\_ of them had any rooms.  
a. some                      b. most                      c. any                      d. none
20. Would you mind waiting \_\_\_\_\_ minutes?  
a. a few                      b. a little                      c. few                      d. little

## TỪ VỰNG HỌC (WORD STUDY)

### CÁCH THÀNH LẬP TỪ

Một từ có thể được thành lập bằng cách thêm vào tiếp đầu ngữ hoặc tiếp vị ngữ.

#### 1. DANH TỪ:

1. Tiền tố: super-/under-/sur-/sub-/over- + N → N

DANH TỪ	NGHĨA	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA
overdose	Sử dụng quá liều	surface	Bề mặt
overexpenditure	Chi tiêu quá mức	supermarket	Siêu thị
overproduction	Sản xuất quá mức	underachievement	Đạt dưới mức
subcontinent	Tiểu lục địa	undercurrent	Dòng nước ngầm
subway	Tàu điện ngầm	undergrowth	Bụi rậm
superman	Siêu nhân	underpass	Đường chui

2. Hậu tố:

a) V + -ion/-tion/-ation/-ition/-sion → N

ĐỘNG TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA	ĐỘNG TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA
add	addition	Sự thêm vào	permit	permission	Sự cho phép
combine	combination	Sự kết hợp	pollute	pollution	Sự ô nhiễm
conserve	conservation	Sự bảo toàn	preserve	preservation	Sự bảo quản
correct	correction	Sự sửa chữa	prevent	prevention	Sự ngăn ngừa
decide	decision	Sự quyết định	produce	production	Sự sản xuất



discuss	discussion	<i>Thảo luận</i>	provide	provision	<i>Sự cung cấp</i>
inform	information	<i>Thông tin</i>	repeat	repetition	<i>Sự lặp lại</i>
invite	invitation	<i>Lời mời</i>	rotate	rotation	<i>Sự luân phiên</i>

b) V + -ment/-ance/-ence/-age/-ery/-ing/-al → N

ĐỘNG TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA	ĐỘNG TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA
accept	acceptance	<i>Chấp nhận</i>	enrich	enrichment	<i>Sự làm giàu</i>
achieve	achievement	<i>Thành tựu</i>	exist	existence	<i>Sự tồn tại</i>
arrange	arrangement	<i>Sự sắp xếp</i>	feel	feeling	<i>Cảm xúc</i>
arrive	arrival	<i>Sự đến</i>	improve	improvement	<i>Sự cải thiện</i>
attend	attendance	<i>Sự có mặt</i>	move	movement	<i>Sự di chuyển</i>
build	building	<i>Tòa nhà</i>	pay	payment	<i>Sự trả tiền</i>
depend	dependence	<i>Sự lệ thuộc</i>	perform	performance	<i>Màn trình diễn</i>
develop	development	<i>Sự phát triển</i>	poison	poisoning	<i>Làm nhiễm độc</i>
differ	difference	<i>Sự khác nhau</i>	recycle	recycling	<i>Việc tái sử dụng</i>
disappoint	disappointment	<i>Thất vọng</i>	refuse	refusal	<i>Từ chối</i>
discover	discovery	<i>Khám phá</i>	rob	robbery	<i>Vụ cướp</i>
drain	drainage	<i>Sự tháo nước</i>	teach	teaching	<i>Dạy học</i>
employ	employment	<i>Việc làm</i>	use	usage	<i>Cách dùng</i>

c) V + -er/-or/-ar/-ant/-ent/-ee/ → N

ĐỘNG TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA	ĐỘNG TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA
account	accountant	<i>Kế toán</i>	employ	employee	<i>Người làm công</i>
act	actor	<i>Diễn viên nam</i>	fertilize	fertilizer	<i>Phân bón</i>
apply	applicant	<i>Người xin việc</i>	inhabit	inhabitant	<i>Cư dân</i>

assist	assistant	Người phụ tá	instruct	instructor	Người hướng dẫn
attend	attendant	Người tham dự	interview	interviewee	Người phỏng vấn
beg	beggar	Người ăn xin	own	owner	Người chủ
build	builder	Thợ xây	pay	payee	Người trả công
calculate	calculator	Máy tính	serve	servant	Người giúp việc
contest	contestant	Người dự thi	sing	singer	ca sĩ
cook	cooker	Đầu bếp	teach	teacher	Giáo viên
deposit	depositor	Người gửi tiền	train	trainee	Người đào tạo
drive	driver	Tài xế	walk	walker	Người đi bộ
edit	editor	Biên tập viên	work	worker	Công nhân

d) N + -ist/-an/-ian/-ess → N

DANH TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA	DANH TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA
act	actress	Nữ diễn viên	music	musician	Nhạc sĩ
America	American	Người mỹ	physics	physicist	Nhà vật lý
history	historian	Nhà sử học	prince	princess	Công chúa
host	hostess	Nhà chủ	science	scientist	Nhà khoa học
journal	journalist	Nhà/ báo	tiger	tigeress	Con cọp
library	librarian	Thư thư viện	tour	tourist	Khách du lịch
lion	lioness	Sư tử cái	wait	waitress	Nữ bồi bàn

e) N + -ism/-ship → N

DANH TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA	DANH TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA
capital	capitalism	Chủ nghĩa tư bản	hero	heroism	Chủ nghĩa anh hùng
champion	championship	Chức vô địch	scholar	scholarship	Học bổng
friend	friendship	Tình bạn	sportsman	sportsmanship	Tinh thần thể thao

f) Adj + -y/-ity/-ty/-cy/-ness/-ism/-dom → N

TÍNH TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA	TÍNH TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA
able	ability	Khả năng	dark	darkness	Bóng tối
certain	certainty	Sự chắc chắn	popular	popularity	Sự phổ biến
clear	clarity	Sự rõ ràng	careful	carefulness	Sự cẩn thận
difficult	difficulty	Khó khăn	rich	richness	Sự giàu có
fluent	fluency	Sự trôi chảy	careless	carelessness	Sự bất cẩn
national	nationality	Quốc tịch	sad	sadness	Sự buồn
possible	possibility	Sự có thể	ill/sick	illness/sickness	Sự ốm
real	reality	Sự thật	cold	coldness	Sự lạnh lẽo
responsible	responsibility	Trách nhiệm	happy	happiness	Sự hạnh phúc
stupid	stupidity	Sự ngu ngốc	free	freedom	Sự tự do

g) Adj tận cùng “ent” → “ence”

TÍNH TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA	TÍNH TỪ	DANH TỪ	NGHĨA
absent	absence	Sự vắng mặt	intelligent	intelligence	Sự thông minh
confident	confidence	Sự tin tưởng	patient	patience	Sự kiên nhẫn
diligent	diligence	Sự siêng năng	silent	silence	Sự yên lặng
independent	independence	Sự độc lập	violent	violence	Sự bạo lực

## II. ĐỘNG TỪ:

### 1. Tiền tố:

a) dis-/mis-/re-/over-/under-/out- + V → V

Động từ	NGHĨA	Động từ	NGHĨA	Động từ	NGHĨA
disagree	Không đồng ý	outnumber	Nhiều hơn	rewrite	Viết lại
disappear	Biến mất	outrun	Chạy nhanh hơn	undercharge	Tính giá quá thấp
dislike	Không thích	outweigh	Nặng hơn	undercook	Nấu chưa chín
misbehave	Cư xử sai	overact	Cường điệu	underdo	Làm không trọn vẹn
misspell	Đánh vần sai	overcook	Nấu quá chín	underestimate	Đánh giá thấp
misunderstand	Hiểu sai	overstay	ở quá lâu	underfeed	Cho ăn không đủ
misuse	Sử dụng sai	overwork	Làm việc quá sức	underlay	Đặt ở dưới
outgrow	Phát triển hơn	redo	Làm lại	undersell	Bán rẻ hơn
outlive	Sống lâu hơn	remarry	Tái kết hôn	undersign	Ký ở dưới

b) en- + N/V/Adj → V

Động từ	NGHĨA	Động từ	NGHĨA	Động từ	NGHĨA
enable	Làm cho có thể	enclose	Gửi kèm	enlarge	Mở rộng
enact	Ban hành luật	endanger	Làm nguy hiểm	enrich	Làm giàu

### 2) Hậu tố

- Adj/N + -ize/-en/-ate/-fy → V

Adj/N	Động từ	NGHĨA	Adj/N	Động từ	NGHĨA
beauty	beautify	Làm đẹp	origin	originate	Bắt nguồn
bright	brighten	Làm rạng rỡ	real	realize	Nhận ra
industrial	industrialize	Công nghiệp hóa	sharp	sharpen	Làm cho sắc

legal	legalize	Hợp pháp hóa	short	shorten	Làm ngắn hơn
less	lessen	Giảm bớt	tight	tighten	Siết chặt
light	lighten	Làm sáng lên	weak	weaken	Làm yếu đi
loose	loosen	Làm rộng ra	white	whiten	Làm trắng
modern	modernize	Hiện đại hóa	wide	widen	Làm rộng ra

### III. TÍNH TỪ:

#### 1) Tiền tố:

##### a) un-/in-/im-/ir-/il-/dis- + Adj → Adj

Tính từ	NGHĨA	Tính từ	NGHĨA	Tính từ	NGHĨA
dishonest	Không trung thực	incomplete	Không hoàn thành	unemployed	Thất nghiệp
illegal	Không hợp pháp	inconvenient	Bất tiện	unequal	Không công bằng
illogical	Không logic	independent	Độc lập	unhappy	Không hạnh phúc
immature	chưa chín chắn	indivisible	Không thể phân chia	unlucky	Không may mắn
impatient	Không kiên nhẫn	inexact	Không chính xác	unreal	Không thật
impossible	Không thể	irregular	Bất quy tắc	unsatisfactory	Không thoả mái
impractical	Không thực tế	irresponsible	Vô trách nhiệm	untrue	Không đúng

##### b) inter-/super-/under-/over-/sub- + Adj/N ---> Adj

Tính từ	NGHĨA	Tính từ	NGHĨA	Tính từ	NGHĨA
international	Quốc tế	overnight	Quá đêm	supernatural	Siêu nhiên
overanxious	Quá lo âu	overseas	Hải ngoại	supersonic	Siêu âm
overconfident	Quá tự tin	oversized	Quá cỡ	undercover	Kín, bí mật
overcrowded	Quá đông	overweight	Quá nặng	underdeveloped	Dưới mức phát triển
overelaborate	Quá tỉ mỉ	subconscious	Tiềm thức	underpaid	Trả quá thấp

overjealous	Quá ghen	subnormal	Dưới bình thường	underweight	Nhẹ cân, thiếu cân
overjoyed	Quá vui	superhuman	Siêu phàm		

## 2) Hậu tố

a) N + -ly/-like/-less/-ish/-y/-ful/-al/-ic/ → Adj

Tính từ	NGHĨA	Tính từ	NGHĨA
manly	Có tính đàn ông	dusty	Có bụi
brotherly	Thuộc về anh em	snowy	Có tuyết
worldly	Thuộc về thế giới	rainy	Có mưa
hourly	Hàng giờ	sandy	Có cát
yearly	Hàng năm	dirty	Bẩn
daily	Hàng ngày	healthy	Khỏe mạnh
childlike	Như con nít	magical	Tuyệt vời
godlike	Như thần thánh	agricultural	Nông nghiệp
statesmanlike	Như nhà chức trách	industrial	Thuộc công nghiệp
lifelike	Giống như thật	natural	Thiên nhiên
speechless	Không lời	national	Thuộc quốc gia
careless	Không quan tâm	harmful	Có hại
harmless	Không có hại	useful	Có ích
childless	Không có con	delightful	Vui vẻ
treeless	Không có cây	successful	Thành công
odourless	Không có mùi	hopeful	Hy vọng
foolish	Điên dại	helpful	Có ích
selfish	Ích kỷ	peaceful	Hòa bình
childish	Có tính trẻ con	scientific	Khóa học

b) V/N + -ive/-able/-ible → Adj

Tính từ	NGHĨA	Tính từ	NGHĨA
acceptable	Có thể chấp nhận	defensible	Có thể bảo vệ
achievable	Có thể đạt được	eatable	Có thể ăn
active	Năng động	effective	Có hiệu quả
agreeable	Tán thành	excusable	Có thể xin lỗi
attractive	Hấp dẫn	informative	Có nhiều thông tin
comprehensible	Có thể hiểu	manageable	Có thể quản lí
countable	Có thể đếm	washable	Có thể giặt

#### IV. TRẠNG TỬ - (XEM LẠI BÀI TRẠNG TỬ)

##### THÀNH NGỮ (IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS)

Thành ngữ thường có cấu trúc: **Verb + noun (phrase) + preposition**

Một số thành ngữ thông dụng:

- Catch sight of: bắt gặp, nhìn thấy
- Give place to: nhường chỗ
- Give way to: nhường bộ, chịu thua
- Keep pace with/ keep up with: sánh kịp, bắt kịp
- Lose sight of: mất hút, không nhìn thấy
- Make allowance for: chiếu cố đến
- Make fun of: chế nhạo
- Make a fuss over/ about: làm rối tung lên, làm om sòm
- Make room for: dọn chỗ cho
- Make use of: dùng, sử dụng
- Lose touch with: mất liên lạc
- Keep/ lose track of: mất dấu
- Put a stop to: làm ngừng lại
- Take account of: để ý đến, lưu tâm

- Take care of: *chăm sóc*
- Take notice of: *lưu ý*
- Pay attention to: *chú ý tới*
- Put an end to: *chấm dứt*
- Set fire to: *làm cháy, thiêu*
- Take advantage of: *lợi dụng*
- Take note of: *để ý, ghi chép*
- Take leave of: *từ biệt*
- Give birth to: *sinh con*
- Make a contribution to: *góp phần*
- Keep correspondence with: *liên lạc thư từ*
- Show affection for: *có cảm tình*
- Feel pity for/ take (have) pity on: *thương xót*
- Feel regret for: *ôi tiếc, ân hận*
- Feel sympathy for: *thông cảm*
- Make complaint about: *kêu ca, phàn nàn*
- Feel shame at: *ấu hổ*
- Have a look at: *nhìn ngắm*
- Get victory over: *hiến thắng*
- Play an influence over: *có ảnh hưởng*
- Have faith in: *tin tưởng*
- Take interest in: *quan tâm, thích thú*
- Make a decision on/ make up one's mind: *quyết định*

Eg: As she stood up she **caught sight of** her reflection in the mirror.

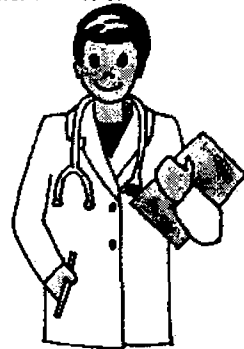
(*Khi đứng lên cô ấy nhìn thấy hình phản chiếu của mình trong gương*)

David **takes his interest in** modern fashion.

(*David quan tâm đến thời trang hiện đại*)

I've **made up my mind** to be a doctor.

(*Tôi đã quyết định sẽ trở thành bác sĩ*)





## EXERCISES

---

### I. Supply the correct word form.

1. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ boy. He is always asking questions. (curiosity)
2. All the pupils have done the exercises \_\_\_\_\_. (easy)
3. Keep \_\_\_\_\_! The teacher is explaining the lesson. (silence)
4. Be \_\_\_\_\_ in your work! (care)
5. Time passes \_\_\_\_\_ when you are alone. (slow)
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ carefully. He rarely has accident. (drive)
7. Ho Chi Minh City is an important \_\_\_\_\_ center. (commerce)
8. We have a \_\_\_\_\_ newspaper in this town. (week)
9. This exercise seems \_\_\_\_\_. (difficulty)
10. Mrs. Green can help Alice to make a good \_\_\_\_\_. (choose)
11. He has \_\_\_\_\_ bought a new car. (recent)
12. It's too \_\_\_\_\_ for me to buy. (expense)
13. How \_\_\_\_\_ those shop windows are! (beauty)
14. She has finished her best \_\_\_\_\_. (perform)
15. The cartoon last night was very \_\_\_\_\_. (interest)
16. She \_\_\_\_\_ goes to the pictures with her younger sister. (frequency)
17. Last night the singer sang very \_\_\_\_\_. (good)
18. The story is about an \_\_\_\_\_ trip. (excite)
19. In May the days often \_\_\_\_\_. (long)
20. He got rid of the \_\_\_\_\_ by opening a window, (smell)
21. Nobody showed them to their \_\_\_\_\_. (sit)
22. Helen speaks English very \_\_\_\_\_. (fluent)
23. This is the most \_\_\_\_\_ machine in our field. (value)
24. We can keep the land in \_\_\_\_\_ condition by killing weeds. (well)
25. The huge windows gave us a \_\_\_\_\_ view of the grounds. (splendidly)
26. The ball was followed with great \_\_\_\_\_. (excite)
27. That was an \_\_\_\_\_ match, wasn't it? I was \_\_\_\_\_ to see it. (excite)
28. \_\_\_\_\_ is a good career. I want to become a \_\_\_\_\_. (teach)

29. Rubber trees are very \_\_\_\_\_. (use)
30. Sports are very good for our \_\_\_\_\_. (healthy)
31. Who will take \_\_\_\_\_ of the baby when you go away? (careful)
32. Don't worry about her \_\_\_\_\_. (complain)
33. What is the real \_\_\_\_\_ of the house? (wide)
34. I want to make new dresses but I don't have a \_\_\_\_\_ machine. (sew)
35. She danced so \_\_\_\_\_ that the audience clapped their hands many times.  
(beauty)
36. I'll have Tom repair our electric \_\_\_\_\_ (cook)
37. Water has no color. It is a \_\_\_\_\_ liquid. (color)
38. Please don't make \_\_\_\_\_. (noisy)
39. Mr. Green works in this factory as a \_\_\_\_\_. (account)
40. Ky Hoa lake is one of the areas of \_\_\_\_\_. (entertain)
41. Butter is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ of milk. (produce)
42. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ person. He often makes me laugh. (fun)
43. I didn't know how you \_\_\_\_\_ your birthday party, (celebration)
44. On Christmas day, I often send my close friends \_\_\_\_\_ cards, (greet)
45. He is a famous \_\_\_\_\_ in this country, (act)
46. He Often writes stories. He is a \_\_\_\_\_. (write)
47. These flowers look \_\_\_\_\_. (nature)
48. Air \_\_\_\_\_ makes us unhealthy, (pollute)
49. His plays were \_\_\_\_\_ on the stage in London, (performance)
50. The film is \_\_\_\_\_ so I'm \_\_\_\_\_. (bore)
51. The Sword Lake is one of \_\_\_\_\_ places in Hanoi, (history)
52. He devoted all his \_\_\_\_\_ to writing, (live)
53. How \_\_\_\_\_ the street is! (danger)
54. She lives \_\_\_\_\_ although she is very poor, (happy)
55. I'll help you to \_\_\_\_\_ some beautiful paintings, (choice)
56. The love for book is \_\_\_\_\_ in developing the pupils' knowledge, (help)
57. This public library is \_\_\_\_\_ to all people, (open)
58. Books help people to get more \_\_\_\_\_. (know)
- 59 . \_\_\_\_\_ countries need help from \_\_\_\_\_ ones, (develop)

60. This stamp \_\_\_\_\_ is valuable, (collect)
61. The person who takes care of books in the library is a \_\_\_\_\_. (library)
62. He is very \_\_\_\_\_. (friend)
63. She smiles so \_\_\_\_\_, doesn't she? (attract)
64. My \_\_\_\_\_ for your skill is great, (admire)
65. We all held our breath because of that \_\_\_\_\_ film, (thrill)
66. John is old enough to be \_\_\_\_\_ of his parents. (depend)
67. They ride their bicycles to the countryside for \_\_\_\_\_. (please)
68. Red \_\_\_\_\_ communist countries, (symbol)
69. May Day is celebrated regularly in \_\_\_\_\_ countries. (society)
70. He lost the game because of his \_\_\_\_\_. (care)
71. The teacher stressed the need for regular \_\_\_\_\_ (attend)
72. The cost of \_\_\_\_\_ must be paid by the buyer. (carry)
73. Our \_\_\_\_\_ from London to Sydney took 24 hours. (fly)
74. The police are interested in the sudden \_\_\_\_\_ of the valuable painting,  
(appear)
75. The master gave Oliver Twist a terrible \_\_\_\_\_. (punish)
76. He gave no \_\_\_\_\_ for his absence. (explain)
77. They were happy because their work was finished \_\_\_\_\_ (success)
78. To prepare his \_\_\_\_\_ works, Karl Marx often spent whole day in the library  
of the British Museum.(science)
79. He is respected for his \_\_\_\_\_ (simple)
80. They had made a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ before the game started. (prepare)
81. Manchester players have been trying to score another goal, but their efforts  
are \_\_\_\_\_. (succeed)
82. You must make \_\_\_\_\_ for him because he has been ill. (allow)
83. Several hundred people were affected by the previously \_\_\_\_\_ virus, (know)
84. Two of these tablets should be taken \_\_\_\_\_. (day)
85. Dogs are very \_\_\_\_\_ pets. (faith)
86. The Thames flows \_\_\_\_\_ through green meadows. (gentle)
87. Relax in our \_\_\_\_\_ chairs and enjoy our excellent tea and hot chocolate,  
(comfort)
88. I'm so \_\_\_\_\_ you're going to visit my country, (please)

89. What a naughty boy! He always does things \_\_\_\_\_ (noise)
90. There were ten \_\_\_\_\_ in the race, (compete)
91. His \_\_\_\_\_ makes his parents feel sad. (lazy)
92. You should \_\_\_\_\_ to your teacher, (apology)
93. We're so \_\_\_\_\_ of her for telling the truth, (pride)
94. Paris is \_\_\_\_\_ for the Eiffel tower, (fame)
95. He worked hard to \_\_\_\_\_ good crops from poor soil, (product)
96. How \_\_\_\_\_ of you to break that cup! (care)
97. His long \_\_\_\_\_ made us bored and sleepy. (speak)
98. He never takes his father's \_\_\_\_\_. (advise)
99. They sat \_\_\_\_\_ by the stream, (quiet)
100. To my \_\_\_\_\_, the monkey peeled a banana and offered it to me. (amaze)

## II. Fill in the blank with a suitable idiomatic expression.

1. She was furious that she was being \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The house has been remodeled and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He left home without \_\_\_\_\_ anybody.
4. The woman of whom you \_\_\_\_\_ at the bus stop this morning is my aunt.
5. The children are old enough to \_\_\_\_\_ themselves.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ having deceived her.
7. Tom and Dick are carrying on a discussion which I want to \_\_\_\_\_.
8. This is a rare opportunity \_\_\_\_\_ which you should \_\_\_\_\_ to get a better job.
9. Mr. Smith is my old teacher \_\_\_\_\_ whom I have \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time. I do not know his present address.
10. This man was sent to prison for \_\_\_\_\_ his house.
11. My father does not like politics. He does not \_\_\_\_\_ political problems and current events.
12. She always \_\_\_\_\_ the increase of the price of goods.
13. Mary was sad and ashamed because you \_\_\_\_\_ her.
14. They are good poor students \_\_\_\_\_ whom the school has to \_\_\_\_\_.
15. You have to study harder in order to \_\_\_\_\_ your classmates.
16. This shop is so small that we didn't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
17. Mrs. Smith is a very clement woman. She \_\_\_\_\_ orphans and beggars.

18. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ the "No Parking" sign?
19. Now he's grown up, he no longer \_\_\_\_\_ his stamp collection.
20. We have to move this box in order to \_\_\_\_\_ the new TV set.
21. I have some friends living in USA. I often \_\_\_\_\_ them.
22. Your manner is quite ridiculous. I \_\_\_\_\_ it.
23. The teacher says that we have to \_\_\_\_\_ our exam papers before ten.
24. For generations our people \_\_\_\_\_ many enemies and drove them away.
25. The police followed the robbers but finally they \_\_\_\_\_ them.
26. The Press is called the fourth estate. It \_\_\_\_\_ the public opinion.
27. I do not \_\_\_\_\_ long-hair young men.
28. Do you know how to \_\_\_\_\_ the computer?
29. We should \_\_\_\_\_ the suffering of others.
30. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ what the teacher says.
31. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ where to go for your honeymoon?
32. The boys are miserable. I \_\_\_\_\_ them.
33. We are looking at the boat in the open sea, and soon we \_\_\_\_\_ it.
34. Please \_\_\_\_\_ this photograph and tell me where your teacher is.
35. Did you \_\_\_\_\_ Paul in the bookshop yesterday?
36. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ the day to start off?
37. Every citizen has to \_\_\_\_\_ the building of his country.
38. We know he works very hard. We \_\_\_\_\_ his success.
39. The difficulties are so great that I have to \_\_\_\_\_ them.
40. She \_\_\_\_\_ a healthy baby last night.
41. Why do you often \_\_\_\_\_ your neighbors?
42. Anyhow he's a good man. I think we ought to be generous to him and \_\_\_\_\_ his family circumstances.
43. I haven't sent letters to her for a long time. In fact, we have \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
44. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ on that shelf \_\_\_\_\_ more books?
45. I tried to run after her, but I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ her.
46. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ the opportunity to get a new job with higher wage.
47. It's cruel to \_\_\_\_\_ handicapped people.
48. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ these difficult circumstances.
49. We must not \_\_\_\_\_ their demands.
50. Be calm, and don't \_\_\_\_\_ such trifles.

# hương 3

## CÁC THÌ (TENSES)

---

### I. HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN (PRESENT SIMPLE):

#### 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + V(s/es);	S + am/is/are
- Câu phủ định	S + do/does + not + V;	S + am/is/are + not
- Câu nghi vấn	Do/Does + S + V?;	Am/Is/Are + S?

#### 2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì hiện tại đơn diễn tả:

- Một thói quen hoặc một hành động lặp đi lặp lại. Trong câu thường có các trạng từ: *always, often, usually, sometimes, seldom, rarely, every day/week/month ...*

Eg: Mary often gets up early in the morning.

(Mary thường dậy sớm vào buổi sáng.)

- Một sự thật hiển nhiên, một chân lí.

Eg: The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

(Mặt trời mọc ở hướng đông và lặn ở hướng tây.)

- Một thời gian biểu hoặc một lịch trình.

Eg: The last train leaves at 4.45. (*Chuyến tàu cuối cùng rời lúc 4.45.*)

### II. HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN (PRESENT PROGRESSIVE)

#### 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + am/is/are + V-ing
- Câu phủ định	S + am/is/are + not + V-ing
- Câu hỏi	Am/Is/Are + S + V-ing?

## 2) Cách dùng:

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn dùng để diễn tả:

- Một hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói, trong câu thường có các trạng từ: *now, right now, at the moment, at present, ...*

Eg: What are you doing at the moment? (*Bạn đang làm gì đấy?*)

I'm writing a letter. (*Mình đang viết thư.*)

Be quiet! My mother is sleeping. (*Yên lặng nào! Mẹ mình đang ngủ.*)

- Một hành động đã được lên kế hoạch từ trước.

Eg: What are you doing tonight? (*Tối nay cậu định làm gì?*)

I am going to the cinema with my father.

(*Tớ định đi cùng bố đến rạp chiếu phim.*)

- Một hành động nhất thời (dùng để chỉ sự thay đổi) *today, this week, this month, these days, ...*

Eg: What is your daughter doing these days?

(*Gần đây, con gái anh đang làm gì vậy?*)

She is studying English at the foreign language center.

(*Nó đang học tiếng Anh ở trung tâm ngoại ngữ?*)

## 3) Những động từ không dùng với thì HTTD:

3.1 Động từ chỉ giác quan: hear, see, smell, taste

3.2 Động từ chỉ cảm xúc: love, hate, like, dislike, want, wish

3.3 Động từ chỉ trạng thái hay sự sở hữu: look, seem, appear, have, own, belong to, need, ...

3.4 Động từ chỉ hoạt động trí tuệ: agree, understand, remember, know, ...

## III. HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH (PRESENT PERFECT)

### 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + have/has + V3/ed
- Câu phủ định	S + have/has + not + V3/ed
- Câu hỏi	Have/Has + S + V3/ed?

## 2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì HTHT dùng để diễn tả:

- Một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ không xác định rõ thời điểm.

Eg: Have you had breakfast? – No, I haven't.

(Bạn đã ăn sáng chưa? – Chưa)

- Một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả còn ở hiện tại.

Eg: My friend Nam has lived in HCMC since 1998.

(Nam, bạn của tôi đã sống ở thành phố Hồ Chí Minh từ năm 1998.)

- Một hành động mới xảy ra.

Eg: I have just finished my homework.

(Tôi vừa làm xong bài tập về nhà.)

- Trong cấu trúc:

Be + the first/second... time + S + have/has + V3/ed

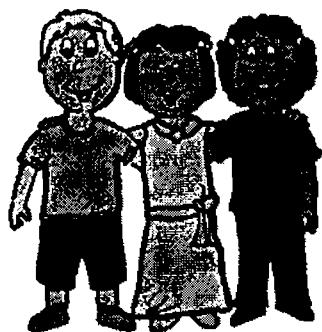
Be + the so sánh nhất + N + S + have/has + V3/ed

Eg: This is the first time I have been to Paris.

(Đây là lần đầu tiên tôi đến Pari.)

She is the most honest person I have ever met.

(Cô ấy là người thân thiện nhất mà tôi đã gặp.)



## 3) Các trạng ngữ thường dùng với thì HTHT:

Just	recently	lately	ever
never	yet	already	since
for	so far	until now	up to now
up to the present			



## IV. HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN (PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE):

### 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + have/has + been + V-ing
- Câu phủ định	S + have/has + not + been + V-ing
- Câu hỏi	Have/Has + S + been + V-ing?

### 2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì HTHTTD được dùng để diễn tả:

Hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ và kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp diễn ở tương lai. Thương dùng với: How long, since và for.

Eg: How long have you been waiting for her? (*Bạn đợi cô ấy bao lâu rồi?*)

- I have been waiting for her for an hour.

(*Mình đợi cô ấy một tiếng đồng hồ rồi.*)

*Chú ý: HTHT thường chỉ hành động hoàn tất trong khi đó HTHTTD thường chỉ hành động còn tiếp tục.*

## V. QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN (PAST SIMPLE):

### 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + V2/ed;	S + was/were
- Câu phủ định	S + did + not + V;	S + was/were + not
- Câu hỏi	Did + S + V?;	Was/Were + S?

### 2) Cách dùng chính:

Quá khứ đơn dùng để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra và chấm dứt hoàn toàn trong quá khứ. Trong câu thường có các trạng ngữ: yesterday, ago, last week/month/year, in the past, in 1990, ...

Eg: Uncle Ho passed away in 1969.

## VI.

## QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN (PAST PROGRESSIVE)

## 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + was/were + V-ing
- Câu phủ định	S + was/were + not + V-ing
- Câu hỏi	Was/Were + S + V-ing?

## 2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì QKTD dùng để diễn tả:

2.1 Một hành động xảy ra và kéo dài tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

Eg: She was studying her lesson at 7 last night.

(7 giờ tối qua, cô ấy đang học bài.)

What were you doing from 3 p.m to 6 p.m yesterday?

(Từ lúc 3 giờ đến 6 giờ chiều ngày hôm qua, bạn đang làm gì?)

I was practising English at that time.

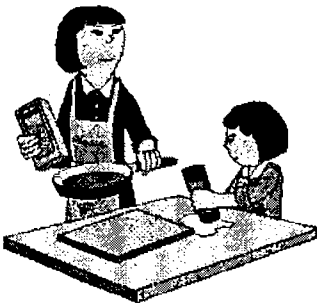
(Tôi đang thực hành tiếng anh vào lúc đó.)

2.2 Một hành động đang xảy ra (V-ing) ở quá khứ thì có một hành động khác xen vào (V2/ed).

Eg: He was sleeping when I came. (Lúc tôi đến thì anh ấy đang ngủ.)

While my mother was cooking dinner, the phone rang.

(Khi mẹ tôi đang nấu bữa tối thì điện thoại reo.)



2.3 Hai hành động diễn ra song song cùng lúc trong quá khứ.

Eg: While I was doing my homework, my younger brother was playing video games.

(Trong khi tôi đang làm bài tập, em trai của tôi.)

## VII

## QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH (PAST PERFECT)

### 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + had + V3/ed
- Câu phủ định	S + had+ not + V3/ed
- Câu hỏi	Had + S + V3/ed?

### 2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì QKHT dùng để diễn tả:

- Một hành động xảy ra và hoàn tất trước một thời điểm hoặc một hành động khác trong quá khứ (hành động trước dùng HAD + V3/ed, hành động sau dùng V2/ed).

Eg: We had had dinner before eight o'clock last night.

(Chúng tôi ăn tối trước 8 giờ tối hôm qua.)

- Một hành động đã xảy ra nhưng chưa hoàn thành, tính đến một thời điểm nào đó trong quá khứ.

Eg: By the time I left that school, I had taught there for ten years.

(Vào thời điểm tôi rời trường này, tôi đã dạy được 10 năm.)

### 3) Thì này thường được dùng với các từ, ngữ sau đây:

- After, before, when, as, once

Eg: When I got to the station, the train had already left.

(Khi tôi đến bến xe, tàu đã đi rồi.)

- No sooner ... than (vừa mới ... thì)

Hardly/Scarcely ... when (vừa mới ... thì)

Eg: He had no sooner returned from abroad than he fell ill.

→ No sooner had he returned from abroad than he fell ill.

- It was not until ... that ... (mãi cho tới ... mới ...)

- Not until ... that ... (mãi cho tới ... mới ...)

Eg: It was not until I had met her that I understood the problem.

→ Not until I had met her did I understand the problem.

(Mãi cho tới lúc gặp cô ta, tôi mới hiểu ra vấn đề.)

**VIII****QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN  
(PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE)****1) Cách thành lập:**

- Câu khẳng định	S + had + been + V-ing
- Câu phủ định	S + had + not + been + V-ing
- Câu hỏi	Had + S + been + not + V-ing?

**2) Cách dùng chính:**

Thì QKHTTD dùng để nhấn mạnh tính **LIÊN TỤC** của hành động cho đến khi một hành động khác xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Eg: When she arrived, I had been waiting for three hours.

*(Khi cô ấy đến, tôi đã đang đợi cô ấy được 3 tiếng rồi.)*

**IX.****TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN (SIMPLE FUTURE)****1) Cách thành lập:**

- Câu khẳng định	S + will/shall + V
- Câu phủ định	S + will/shall + not + V
- Câu hỏi	Will/Shall + S + V?

**2) Cách dùng chính:**

Thì TLĐ dùng để diễn tả:

• Một hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Eg: I will call you tomorrow.

• Một quyết định đưa ra vào lúc nói.

Eg: It's cold. I'll shut the window.

• Một quyết tâm, lời hứa, đề nghị, yêu cầu.

Eg: I will lend you the money.

• Một tiên đoán, dự báo trong tương lai.

Eg: People will travel to Mars one day.



### 3) Một số trạng từ chỉ thời gian thường gặp:

Tomorrow, tonight, next week/ month/ year/ some day/ in the future, ...

- **LƯU Ý:** Cách dùng của *be going to* + V:

+ Diễn tả ý định (không có trong kế hoạch)

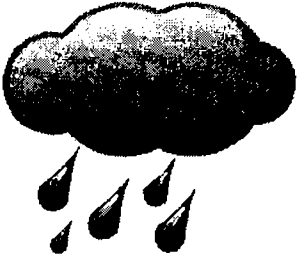
Eg: I have saved some money. I am going to buy a new computer.

*(Tôi đã tiết kiệm được một số tiền. Tôi định mua một chiếc máy tính mới.)*

+ Diễn tả một dự đoán có căn cứ.

Eg: Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.

*(Nhìn những đám mây kia! Trời sắp mưa rồi.)*



## X.

### TƯƠNG LAI GẦN (BE GOING TO):

1) **Cấu trúc:** S + is/am/are + going to + V

Eg: We are going to buy a new house.

2) **Cách dùng:**

**BE GOING TO** được dùng để:

- Nói về một dự định sẽ được thực hiện trong tương lai hoặc một quyết định đã sẵn có.

Eg: I am going to study French next month.

*(Tháng tới, tôi định học tiếng Pháp.)*

- Đưa ra dự đoán về tương lai dựa trên sự việc hiện tại.

Eg: Look at the sky! It's going to rain.

*(Nhìn bầu trời kia! Sắp mưa rồi.)*

## XI. TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN (FUTURE PROGRESSIVE):

### 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + will/shall + be + V-ing
- Câu phủ định	S + will/shall + not + be + V-ing
- Câu hỏi	Will/Shall + S + be + V-ing?

### 2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì TLTD dùng để diễn tả một hành động sẽ đang diễn ra ở một thời điểm hay một khoảng thời gian trong tương lai.

Eg: This time next week I will be playing tennis.

*(Bằng thời gian này tuần tới, tôi đang chơi quần vợt.)*

We'll be working hard all day tomorrow.

*(Ngày mai chúng ta sẽ phải làm việc chăm chỉ cả ngày.)*

## XII. TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH (FUTURE PERFECT):

### 1) Cách thành lập:

- Câu khẳng định	S + will/shall + have + V3/ed
- Câu phủ định	S + will/shall + not + have + V3/ed
- Câu hỏi	Will/Shall + S + have + V3/ed?

### 2) Cách dùng chính:

Thì tương lai hoàn thành dùng để diễn tả:

- Một hành động sẽ hoàn tất trước một thời điểm trong tương lai.

Eg: It's now 7 p.m. I will have finished teaching this class by 8.30.

*(Bây giờ là 7 giờ tối. Tôi sẽ kết thúc bài giảng vào lúc 8 giờ 30 phút.)*

- Một hành động sẽ hoàn tất trước một hành động khác trong tương lai.

Eg: By the time you come back, I will have written this letter.

*(Khi bạn quay lại, tôi sẽ viết lá thư này.)*

Thì này thường được bắt đầu bằng cụm từ: By + time (By then, By the time, By the end of this week/month/year).

**1) Cách thành lập:**

- Câu khẳng định	S + will/shall + have + been + V-ing
- Câu phủ định	S + will/shall + not + have + been + V-ing
- Câu hỏi	Will/Shall + S + have + been + V-ing?

**2) Cách dùng chính:**

Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn dùng để nhấn mạnh tính liên tục của hành động so với một thời điểm nào đó hoặc hành động khác trong tương lai.

Eg: By next month, he will have been working in the office for ten years.

When George gets his degree, he will have been studying at Oxford for four years.

## EXERCISES

I. Complete the sentences by using either the present simple or the present progressive of the verbs in the box.

*bite*      *bleed*      *flow*      *rain*      *leave*      *grow*  
*belong*      *take*      *seem*      *shine*      *wake*

1. The River Nile \_\_\_\_\_ into the Mediterranean.
2. This book is mine. That one \_\_\_\_\_ to Pierre.
3. Look at Joan. She \_\_\_\_\_ her fingernails. She must be nervous.
4. We usually \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables in our garden.
5. Let's go out. It (not) \_\_\_\_\_ now.
6. Every morning, the sun \_\_\_\_\_ in my bedroom window and \_\_\_\_\_ me up.
7. Jim is very untidy. He (always) \_\_\_\_\_ his things all over the place.
8. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ very happy at the moment.
9. He's a photographer. He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of photos.
10. Oh! What's the matter with your hand? It \_\_\_\_\_.

II. Put the verb in the correct form, present simple or present progressive.

1. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ do)?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (write) to my parents. I \_\_\_\_\_ (write) to them every weekend.
2. A: Look, it \_\_\_\_\_ (snow).  
B: It's beautiful! This is the first time I've ever seen snow. It \_\_\_\_\_ (not snow) in my country.
3. A: Oh, that's Adrian. He's new here.  
B: Really? Where \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ live)? \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ know)?  
A: Yes. He \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Milan, but now he \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) with his aunt on Shirley Road.
4. A: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ usually/ finish) work?  
B: Normally I \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) work at five o'clock, but this week I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) until six to earn a bit more money.
5. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ travel) to work?  
B: I haven't got a car at the moment, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to work on the bus this week. Usually I \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to work.



6. A: I think we're going the wrong way.  
 B: I don't think so. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (rise) in the east, remember. It's behind us, so we \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) west.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ look) for someone?  
 B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (need) to speak to Neil. Is he in?  
 A: Yes, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (think) he's busy. He \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) to the boss at the moment.
8. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (want) a new computer. I \_\_\_\_\_ (save) up to buy one.  
 B: But computers \_\_\_\_\_ (cost) so much money. What's wrong with the one we've got?  
 A: It \_\_\_\_\_ (get) out of date now.
9. A: Your new dress \_\_\_\_\_ (look) very nice.  
 B: Thank you. The trouble is it \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ fit) properly. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ know) why I bought them, really.
10. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ do)?  
 B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (taste) the sauce. It \_\_\_\_\_ (taste) too salty.
11. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (think) this road is really dangerous. Look how fast that lorry \_\_\_\_\_ (go).  
 B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (agree). People shouldn't go so fast.
12. A: My two children don't get along. It seems they \_\_\_\_\_ (always/ fight) about something.  
 B: Don't worry. It will be better when they \_\_\_\_\_ (grow) up.
13. A: Could you post the goods to me, please?  
 B: Yes, certainly.  
 A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (live) at a guest house at the moment as I \_\_\_\_\_ (look) for a flat. So could you send it to my work address?  
 B: Yes, of course. And you'll have the goods by the end of the week, I \_\_\_\_\_ (promise)
14. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (always/ fall) asleep. I just can't keep awake.  
 B: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ go) to bed?  
 A: About ten o'clock usually. But it \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ make) any difference.
15. A: Why \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ want) to change the whole plan?  
 B: I'm just not happy with it.  
 A: And I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ understand) why you \_\_\_\_\_ (be) so difficult about it.

**III. Put the verbs into the suitable form, the present perfect or the present perfect progressive.**

1. A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ study) English?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) English since I was twelve.
2. A: Are you waiting for someone?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for two hours, but my friend \_\_\_\_\_ (not come) yet.
3. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) my address book. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ see) it anywhere?  
B: Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ (just/ see) it on the bookshelf.
4. A: You look tired. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ work) so hard?  
B: Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ (study) for four hours and probably won't finish until midnight.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ see) Mark recently?  
B: No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ see) him since Christmas, I wonder where he \_\_\_\_\_ (live) since then.
6. A: I feel really tired.  
B: It's because you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) too much.  
A: Well, at least I \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) that report now, and I can relax.
7. A: Someone \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the ladder outside, look.  
B: I expect that's Mike. He \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the windows. I don't think he \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) yet.
8. A: You've got mud on your shoes.  
B: It's all right, I'll take them off. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in the garden.  
A: Yes, it looks a lot tidier. Well done. You \_\_\_\_\_ (do) a good job.
9. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) that you and Harriet are building a garage. How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ do) that?  
B: Oh, for about a month now. We \_\_\_\_\_ (do) about half of it.
10. A: You're still reading that book, aren't you? How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ read) it?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (read) it for three days, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ finish) it yet.
11. A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ know) Jane?  
B: We \_\_\_\_\_ (know) each other for over ten years.
12. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (John/ always/ live) in London?  
B: No, he \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in London for the last few years.

#### IV. Supply the correct verb form: Present tenses.

1. Listen! I \_\_\_\_\_ (think) someone \_\_\_\_\_ (knock) at the door.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ know) why Sarah is upset, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ speak) to us for ages.
3. The earth \_\_\_\_\_ (circle) the sun once every 365 days.
4. Why \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ stare) at me? I suppose you \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ see) a woman on a motorbike before!
5. How many times \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ see) him since he went to Edinburgh?
6. Trevor and Laura like Scabble. They \_\_\_\_\_ (play) it most evenings.
7. The number of vehicles on the road \_\_\_\_\_ (increase).
8. A: Sorry I'm late.  
B: That's all right I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/wait) long.
9. Mrs Green always \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to work by car, but this week she \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) by bus.
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ (be) from French. We \_\_\_\_\_ (be) there for 20 years.
11. These flowers are dying. You \_\_\_\_\_ (not. water) them for ages.
12. Mai \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) her keys, so she can't get into the house.
13. I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ finish) typing those letters yet. I \_\_\_\_\_ (deal) with customers all morning.
14. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (your father/ do)?  
B: He \_\_\_\_\_ (be) an architect but he \_\_\_\_\_ (not/work) at the moment.
15. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ ever/ see) a lion?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) it since I was a child.

#### V. Fill in the gaps In this letter with suitable verbs. Use the present perfect progressive or simple, or the present progressive or simple.

Dear Francesca,

We (1) are having a wonderful time here in York. We (2) \_\_\_\_\_ here for three days now and we (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to stay for the rest of the week because we (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves so much. We (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the Cathedral and the Castle Museum and this morning we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ around the little old-fashioned streets, looking at the shops and cafes. I'm writing this while we stop for a cold drink before lunch. We (7) \_\_\_\_\_ much money yet but we'll get some souvenirs before we leave. Besides the sightseeing, we (8) \_\_\_\_\_ some exercise. The countryside around York is lovely and we (9) \_\_\_\_\_ some lovely long walks. Fortunately,

the weather (10) \_\_\_\_\_ very good so far. People (11) \_\_\_\_\_ it can be very cold and it often (12) \_\_\_\_\_ for days! As this is the first time I (13) \_\_\_\_\_ to England. I (14) \_\_\_\_\_ I'm just lucky.

See you soon,

Roberta

**VI. Use the words given to make sentences. Do not change the order of the words. Use only the past simple or the past progressive.**

1. when Don/ arrive/ we/ have/ coffee

\_\_\_\_\_

2. he/ sit down/ on a chair/ while/I/ paint/ it

\_\_\_\_\_

3. the students/ play/ a game/ when/ professor/ arrive

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Felix/ phone/ the fire brigade/ when the cooker/ catch/ fire

\_\_\_\_\_

5. while/ he/ walk/ in the mountains/ Henry/ see/ a bear

\_\_\_\_\_

6. when the starter/ fire/ his pistol/ the race/ begin

\_\_\_\_\_

7. I/ walk/ home/ when it/ start/ to rain

\_\_\_\_\_

8. when/ Margaret/ open/ the door/ the phone/ ring

\_\_\_\_\_

9. he/ sit/ in the garden/ when/ a wasp/ sting/ him/ on the nose

\_\_\_\_\_

10. while/ he/ run/ for a bus/ he/ collide/ with a lamp post

\_\_\_\_\_

11. Vicky/ have/ a beautiful dream/ when/ the alarm clock/ ring

\_\_\_\_\_

12. when/ Alex/ see/ the question/ he/ know/ the answer/ immediately

\_\_\_\_\_

13. the train/ wait/ when/ we/ arrive/ at the station

---

14. Sarah/ have/ an electric shock/ when/ she/ touch/ the wire

---

15. when/ the campers/ wake/ they/ see/ the sun/ shine

---

**VII. Put the verbs into the correct form, past progressive or past simple.**

1. When Martin \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) home, Ann \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) to someone on the phone.
2. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) cold when we \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the house that day, and a light snow \_\_\_\_\_ (fall).
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) Roger at nine last night, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) at home. He \_\_\_\_\_ (study) at the library.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Sue in town yesterday but she \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ see) me. She \_\_\_\_\_ (look) the other way.
5. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (open) the cupboard door, a pile of books \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) out.
6. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ break) your arm?  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (slip) on the ice while I \_\_\_\_\_ (cross) the street in front of the dorm.
7. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ do) this time yesterday?  
B: We \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to London, but on the way we \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) about a bomb scare in Oxford Street. So we \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) back home straight away.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Tom and Ann at the airport a few weeks ago. They \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Berlin and I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Madrid. We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a chat while we \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for our flights.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (cycle) home yesterday when suddenly a man \_\_\_\_\_ (step) out into the road in front of me. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) quite fast but luckily I \_\_\_\_\_ (manage) to stop in time and \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ hit) him.
10. Flight 2001 \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) from London to New York when it suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ (encounter) turbulence and \_\_\_\_\_ (drop) 15,000 feet. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ (carry) over 300 passengers and a crew of 17.
11. While divers \_\_\_\_\_ (work) off the coast of Florida, they \_\_\_\_\_ (discover) a 100-year-old shipwreck. The shipwreck \_\_\_\_\_ (contain) gold bars worth \$2

- million. The divers \_\_\_\_\_ (film) life on a coral reef when they \_\_\_\_\_ (find) the gold.
12. A man was fined \$4,000 for stealing an ambulance. The ambulance driver \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a phone call when the thief \_\_\_\_\_ (start up) the ambulance. He (speed) away when the driver \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him and \_\_\_\_\_ (call) the police.
13. Police got a shock when they \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) a motorist as she \_\_\_\_\_ (speed) on the highway. While they \_\_\_\_\_ (search) the trunk of her car, they \_\_\_\_\_ (find) three snakes. The driver said she \_\_\_\_\_ (take) them to a pet fair.
14. Last night when we \_\_\_\_\_ (come) down the hill into town, we \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a strange object in the sky. It just suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ (appear) in front of us. We \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) the car and \_\_\_\_\_ (get) out. As we \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) it, it suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) away and \_\_\_\_\_ (disappear).
15. It was my first day of class. I \_\_\_\_\_ (finally/ find) the right room. The room \_\_\_\_\_ (already/ be) full of students. On one side of the room, students \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) busily to each other in Spanish. Other students \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) Japanese, and some \_\_\_\_\_ (converse) in Arabic. It sounded like the United Nations. Some of students, however, \_\_\_\_\_ (just/ sit) quietly by themselves. I \_\_\_\_\_ (choose) an empty seat in the last row and \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) down. In a few minutes, the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) into the room and all the multilingual conversation \_\_\_\_\_ (stop).

### VIII. Choose the correct form of the verbs.

*Andy:* Hello, Jane. What (1) are you doing/ do you do in this part of London?

*Jane:* Well, (2) I'm looking/ I look at flats round here.

*Andy:* Flats? (3) Are you wanting/ Do you want to move?

*Jane:* Yes, in fact, Adam and I (4) are getting/ get married.

*Andy:* That's great! Congratulations. When (5) have you decided/ did you decide?

*Jane:* Only last week. It was while we (6) were staying/ stayed with his family in Scotland. Now (7) we try/ we're trying to find a suitable flat.

*Andy:* It'll be great to have you as neighbours. (8) I hope/ I'm honing you manage to buy one soon.

*Jane:* Oh, we (9) aren't looking/ don't look for one to buy. We (10) aren't having/ don't have enough money yet. (11) We're wanting/ We want to find somewhere to rent.

*Andy:* Yes, of course. That's what we (12) have been doing/ did at first. Actually, in the end my brother (13) was lending/ lent us some money. That's how we (14) were managing/ managed to buy ours.

*Jane:* Really? Perhaps I'll talk to my family before we (15) choose/ have chosen a flat.

*Andy:* That's not a bad idea. My family (16) gave/ were giving us quite a lot of helpful advice. Now, what about a coffee? There's a good place just round the corner.

*Jane:* Oh, yes. I (17) looked/ was looking for somewhere to sit down when I (18) bumped/ have bumped into you. Let's go.

**IX. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form, past simple or present perfect.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) this shirt for nearly four years.
2. Joanna \_\_\_\_\_ (tidy) her desk, but now it's in a mess again.
3. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) his key. He can't find it anywhere.
4. The last time I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Brighton was in August.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) my homework. I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it before tea.
6. And the race is over! And Micky Simpson \_\_\_\_\_ (win) in a record time!
7. Martin \_\_\_\_\_ (be) to Greece five times. He loves the place.
8. Of course I can ride a bike. But I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ ride) one for years.
9. I don't know Carol's husband. I \_\_\_\_\_ (never/ meet) him.
10. Rupert \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) a message for you. He \_\_\_\_\_ (ring) last night.
11. Your car looks very clean. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ wash) it?
12. We \_\_\_\_\_ (move) here in 1993. We \_\_\_\_\_ (be) here a long time now.
13. Mr Clack \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave it up.
14. Is this the first time you \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) pasta?
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) for a computer company since I \_\_\_\_\_ (graduate) from university.
16. We \_\_\_\_\_ (post) the parcel three weeks ago. If you still \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ receive)

17. Albert Einstein \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the scientist who \_\_\_\_\_ (develop) the theory of relativity.
18. My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ (die) 30 years ago. I \_\_\_\_\_ (never/ meet) him.
19. A: Is your father at home?  
 B: No, I'm afraid he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out.  
 A: When exactly \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ go) out?  
 B: About ten minutes ago.
20. A: Where do you live?  
 B: Boston.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you/live) there.  
 B: 5 years.  
 A: Where \_\_\_\_\_ (you/live) before that?  
 B: Chicago.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ (you/live) in Chicago?  
 B: 2 years.

**X. Complete the conversation. Put the verbs in brackets in the past simple or present perfect.**

*Tom:* (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ hear) the news about David?

*Harriet:* No. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (what/ happen)?

*Tom:* (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (he/have) an accident. When he was walking down some steps, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ fall) and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (break) his leg.

*Harriet:* Oh, how awful! When (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (it/ happen)?

*Tom:* Yesterday afternoon. Melanie (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) me about it last night.

*Harriet:* Last night! (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ know) about it last night, and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ not/ tell) me!

*Tom:* Well, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ not/ see) you last night. And (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ not/ see) you today, until now.

*Harriet:* I hope he's all right. (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ have) lots of accidents, you know. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ do) the same thing about two years ago.



**XI. Read this letter to a newspaper. Then look at the answer below and write the correct answer in each space.**

A few days ago I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ that someone plans to knock down the White Horse Inn. This pub (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the center of village life for centuries. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ at our crossroads for 500 years. It (4) \_\_\_\_\_ famous in the old days, and Shakespeare once (5) \_\_\_\_\_ there, they say. I (6) \_\_\_\_\_ in Brickfield all my life. The villager (7) \_\_\_\_\_ about the plans for less than a week and already there's a 'Save Our Pub' campaign. Last week we (8) \_\_\_\_\_ happy, but this week we (9) \_\_\_\_\_ angry. We (10) \_\_\_\_\_ them, you'll see.

- |                     |                |                |                      |
|---------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. had learned   | b. learned     | c. has learned | d. learn             |
| 2. a. has been      | b. had been    | c. was         | d. is                |
| 3. a. stood         | b. is standing | c. stands      | d. has stood         |
| 4. a. has been      | b. is          | c. was         | d. had been          |
| 5. a. had stayed    | b. stayed      | c. stays       | d. has stayed        |
| 6. a. lived         | b. am living   | c. was         | d. have lived        |
| 7. a. have known    | b. knew        | c. had known   | d. know              |
| 8. a. are being     | b. has been    | c. were        | d. had been          |
| 9. a. are           | b. were        | c. has been    | d. are being         |
| 10. a. are stopping | b. will stop   | c. stop        | d. are going to stop |

**XII. Put the verbs in the present perfect or past perfect. Sometimes you need the negative.**

- Who is that woman? I \_\_\_\_\_ (never/ see) her before.
- The house was dirty. They \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) it for weeks.
- There was no sign of a taxi, although I \_\_\_\_\_ (order) one half an hour before.
- You can have that newspaper. I \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) with it.
- We went to the box office at lunch-time, but they \_\_\_\_\_ (already/ sell) all the tickets.
- It isn't raining now. It \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) at last.
- It'll soon get warm here. I \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) the heating on.
- It was twenty to six. Most of the shops \_\_\_\_\_ (just/ close).

9. Karen didn't want to come to the cinema with us because she \_\_\_\_\_ (already/see) the film.
10. There's no more cheese. We \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) it all, I'm afraid.
11. I'm very pleased to see you again after such a long time. We \_\_\_\_\_ (see) each other for five years.
12. I spoke to Melanie at lunch-time. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) her the news earlier.
13. By 1960 most of Britain's old colonies \_\_\_\_\_ (become) independent.
14. Don't you want to see this program? It \_\_\_\_\_ (start).
15. At first I thought I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the right thing, but I soon realised that I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a serious mistake.

**XIII. Put the verbs into the correct form, past simple or past perfect.**

1. The house was very quiet when I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed.
2. The apartment was hot when I got home, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) on the air conditioner.
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/meet) Tom at the party last night?  
B: No, he \_\_\_\_\_ (already/ go) home when I \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the party.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) a little better after I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the medicine.
5. I was late. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (already/ give) a quiz when I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) to class.
6. It was raining hard, but by the time the class \_\_\_\_\_ (be) over, the rain \_\_\_\_\_ (stop).
7. When I saw that Mike was having trouble, I \_\_\_\_\_ (help) him. He \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very appreciative.
8. We were driving along the road when we \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a car which \_\_\_\_\_ (break) down, so we \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) to see if we could help.
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at work in the morning and \_\_\_\_\_ (find) that somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (break) into the office during the night. So we \_\_\_\_\_ (call) the police.
10. Yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to my daughter's dance recital. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be/ never) to a dance recital before. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ take) dancing lessons when I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a child.

**XIV. Use the present perfect progressive or the past perfect progressive to complete the sentences.**

1. Emma went into the sitting-room. It was empty, but the television was still on. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) it.
2. I really must go to see the dentist. One of my teeth \_\_\_\_\_ (ache) for weeks.
3. I hope the bus comes soon. I \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for 20 minutes.
4. He was very tired because he \_\_\_\_\_ (work) hard all day.
5. At last the bus came. I \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for 20 minutes.
6. The telephone \_\_\_\_\_ (ring) for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?
7. Ken gave up smoking two years ago. He \_\_\_\_\_ (smoke) for 30 years.
8. We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. We \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) for more than 24 hours.
9. A: I haven't finished this letter yet.  
B: It must be a long letter. You \_\_\_\_\_ (write) since lunch-time.
10. Our game of tennis was interrupted. We \_\_\_\_\_ (play) for about half an hour when it started to rain.

**XV. Supply the correct verb form: Past tenses.**

1. A few days ago I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a man at a party whose face \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very familiar. At first I couldn't think where I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him before. Then suddenly I \_\_\_\_\_ (remember) who it \_\_\_\_\_ (be).
2. I went to John's room and \_\_\_\_\_ (knock) on the door but there \_\_\_\_\_ (be) no answer. Either he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out or he \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ want) to see anyone.
3. Yesterday afternoon Sharon \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the station to meet Paul. When she \_\_\_\_\_ (get) there, Paul \_\_\_\_\_ (already/ wait) for her. His train \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) early.
4. When I got home, Bill \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) on the sofa. The television was on but he \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ watch) it. He \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) asleep and \_\_\_\_\_ (snore) loudly. I \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) the television off and just then he \_\_\_\_\_ (wake) up.
5. Last night I \_\_\_\_\_ (just/ go) to bed and \_\_\_\_\_ (read) a book when suddenly I \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) a noise. I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) up to see what it was but I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ see) anything, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) back to bed.

6. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (have to) go to New York last week, but she almost \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) the plane. She \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) in the queue at the check-in desk when she suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ (realize) that she \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) her passport at home. Fortunately, she doesn't live very far from the airport, so she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) time to take a taxi home to get it. She \_\_\_\_\_ (get) back to the airport just in time for her flight.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) George and Linda yesterday as I \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) through the park. They \_\_\_\_\_ (be) to the Sports Center where they \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis. They \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a cafe for a drink and \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) me to join them but I \_\_\_\_\_ (arrange) to meet a friend and \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ have) time.

**XVI. Complete the questions, using a suitable verb.**

1. A: I'm looking for Paul. \_\_\_\_\_ him?  
B: Yes, he was here a moment ago.
2. A: Why \_\_\_\_\_ to bed so early last night?  
B: Because I was feeling very tired.
3. A: Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: Just to the postbox. I want to post these letters.
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ television every evening?  
B: No, only if there's a good program on.
5. A: Your house is very beautiful. How long \_\_\_\_\_ here?  
B: Nearly ten years.
6. A: How was your holiday? \_\_\_\_\_ a nice time?  
B: Yes, thanks. It was great.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Julie recently?  
B: Yes, I met her a few days ago.
8. A: Can you describe the woman you saw? What \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: A red sweater and black jeans.
9. A: I'm so sorry to keep you waiting \_\_\_\_\_ long?  
B: No, only about ten minutes.
10. A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ you to get to work in the morning?  
B: Usually about 45 minutes. It depends on the traffic.

11. A: \_\_\_\_\_ with that newspaper yet?

B: No, I'm still reading it.

12. A: \_\_\_\_\_ to the United States?

B: No, never, but I went to Canada a few years ago.

**XVII. Complete the sentences, using the notes in brackets. The verbs can be present tenses or past tenses.**

1. We bought this picture a long time ago. \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ have/ it) for ages.

2. Sandra finds her mobile phone very useful. \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ use/ it) all the time.

3. There's a new road to the motorway. \_\_\_\_\_ (they/ open/ it) yesterday.

4. We decided not to go out because \_\_\_\_\_ (it/ rain) quite hard.

5. Vicky doesn't know where her watch is. \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ lose/ it).

6. We had no car at that time. \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ sell/ our old one).

7. I bought a new jacket last week but \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ not/ wear/ it) yet.

8. Claire is on a skiing holiday. \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ enjoy/ it), she says on her postcard.

9. The color of this paint is absolutely awful. \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ hate/ it).

10. Henry is annoyed. \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ wait) a long time for Claire.

11. These figures certainly should add up. \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ check/ them) several times already.

12. Sandra and Laura like tennis. \_\_\_\_\_ (they/ play/ it) every weekend.

13. Sorry, I can't stop now. \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ go) to an important meeting.

14. I'd like to see Tina again. It's a long time since \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ last/ see/ her).

15. I've got my key. I found it when \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ look) for something else.

16. \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ read) the book you lent me but \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ not finish/ it) yet.

17. I wasn't hungry at lunchtime because \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ have/ a big breakfast).

18. Ann is sitting on the ground. She's out of break. \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ run).

19. Where's my bag? I left it under this chair. \_\_\_\_\_ (somebody/ take/ it)

20. No breakfast for Mark, thanks. \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ not eat/ breakfast).

21. We were all surprised when Jenny and Andy got married last year. \_\_\_\_\_ (they/ only/ know/ each other) for a few weeks.

22. Suddenly I woke up. I was confused and didn't know where I was. \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ dream)

23. Michelle looked really sunburnt. \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ lie) in the sun for too long.
24. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (this word/ mean)?  
 B: I've no idea. \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ never/ see/ it) before.
25. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (David/ drive) you home last night?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ stop/ offer/ me) a lift while \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ wait) for a bus outside the town hall.

**XVIII. Put the verbs in the present tense for the future: simple present or simple progressive**

1. A: Are you free on Friday?  
 B: No, we're very busy now. We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a party on Sunday. Would you like to come?
2. A: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (your train/ leave) tomorrow?  
 B: Seven twenty-three in the morning. It \_\_\_\_\_ (get) into Paris at eleven twenty-three
3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (the film/ begin) at 3.30 or 4.30?  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) at 3.30. I (pick) you up at 3 o'clock.
4. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to an ice hockey match this evening. Would you like to come?  
 B: Yes, I'd love to. What time \_\_\_\_\_ (the match/ start)?  
 A: It \_\_\_\_\_ (start) at half past seven.
5. A: When \_\_\_\_\_ (the art exhibition/ open)?  
 B: The art exhibition \_\_\_\_\_ (open) on 3 May and \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) on 15 July.
6. A: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ finish) work tomorrow?  
 B: I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ go) to work tomorrow. I \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home.
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ do) anything tomorrow morning?  
 B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the airport to meet Richard. He \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) here for the weekend. His plane \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at eight fifteen.
8. A: Where \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ go) on your holiday?  
 B: We \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) for Paris next week. The train \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) early on Tuesday morning.
9. A: I'm bored with this program. When \_\_\_\_\_ (it/ finish)?  
 B: It \_\_\_\_\_ (last) till 2.30.
10. A: How about going across the street for a cup of coffee?  
 B: I can't. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Jennifer at the library.

**XIX. Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use will, or be going to.**

1. It's your day off. You have intention to look round the museum.

Your friend: Do you have any plans for this afternoon?

You: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (look round) the museum.

2. You hate dogs. Dogs always attack you if they get a chance.

Your friend: That dog doesn't look very friendly.

You: It's coming towards us. It \_\_\_\_\_ (attack) us.

3. The phone rings and you answer. Somebody wants to speak to Jim.

Caller: Hello. Can I speak to Jim, please?

You: Just a moment. I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) him.

4. It's a nice day. You've decided to sit in the garden. Before going outside, you tell your friend.

You: The weather's too nice to stay indoors. I \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in the garden.

Your friend: That's a good idea. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ (join) you.

5. Your friend is worried because she has lost an important letter.

You: Don't worry about the letter. I'm sure you \_\_\_\_\_ (find) it.

Your friend: I hope so.

6. You predict the landing of aliens on the earth in the next ten years.

Your friend: All this talk about aliens is complete nonsense, isn't it?

You: Is it? I think aliens \_\_\_\_\_ (and) on the earth in the next ten years.

7. There was a job advertised in the paper recently. At first you were interested but then you decided not to apply.

Your friend: Have you decided what to do about the job that was advertised?

You: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ apply) for it.

8. You and a friend come home very late. Other people in the house are asleep. Your friend is noisy.

You: Shhh! Don't make so much noise. You \_\_\_\_\_ (wake) everybody up.

9. You know that Michelle has decided to get married.

Your friend: Have you heard about Michelle?

You: Well, I heard that she \_\_\_\_\_ (get) married.

10. Your friend has two young children. She wants to go out tomorrow evening. You offer to look after the children.

Your friend: I want to go out tomorrow evening but I haven't got a baby-sitter.

You: That's no problem. I \_\_\_\_\_ (look after) them.

11. You have an appointment with the dentist for Friday morning.

Friend: Shall we meet on Friday morning?

You: I can't on Friday. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the dentist.

12. John has to go to the airport to catch a plane tomorrow morning.

John: Ann, I need somebody to take me to the airport tomorrow morning.

Ann: That's no problem. I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) you. What time is your flight?

John: 10.50.

Ann: OK: We \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) at about 9 o'clock then.

Later that day, Joe offers to take John to the airport.

Joe: John, do you want me to take you to the airport?

John: No, thanks, Joe. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ (take) me.

## XX. Choose the correct answer.

1. A: Why are you working so hard these days?

B: Because \_\_\_\_\_ a car, so I'm saving as much as I can.

a. I'll buy                      b. I'm going to buy                      c. I buy

2. A: Oh, I've just realised. I haven't got any money.

B: Haven't you? Well, don't worry. \_\_\_\_\_ you some.

a. I'll lend                      b. I'm going to lend                      c. I'm lending

3. A: Could I have a word with you, please?

B: Sorry, I'm in a big hurry. My train \_\_\_\_\_ in fifteen minutes.

a. is going to leave      b. will leave                      c. leaves

4. A: Let's go to the carnival.

B: Yes, good idea. I expect \_\_\_\_\_ fun.

a. it'll be                      b. it's                      c. it's being

5. A: Have you decided about the course?

B: Yes, I decided last weekend. \_\_\_\_\_ for a place.

a. I apply                      b. I'm going to apply                      c. I'll apply

6. A: It's a public holiday next month.

B: Yes, I know. Anything special?

a. Are you doing      b. Do you do                      c. Will you do



7. A: Do you mind not leaving your papers all over the table?  
 B: Oh sorry. I'll take them all with me when \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. I'll go                      b. I'm going                      c. I go
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ a party next Saturday. Can you come?  
 B: Yes, of course.  
 a. We'll have                      b. We're having                      c. We have
9. A: I'm trying to move this cupboard, but it's very heavy.  
 B: Well, \_\_\_\_\_ you, then.  
 a. I'll help                      b. I'm going to help                      c. I help
10. A: Excuse me. What time \_\_\_\_\_ to London?  
 B: seven thirty in the morning.  
 a. will this train leave  
 b. is this train going to get  
 c. does this train get
11. A: I've decided to repaint this room.  
 B: Oh, have you? What color \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
 a. does you paint                      b. are you going to paint                      c. will you paint
12. A: Why are you putting on your coat? \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere?  
 B: No, I just feel rather cold.  
 a. Are you going                      b. Do you go                      c. Will you go
13. A: Did you post that letter for me?  
 B: Oh, I'm sorry. I completely forgot. \_\_\_\_\_ it now.  
 a. I do                      b. I'm doing                      c. I'll do
14. A: You look very happy. What is happening?  
 B: Well, I've got a new job. \_\_\_\_\_ my new job on Monday.  
 a. I'm starting                      b. I'm going to start                      c. I start
15. A: Someone told me you've got a place at university.  
 B: That's right. \_\_\_\_\_ maths at St Andrews, in Scotland.  
 a. I'll study                      b. I'm going to study                      c. I study
16. A: The alarm's going. It's making an awful noise.  
 B: OK, \_\_\_\_\_ it off.  
 a. I am switching                      b. I am going to switch                      c. I'll switch

17. A: Did you buy this book?

B: No, Emma did. \_\_\_\_\_ it on holiday.

- a. She'll read      b. She is going to read      c. She reads

18. A: Is the shop open yet?

B: No, but there's someone inside. I think \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. it opens      b. it's about to open      c. it will open

19. A: Have you heard anything about Jane?

B: Yes. She's engaged. \_\_\_\_\_ married in June.

- a. She's getting      b. She'll get      c. She's about to get

20. A: I'm just going out to get a paper.

B: What newspaper \_\_\_\_\_

- a. will you buy      b. are you buying      c. are you going to buy

**XXI. Put in the correct form of the verbs, present simple, future simple or future progressive.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) you at the airport tomorrow. After you (clear) customs, look for me just outside the gate. I \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) right by the door.

2. A: When \_\_\_\_\_ (you leave) for Florida?

B: Tomorrow. Just think! Two days from now I \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) on the beach in the sun.

3. Please come and visit today when you \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a chance. I \_\_\_\_\_ (shop) from 1:00 to 2:30, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) home after that.

4. A: Would you like to come to our party tomorrow?

B: Thanks for the invitation, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) all day tomorrow.

5. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) you this afternoon.

B: OK. But don't call me between 3:00 and 5:00 because I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) home. I \_\_\_\_\_ (study) at the library.

6. I won't be here next week. I \_\_\_\_\_ (attend) a seminar in Los Angeles. Ms. Gomes \_\_\_\_\_ (substitute-teach) for me. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (return), I will expect you to be ready for the midterm exam.

7. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ do) in five years' time, I wonder?

B: I'm going to go into business when I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) college. Five years from now I \_\_\_\_\_ (run) a big company.

8. Just relax, Antoine. As soon as your sprained ankle \_\_\_\_\_ (heal), you can play soccer again. At this time next week, you \_\_\_\_\_ (play) soccer.
9. A: Are you ready?  
B: Sorry. I'm not ready yet. I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) you when I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) ready. I promise I \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) very long.
10. Trevor and Laura \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ go) for a picnic tomorrow. They \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the house. They always \_\_\_\_\_ (do) it on Sunday.

**XXII. Put the verbs into the correct form, future progressive or future perfect.**

1. Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30. So at 4 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ play) tennis.
2. A: Can we meet tomorrow afternoon?  
B: Not in the afternoon. \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ work).
3. A: Will you be free at 11.30?  
B: Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ (the meeting/ finish) by that time.
4. Tom is on holiday and he is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this, \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ spend) all his money before the end of his holiday.
5. A: How can I get in touch with you?  
B: If you need to contact me, \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ stay) at the Lion Hotel until Friday.
6. We're late. \_\_\_\_\_ (The film/ already/ start) by the time we get to the cinema.
7. Next Monday, \_\_\_\_\_ (Chuck/ be) in Britain for exactly three years.
8. A: Is it all right if I come at about 8.30?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ watch) the football then.  
A: Well, what about 9.30?  
B: Fine \_\_\_\_\_ (the match/ finish) by then.
9. Jane is from New Zealand. She is traveling around Europe at the moment. So far she has traveled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ travel) more than 3,000 miles.
10. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ pass) the post office on your way home?  
B: Probably. Why?  
A: I need some stamps. Could you get me some?  
B: The post office \_\_\_\_\_ (close) by the time I get home, I'm afraid.

**XXIII. Choose the correct form of the verbs.**

1. A: I'd better go. I'm cycling/I cycle home, and I haven't got any lights on my bike  
B: Oh, yes. It'll be/ It'll have been dark soon.
2. A: I hear the rent on your flat is very expensive.  
B: Yes, it is. I'll move/ I'm going to move. I've decided.
3. A: I'd like a photo of Martin and me.  
B: I'll take/ I'm going to take one with your camera, then.
4. A: Have you booked on holiday yet?  
B: Yes, we go/ we're going to Spain.
5. A: Can I borrow your bike on Monday?  
B: I'm sorry, but I'll be using/ I'll have used it. I always cycle to work.
6. A: Oh dear, I've spilt my coffee.  
B: I get/ I'll get a cloth.
7. A: What's that man doing up there?  
B: Oh no! He'll jump/ He's going to jump!
8. A: It's quite a long way, isn't it?  
B: Yes. We'll be walking/ We'll have walked about five miles by the time we get back.
9. A: It just said on the radio that it's snowing/ it's going to snow.  
B: Oh, did it? I'll take/ I am taking my big coat then.
10. A: How long have you been working here?  
B: By November I will be working/ will have worked for this company for 6 years.
11. A: Are you busy this weekend, Sam?  
B: Not, particularly. I revise/ I'm revising until Wednesday because I've got an exam, but that only lasts/ that is only lasting until midday and then I'm free.
12. A: Will you finish/ Will you have finished your work by 9 tonight?  
B: No. I'm going to have/ I'll be having a meeting at that time.
13. A: What time does your evening class finish/ is your evening class finishing?  
B: Half past nine.  
A: Shall I come/ Do I come and collect you?  
B: Thanks, but I meet/ I'm meeting my sister for a drink.

14. A: I need some help.

B: What can I do, Andy?

A: I go/ I'm going to a job interview this afternoon, and I don't have a decent tie to wear.

B: I'll lend/ I'm going to lend you one of mine.

A: How soon are you/ will you be read to leave?

B: Oh I can't go out until it will stop raining/it stops raining. I haven't got a raincoat.

A: OK. I don't think it goes/ it will go for long. I tidy/ I'll tidy my desk while we're waiting/ we wait.

**XXIV. Complete the conversations. Put in the correct form of each verb.**

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ buy) anything at the antiques sale yesterday?

B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ want) to buy some jewellery, but \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ leave) my credit card at home.

2. A: Are you still copying those addresses?

B: No, that's all of them \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ finish) now.

3. A: The train is never going to get here.

B: How long \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ wait) now?

A: At least half an hour. \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ be) here since ten to five.

4. A: Did you have a nice chat with Tessa?

B: No, not really. When \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ drink) our coffee, \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ hurry) off home.

5. A: It's terrible about that plane crash, isn't it?

B: Yes, awful \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ have) breakfast when \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ hear) the news.

6. A: So you sing in a rock band, do you? How long (you/ do) that?

B: Oh, since I was sixteen \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ do) about a dozen concerts.

7. A: Do you know what Polly was upset about yesterday?

B: No, I don't. But I'm sure \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ cry). Her eyes looked red.

A: Perhaps \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ have) some bad news.

8. A: The shooting was very frightening, I suppose.

B: It certainly was. When \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ hear) the shot, \_\_\_\_\_ (we/ throw) ourselves to the floor immediately.

9. A: I rang at once, but you weren't in your office.  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ have) lunch at that time.
10. A: You look tired.  
B: Yes, I expect I do \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ work) all day.
11. A: Is Laura at home?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ go) out about an hour ago.
12. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ not/ finish) this letter yet.  
B: It must be a long letter. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ write) it since lunchtime.
13. A: I see you've got some new neighbors.  
B: Yes, a young couple. \_\_\_\_\_ (they/ move) in last month.
14. A: Did Tom drive you home?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ (he/ stop) and offered me a lift while \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ wait) for a bus outside the town hall.
15. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ arrive) at the theatre in time for the play last night?  
B: No, we were late. By the time we got there, \_\_\_\_\_ (it/ already/ begin).
16. A: Could you tell me your address?  
B: Well, \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ live) in a friend's house at the moment. Luckily \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ find) a place of my own now, but I can't move in until next week.
17. A: What did Angela say to you?  
B: She asked me how to use a computer. \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ never/ use) it before, so \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ not/ know) what to do.
18. A: Is this your CD?  
B: No, it isn't mine. \_\_\_\_\_ (I think) \_\_\_\_\_ (it/ belong) to Peter.
19. A: Why can't you wash your dirty plates sometimes? \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ leave) them in the sink most of the time.  
B: OK, sorry. The last few weeks \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ have) so little time. \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ rush) around all the time.
20. A: I've decided to try and learn a foreign language.  
B: Have you? Which language \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ learn)?  
A: Spanish.  
B: When \_\_\_\_\_ (the Spanish course/ start)?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ (it/ start) next week.  
B: That's great. I'm sure \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ enjoy) it.

A: I hope so. But I think \_\_\_\_\_ (it/ be) quite difficult.

21. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ have) a party next Saturday. Can you come?

B: On Saturday? I'm not sure. Some friends of mine \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to stay with me next week but I think \_\_\_\_\_ (they/ go) by Saturday. But if \_\_\_\_\_ (they/ be) still here, \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ not/ be) able to come to the party.

A: OK. Well, tell me as soon as \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ know)

B: Right \_\_\_\_\_ (I/ phone) you during the week.

**XXV. Choose the correct answer.**

1. It was a boring weekend. \_\_\_\_\_ anything.  
a. I won't do      b. I don't do      c. I didn't do      d. I'm not doing
2. I'm busy at the moment. \_\_\_\_\_ on the computer.  
a. I work      b. I'm work      c. I'm working      d. I worked
3. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ the answer to the question.  
a. is know      b. know      c. is knowing      d. knows
4. I think I'll buy this shoes. \_\_\_\_\_ really well.  
a. They fit      b. They have fit  
c. They're fitting      d. They were fitting
5. Where \_\_\_\_\_ the car?  
a. did you park      b. have you parked      c. parked you      d. you parked
6. At nine o'clock yesterday morning we \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus.  
a. wait      b. is waiting      c. was waiting      d. were waiting
7. When I looked round the door, the baby \_\_\_\_\_ quietly.  
a. is sleeping      b. slept      c. was sleeping      d. were sleeping
8. Here's my report. \_\_\_\_\_ it at last.  
a. I finish      b. I finished      c. I'd finished      d. I've finished
9. The earth \_\_\_\_\_ on the sun for its heat and light.  
a. is depended      b. depend      c. is depending      d. has depended
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ to Ireland for our holiday last year.  
a. go      b. are going      c. have gone      d. went
11. Robert \_\_\_\_\_ ill for three weeks. He's still in hospital.  
a. had been      b. has been      c. is      d. was







## Chương 4 SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CÁC THỜI (THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES)

Một câu có thể bao gồm một mệnh đề chính và một hoặc nhiều mệnh đề phụ. Khi trong câu có hai mệnh đề trở lên, động từ phải có sự phối hợp về thì.

### I. SỰ PHỐI HỢP VỀ THÌ TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ CHÍNH (MAIN CLAUSE) VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ PHỤ (SUBORDINATE CLAUSE)

MỆNH ĐỀ CHÍNH (MAIN CLAUSE)	MỆNH ĐỀ PHỤ (SUBORDINATE CLAUSE)
PRESENT SIMPLE SIMPLE FUTURE	- 3 thời hiện tại: present simple, present progressive, present perfect - Future simple - Is/ am/ are going to + V-inf - Past simple (khi có xác định thời gian trong quá khứ)
PAST SIMPLE	- 3 thời quá khứ: past simple, past progressive, past perfect - Future in the past (would + V-inf) - Was/ were + going to + V-inf - Present simple (diễn tả một chân lí, một sự thật hiển nhiên)
PRESENT PERFECT	- Present simple
PAST PERFECT	- Past simple

#### 1. Ví dụ mệnh đề chính ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

- I work so hard that I am always tired.  
(Tôi làm việc vất vả đến nỗi luôn luôn cảm thấy mệt.)
- She will think that I have taken her book.  
(Cô ấy sẽ nghĩ rằng tôi đã lấy cuốn sách của cô ấy.)

- Tom promises that he will visit me again.  
(*Tôm hứa rằng anh ấy sẽ lại đến thăm tôi.*)
- He says that he is going to eat it.  
(*Anh ấy nói rằng anh ấy sẽ ăn món đó.*)



**2. Ví dụ mệnh đề chính ở quá khứ đơn**

- We knew that the bridge was unsafe.  
(*Chúng tôi biết cây cầu đó không an toàn.*)
- I thought she was cooking then. (*Tôi nghĩ bây giờ cô ấy đang nấu ăn.*)
- He saw that he had made a mistake. (*Anh ấy thấy anh ấy đã gây ra lỗi.*)
- We thought that it would rain. (*Chúng tôi nghĩ trời sẽ mưa.*)
- My teacher said that the earth goes around the sun.  
(*Cô giáo của tôi nói rằng trái đất quay quanh mặt trời.*)



**3. Ví dụ mệnh đề chính ở thời hiện tại hoàn thành**

- I have forgotten what he looks like.  
(*Tôi đã quên anh ấy trông như thế nào rồi.*)

**4. Ví dụ mệnh đề chính ở quá khứ hoàn thành.**

- They had done all that was necessary.  
(*Họ đã làm tất cả những việc cần thiết.*)

## II. SỰ PHỐI HỢP CỦA CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ CHÍNH (MAIN CLAUSE) VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ THỜI GIAN (ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF TIME).

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian thường bắt đầu bằng các liên từ chỉ thời gian như: *when, while, whenever, as, before, after, as soon as, till/ until, just as, since, no sooner ... than, hardly ... when, as long as, once, by the time ...*

Cách phối hợp thì trong câu có mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

MIAN CLAUSE	ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF TIME
PRESENT TENSES	PRESENT TENSES
PAST TENSES	PAST TENSES
FUTURE TENSES	FUTURE TENSES

### 1. PRESENT TENSE: tất cả các thì hiện tại tùy theo ngữ cảnh của câu

Eg: He never goes home before he has finished his work.

(Anh ấy không bao giờ về nhà trước khi anh ấy hoàn thành công việc.)

Eg: I often read a newspaper while I am waiting for the bus.

(Tôi thường đọc báo trong khi tôi chờ xe buýt.)

Eg: Wait here until I come back. (Hãy chờ ở đây cho đến khi tôi quay lại.)

Eg: I'm starting a job in sale after I finish/ have finished college.

(Tôi bắt đầu công việc buôn bán sau khi tôi tốt nghiệp cao đẳng.)

### 2. PAST TENSES: tất cả các thì quá khứ tùy theo ngữ cảnh của câu

Eg: It was raining hard when I got there.

(Trời đang mưa to khi tôi đến đó.)

Eg: They arrived at the station after the train had left.

(Họ đến bến tàu sau khi tàu đã chạy.)

Eg: He slammed the door as he went out.

(Anh ấy đóng sầm cửa khi anh ấy ra ngoài.)

Eg: By the time I arrived, they had already left.

(Vào lúc tôi đến thì họ đã đi rồi.)

### 3. FUTURE TENSES: tất cả các thì tương lai tùy theo ngữ cảnh của câu

Eg: We will give you a call as soon as we arrive/ have arrived.

(Chúng tôi sẽ gọi cho bạn ngay sau khi chúng tôi đến nơi.)

Eg: After she graduates, she will get a job.

(Sau khi tốt nghiệp cô ấy sẽ đi làm.)

Eg: By the time he comes, we will have already left.

(Vào lúc anh ấy đến, chúng tôi sẽ đi.)

Eg: On Sunday, I will be lying on the beach while you are studying.

(Vào chủ nhật tôi sẽ nằm trên bãi biển trong khi bạn đang học.)

**Lưu ý:**

- Không dùng các thì tương lai trong các mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian. Thì simple future được thay bằng simple present; thì future perfect hoặc future perfect continuous được thay bằng thì present perfect hoặc present perfect continuous.

- Trong trường hợp dùng liên từ since lưu ý:

Động từ trong mệnh đề chính thường được chia ở hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn, động từ trong mệnh đề phụ có *since* thường chia ở thời quá khứ đơn.

<b>S + V (present perfect/ present perfect progressive) + since</b> <b>+ S + V (past simple)</b>
---

Eg: We **haven't seen** her since she **left** school.

(Chúng tôi không gặp cô ấy từ khi cô ấy tốt nghiệp.)

## EXERCISES

---

### I. Supply the correct verb form:

1. He thinks that it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) tonight.
2. She said that she \_\_\_\_\_ (get) married soon.
3. Bill said that he \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) his bicycle.
4. He knew that I \_\_\_\_\_ (come) the following week.
5. I was taught that the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (be) bigger than the moon.
6. The boy knew that an hour \_\_\_\_\_ (have) sixty minutes.
7. I didn't know what time it \_\_\_\_\_ (be), so I \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) on the radio.
8. I wondered whether I \_\_\_\_\_ (lock) the door or not.
9. They hoped that they \_\_\_\_\_ (end) soon.
10. This is the house that Jack \_\_\_\_\_ (build) three years ago.
11. He is saving his money so that he \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a long vacation.
12. I see that Henry \_\_\_\_\_ (write) his composition now.
13. The students had thought that the test \_\_\_\_\_ (be) rather difficult.
14. They have found that the road \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very long.
15. I saw that I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a mistake.
16. We find that we \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a wrong way.
17. I want to know how long she \_\_\_\_\_ (live) here.
18. I didn't know who \_\_\_\_\_ (help) him.
19. Do you hear what she \_\_\_\_\_ (just, say)?
20. They believed that the police \_\_\_\_\_ (capture) the thief soon.
21. I wonder what changes the new president \_\_\_\_\_ (introduce).
22. Mrs Smith complains that her neighbor \_\_\_\_\_ (make) too much noise.
23. Tom promised he \_\_\_\_\_ (not do) it again.
24. Miss White swears that she \_\_\_\_\_ (never see) that man before.
25. She has told me her name \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Mary.

### II. Choose the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I see that Tom (writes/ is writing) his composition.
2. He says that he (looks/ will look) for a job next week.
3. They think he (was/ would be) here last night.

4. He tells us that he (was/ has been) mountains before.
5. I hoped that he (will be/ would be) able to attend.
6. He wants to do it before his father (will come/ comes).
7. People have said that the sun (rise) in the East.
8. He says he (does/ will do) it some time.
9. He asked the guard what time the train usually (starts/ started).
10. He told me in the morning that he (is going/ was going) with us the following day.
11. He says that he (finished/ will finish) the project by May.
12. I realized that they (are/ were) older than they looked.
13. I hear that Kate (accepted/ has accepted) a new position.
14. They told me they (have never seen/ had never seen) her before.
15. We know that you (move/ will move) to France next year.
16. In Britain, the weather is very varied. People (never know/ have never known) what it (is/ will be) like the next day.
17. He (is/ had been) ill for a long time before he died.
18. She didn't tell me the reason why she (didn't come/ hadn't come) to school the day before.
19. I had no map, that's why I (got/ get) lost.
20. I hope it (does not rain/ will not rain) when we start early tomorrow.

**III. Complete these sentences, using the future simple or the present simple of the verbs in brackets.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) you when I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home from work.
2. I want to see Margaret before she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out.
3. We're going on holiday tomorrow. I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) you all about it when we \_\_\_\_\_ (come) back.
4. Brian looks very different now. When you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him again, you \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ recognize) him.
5. We must do something soon before it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) too late.
6. I don't want to go out without you. I \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) until you \_\_\_\_\_ (be) ready.
7. Sue has applied for the job but she isn't very well qualified for it. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) surprised if she \_\_\_\_\_ (get) it.

8. I'd like to play tennis tomorrow if the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (be) nice.
9. I'm going out now. If anybody \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) me while I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) out, can you take a message?
10. It's raining hard. We \_\_\_\_\_ (get) wet if we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out. As soon as it \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) raining, we \_\_\_\_\_ (leave).

**IV. Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. While Dad \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV last night, Mum \_\_\_\_\_ (read) the newspaper.
2. They'll have stopped serving meals by the time we \_\_\_\_\_ (get) to the restaurant.
3. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) all this work, I'll go for a walk.
4. She got a job after she \_\_\_\_\_ (graduate).
5. I had a cup of tea before I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) for work.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) late to work three times since my watch \_\_\_\_\_ (break).
7. Mohammad \_\_\_\_\_ never/ hear) about Halloween before he came to the U.S.
8. As Pauline \_\_\_\_\_ (get) out of bed, she fell over.
9. The village \_\_\_\_\_ (have) no electricity until a new generator is installed.
10. By the time I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the room, I had turned off the lights.
11. The first time I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to New York, I saw a ballet.
12. Have a good time when you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Paris next week.
13. While I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) Sandy's birthday card, I cut my finger.
14. David \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) able to work since he \_\_\_\_\_ (break) his leg.
15. By the time he comes, we \_\_\_\_\_ (already/ leave).
16. When Sandra found the letter, someone \_\_\_\_\_ (already/ open) it.
17. Whenever I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her, I say hello.
18. I will never speak to him again as long as I \_\_\_\_\_ (live).
19. As soon as we \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the tornado, we ran to the basement of the town hall.
20. We're going to tidy after everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (go).
21. Trevor tried to fix the shelves while Laura \_\_\_\_\_ (be) out shopping.
22. By the time we got to the party, most of the other guests \_\_\_\_\_ (go).
23. You have to wait until the light \_\_\_\_\_ (change) to green.
24. As soon as the other passengers get on the bus, we \_\_\_\_\_ (leave).
25. After the old man \_\_\_\_\_ (seem) unwell for some time, he died.

V. Use the words in brackets, make logical connections between the ideas in column A with the ideas in column B. Punctuate carefully and pay attention to verb tenses.

Example: 1. As soon as our taxi sets here, we can leave.

2. I turned off the TV before I left the room.

**A**

1. Our taxi will get here. (as soon as)
2. I turned off the TV. (before)
3. I parachuted from a plane, (the first time)
4. My boss stormed into my office, (while)
5. Ceylon had been independent for 24 years, (after)
6. Jack fell off his bicycle, (since)
7. Ms Johnson will return your call, (as soon as)
8. John will learn how to use a computer, (once)
9. I won't return this book to the library, (until)
10. Sue dropped a carton of eggs, (as)
11. Anna will go to class, (the next time)
12. The flooding river raced down the valley, (when)
13. The rice will be done, (just as soon as)
14. When I go to bed at night, I like to read, (until)
15. I must get to the post office, (before)

**B**

- a. She was leaving the store.
- b. It destroyed everything in its path.
- c. We can leave.
- d. I get sleepy.
- e. I left the room.
- f. Its name was changed to Sri Lanka.
- g. We can eat.
- h. She'll have some free time.
- i. I'll finish my research project.
- j. I was both terrified and exhilarated
- k. I was talking on the phone to an important client.
- l. It closes.
- m. He'll be able to work more efficiently
- n. He's had to use crutches to walk,
- o. She'll remember to take her grammar book.

**VI. Choose the correct answer.**

1. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she \_\_\_\_\_ the fire department.
- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| a. was telephoning | b. telephoned     |
| c. had telephoned  | d. has telephoned |



2. Before Jennifer won the lottery, she \_\_\_\_\_ any kind of contest.
  - a. hasn't entered
  - b. doesn't enter
  - c. wasn't entering
  - d. hadn't entered
3. Every time Prakash sees a movie made in India, he \_\_\_\_\_ homesick.
  - a. will have felt
  - b. felt
  - c. feels
  - d. is feeling
4. Since I left Venezuela six years ago, I \_\_\_\_\_ to visit friends and family several times.
  - a. return
  - b. will have returned
  - c. am returning
  - d. have returned
5. While he was washing his new car, Mr. Brown \_\_\_\_\_ a small dent in the rear fender.
  - a. has discovered
  - b. was discovering
  - c. is discovering
  - d. discovered
6. Yesterday while I was attending a sales meeting, Matthew \_\_\_\_\_ on the company's annual report.
  - a. was working
  - b. had been working
  - c. has worked
  - d. works
7. After the horse threw her to the ground for the third time, Jennifer picked herself up and said, "I \_\_\_\_\_ on another as long as I live."
  - a. never ride
  - b. have never ridden
  - c. will never ride
  - d. do not ride
8. Ever since Maurice arrived, he \_\_\_\_\_ quietly in the corner. Is something wrong?
  - a. sat
  - b. has been sitting
  - c. had been sitting
  - d. will have sit
9. After Nancy \_\_\_\_\_ for twenty minutes, she began to feel tired.
  - a. jogging
  - b. had been jogging
  - c. has been jogging
  - d. has jogged
10. Peter, \_\_\_\_\_ since you got home from football practice?
  - a. have you eaten
  - b. will you eat
  - c. are you eating
  - d. do you eat

11. By the time the young birds \_\_\_\_\_ the nest for food, they will have learned how to fly.  
 a. will leave      b. will have left      c. are leaving      d. leave
12. The last time I \_\_\_\_\_ in Athens, the weather was hot and humid.  
 a. had been      b. was      c. am      d. will have been
13. After Jessica \_\_\_\_\_ her degree, she intends to work in her father's company.  
 a. will finish      b. will have finished      c. finishes      d. is finishing
14. By the time I go to bed tonight, I \_\_\_\_\_ my work for the day.  
 a. will finish      b. have finished  
 c. will have finished      d. finish
15. When my parents \_\_\_\_\_ for a visit tomorrow, they will see our new baby for the first time.  
 a. will arrive      b. arrived  
 c. will have arrived      d. arrive
16. Susan looked down to discover a snake at her feet. When she saw it, she \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. was screaming      b. had screamed  
 c. screamed      d. screams
17. By the time Alfonso finally graduated from high school, he \_\_\_\_\_ seven different schools because his parents moved frequently.  
 a. attended      b. was attending  
 c. had attended      d. had been attending
18. Until you learn to relax more, you \_\_\_\_\_ your ability to speak English.  
 a. haven't improved      b. aren't improving  
 c. don't improve      d. won't improve
19. I borrowed four books on gardening the last time I \_\_\_\_\_ to the library.  
 a. go      b. went      c. had gone      d. have gone
20. Before I started the car, all of the passengers \_\_\_\_\_ their seat belts.  
 a. will buckle      b. had buckled      c. buckle      d. have buckled
21. It seems that whenever I travel abroad, I \_\_\_\_\_ to take something I need.  
 a. forgot      b. am forgetting      c. forget      d. had forgotten



6. What are you going to do after \_\_\_\_\_ ?
7. We were having dinner when \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. I think of you whenever \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. She sprained her ankle while \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. The phone rang shortly after \_\_\_\_\_ .

**VIII. Read the conversation. Write the correct answer in each space.**

A: Where's Sonia? I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ her lately.

B: She (2) \_\_\_\_\_ at home.

A: Oh? What (3) \_\_\_\_\_ from?

B: She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ her back while she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ volleyball last week in the game against South City College.

A: What happened? How (6) \_\_\_\_\_ her back?

B: She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to spike a ball when she (8) \_\_\_\_\_ with another player-and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to the ground. She (10) \_\_\_\_\_ hard and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ her back.

A: Gosh, that's too bad. I'm sorry to hear that. How's she doing?

B: Well, she's pretty uncomfortable. She (12) \_\_\_\_\_ a special brace on her back for the last five days. Needless to say, she (13) \_\_\_\_\_ able to play volleyball since her injury. She probably (14) \_\_\_\_\_ able to play again for at least a month.

A: (15) \_\_\_\_\_ her to play in the national tournament at the end of the summer?

B: She (16) \_\_\_\_\_ the brace on her back for more than seven weeks by then, so I think he will.

A: I hope so.

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. a. didn't see         | b. haven't seen        |
| c. am not see            | d. hadn't seen         |
| 2. a. is recuperating    | b. recuperated         |
| c. recuperates           | d. has recuperated     |
| 3. a. did she recuperate | b. has she recuperated |
| c. is she recuperating   | d. does she recuperate |
| 4. a. has hurt           | b. was hurting         |
| c. hurt                  | d. hurts               |

- |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 5. a. was playing            | b. is playing             |
| c. has been playing          | d. played                 |
| 6. a. has she hurt           | b. does she hurt          |
| c. had she hurt              | d. did she hurt           |
| 7. a. was trying             | b. tries                  |
| c. has been trying           | d. had tried              |
| 8. a. was colliding          | b. collided               |
| c. has collided              | d. had collided           |
| 9. a. fell                   | b. has fallen             |
| c. falls                     | d. had fallen             |
| 10. a. has landed            | b. was landing            |
| c. landed                    | d. had landed             |
| 11. a. twisted               | b. is twisted             |
| c. has twisted               | d. had been twisting      |
| 12. a. wears                 | b. was wearing            |
| c. weared                    | d. has been wearing       |
| 13. a. isn't                 | b. hadn't been            |
| c. hasn't been               | d. won't be               |
| 14. a. hasn't been           | b. won't be               |
| c. isn't                     | d. isn't going to be      |
| 15. a. Will her doctor allow | b. Does her doctor allow  |
| c. Has her doctor allowed    | d. Is her doctor allowing |
| 16. a. is having             | b. has                    |
| c. has had                   | d. will have had          |

**IX. Put the verbs into the correct form.**

- Last night I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a party. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) there, the room was full of people. Some of them \_\_\_\_\_ (dance), and others \_\_\_\_\_ (talk). One young woman \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) by herself. I \_\_\_\_\_ (never/ meet) her, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (introduce) myself to her.
- Next month I have a week's vacation. I \_\_\_\_\_ (plan) to take a trip. First I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Madison, Wisconsin, to visit my brother. After I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) Madison, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Chicago to see a friend who \_\_\_\_\_ (study)

at the university there. She \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Chicago for three years, so she \_\_\_\_\_ (know) her way around the city. She \_\_\_\_\_ (promise) to take me to many interesting places. I \_\_\_\_\_ (never/ be) in Chicago, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (look) forward to going there.

3. Hello. This \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Kitty Beamish. I \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) to you from Oxford, where the finals of the World Quiz Championships will be held tomorrow. The favorite is Claude Jennings of Cornwall, the man who \_\_\_\_\_ (know) everything. Twelve months ago no one \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) of Claude Jennings, although he \_\_\_\_\_ (take) part in quiz competitions for years. Now suddenly he is a big star. So far this year he \_\_\_\_\_ (answer) every single question correctly. And he is popular, too. When he \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) here two days ago, hundreds of fans \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) at the station to welcome him. Since his arrival Claude \_\_\_\_\_ (read) encyclopedias in his hotel bedroom. He is clearly the man to watch. And now back to the news desk.
4. It \_\_\_\_\_ (happen) last August at the airport. A few weeks before, a group of us \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) to go to Greece together for a holiday. We \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) in the queue at passport control when suddenly I \_\_\_\_\_ (realize) that I \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) my passport. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) quite a shock. I \_\_\_\_\_ (hurry) to a phone and \_\_\_\_\_ (ring) my parents. They \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in the garden, but luckily my mother \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) the phone. They \_\_\_\_\_ (find) the passport and immediately \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) to the airport with it. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) them at the information desk. We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) no time to talk, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (say) goodbye to them earlier that morning. I \_\_\_\_\_ (run) all the way to the plane. I was just in time. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) there, the passengers \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) on their seats ready for take-off. When they \_\_\_\_\_ (see) me, everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (start) clapping.
5. The weather has been terrible lately. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) off and on for two days, and the temperature \_\_\_\_\_ (drop) drastically. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) really cold today. Just three days ago, the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (shine) and the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (be) pleasant. The weather certainly \_\_\_\_\_ (change) quickly here. I never know what to expect. Who know? When I \_\_\_\_\_ (wake) up tomorrow morning, maybe it \_\_\_\_\_ (snow).
6. Mark Twain, the author of the 'The Adventures of Tom Sawyer', \_\_\_\_\_ (be) one of America's best-loved storytellers. He \_\_\_\_\_ (grow) up in a small town on the Mississippi River. As a young boy, he \_\_\_\_\_ (greatly/ admire) the pilots of the riverboats and dreamed about being a riverboat

pillot on the mighty river. He pursued his dream, and by the age of 22, he himself \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a riverboat pilot. Later in life, when he \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a writer, many of his stories \_\_\_\_\_ (contain) elements of his own experiences. He \_\_\_\_\_ (write) many humorous stories and articles about life on the Mississippi River before he \_\_\_\_\_ (die) in 1910 at the age of 74. Sadly, Twain \_\_\_\_\_ (work) on a new story for several months before his death, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (finish/ never) it. Over the years since his death, his boyhood home in Hannibal, Missouri, \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a favorite place for Americans to visit to learn about Twain and life on the Mississippi at the turn of the 19th century.

7. The actress Vanessa Kemp \_\_\_\_\_ (disappear). Yesterday she \_\_\_\_\_ (fail) to arrive at the Prince Charles Theatre in London's West End for her leading role in the comedy 'Don't look now!'. Ms Kemp, who \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Hampstead, \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) home at four o'clock yesterday afternoon for the theatre, a journey she \_\_\_\_\_ (make) several times the week before. Two people who \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) past her home at the time \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her leave. But no one \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her since then. At half past seven she still \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ arrive) at the theatre. At eight o'clock the theatre manager had to break the news to the audience, who \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) patiently for the play to start. Since yesterday, theatre staff and friends \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to contact Ms Kemp, but they \_\_\_\_\_ (have) no success so far. The police \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the matter seriously, but they \_\_\_\_\_ (believe) that she is unlikely to be in any danger. Her friends all \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to hear from her soon.



## Chương 5 CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG

### (PASSIVE SENTENCES)

#### I. CÁC BƯỚC ĐỔI CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG SANG CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG:

- 1) Xác định S, V, O trong câu chủ động
- 2) Xác định thì của động từ
- 3) Lấy O trong câu chủ động làm S trong câu bị động, lấy S trong câu chủ động làm O trong câu bị động
- 4) Lấy V chính trong câu chủ động đổi thành V3/ed rồi thêm BE thích hợp trước V3/ed
- 5) Đặt BY trước O trong câu bị động

Eg: (A) The cat ate the mouse. (*Con mèo đã ăn con chuột.*)

→ (P) The mouse was eaten by the cat.

Trong (A), **The cat** là S, **ate** là V chính, **the mouse** là O. Lấy **the mouse** làm S và **the cat** làm O trong (P). Lấy V chính đổi thành V3 là **eaten**. Do V chính trong (A) ở thì quá khứ đơn và **The mouse** trong (P) số ít nên BE phải là **was**. Đặt **by** trước **the cat**.

#### II. ĐỘNG TỪ TRONG CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG VÀ BỊ ĐỘNG:

Tenses Examples	Active	Passive
Simple present	Lan cleans the floor every morning.	The floor is cleaned by Lan every morning.
Simple past	Nam broke the glasses.	The glasses were broken by Nam.
Present continuous	The pupil is not doing some exercises.	Some exercises are not being done by the pupil.
Past continuous	Mother was cooking dinner at 6 yesterday.	Dinner was being cooked by mother at 6 yesterday.



Present perfect	The secretary has just finished the report.	The report has just been finished by the secretary.
Past perfect	The boy had found the key before 9 yesterday.	The key had been found by the boy before 9 yesterday.
Simple future	Mr. Brown will not teach our class.	Our class will not be taught by Mr. Brown.
Future perfect	The students will have written many compositions.	Many compositions will have been written by the students.
Modal verbs	The students must do this exercise in class.	This exercise must be done in class by the students.

### III. MỘT SỐ ĐIỂM CẦN LƯU Ý:

#### 1) Câu hỏi chủ động và bị động:

(A) Did your father make this chair?

→ (P) Was this chair made by your father?

*(Có phải bố của bạn đã làm chiếc ghế này không?)*

(A) Who repaired your bicycle?

→ (P) Whom was your bicycle repaired by?

*(By whom was your bicycle repaired?)*

*(Ai đã sửa chiếc xe đạp của bạn?)*

(A) What plays did Shakespeare write?

→ (P) What plays were written by Shakespeare?

*(Shakespeare đã viết những vở kịch nào?)*

## 2) Lược bỏ túc từ trong câu bị động:

Nếu chủ từ trong câu chủ động KHÔNG chỉ rõ là người hay vật cụ thể, rõ ràng (people, someone, every one, no one, any one, I, we, you, they, s/he, it) thì khi đổi sang câu bị động (by people / someone / every one / no one / any one / me / us / you / them / her / him / it) có thể được bỏ đi.

Eg: (A) People built that bridge in 1998.

→ (P) That bridge was built in 1998.

(Mọi người xây cây cầu đó vào năm 1998.)

## 3) Động từ có hai túc từ:

3.1 Động từ cần giới từ TO: give, lend, send, show ...

(A) John will give me this book. (=John will give this book to me.)

→ (P1) I will be given this book by John.

→ (P2) This book will be given to me by John.

(John sẽ đưa cho tôi cuốn sách đó.)



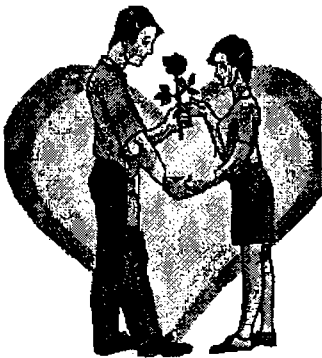
3.2 Động từ cần giới từ FOR: buy, make, get ...

(A) He bought her a rose. (=He bought a rose for her.)

→ (P1) She was bought a rose.

→ (P2) A rose was bought for her.

(Anh ấy mua tặng cô ấy một bông hồng.)



#### 4) Một số dạng bị động khác:

4.1 Cấu trúc: *They/ People say/ think/ believe... that ...*

- (A) People say that Henry eats ten eggs a day.
- (P1) It is said that Henry eats ten eggs a day.
- (P2) Henry is said to eat ten eggs a day.

*(Mọi người nói Henry ăn mười quả trứng mỗi ngày.)*

- (A) They thought that Mary had gone away.
- (P1) It was thought that Mary had gone away.
- (P2) Mary was thought to have gone away.

*(Mọi người nghĩ Mary đã đi rồi.)*

4.2 Cấu trúc *HAVE / GET + something + V3/ed*

- (A) I had him repair my car.
- (P) I had my car repaired (by him).

*(Tôi yêu cầu anh ấy sửa chiếc xe ô tô của tôi.)*

- (A) I get her to make some coffee.
- (P) I get some coffee made (by her).

*(Tôi bảo cô ấy pha giúp tôi ít cà phê.)*

#### 5) Câu mệnh lệnh (Imperative sentences):

Câu mệnh lệnh có cấu trúc như sau: **Verb + object**

**Don't + verb + object**

→ Dạng bị động được thành lập bằng cách dùng động từ LET

**Let + object + be + P<sub>II</sub>**

Eg: Write your name here! → Let your name be written here.

*(Hãy viết tên bạn ở đây!)*

Don't make so much noise. → Let not so much noise be made/ don't let so much noise be made.

*(Đừng làm ồn!)*

## EXERCISES

---

I. Use the words in the box to complete these passive sentences. Use any appropriate tense.

*cause*      *blow*      *hold*      *collect*      *invite*      *not steal*  
*show*      *translate*      *write*      *invent*      *spell*      *surround*  
*build*      *report*      *murder*

1. An island \_\_\_\_\_ by water.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ to the wedding but I couldn't come.
3. Many accidents \_\_\_\_\_ by reckless driving.
4. A new dormitory \_\_\_\_\_ in the campus at present.
5. A lot of the trees \_\_\_\_\_ down in a storm a few days ago.
6. Some politicians \_\_\_\_\_ by terrorists recently.
7. The concert \_\_\_\_\_ at the university next Sunday.
8. This money box \_\_\_\_\_ for five years.
9. The electric light bulb \_\_\_\_\_ by Thomas Edison.
10. The -ing form of 'sit' \_\_\_\_\_ with a double "t".
11. The accident \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspaper yesterday.
12. Mickey Mouse cartoons \_\_\_\_\_ into sixty languages.
13. The election results \_\_\_\_\_ on television at the end of/this month.
14. This program \_\_\_\_\_ by students at Stanford University.
15. Thank goodness! My jewellery \_\_\_\_\_ in the robbery last night.

II. Put the verbs into the most suitable passive form.

1. There's someone behind us. I think we \_\_\_\_\_ (follow).
2. A mystery is something that \_\_\_\_\_ (can't/ explain).
3. We didn't play football yesterday. The match \_\_\_\_\_ (cancel).
4. The television \_\_\_\_\_ (repair). It's working again now.
5. The church tower \_\_\_\_\_ (restore). The work is almost finished.
6. "How old is the tower?"- "It \_\_\_\_\_ (believe) to be over 600 years old."
7. If I didn't do my job properly, I \_\_\_\_\_ (would/ sack).

8. A: I left some papers on the desk last night and I can't find them now.  
B: They \_\_\_\_\_ (might/ throw) away.
9. I learned to swim when I was very young. I \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) by my mother.
10. After \_\_\_\_\_ (arrest), I was taken to the police station.
11. This road \_\_\_\_\_ (repair), so we have to take another road.
12. Two people \_\_\_\_\_ (report) to \_\_\_\_\_ (injure) in an explosion at a factory early this morning.
13. I haven't received the letter. It \_\_\_\_\_ (might/ send) to the wrong address.
14. The vegetables didn't taste very good. They \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) for too long.
15. The examination papers are scored by machine. The students \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) their results next week.

**III. Put these sentences into the passive voice.**

1. Should they help Jane with the sewing?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The mechanic is repairing Judy's car.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Must we finish the test before ten?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. They use a computer to do that job nowadays.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Employers must pay all travel expenses for this training course.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Did her story take them in?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. The bank manager kept me for half an hour.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Has he spelt this word wrongly

\_\_\_\_\_

9. All his friends will see him off at the airport.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. They used to drink beer for breakfast in England years ago.

\_\_\_\_\_

11. Someone might have sent the letter to the wrong address.

---

12. They were cleaning the floor when I arrived.

---

13. They are digging the hole on the wrong side of the road.

---

14. They are going to steal your money if you're not careful.

---

15. Has anyone ever asked you for your opinion?

---

16. Alan's knowledge of art doesn't impress me.

---

17. How do people make candles?

---

18. They can't make tea with cold water.

---

19. When is someone going to announce the results of the contest?

---

20. Nobody informed the police that there had been a mistake.

---

21. Where will your company send you next year?

---

22. Who looked after the children when you were away?

---

23. Look! Someone is feeding the seals.

---

24. Kathy had returned the book to the library.

---

25. By this time tomorrow, the president will have made the announcement.

---

26. The pollution in the city was affecting people's breathing.

---

27. Mrs Andrews hasn't signed those papers yet. Has Mr Andrews signed them yet?

---

28. Is a student pilot flying that airplane?

---

29. Where did they hold the 1988 Olympic Games?

---

30. Do they make those tractors in this country, or do they import them?

---

**IV. Change active to passive, paying close attention to special structures.**

1. Parents always give me proper encouragement.

---

2. I remember someone giving me a toy drum on my fifth birthday.

---

3. Someone saw him pick up the gun.

---

4. They asked me some difficult questions at the interview.

---

5. Don't touch this switch.

---

6. He won't let you do that silly thing again.

---

7. The real estate office will send you a copy of the sales contract.

---

8. I didn't expect the police to find my car.

---

9. I rarely hear her call her children bad names.

---

10. Someone seems to have made a terrible mistake.

---

11. I think they should have offered Tom the job.

---

12. People say that Arthur robbed a bank a long time ago.

\_\_\_\_\_

13. They used to make little boys climb the chimneys to clean them.

\_\_\_\_\_

14. They suggested banning the sale of alcohol at football matches.

\_\_\_\_\_

15. Take off your coat.

\_\_\_\_\_

16. They have sent that money to the poor families.

\_\_\_\_\_

17. He recommended using bullet-proof glass.

\_\_\_\_\_

18. She loves someone praising her all the time.

\_\_\_\_\_

19. We believe that he has special knowledge which may be useful to the police.

\_\_\_\_\_

20. You need to have your hair cut.

\_\_\_\_\_

**V. Write the sentences in another way, beginning as shown.**

1. Someone reported that the situation was under control.

The situation \_\_\_\_\_

2. It is said that she works 16 hours a day.

She \_\_\_\_\_

3. Someone thinks that the company is planning a new advertising campaign.

The company \_\_\_\_\_

4. Everyone expects that the soap opera will end next year.

The soap opera \_\_\_\_\_

5. It is alleged that the man drove through the town at 90 miles an hour.

The man \_\_\_\_\_

6. Someone reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.

The President \_\_\_\_\_



7. They think that the prisoner escaped by climbing over a wall.  
The prisoner \_\_\_\_\_
8. It is reported that the buildings have been badly damaged by fire.  
The buildings \_\_\_\_\_
9. It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods.  
Many people \_\_\_\_\_
10. We all expected Marta would pass her driving test.  
Marta \_\_\_\_\_
11. People believe that he was killed by terrorists.  
He \_\_\_\_\_
12. We knew that you were in town on the night of the crime.  
You \_\_\_\_\_
13. Journalists supposed that the footballer Wayne Johnson was earning £10 million a year.  
The footballer Wayne Johnson \_\_\_\_\_
14. It is said that there is a secret tunnel between those two houses.  
There \_\_\_\_\_
15. We know that they lives in a small flat on the fifth floor.  
They \_\_\_\_\_
16. Lots of people believe that the Prime Minister and his wife have separated.  
The Prime Minister \_\_\_\_\_
17. It is believed that the boy is wearing a white pullover and blue jeans.  
The boy \_\_\_\_\_
18. Everyone expects that the hostages will be released soon.  
The hostages \_\_\_\_\_
19. It is reported that two people were injured in the explosion.  
Two people \_\_\_\_\_
20. They say exercise is good for health.  
Exercise \_\_\_\_\_

**VI. Put the verbs into the correct form, active or passive.**

1. A: Who met you at the airport yesterday?  
B: Well, when I \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) to the airport, I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) by my best friend, Joanna.
2. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ pay) your electricity bill yet?  
B: No, but I'd better pay it today. If I don't, my electricity \_\_\_\_\_ (shut off) by the power company.
3. A: When \_\_\_\_\_ (your camera/ steal)?  
B: Two months ago. While I was on my holiday, my camera \_\_\_\_\_ (disappear) from my hotel room.
4. A: Is the small lot behind your house still for sale?  
B: No, it \_\_\_\_\_ (sell) since last month and a new house \_\_\_\_\_ (build) on it next month.
5. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) some papers on the desk last night and I can't find them now.  
B: It \_\_\_\_\_ (might/ throw) away.
6. A: What a nice garden! It \_\_\_\_\_ (must/ take) good care of.  
B: That's right. We can see that the plants and flowers \_\_\_\_\_ (water) everyday and the grass \_\_\_\_\_ (cut) regularly.
7. Can you come to the police station? The man who \_\_\_\_\_ (suspect) of stealing your wallet \_\_\_\_\_ (arrest), and \_\_\_\_\_ (question) at the moment. The police hope he \_\_\_\_\_ (identify), either by you or another witness.
8. The building at the end of the High Street is Barford Hall, which \_\_\_\_\_ (build) in 1827. Today the Hall \_\_\_\_\_ (own) by Bardale Council. It \_\_\_\_\_ (use) as a warehouse when it \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) by the Council in 1952, and it \_\_\_\_\_ (not look) after very well. Since then a lot of work \_\_\_\_\_ (do) on it, and these days the Hall \_\_\_\_\_ (use) as an art centre.
9. The Eiffel Tower \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in Paris, France. It \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) by millions of people every year. It \_\_\_\_\_ (design) by Alexandre Eiffel (1832 -1923). It \_\_\_\_\_ (erect) in 1889 for the Paris exposition. Since that time, it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the most famous landmark in Paris. Today it \_\_\_\_\_ (recognize) by people throughout the world.
10. Winton Castle \_\_\_\_\_ (damage) in a fire last night. The fire, which \_\_\_\_\_ (discover) at about 9 o'clock, spread very quickly. Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ (injure) but two people had to \_\_\_\_\_ (rescue) from an upstairs room. A number of paintings \_\_\_\_\_ (believe/destroy). It \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ know) how the fire started.

11. Repair work started yesterday on the Paxham-Longworth road. The road \_\_\_\_\_ (resurface) now and there will be long delays. Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) to use an alternative route if possible. The work \_\_\_\_\_ (expect) to last two weeks. Next Sunday the road \_\_\_\_\_ (close) and traffic \_\_\_\_\_ (divert).
12. In Paxham yesterday a shop assistant \_\_\_\_\_ (force) to hand over £500 after \_\_\_\_\_ (threaten) by a man with a knife. The man escaped in a car which \_\_\_\_\_ (steal) earlier in the day. The car \_\_\_\_\_ (later/ find) in a car park where it \_\_\_\_\_ (abandon) by the thief. A man \_\_\_\_\_ (arrest) in connection with the robbery and \_\_\_\_\_ (still/ question) by the police.

**VII. Choose the correct verb forms in this news report about a storm.**

Millions of pounds' worth of damage (1) \_\_\_\_\_ by a storm which (2) \_\_\_\_\_ across the north of England last night. The River Ribble (3) \_\_\_\_\_ its banks after heavy rain. Many people (4) \_\_\_\_\_ from the floods by fire-fighters, who (5) \_\_\_\_\_ hundreds of calls for help. Wind speeds (6) \_\_\_\_\_ ninety miles an hour in some places. Roads (7) \_\_\_\_\_ by fallen trees, and electricity lines (8) \_\_\_\_\_ down, leaving thousands of homes without electricity. 'Everything possible (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to get things back to normal', a spokesman (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

- |     |                 |                    |                    |
|-----|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1.  | a. has caused   | b. has been caused | c. caused          |
| 2.  | a. swept        | b. was swept       | c. was being swept |
| 3.  | a. was burst    | b. has been burst  | c. burst           |
| 4.  | a. rescued      | b. were rescued    | c. be rescued      |
| 5.  | a. has received | b. received        | c. were received   |
| 6.  | a. reached      | b. is reached      | c. were reached    |
| 7.  | a. has blocked  | b. blocked         | c. were blocked    |
| 8.  | a. were brought | b. brought         | c. had brought     |
| 9.  | a. was done     | b. is being done   | c. is doing        |
| 10. | a. said         | b. was said        | c. say             |

**VIII. Reply to what people say. Use the subject in brackets.**

1. A: The bus fares have been increased. (they)

B: What? You mean \_\_\_\_\_ again!

2. A: Bicycles should be used for short journeys. (people)  
B: Yes, I agree. \_\_\_\_\_
3. A: A new source of energy has been discovered. (someone)  
B: What? Did you say that \_\_\_\_\_
4. A: This building is going to be knocked down. (they)  
B: Well, no one told me that \_\_\_\_\_
5. A: Eggs shouldn't be kept in a freezer. (you)  
B: Really? I didn't know \_\_\_\_\_
6. A: Why isn't litter put in the bin? (people)  
B: Exactly. Why don't \_\_\_\_\_
7. A: A lot of money was stolen in the robbery. (the robbers)  
B: Really? The papers this morning don't say that \_\_\_\_\_
8. A: The road in front of my house is being resurfaced at the moment. (they)  
B: What? Did you say that \_\_\_\_\_
9. A: A decision will not be made until the next meeting. (the board)  
B: Well, I've heard that \_\_\_\_\_
10. A: How is this word pronounced? (people)  
B: Sorry, I don't know \_\_\_\_\_

**IX. Use the words in brackets to complete the sentence. Use the structure have something done.**

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ (the house/ paint) at the moment.
2. I lost my key. I'll have to \_\_\_\_\_ (another key/ make).
3. When was the last time you \_\_\_\_\_ (your hair/ cut)?
4. You look different. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ your hair/ cut)?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ a newspaper/ deliver) to your house or do you go to the shop to buy one?
6. A: Can I see the photos you took when you were on holiday?  
B: I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ the film/ develop) yet.
7. A: What are those workmen doing in your garden?  
B: Oh, we \_\_\_\_\_ (a swimming pool/ build).
8. This coat is dirty. I must \_\_\_\_\_ (it/ clean).

9. If you want to wear earrings, why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ (your ears/ pierce)?

10. A: My car has been serviced recently.

B: How often \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ your car/ service)?

**X. Complete the sentences, using the causative form.**

1. David went to the hospital. A nurse bandaged his arm.

He had his arm *bandaged*.

2. Daniel is going to the dentist. He is going to fill his tooth.

He is going to have the dentist \_\_\_\_\_.

3. I didn't recognize Sheila. The hairdresser's dyed her hair.

She's had her hair \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I've been getting a lot annoying phone calls, so the telephone company is going to change my number.

So I'm going to get the telephone company \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Gabrielle broke her leg six weeks ago but she's much better now. In fact the doctors should be taking the plaster off tomorrow.

Gabrielle should be having the plaster \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Since Rowland made a lot of money, he's not content with his little cottage, so an architect's designed him a fine new house.

Rowland has had an architect \_\_\_\_\_.

7. This room gets too hot when the sun shines so I'm getting someone to fit blinds on the windows.

I'm having blinds \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Anne is walking around town while her photos are being developed.

Anne is getting her photos \_\_\_\_\_.

9. We don't really know what Shakespeare looked like. I wish he had asked someone to paint his portrait before he died.

I wish Shakespeare had had his poitrait \_\_\_\_\_.

10. My sister had always been self-conscious about her nose so she decided to go to a clinic for an operation to have it \_\_\_\_\_.

**XI. Write a second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in brackets.**

1. We have to test these products. (be)

---

2. A Belgian called Etienne Lenoir made the first motor car. (by)

---

3. Nigel's passport was taken away from him by the police. (took)

---

4. They pay babysitters a lot of money. (are)

---

5. I hope they'll interview me for the job. (to)

---

6. A mechanic is repairing Judy's car. (having)

---

7. Tessa lost her way. (got)

---

8. Everyone agreed that the plan should go ahead. (it)

---

9. When did they decorate your kitchen? (get)

---

10. They believe that he is living abroad. (be)

---

11. Pavarotti sang the song. (by)

---

12. Someone is cleaning the floor. (being)

---

13. Do you suppose your brother could have written such a letter? (been)

---

14. Laura had her brother repair her bicycle. (to)

---

15. Don't do that again. (be)

---









**I. ĐỘNG TỪ TƯỜNG THUẬT Ở THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOẶC TƯƠNG LAI:**

Nếu động từ tường thuật ở thì HIỆN TẠI hoặc TƯƠNG LAI, ta chỉ đổi NGÔI như sau:

- 1) Đổi ngôi thứ NHẤT phù hợp với CHỦ TỪ trong mệnh đề chính
- 2) Đổi ngôi thứ HAI phù hợp với TỨC TỪ trong mệnh đề chính
- 3) Ngôi thứ BA không đổi

Eg: He says to me, "I and you will go with her father tomorrow."

→ He tells me (that) he and I will go with her father tomorrow.

*(Anh ấy nói với tôi rằng tôi và anh ấy sẽ đi thăm bố cô ấy vào ngày mai.)*

\* Chú ý: say to → tell

**II. ĐỘNG TỪ TƯỜNG THUẬT Ở THÌ QUÁ KHỨ:**

Nếu động từ tường thuật ở thì quá khứ, ta đổi ba yếu tố là ngôi, thì của động từ và trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn.

- 1) Ngôi: (như trên)
- 2) Thì của động từ:

V1 → V2/ed

can → could

shall → should

must → had to

V2/ed → had + V3/ed

will → would

may → might

- 3) Trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn:

today → that day	next week → the week after
tonight → that night	tomorrow → the day after
now → then	this → that
ago → before	these → those
yesterday → the day before	here → there
last week → the week before	

Eg: She said to me, "I met your brother yesterday."

→ She told me that she had met my brother the day before.

*(Cô ấy nói với tôi rằng cô ấy đã gặp bố của tôi vào hôm qua.)*

### III. CÁC DẠNG CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT:

#### 1) Câu khẳng định và phủ định:

Động từ tường thuật thường là said/told.

Eg1: He said, "I have seen her today."

→ He said (that) he had seen her that day.

*(Anh ấy nói rằng ngày hôm nay anh ấy đã gặp cô ấy.)*

Eg2: The teacher said to Peter, "The prize was not given to you."

→ The teacher told Peter (that) the prize had not been given to him.

*(Cô giáo nói với Peter rằng giải thưởng không được trao cho cậu ấy.)*

Chú ý: said to → told

#### 2) Câu hỏi:

Động từ tường thuật thường là asked/wondered/wanted to know (hỏi/tự hỏi/muốn biết).

##### 2.1 Y/N:

Eg1: She asked me, "Do you like him?"

→ She asked me if I liked him.

*(Cô ấy hỏi tôi có thích anh ấy hay không.)*

Eg2: He said, "Can you speak English, Nam?"

→ He asked Nam whether he could speak English.

*(Anh ấy hỏi Nam có thể nói tiếng Anh không.)*



## 2.2 WH-:

Eg1: He said, "What is her name?"

→ He asked what her name was. (*Anh ấy hỏi tên cô ấy là gì.*)

Eg2: She said to him, "Where do you live?"

→ She asked him where he lived.

(*Cô ấy hỏi anh ấy sống ở đâu.*)

\* Chú ý trật tự của S và V:

Câu hỏi trực tiếp

→ Câu hỏi gián tiếp

- Y/N: "aux verb+ S+ V?"

→ if/whether + S + (aux verb) + V

- WH-: "WH-+ aux verb + S+ V?"

→ WH- + S + (aux verb) + V

\* said to → asked

## 3) Câu mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu, đề nghị, lời khuyên ...:

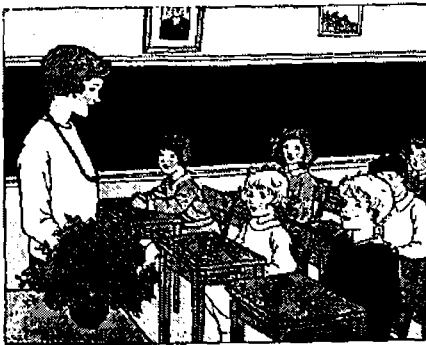
Động từ tường thuật thường là told/ asked/ ordered/ commanded, requested (bảo/yêu cầu/ra lệnh).

3.1 Khẳng định: S + asked/ told + O + to V-inf

Eg: The teacher said, "Go to the board, John."

→ The teacher told John to go to the board.

(*Thầy giáo gọi John lên bảng.*)



3.2 Phủ định: S + asked/ told + O + not to V-inf

Eg: Nam said to his friend, "Don't shut the door."

→ Nam asked his friend not to shut the door.

(*Nam bảo bạn anh ấy đừng đóng cửa.*)

#### 4) Câu cảm thán (Exclamation):

Câu cảm thán bắt đầu bằng **what + (a/an) ...!** hoặc **how + ...!** thường được thuật lại bằng động từ **exclaim/ say that**.

Eg: What a lovely garden!

→ She exclaimed/ said that it was a lovely garden.

Or She exclaimed/ said that the garden was lovely.

*(Cô ấy khen khu vườn đó thật đẹp.)*



## EXERCISES

---

### I. Report the sentences.

1. Mark: I'm taking my driving test tomorrow.

*Mark said he was taking his driving test the next day.*

2. Jane to Tom: You play very well.

---

3. Sue: I left school a year ago.

---

4. Charlie to Helen: I haven't seen Diana recently.

---

5. Rachel to us: You can come and stay at my flat if you are in London.

---

6. John to us: I don't know where Fred is.

---

7. Matthew: My car was stolen last week.

---

8. Judy: I want to go on holiday but I can't afford it.

---

9. Emma: I've only had the new computer since yesterday.

---

10. Sarah to me: I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you when I get back.

---

11. Mark to Sandra: We must finish this report.

---

12. Nick: I saw Helen at a party last night and. She seemed unwell.

---

13. Claire: I may go to Bali again.

---

14. Susan: It's the funniest show I've ever seen.

---

15. Tom to Susan: I woke up feeling ill, so I didn't go to work.

---

16. Judy: I work for a small publish company. I'm their marketing manager.

---

17. Mark: Ann might ring today.

---

18. Sandra: We have to stay home because it has been raining all evening.

---

19. Bill to Joanna: When I saw Sarah she was playing tennis.

---

20. Nick: I know the place well because I used to live here.

---

**II. Complete the replies. The second speaker is surprised at what he or she hears.**

1. A: Emma and I are getting married.

B: Really? But you said last week you weren't setting married.

2. A: I like pop music more than classical music.

B: I'm sure you told me \_\_\_\_\_ best.

3. A: I can speak a little Japanese.

B: Can you? I thought you said \_\_\_\_\_

4. A: I'm on a diet.

B: But you told me \_\_\_\_\_

5. A: I haven't finished my project.

B: Haven't you? I thought you said \_\_\_\_\_

6. A: I'm applying for the job.

B: I thought you told me \_\_\_\_\_

7. A: My sister enjoys parties.

B: Surely I remember you saying \_\_\_\_\_

8. A: I'll be here next week.

B: But you said yesterday \_\_\_\_\_

9. A: I had a job interview yesterday.

B: Did you? I thought you told me \_\_\_\_\_ two days before.

10. A: We haven't been to the cinema for ages.

B: Haven't you? I thought you said \_\_\_\_\_ last week.

**III. Write the reported sentence. Beginning He asked (me)/ wondered/ wanted to know.**

1. What's Peter's address?

He asked me what Peter's address was.

2. Do they like me?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Where do you live?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Have you got a driving licence?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. How does she know my name?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. When is the new manager coming?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Can you lend me some money?

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Why did you come back?

\_\_\_\_\_

9. Will I be ready in time?

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Do you have any plans for a holiday?

\_\_\_\_\_

11. What time is the meeting?

\_\_\_\_\_

12. How long have you been working in your present job?

\_\_\_\_\_

13. Did Susan come the party last night?

\_\_\_\_\_

14. Is there any food in the refrigerator?

\_\_\_\_\_

15. What are you doing now?

\_\_\_\_\_

16. Can I park here?

\_\_\_\_\_

17. Am I doing the right thing?

\_\_\_\_\_

18. Why did you apply for the job?

\_\_\_\_\_

19. What time do the banks close?

\_\_\_\_\_

20. Where has Tom gone?

\_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Choose one of these to complete each sentence below. Use reported speech.**

Don't wait for me if I'm late.

Stay in bed for a few days.

Can you open your bag, please?

Please slow down!

Don't touch the electric wires!

Don't worry. Sue.

Will you marry me?

Hurry up!

Would you like to stay for dinner, Claire?

Shall we join an poetry club?

Could you repeat what you said, please?

We'll pay for the damage.

Would you mind turning the music down?

Do you think you could give

Please don't tell anybody what happened.

me a hand, Tom?

1. Bill was taking a long time to get ready, so I told him to hurry up.

2. Sarah was driving too fast, so I asked \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Sue was pessimistic about the situation, so I told \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The foremen walked towards the children and warned \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I couldn't move the piano alone, so I asked \_\_\_\_\_.

6. The customs officer looked at me suspiciously and asked \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Jim knocked his neighbors' door and asked \_\_\_\_\_.

8. I had difficulty understanding him, so I told \_\_\_\_\_.

9. It was time for dinner, so I invited \_\_\_\_\_.

10. I didn't want to delay Ann, so I told \_\_\_\_\_.



11. John was very much in love with Mary, so he asked \_\_\_\_\_.
12. They apologized for the crash and offered \_\_\_\_\_.
13. We were going to take part in a poetry contest, so Susan suggested \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Ann wanted to keep a secret, so she asked \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The doctor made out a prescription for me, then he advised \_\_\_\_\_.

**V. Report the sentences. They were all spoken last week. Use the verbs in brackets.**

1. Laura: Can you move this table, please? (tell)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The police to us: The road were dangerous. (warn)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The builders: Everything will be ready on time. (promise)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The tourist: Which way is the post office? (ask)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Ann to Janet: Don't forget to sign the form! (remind)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Bernard to his wife: Have you seen my car keys? (wonder)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The policeman to Christ: Stop the car. (order)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Tessa: It was me. I ate all the cake yesterday. (admit)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Adrian: I'm sorry I was rude. (apologize)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Simon to Susan: Would you and Melanie like to come to my party? (invite)  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. The Prime Minister: The government had made the right decision. (claim)  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Tom: Why don't we go for a meal tonight? (suggest)  
\_\_\_\_\_

13. The doctor: You must take more exercise. (advise)

---

14. Mark: All right. I won't talk about football. (agree)

---

15. The nurse to the doctor: How did you know my name? (want to know)

---

16. The boss to his secretary: Would you mind not playing computer games in the office? (ask)

---

17. Peter: I really must leave. (insist)

---

18. Martin to Nancy: Did someone ring you an hour ago? (ask)

---

19. Jessica: We were thinking of selling the house but we have decided not to. (say)

---

20. Jack: I never eat vegetarian food. (explain)

---

**VI. Complete the sentences, using the information in the dialogue or the passage. Change the verbs to the suitable form as appropriate.**

1. *Joe asked me, 'Can we still get tickets to the game?'*

*I said, 'I've already bought them.'*

When Joe asked me if we \_\_\_\_\_ tickets to the game, I told him that \_\_\_\_\_ them.

2. *Mrs White said, 'Janice, you have to clean up your room and empty the dishwasher before you leave for the game.'*

*Janice said, 'Okay, Mom. I will.'*

Mrs White told Janice that \_\_\_\_\_ her room and empty the dishwasher before she \_\_\_\_\_ for the game. Janice promised her mom that \_\_\_\_\_.

3. *Joanne asked me, 'Do you know Dave Clark?'*

*Yes,' I replied. 'I've known him for many years. Why do you want to know?'*

Joanne asked me \_\_\_\_\_ Dave Clark. I replied that I \_\_\_\_\_ him for many years and asked her \_\_\_\_\_ to know.

4. *I asked Mary, 'Why do you still smoke?'*

*Mary replied, 'I've tried to quit many times, but I just don't seem to be able to.'*

When I asked Mary \_\_\_\_\_, she replied that she \_\_\_\_\_ many times, but she just \_\_\_\_\_ to be able to.

5. *The teacher asked. 'Bobby, what is the capital of Australia?'*

*Bobby replied, 'I'm not sure, but I think it's Sydney.'*

Yesterday in class, Bobby's teacher asked him \_\_\_\_\_. He answered that he \_\_\_\_\_ sure, but that he \_\_\_\_\_ Sydney.

6. *I told Jenny, 'It's pouring outside. You'd better take an umbrella.'*

*Jenny said, 'It'll stop soon. I don't need one.'*

I told Jenny that it \_\_\_\_\_ outside and that she \_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella. However, Jenny said she thought the rain \_\_\_\_\_ soon and that she \_\_\_\_\_ one.

7. *'Where are you going, Ann?' I asked.*

*'I'm on my way to the market,' she replied 'Do you want to go with me?'*

*'I'd like to, but I have to stay home. I have a lot of work to do.'*

*'Okay' Ann said. 'Is there anything I can pick up for you at the market?'*

*'How about a few bananas? And some apples if they're fresh?'*

*'Sure, I'd be happy to.'*

When I asked Ann \_\_\_\_\_, she said she \_\_\_\_\_ to the market and \_\_\_\_\_ with her. I said \_\_\_\_\_ to, but that I \_\_\_\_\_ home because I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of work to do. Ann kindly-asked me \_\_\_\_\_ for me at the market. I asked her to pick up a few bananas and some apples if they \_\_\_\_\_ fresh. She said \_\_\_\_\_.

8. *'Where are you from?' asked the passenger sitting next to me on the plane.*

*'Chicago,' I said.*

*'That's nice. I'm from Mapleton. It's a small town in northern Michigan. Have you heard of it?'*

*'Oh yes, I have,' I said. 'Michigan is a beautiful state. I've been there on vacation many times.' 'Were you in Michigan on vacation this year?'*

*'No. I went far away from home this year. I went to India,' I replied.*

*'Oh, that's nice. Is it a long drive from Chicago to India?' she asked me. My mouth fell open. I didn't know how to respond. Some people certainly need to study geography.*

The passenger sitting next to me on the plane \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ from. I \_\_\_\_\_ her I \_\_\_\_\_ from Chicago. She \_\_\_\_\_ that she \_\_\_\_\_ from Mapleton, a small town in northern Michigan. She wondered \_\_\_\_\_ of it, and I told her that I \_\_\_\_\_. I went on to say that I thought Michigan \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful state and explained that I \_\_\_\_\_ there on vacation many times. She \_\_\_\_\_ me in Michigan on vacation this year. I replied that I \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ her that I \_\_\_\_\_ far away, to India. Then she asked me \_\_\_\_\_ a long drive from Chicago to India! My mouth fell open. I didn't know how to respond. Some people certainly need to study geography.

9. *I asked Gary what sort of music he liked, and he told me that he had always liked jazz. In fact, he said he played in a jazz band called Sax Appeal. When I asked him where the band played, he told me they mainly played in small clubs. I asked him if he had ever played a Shakespearian role, and he told me that he had. He had played Othello in Stratford in 1989, and he enjoyed it very much. Finally, I asked him if he ever wanted to direct a play, and he told me that he hoped to one day, but he didn't know when it could happen because he was so busy acting.*

Interviewer: What sort of music \_\_\_\_\_, Gary?

Gary: I \_\_\_\_\_ jazz. In fact, \_\_\_\_\_ called Sax Appeal.

Interviewer: Where \_\_\_\_\_?

Gary: We \_\_\_\_\_.

Interviewer: \_\_\_\_\_ a Shakespearian role?

Gary: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ Othello in Stratford in 1989, \_\_\_\_\_ very much.

Interviewer: \_\_\_\_\_ direct a play?

Gary: \_\_\_\_\_ one day, but \_\_\_\_\_.

10. *I asked Celia Young why she had written another romantic novel. She said that she found romantic fiction easy to write, but that her next novel wouldn't be a romance. She was hoping to write something different, possibly a detective story. I told her that I was interested in the character of Felix, and I asked if he was anyone she knew from real life. Celia laughed and replied that she was glad that she didn't have a Felix in her life, and that she had been happily married for over fifteen years to Richard Marsh, the politician. I said that she had now written five novels, and I asked when she had started writing. She answered that she had written stories and poems all her life and that she would continue to write even when she was*

*an old lady. I thanked her for talking to me and said that I hoped that Hot Lips would be successful.*

Interviewer: \_\_\_\_\_ another romantic novel, Celia?

Celia: Well, \_\_\_\_\_ to write, but my next novel \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ something different, possibly a detective story.

Interviewer: \_\_\_\_\_ the character of Felix. \_\_\_\_\_ from real life?

Celia: No ... erm ... I'm glad I \_\_\_\_\_ in my life \_\_\_\_\_ for over fifteen years ... erm... to Richard Marsh, the politician.

Interviewer: You \_\_\_\_\_ five novels. When \_\_\_\_\_?

Celia: Well, \_\_\_\_\_ all my life and I \_\_\_\_\_ an old lady!

Interviewer \_\_\_\_\_ to me. I hope Hot Lips \_\_\_\_\_.

## VII. Choose the correct answer.

- Hello, Jim. I didn't expect to see you today. Solia said you \_\_\_\_\_ ill.  
a. are                      b. were                      c. was                      d. should be
- The last time I saw Jonathan, he looked very relaxed. He explained that he \_\_\_\_\_ on holiday the previous week.  
a. was                      b. has been                      c. would be                      d. had been
- I rang my friend in Australia yesterday, and she said it \_\_\_\_\_ there.  
a. is raining              b. rained                      c. was raining              d. would rain
- What did that man say \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. at you                      b. for you                      c. to you                      d. you
- Ann \_\_\_\_\_ and left.  
a. said goodbye to me                      b. said me goodbye  
c. told me goodbye                      d. goodbye me
- The librarian asked us \_\_\_\_\_ so much noise.  
a. don't make              b. not make                      c. not making                      d. not to make
- Someone \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets are free.  
a. said me                      b. said me that                      c. told to me                      d. told me
- I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets are on sale yet?  
a. whether                      b. what                      c. where                      d. when
- She asked me how long \_\_\_\_\_ in my present job.  
a. I had been working                      b. I have been working  
c. had I been working                      d. have I worked





**CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN**

**1) Ba loại câu điều kiện:**

*1.1 Loại một:*

Diễn tả điều kiện có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Eg: If it rains heavily, I will stay at home.

*(Nếu trời mưa to thì tôi sẽ ở nhà)*

*1.2 Loại hai:*

Diễn tả điều kiện không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Eg1: I would buy a new bicycle if I had enough money.

*(Nếu tôi có nhiều tiền thì tôi sẽ mua một chiếc xe đạp mới)*

Eg2: If I were a king, you would be a queen.

*(Nếu tôi là một vị vua thì bạn là hoàng hậu)*

*1.3 Loại ba:*

Diễn tả điều kiện không thể xảy ra ở quá khứ.

Eg: If John had worked harder, he wouldn't have failed his exam.

*(Sự thật là John đã không chăm chỉ và đã thi rớt.)*

**2) Tóm tắt công thức:**

Loại	IF CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
Loại 1:	V1(s/es)	will/can/may... + V
Loại 2:	V2/ed/WERE	would/could/should... + V
Loại 3:	had +V3/ed	would/could/should...+ have + V3/ed

**3) Những điểm cần lưu ý:**

*3.1 "If ... not" có thể được thay bằng "UNLESS" (trừ phi):*

Eg: We will be late if we don't hurry.

→ We will be late unless we hurry.

*(Chúng ta sẽ bị muộn nếu chúng ta không đi nhanh)*

Eg: If I have time, I can help you.

→ Unless I have time, I can't help you.

*(Nếu tôi có nhiều thời gian thì tôi có thể giúp bạn)*

3.2 Bỏ if trong 3 loại câu điều kiện (phải có đảo ngữ với should/ were/ had):

Eg: If it should be necessary, I will go.

→ Should it be necessary, I will go.

*(Nếu cần thiết thì tôi sẽ đi)*

Eg: If I were rich, I would buy a new car.

→ Were I rich, I would buy a new car.

*(Nếu tôi giàu thì tôi sẽ mua một chiếc ô tô mới)*

Eg: If you had asked me, I would have told you the answer.

→ Had you asked me, I would have told you the answer.

*(Nếu bạn hỏi tôi thì tôi đã nói cho bạn biết câu trả lời)*

3.3 Một số từ/cụm từ có thể thay cho if với nghĩa tương đương:

provided that/ so(as) long as (miễn là)/ in case (trong trường hợp)/ on condition that (với điều kiện)

Eg: You can borrow my book provided that you bring it back.

*(Bạn có thể mượn cuốn sách miễn là bạn trả nó lại cho tôi)*



## EXERCISES

---

### I. Put the verbs into the correct form.

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a wallet in the street, what would you do with it?
2. I must hurry. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ (be) annoyed if I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) on time.
3. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a bird, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ want) to live my whole life in a cage.
4. I didn't realize that Gary was in hospital. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (know) he was in hospital, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to visit him.
5. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (pour) oil on water, it \_\_\_\_\_ (float)
6. If the phone \_\_\_\_\_ (ring), can you answer it?
7. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) wings, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ have to) take an airplane to fly home.
8. Ken got to the station in time to catch his train. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) it, he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) late for his interview.
9. A: What shall we do tomorrow?  
B: Well, if it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a nice day, we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the beach.
10. A: You look tired.  
B: Well, if you \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ wake) me up in the middle of the night, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) tired.
11. This soup isn't very good. It \_\_\_\_\_ (taste) better if it \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) so salty.
12. Unfortunately, I didn't have my address book with me when I was in New York. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) your address, I \_\_\_\_\_ (send) you a postcard.
13. I think there are too many cars. If there \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) so many cars, there \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) so much pollution.
14. A: I think I left my watch at your house. Have you seen it?  
B: No, but I'll have a look. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (find) it, I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) you.
15. Mark and Carol are expecting us. They \_\_\_\_\_ (be) disappointed if we \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ come).
16. The accident was your fault. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) more carefully, it \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ happen).
17. A: Why do you read newspapers?  
B: Well, if I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ read) newspapers, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ know) what was happening in the world.

18. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (have) enough money to go any where in the world, where \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ go)?
19. This box has got to be in Chicago tomorrow. I'm sure if I \_\_\_\_\_ (send) it today by express mail, it \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) in time.
20. People \_\_\_\_\_ (be) able to fly if they \_\_\_\_\_ (have) feathers instead of hair.
21. Last night Alex ruined his sweater when he washed it. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (read) the label, he \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ wash) it in hot water.
22. A: Is Trevor a practical person?  
B: Trevor? No, he isn't. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) practical, he \_\_\_\_\_ (put) those shelves up a bit quicker. It took him ages.
23. A: United didn't play very well today.  
B: We were awful. But if Hacker \_\_\_\_\_ (take) that easy chance, we \_\_\_\_\_ (win).
24. A: Why are you sitting in the dark?  
B: Let's just say that if I \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) my electricity bill last month, I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ be) in the dark now.
25. A: Would you like a cup of coffee?  
B: No, thanks. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) coffee late at night, I \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep).

**II. Complete the conversation. Choose the correct form of the verbs.**

*Adam, is a music student. He rents a room from Mr Day.*

*Mr Day:* Can't you stop playing that trumpet? You're making an awful noise.

*Adam:* Well, if I (1) don't practise/didn't practise. I won't pass my exam.

*Mr Day:* But why at night? It's half past twelve. If you (2) played/ had played it in the daytime I (3) couldn't hear/couldn't have heard you because I'd be at work. If you (4) told/ had told me about this trumpet when you first came here, I (5) wouldn't let/ wouldn't have let you have the room. I'm afraid it's becoming a nuisance. If you (6) don't play/ didn't play so loud, it (7) may not be/ might not be so bad.

*Adam:* I'm sorry, but you can't play a trumpet quietly.

*Mr Day:* If I (8) realized/ had realized a year ago what you were going to do, then I (9) would throw/ would have thrown you out long ago. If you (10) go/ went on making this noise at night, I (11) will have/ would have to complain to your college.

**III. Write a sentence with "IF" for each situation.**

1. You should take more exercise because that's the way to get fit.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The accident happened because the driver in front stopped so suddenly.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. I haven't got a key, so I can't get in.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Throw a stone into water and it sinks.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. I didn't have any breakfast, and now I'm hungry.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Road travel is cheaper than rail travel in this country, so we have lots of traffic jams.

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Martin failed his driving test last week. He was very nervous and that's why he failed.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. You may want a chat, so just give me a ring.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. I didn't finish my report yesterday, so I can't begin a new project today.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. The wind is blowing hard, so I won't take the boat out for a ride.

\_\_\_\_\_

11. I'm sorry I disturbed you. I didn't know you were busy.

\_\_\_\_\_

12. It might rain. If it does, everyone can eat inside.

\_\_\_\_\_

13. We don't visit you very often because you live so far away.

\_\_\_\_\_

14. Margaret wasn't injured in the crash because she was wearing a seat belt.

\_\_\_\_\_

15. I have to work tomorrow evening, so I can't meet you.

\_\_\_\_\_

16. I don't know anything about plumbing, so I didn't fix the leak in the sink myself.

---

17. Is Matthew going to enter the race? He'll probably win it.

---

18. We should have bought that picture five years ago because it would be quite valuable now.

---

19. I feel better now because you talked to me about my problems last night.

---

20. Carol didn't answer the phone because she was studying.

---

**IV. Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use "UNLESS" in your sentence.**

1. You don't get there in time if you don't hurry.

---

2. We can't do the job if we don't get help.

---

3. You are allowed into the club only if you're members.

---

4. I don't like fish. I wouldn't eat it if I wasn't extremely hungry.

---

5. Don't leave the TV on if you aren't watching it.

---

6. The doctor will see you today only if it's an emergency.

---

7. I wouldn't have bought the picture if I didn't like it.

---

8. You can't get a driver's license if you're not at least eighteen years old.

---

9. I'm going to the party only if you go with me.

---

10. The dog will attack you only if you move suddenly.

---

**V. Make sentences with the same meaning by omitting "IF".**

1. If you should need more money, go to the bank before six o'clock.

---

2. If I were you, I wouldn't do that.

---

3. If they had realized the danger, they would have done it differently.

---

4. If I were your teacher, I would insist you do better work.

---

5. If you should change your mind, please let me know immediately.

---

6. She would have gotten the job if she had been better prepared.

---

7. Your boss sounds like a real tyrant. If I were you, I would look for another job.

---

8. If you should need to reach me, I'll be at the Hilton Hotel in Seoul.

---

9. I wouldn't have known about your new job if I hadn't talked to your mother.

---

10. If she were ever in trouble, I'd do anything I could to help her.

---

**VI. Choose the best correct word or expression for each sentence.**

1. Rachel will be pleased if/ unless she passes her driving test.

2. You can use my car unless/ as long as you drive carefully.

3. The bus won't stop unless/ providing you ring the bell.

4. You'd better take a coat if/ in case it gets cold.

5. Don't bother to ring me unless/ in case it's important.

6. Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless/ provided they are with an adult.
7. I'll make myself an omelette when/ if I get home tonight.
8. I don't mind if you come in late unless/ so long as you come in quietly.
9. You won't have to leave unless/ if you can pay your bill.
10. Write the name down in case/ provided you forget it.

**VII. Complete the following sentences with your own ideas.**

1. I like to walk to work in the morning unless \_\_\_\_\_
2. What would happen if I \_\_\_\_\_
3. You can borrow the money providing \_\_\_\_\_
4. Take a sandwich with you in case \_\_\_\_\_
5. You wouldn't have felt ill if you \_\_\_\_\_
6. If he had listened to my advice, he \_\_\_\_\_
7. You won't pass the exam unless \_\_\_\_\_
8. If you see Jane, \_\_\_\_\_
9. Were I your doctor \_\_\_\_\_
10. There would be less pollution if \_\_\_\_\_

**VIII. Choose the correct answer.**

1. If I were you, I \_\_\_\_\_ that coat. It's much too expensive.  
 a. won't buy      b. don't buy      c. wouldn't buy      d. didn't buy
2. If I could speak Spanish, I \_\_\_\_\_ next year studying in Mexico.  
 a. will spend      b. had spent  
 c. would have spent      d. would spend
3. It would have been a much more serious accident \_\_\_\_\_ fast at the time.  
 a. was she driving      b. she had driven  
 c. had she been driving      d. if she drove
4. 'Can I borrow your car this evening?' 'Sure, but Nora's using it right now. If she \_\_\_\_\_ it back in time. You're welcome to borrow it.'  
 a. brought      b. would ring      c. will bring      d. brings
5. If energy \_\_\_\_\_ inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.  
 a. is      b. will be      c. would be      d. were







- a. Do you have  
c. Should you have
- b. Had you  
d. You have
28. 'Why didn't Bill get the promotion he was expecting?' 'He may not be qualified. If he were, he \_\_\_\_\_ that promotion last year.'
- a. would have been given  
c. would be given
- b. was given  
d. had been given
29. Hurry! We've got to leave the house immediately. Otherwise, \_\_\_\_\_ the opening ceremony.
- a. we'd miss  
c. we miss
- b. we'd have missed  
d. we're going to miss
30. If everyone \_\_\_\_\_, how would we control air traffic? Surely, we'd all be crashed into each other.
- a. can fly      b. will fly      c. flies      d. could fly



I. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH (PHRASE AND CLAUSE OF PURPOSE)

A) Cụm từ chỉ mục đích

Để diễn đạt mục đích của hành động ta dùng

To	} + V
In order to	
So as to	

Eg: He went to France **to/in order to/ so as to** study French (dạng khẳng định)

Eg: He study hard **so as not to/ in order not to** fail the exam (dạng phủ định)

- **For + danh từ cũng dùng để diễn đạt mục đích**

Eg: I went to store for some bread = I went to store to buy some bread.

(Tôi đến cửa hàng mua ít bánh mì)

- **For + sb + to V**

Eg: I left the door unlocked for Harry to get in.

(Tôi không khóa cửa để cho Harry vào)

B) Mệnh đề chỉ mục đích

<i>so that</i>	<i>will/would</i>	
S + V	+ S + <i>can/could</i>	+ V
<i>In order that</i>	<i>may/might</i>	

Eg: I will study English in order that I can find a good job.

(Tôi học tiếng anh để có thể tìm một công việc tốt)

Eg: We moved to London so that we could visit our parents more often.

(Chúng tôi chuyển đến Luân Đôn, vì vậy chúng tôi có thể thăm bố mẹ tôi thường xuyên)

**Note:** Ta dùng **will/can/may** khi diễn tả mục đích ở **hiện tại**

Ta dùng **would/could/might** khi diễn tả mục đích ở **quá khứ**

## EXERCISES

---

I. Make a new sentence with a sentence from column A and a sentence from column B. Use "to", "in order to" or "so as to".

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. I hurried.  | I want to go abroad for a holiday.                       |
| 2. We took off our boots.                                      | We didn't want to get cold.                              |
| 3. I'm saving money.   | I wanted to report that my car had been stolen.          |
| 4. Lynn unplugged the phone.                                   | I didn't want to be late for the meeting.                |
| 5. I phoned to the police station.                             | I wanted to see the parade better.                       |
| 6. The staff are working at weekends.                          | We didn't want to make the floors dirty.                 |
| 7. I stood on tiptoes.   | She didn't want to be interrupted while she was working. |
| 8. Ali often writes down the time and date of his appointment. | They want to complete the project in time.               |
| 9. Tom turned on the radio.                                    | He wanted to hear the football results.                  |
| 10. We wore warm clothes.                                      | He doesn't want to forget to go.                         |

II. Combine the ideas, using a clause of purpose.

1. Rachel wanted to watch the news. She turned on the TV.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I'll post the card today. I want it to get there on Daniel's birthday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Please turn down the radio. I want to be able to get to sleep.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. She locked the door. She didn't want to be disturbed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I gave her my address. I wanted her to contact me.  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. I'm going to cash a check. I want to make sure that I have enough money to go shopping.

---

7. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.

---

8. I slowed down. I wanted the car behind to be able to overtake.

---

9. Jackson is planning to take a semester off. He wants to travel in Europe.

---

10. The man spoke very slowly. He wanted me to understand what he said.

---

11. I whispered. I didn't want anybody else to hear our conversation.

---

12. I'll give you a map. I want you to find the way all right.

---

13. Please be quiet. I want to be able to hear what Sharon is saying.

---

14. The little boy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay home from school.

---

15. I turned off the TV, I wanted my roommate to study in peace and quiet.

---

### **III. Change phrases of purpose to clauses of purpose or vice verbs.**

1. Melanie was hurrying in order not to miss her bus.

---

2. Ali borrowed an eraser so that he could erase a mistake in his composition.

---

3. Most people work to earn money.

---

4. I wish we had a garden for the children to play in.

---

5. She is learning English so that she can study in the United States.

---

6. The staff are working at weekends so as not to delay the project any further.

---

7. Can we stop for me to buy a newspaper?

---

8. We moved to London so that we could visit our parents more often.

---

9. We're having to borrow money in order to pay our bills.

---

10. I left the door open so that Harry could get in.

---

11. I'm going to be very careful so that I won't have an accident.

---

12. The government took these measures in order to reduce crime.

---

13. He wore glasses and false beard so that he wouldn't be recognized.

---

14. I lowered the volume on the TV set so as not to disturb my neighbors.

---

15. Yesterday I took my umbrella so that I wouldn't get wet.

---

**IV. Comment on what each person says. Use the words in brackets.**

1. Ilona: I'm learning English. I want to get a better job. (to)

*Ilona is learning English to get a better job.*

2. Claude: I study encyclopedias. Then I can answer quiz questions. (so that)

---

3. Vicky: I'm saving up. I'm planning a holiday. (for)

---

4. Nick: I keep a dog. It guards the house. (to)

---

5. Olivia: I booked a babysitter. I wanted to go out for the evening. (so that)

---

6. Jessica: I'm going on a diet. I want to lose weight. (in order to)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Trevor: I often switch off the heating. It saves money. (to)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Sarah: I had to go to Birmingham. I had a business meeting. (for)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Emma: I wore boots because I didn't want my feet to get wet. (so that)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Mark: I'm saving my money. I'm planning to travel in Europe next summer. (in order to)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**V. Complete the following sentences.**

1. I had to go to the post office to \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ so that she improves her English.
3. I gave her my telephone number so that \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ in order to see the World News.
5. I took the meat out of the freezer so that \_\_\_\_\_.
6. We may go to Canada for \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ so as not to be late for the meeting.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ so that you won't be lost.
9. I studied very hard in order that \_\_\_\_\_.
10. They put video cameras in shops in order to \_\_\_\_\_.

## II. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ (PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF RESULT):

### A. Cụm từ chỉ kết quả

#### 1. Too .... to (quá đến nỗi không thể)

**Too + adj/adv + to V**

Eg: He is too short to play basket ball.

(Anh ấy quá thấp đến nỗi không thể chơi bóng rổ.)

Eg: She speaks too fast to understand.

(Cô ấy nói tiếng anh quá nhanh đến nỗi không thể hiểu được.)



**Too much/ too many** thường dùng trước danh từ không đếm được/ đếm được:

Eg: There are too many people at the meeting.

(Có quá nhiều người trong cuộc họp.)

#### 2. Enough ... to V (đủ để có thể)

**Adj/adv + enough + to V**

Eg: Mary is old enough to do what she wants.

(Mary đã đủ tuổi để làm những việc cô ấy thích.)

Eg: He didn't jump high enough to win a prize.

(Anh ấy nhảy không đủ cao để có thể đoạt giải.)

**Enough** thường đứng trước danh từ: **Enough + noun + to V**

Eg: I have enough money to buy this book.

(Tôi có đủ tiền để mua cuốn sách này.)

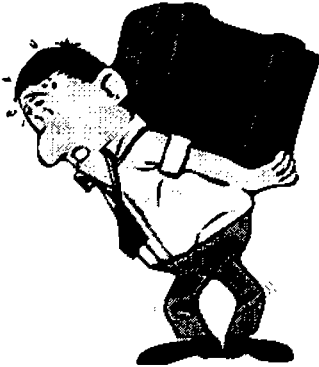
Note: Cụm từ với for có thể dùng sau too và enough

Too + adj/adv + for + N/pronoun (+ to V)

Adj/adv + enough + for + N/pronoun (+ to V)

Eg: The box is too weigh for me to lift.

(Chiếc hộp này quá nặng để tôi nhấc lên.)



## B. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả

1. So ... that (quá ...đến nỗi):

S + V + so + adj/adv + that + S + V

Main clause

Adv clause

Eg: It was so dark that I couldn't see anything.

(Trời quá tối đến nỗi tôi không thể nhìn thấy mọi thứ.)

Eg: She runs so quickly that I can't follow.

(Cô ấy chạy rất nhanh đến nỗi tôi không thể theo kịp.)





Khi tính từ là *much/many/little/few* thì có thể có danh từ theo sau

So many/few + plural noun + that  
So much/little + uncountable noun + that

Eg: She has so many children that she can't remember their dates of birth.

(*Bà ấy có quá nhiều con đến mức bà ấy không thể nhớ được ngày sinh của chúng.*)

Eg: I have so little money that I can't buy this pen.

(*Tôi có quá ít tiền đến mức tôi không thể mua chiếc bút này.*)

## 2. Such ... that (quá ... đến nỗi) (cấu trúc dùng với danh từ)

S + V + such + (a/an) + adj + Noun + that + S + V

Eg: They have such a big dog that no one dares to go near their house.

(*Họ có một con chó to đến mức không một ai đến gần nhà họ.*)

Eg: It is such a heavy box that he can't lift.

(*Chiếc hộp này quá nặng đến nỗi anh ấy không thể nhấc nổi.*)



## EXERCISES

---

I. Complete these sentences using “too”, “too many”, “too much” or “enough” with one of the following adjectives or nouns: *clearly, complicated, difficult, expensive, food, hastily, mistakes, rain, sweet, traffic.*

1. You should stop to think first. You always acted \_\_\_\_\_
2. This quiz is rather easy. The questions aren't \_\_\_\_\_
3. Can I have some more sugar in my coffee, please? It isn't \_\_\_\_\_
4. I can't afford a new stereo. It would be \_\_\_\_\_
5. There's a water shortage. There just hasn't been \_\_\_\_\_
6. I can't read your writing. You don't write \_\_\_\_\_
7. Try to be more careful, please. You're making \_\_\_\_\_
8. The roads are very crowded. There's simply \_\_\_\_\_
9. I can't understand these instructions. They're \_\_\_\_\_
10. Thousands of people are starving because they can't get \_\_\_\_\_

II. Complete the answers to the questions. Use “too” or “enough” with the word in brackets.

1. A: Is she going to get married?  
B: No, she's not \_\_\_\_\_. (old)
2. A: I need to talk to you about something.  
B: Well, I'm afraid I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to you now. (busy)
3. A: Let's go to the cinema.  
B: No, it's \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema. (late)
4. A: Why don't we sit in the garden?  
B: It's not \_\_\_\_\_ in the garden. (warm)
5. A: Would you like to be a politician?  
B: No, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a politician. (nice)
6. A: Do you want to play tennis today?  
B: No, I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ tennis today. (energy)
7. A: Did you hear what he was saying?  
B: No, we were \_\_\_\_\_ what he was saying. (far away)

8. A: Can he read a newspaper in English?  
B: No, he doesn't know \_\_\_\_\_ to read a newspaper. (English)
9. A: Why don't you put the wallet in your pocket?  
B: It's \_\_\_\_\_ in my pocket. (big)
10. A: I think you should apply for the job.  
B: I'm afraid I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_. (qualifications)

**III. Make one sentence from two. Use "too" or "enough" and a phrase with for or a to-infinitive.**

1. We couldn't eat the food. It was very hot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. A taxi would have been best. But I didn't have much money.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Sarah can't take a day off. She's very busy.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. A picnic would be nice. But it's wet.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Nobody could move the piano. It was very heavy.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. I don't wear this coat in winter. It isn't warm.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. All my guests will need chairs. But I haven't got very many.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I can't explain the situation. It's complicated.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Three people can't sit on this sofa. It isn't wide.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I couldn't carry the equipment. I had such a lot.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. We couldn't climb over the wall. It was very high.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Natasha wants to be a professional musician. She's very good.  
\_\_\_\_\_

13. We shouldn't swim in this river. The water isn't clean.

---

14. You can't see some things without a microscope. They are very small.

---

15. He didn't get the job. He wasn't experienced.

---

#### IV. Put in "so", "such" or "such a".

1. I like Tom and Ann. They're \_\_\_\_\_ nice people.
2. I was surprised that he looked \_\_\_\_\_ well after his recent illness.
3. The weather is lovely, isn't it? I didn't expect it to be \_\_\_\_\_ nice day.
4. He always looks good. He wears \_\_\_\_\_ nice clothes.
5. It was \_\_\_\_\_ boring film that I fell asleep.
6. The children had \_\_\_\_\_ much fun at the carnival that they begged to go again.
7. The food at the hotel was awful. I've never eaten \_\_\_\_\_ awful food.
8. The test was \_\_\_\_\_ easy that everyone got a high score.
9. I didn't realize you lived \_\_\_\_\_ long way from the city center.
10. I feel like I have \_\_\_\_\_ little energy that I wonder if I'm getting sick.
11. They are \_\_\_\_\_ hard-working carpenters that I'm sure they'll make success of their new business.
12. He's difficult to understand because he speaks \_\_\_\_\_ quickly.
13. She made \_\_\_\_\_ many mistakes that she failed the exam.
14. I can't decide what to do. It's \_\_\_\_\_ problem.
15. A: Sorry I'm \_\_\_\_\_ late. We had \_\_\_\_\_ lot to do at work. My boss gets in \_\_\_\_\_ a panic about things. She makes \_\_\_\_\_ big fuss.  
B: You shouldn't do \_\_\_\_\_ much. You shouldn't be \_\_\_\_\_ willing to work \_\_\_\_\_ long hours. No wonder you're \_\_\_\_\_ tired. You'll make yourself ill, you know.

**V. Combine the sentences using so ... that.**

1. The weather was hot. You could fry an egg on the sidewalk.

---

2. I couldn't understand her. She talked too fast.

---

3. Grandpa held me tightly when he hugged me. I couldn't breathe for a moment.

---

4. There were few people at the meeting. It was cancelled.

---

5. Ted couldn't get to sleep last night. He was worried about the exam.

---

6. Jerry got angry. He put his fist through the wall.

---

7. I have many problems. I can use all the help you can give me.

---

8. I can't figure out what this sentence says. His handwriting is illegible.

---

9. It took us only ten minutes to get there. There was little traffic.

---

10. Too many people came to the meeting. There were not enough seats for everyone.

---

**VI. Combine the sentences using "such ... that".**

1. We took a walk. It was a nice day.

---

2. It was an expensive car. We couldn't afford to buy it.

---

3. I don't feel like going to class. We're having beautiful weather.

---

4. The classroom has comfortable chairs. The students find it easy to fall asleep.
- 
5. The tornado struck with great force. It lifted automobiles off the ground.
- 
6. This is good coffee. I think I'll have another cup.
- 
7. Karen is a good pianist. I'm surprised she didn't go into music professionally.
- 
8. It was a good book. I couldn't put it down.
- 
9. We did a lot of gymnastics. We couldn't walk afterwards.
- 
10. They were beautiful flowers. We took a photograph of them.
- 

**VII. Match the sentences and combine them, using "so" or "such".**

A	B
1. Sarah was late home.	- All the tickets sold out.
2. Mike hadn't cooked for a long time.	- He wouldn't speak to anyone.
3. The piano was heavy.	- He'd almost forgotten how to.
4. Tom was annoyed about United losing.	- It kept all the neighbors awake.
5. The band was a big attraction.	- Mark had already gone to bed.
6. Vicky had a lot of work to do.	- You could hear it from miles away.
7. The party made a lot of noise.	- We spent the whole day indoors.
8. She speaks English well	- Mike and Harriet couldn't move it.
9. It was horrible weather.	- She was sure she'd never finish it.
10. The music was loud.	- You would think it was her native language.

**VIII. Use your own ideas to complete the sentences.**

1. The exam was so difficult that \_\_\_\_\_
2. I was so tired that \_\_\_\_\_
3. They've got so much money that \_\_\_\_\_
4. My father is such a busy man that \_\_\_\_\_
5. It was such lovely weather that \_\_\_\_\_
6. He spoke so quickly that \_\_\_\_\_
7. We had such a good time on holiday that \_\_\_\_\_
8. I've got so many things to do that \_\_\_\_\_
9. These shoes are so expensive that \_\_\_\_\_
10. It was such an extraordinary story that \_\_\_\_\_

### III. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN HAY LÝ DO (PHRASE AND CLAUSE OF CAUSE OR REASON)

#### A. Cụm từ chỉ lý do

because of, due to, owing to

because of	+ noun / noun phrase /
due to	gerund phrase
owing to	

Eg: We didn't go out because of the cold weather.

*(Chúng tôi không ra ngoài vì thời tiết lạnh)*

Eg: Owing to his carelessness we had an accident.

*(Bởi vì tính bất cẩn của anh ấy nên anh ấy đã gây tai nạn)*

#### B. Mệnh đề chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do

because	
since	+ S + V
as	

Eg: He came late because he missed the bus.

*(Anh ấy đến muộn vì anh ấy bị lỡ xe buýt)*

Note: **because** dùng để đưa nguyên nhân, lý do người nghe chưa biết

**Since/ as** thường dùng khi người nghe đã biết nguyên nhân



## EXERCISES

### I. Complete the sentences with either "because" or "because of".

1. We delayed our trip \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.
2. Sue's eyes were red \_\_\_\_\_ she had been crying.
3. My mother is always complaining \_\_\_\_\_ the untidiness of my room.
4. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink \_\_\_\_\_ it's polluted.
5. The trees were bend over \_\_\_\_\_ the wind.
6. You can't enter this secure area \_\_\_\_\_ you don't have an official permit.
7. It's unsafe to travel in that country \_\_\_\_\_ the ongoing civil war.
8. Several people in the crowd became ill and fainted \_\_\_\_\_ the extreme heat.
9. Mark didn't go to work yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't feel well.
10. We couldn't get into the disco \_\_\_\_\_ the enormous crowd.

### II. Match the two halves of the sentence. Then write the full sentence, using the word in brackets. Add commas where necessary.

#### A

1. Yesterday was a public day
2. We didn't want to wake anybody up
3. We didn't know what time it was
4. It was a nice day
5. The door was open
6. You paid for the theater tickets
7. Oil is an irreplaceable natural resource
8. We didn't see Lisa for a long time
9. Lilian was late for work

#### B

- she was very popular, (since)
- we ate out. (as)
- it explains everything very clearly, (because)
- none of us had a watch, (because)
- the teacher decided to give it again, (since)
- she missed the bus. (because)
- we went for a walk by the sea. (as)
- we didn't recognize her. (because)
- we must do whatever we can to conserve it. (since)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 10. Sonia was tired                                 | - we came in very quietly. (as)              |
| 11. Eve had an attractive personality               | - she felt weak. (because)                   |
| 12. Mother had burnt the dinner                     | - we didn't have to go to work. (since)      |
| 13. It's a really useful book                       | - please let me pay for our dinner.<br>(as)  |
| 14. Ellie hadn't fully recovered yet                | - she'd been working very hard.<br>(because) |
| 15. All the students had done poorly<br>on the test | - I walked in. (since)                       |

**III. Rewrite these sentences, using "because".**

- Due to the cold weather, we stayed home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Most people hear jogging is a good exercise, so they begin to jog.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- People like to live in this country because of its healthy climate.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- A computer can be used for various purposes, so it becomes very popular nowadays.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Stacey retired in 1987, partly because of ill health.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- We were late for the meeting due to the heavy traffic.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Harry had to stay in hospital because of his broken leg.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Our leader couldn't attend the meeting, so it was cancelled.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The young couple decided not to buy the house because of its dilapidated condition.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I always enjoyed mathematics in high school, so I decided to major in it in college.  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### IV. Change clauses of reason to phrases of reason.

1. Jim had to give up jogging because he had sprained his ankle severely.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink because it's polluted.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. We had to stay in London an extra day because it was foggy at the airport.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning because his wife is ill.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. We all have received the best of everything because our parents are generous.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. I couldn't get to sleep last night because it was noisy in the next apartment.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. John has to sit in the front row in class because he has poor eyesight.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. We stopped our car because the traffic lights turned red.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. She couldn't see the road because the wall was too high.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. We postponed our trip because the driving conditions were bad.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Sarah will not walk across a bridge because she's afraid of heights.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Mark's doctor has advised him to exercise regularly because he is overweight.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Piranhas can devour an entire cow in several minutes because their teeth are extremely sharp.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Most students couldn't do the final exam because it was extremely difficult.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. John succeeded in his exam because he worked hard and methodically.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## IV. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ TƯƠNG PHẢN – NHƯỢNG BỘ (PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CONCESSION)

### 1. Cụm từ chỉ tương phản

inspite of/ despite:

In spite of + noun / noun phrase/ gerund phrase  
Despite

Eg: I wasn't tired in spite of working hard all day.

(Mặc dù tôi đã làm việc vất vả cả ngày nhưng tôi không thấy mệt.)

Eg: Despite the danger, he reported on the war.

(Mặc dù nguy hiểm nhưng anh ấy vẫn viết bài trong cuộc chiến tranh.)

### B. Mệnh đề chỉ tương phản

#### 1. Though/although/even though

Although  
Though + S + V  
Even though

Eg: Although the weather was bad, we had a wonderful holiday.

(Mặc dù thời tiết xấu nhưng chúng tôi vẫn có một kì nghỉ tuyệt vời.)

Eg: Even though I don't love her, I try my best to help her.

(Mặc dù tôi không yêu cô ấy nhưng tôi vẫn cố gắng hết sức để giúp cô ấy.)

#### 2. No matter, whatever:

No matter + what/who/when/where/why/how (adj/adv) + S + V  
Whatever (+ noun)/ whoever/wherever/whenever/however (+adj) + S + V

Eg: No matter who you are, I still love you.

(Dù bạn là ai thì tôi vẫn yêu bạn.)

Eg: Whatever he says, I don't believe him.

(Dù anh ấy nói gì thì tôi cũng không tin.)

## EXERCISES

---

### I. Complete the sentences with *although/ in spite of/ because/ because of*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
2. Daniel forgot his passport \_\_\_\_\_ having it in his list.
3. I couldn't get to sleep \_\_\_\_\_ the noise.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ I had nothing for lunch but an apple, I ate dinner early.
5. A lot of things went wrong \_\_\_\_\_ all our careful plans.
6. She wasn't wearing a coat \_\_\_\_\_ it was quite cold.
7. He only accepted the job \_\_\_\_\_ the salary, which was very high.
8. I went home early \_\_\_\_\_ I was feeling unwell.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ I knew the truth, I decided not to tell them.
10. The villagers refused to leave \_\_\_\_\_ the drought.
11. We decided not to go out for a meal \_\_\_\_\_ we were simply too tired.
12. Have you really got no money \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that you've had a job?
13. Sarah can't climb up the tree \_\_\_\_\_ her fear of heights.
14. Matthew looked quite fresh, \_\_\_\_\_ he'd been playing squash.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ his age, John was not hired \_\_\_\_\_ he had the necessary qualifications.

### II. Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences.

1. I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (in spite of)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other. (despite)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. My foot was injured. I managed to walk to the nearest village. (although)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. They have very little money. They are happy. (in spite of)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. I got very wet in the rain. I had an umbrella. (even though)  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. I couldn't sleep. I was tired. (despite)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. He liked the sweater. He decided not to buy it. (though)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I didn't get the job. I had all the necessary qualifications. (in spite of)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Nick used to smoke. He seems to be in good health. (although)  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. I had turned on the air conditioner. It was still hot in the room. (even though)  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Laura wants to fly. She feels afraid. (in spite of the fact)  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Trevor didn't notice the sign. It was right in front of him. (even though)  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. I'm no better. I've taken the pills. (despite the fact)  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. Matthew doesn't know any French. It was one of his school subjects. (though)  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Henry's friend is a millionaire. He hates spending money. (despite)  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. We couldn't get tickets. We queued for an hour. (in spite of)  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. I'd met her twice before. I didn't recognize her. (although)  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. Laura felt unwell. She went on working. (in spite of this)  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. I told the absolute truth. No one would believe me. (even though)  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. The goods were never delivered. We had received the promise. (despite)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**III. Complete the sentences. Use *in spite of/ despite and even though/although/ though* + a phrase or a sentence from the box.**

its inherent dangers

it has been shown to be safe

I had never seen her before

his fear of heights

If was sunny

its many benefits

not playing very well

the low salary

her grades were low

he has a very important job

1. \_\_\_\_\_, he isn't particularly well-paid.
2. Nuclear energy is a clean and potentially inexhaustible source of energy  
\_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_, it was quite a cold day.
4. \_\_\_\_\_, the use of chemotherapy to treat cancer  
has many severe side effects.
5. Many people avoid using a microwave oven for fear of its rays  
\_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_, I recognized her from a photograph.
7. Mark accepted the job \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ she was admitted to the university.
9. \_\_\_\_\_, Carl enjoyed his helicopter trip over the  
Grand Canyon in Arizona.
10. United were 1-0 winners \_\_\_\_\_.

**IV. Change clauses of concession to phrases.**

1. Mr. Pike doesn't wear glasses though he is over sixty.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Although he had much experience in machinery, he didn't succeed in  
repairing this machine.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Although it got dark, they continued to work.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Although it was noisy, I kept on studying.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. Although it rained heavily, I went to school on time.

---

6. Although he is strong, I'm not afraid of him.

---

7. Everybody has great regard for him though he is poor.

---

8. Although he had not finished the paper, he went to sleep.

---

9. Though he had been absent frequently, he was managed to pass the test.

---

10. He didn't stop his car though the traffic lights turned red.

---

**V. Rewrite the sentences, using the word in brackets.**

1. They are very rich, but they aren't happy. (no matter)

---

2. I'd rather have a room of my own though it's small. (however)

---

3. He got good jobs, but he was not satisfied. (no matter)

---

4. If you should do any job, you should do it devotedly. (whatever)

---

5. Anyone who gains the most points wins the competition. (whoever)

---

6. Although he had taken any kinds of exercise, he got fatter and fatter.  
(whatever)

---

7. Although he lived anywhere else, he always thought of his homeland. (no  
matter)

---

8. My roof leaks every time it rains. (whenever)

---



9. He may say something, but don't trust him. (no matter)
- 
10. You should study hard although you encounter difficulties. (whatever)
- 
11. Although she is very intelligent, she can't answer my question. (no matter)
- 
12. She would still love him even though he behaved very badly. (however)
- 
13. Although the papers print any nonsense, some people always believe it.  
(whatever)
- 
14. I'll find him, wherever he has gone. (no matter)
- 
15. Phone me when you arrive, no matter how late it is. (however)
-

## V. MỆNH ĐỀ SAU “AS IF”, “AS THOUGH”, “IT’S (HIGH) TIME”, “WOULD RATHER”:

### 1. As if/ as though:

A) Diễn tả điều không có thật ở hiện tại ( không thể xảy ra ở hiện tại)

**S + V + as if/ as though + S + VED**

Eg: He talks as if he were a king. (Anh ấy nói như thể anh ấy là vua)

Eg: She orders me as though she were my mother.

(Cô ấy ra lệnh cho tôi như thể cô ấy là mẹ của tôi)

B) Diễn tả điều không có thật ở quá khứ ( không thể xảy ra ở quá khứ)

**S + Ved + as if/ as though + S + had + P2**

Eg: He looked as if he had seen a ghost.

(Anh ấy nhìn tôi cứ như là anh ấy nhìn thấy một con ma)

### 2. It's (high) time

A) It's time dùng với động từ nguyên thể

**It's time + (for sb) + to V**

Eg: It's time to go to school. (Đã đến lúc đi học rồi)

B) It's time dùng với mệnh đề

**It's time + S + Ved**

Eg: It's time you went to school. (Đã đến lúc bạn phải đi học rồi)

### 3. Would rather

Với câu có một chủ ngữ (Would rather = thích làm gì...hơn)

A) Ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai:

**S + would rather (+not) + V (+than + V)**

Eg: I would rather stay at home than go to school.

(Tôi thích ở nhà hơn là đến trường)

Eg: She would rather not go out this evening.

(Tôi không thích đi chơi vào tối nay)

**B) Ở quá khứ**

S + would rather (+not) + have P2 (+than)

Eg: I would rather have gone to cinema last week.

(Tôi muốn đến rạp chiếu phim vào tuần trước)

Với câu có 2 chủ ngữ (mong muốn người khác làm gì)

**\* Ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai**

S + would rather (that) + S + Ved

Eg: I would rather you went home now.

(Bây giờ tôi muốn bạn đến nhà tôi)

**Note:** were có thể thay cho was với ngôi **he, she, it**

**\* Ở quá khứ**

S + would rather (that) + S + past perfect

She would rather they hadn't left home yesterday.

(Cô ấy không muốn họ ra về ngày hôm qua)

**Note:** trong trường hợp này người ta thường dùng **wish**

She would rather they hadn't left home yesterday.

= She wishes they hadn't left home yesterday.

## EXERCISES

---

### 1. Use the sentences in the box to make sentences with "as if".

it has just been cut

he hadn't eaten for a week

it never gets fed

I'm going to be sick

she was enjoying it

she didn't want to come

he's been up all night

he meant what he was saying

they're going to get married

someone has been smoking here

1. Carol had a bored expression on her face during the concert. She didn't look \_\_\_\_\_
2. I don't think he was joking. He looked \_\_\_\_\_
3. The grass is very short. It looks \_\_\_\_\_
4. That poor dog looks \_\_\_\_\_
5. I've just eaten too many chocolates. Now I'm feeling ill.  
I feel \_\_\_\_\_
6. I phoned Emma and invited her to the party but she wasn't very enthusiastic about it. She sounded \_\_\_\_\_
7. Tom looks really awful. He looks \_\_\_\_\_
8. Peter was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly.  
He ate \_\_\_\_\_
9. From what Emma said, it sounds \_\_\_\_\_
10. Do you smell something burning? It smells \_\_\_\_\_

### II. Complete the sentences with *as if* / *as though*.

1. Tim isn't the boss but he acts \_\_\_\_\_ the boss.
2. The hole in my shirt wasn't made by a bullet, but it looks \_\_\_\_\_ by a bullet.
3. Barbara has met me many times before, but she looked at me \_\_\_\_\_ never me before.
4. I'm 20 years old, so please don't talk to me \_\_\_\_\_ a child.

5. She heard everything I said, but she went right on talking \_\_\_\_\_ a word I'd said.
6. Mark has many friends, but he looks so depressed \_\_\_\_\_ a friend in the World.
7. It was a long time ago that we first met but I remember it \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
8. Steve has only met Nicole once but he talks about her \_\_\_\_\_ a close friend.
9. When Joanna came in from the rainstorm, she looked \_\_\_\_\_ a shower with her clothes on.
10. She will be here, but she spoke \_\_\_\_\_ here.

**III. Read the situation and write sentences with: It's time + clause (somebody did something).**

1. You think the children should be in bed. It's already 11 o'clock.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. You haven't had a holiday for a very long time. You need one now.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. You're waiting for Mary. She is late. Why isn't she here yet?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. You're sitting on a train waiting for it to leave the station. It's already five minutes late.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. You enjoy having parties. You haven't had one for a long time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The company you work for is badly run. You think there should be some changes.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. It's 10 o'clock and Tim is still in bed. You think he should get up now.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. You want your parents to stop treating Tommy like a child. He's 18 years old.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. You and your friends enjoy the picnic. But it's too late. You must go home immediately.

---

10. The windows are very dirty. You think they should be cleaned now.

---

**IV. Complete the sentences with the suggestions in the list.**

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| be an engineer   | study Chinese   |
| not go out       | stay home   |
| lie on the beach | not tell you  |
| go to an opera   | go out with their friends... stay home with their parents |

1. I went to the movies last night. I prefer opera to movies. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I studied French when I was in high school only because my parents wanted me to. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Jack's parents want him to become a doctor, but he'd rather \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I know you want to know, but I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_. I told Marge that I'd keep it a secret.
5. Sometimes teenagers would rather \_\_\_\_\_ than \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I would rather \_\_\_\_\_ right after dinner at the restaurant last night, but my friends insisted on going to the cinema.
7. Tonight, I'd really rather \_\_\_\_\_ I want to get a good night's sleep for the first time all week.
8. I don't want to do anything energetic. I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_.

**V. Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.**

1. A: Shall I tell Ann the news?  
B: No, I'd rather she \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I'd like to see you again, but I'm busy tomorrow. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend.
3. I'd rather we \_\_\_\_\_ that horror film - I had a nightmare that night.
4. A: I told her a few facts about herself.

B: Oh dear! I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ that. That might have been upset her a lot.

5. This is a private letter addressed to me. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ it.

6. It's quite a nice house but I'd rather it \_\_\_\_\_ a bit bigger.

7. A: Do you mind if I turn on the radio?

B: I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_. I'm trying to study.

8. Mary left my party very early last night. I'd rather she \_\_\_\_\_ so early.

9. It's a secret - I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ anyone what I said.

10. A: I'm sorry I didn't come yesterday.

B: Yesterday's difficult. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_.

#### VI. Choose the correct answer.

1. John would rather \_\_\_\_\_ free tomorrow.

- a. is                      b. was                      c. be                      d. will be

2. I would rather he \_\_\_\_\_ her to his birthday party last Sunday.

- a. have invited      b. had invited              c. invited              d. would invite

3. We'd better take an umbrella with us because it looks as if it \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. is going to rain                      b. would rain  
c. is raining                              d. rained

4. It's time we all \_\_\_\_\_ now.

- a. had gone              b. go                      c. should go              d. went

5. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ the tea ready.

- a. have got              b. got                      c. get                      d. had got

6. I don't like Nick. He talks as if he \_\_\_\_\_ everything.

- a. knew                      b. had known              c. knows                      d. will know

7. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ me now.

- a. had paid              b. is paying              c. paid                      d. pay

8. You're very selfish. It's high time you \_\_\_\_\_ that you're not the most important person in the world.

- a. realize                      b. had realized              c. have realized              d. realized

9. When I told them my plan, they looked at me as if I \_\_\_\_\_ mad.  
 a. was                      b. am                      c. had been              d. will be
10. Jack spent his money as if he \_\_\_\_\_ a lottery.  
 a. won                      b. had won              c. has won              d. wins
11. Peter would rather \_\_\_\_\_ on a mattress than on the floor.  
 a. to sleep              b. sleeping              c. sleep              d. have slept
12. The medicine made me feel dizzy. I felt as though the room \_\_\_\_\_ around and around.  
 a. were spinning      b. will spin              c. spins              d. is spinning
13. It's time for everybody \_\_\_\_\_ to bed.  
 a. go                      b. to go                      c. goes                      d. went
14. Did you go to the concert last night? ~ Yes, but I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ to the concert.  
 a. not go              b. haven't gone              c. not have gone      d. not had gone
15. It was so quiet that it seemed as if the earth \_\_\_\_\_  
 a. had stopped                      b. would stop  
 c. stopped                      d. had been stopped

**VII. Write the sentences, beginning with the words given.**

1. I wasn't run over by a ten-ton truck.  
 I feel terrible. I feel as if \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I like to eat at home better than to go to the restaurant.  
 I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I'd rather to go to the concert tonight.  
 I'd prefer \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He spent his money like a billionaire.  
 He spent his money as if \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We must go home now, it's a little late.  
 It's high time \_\_\_\_\_.
6. You should review your lessons for the exams.  
 It's time you \_\_\_\_\_.



7. English is not her native tongue.  
She speaks English as if \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I want you to stop fighting.  
I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
9. They didn't tell me the truth.  
I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I want him to come to my house tonight.  
I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_.

## VI. MỆNH ĐỀ DANH TỪ (NOUN CLAUSES)

Mệnh đề danh từ (noun clause) là một mệnh đề phụ có chức năng của một danh từ. Mệnh đề danh từ thường được bắt đầu bằng *that* và các từ nghi vấn như: *who, whose, what, which, where, when, why, how* hoặc *whether/ if*  
Chức năng của mệnh đề danh từ:

### 1. Chủ ngữ (subject):

Eg: **That Tom can't come** is disappointing. / It's disappointing **that Tom can't come.**

(*Thật thất vọng khi Tom không thể đến.*)

How the prisoner escaped is a mystery.

(*Tội phạm đó trốn tù bằng cách nào vẫn còn là một bí ẩn.*)

### 2. Tân ngữ của động từ (object of a verb)

Eg: I know **that you must be tired after a long journey.**

(*Tôi biết bạn chắc chắn bị mệt sau một chuyến đi dài.*)



### 3. Tân ngữ cho giới từ (object of a preposition)

Eg: We argued for hours about **when we should start.**

(*Chúng tôi mất vài giờ để tranh luận khi nào chúng tôi xuất phát.*)

### 4. Bổ ngữ cho câu (complement of a sentence)

Eg: What surprises me was **that he spoke English so well.**

(*Điều làm tôi ngạc nhiên là anh ấy nói tiếng anh rất giỏi.*)

### 5. Mệnh đề đồng cách cho danh từ (in apposition to a noun)

Eg: The news **that we are having a holiday tomorrow** is not true.

(*Thông tin về chuyện chúng tôi sẽ có kì nghỉ vào ngày mai là không đúng.*)

### **Lưu ý:**

- Có thể bỏ từ nối **that** trong mệnh đề (that – clause) khi mệnh đề danh từ làm tân ngữ trong câu. Nhưng không được bỏ **that** khi mệnh đề danh từ làm chủ ngữ.

Eg: We know **(that) the world is round.**

*(Chúng ta đều biết rằng trái đất có hình cầu.)*

Eg: **That she doesn't understand spoken English** is obvious.

*(Việc cô ấy không hiểu người nói tiếng anh là điều rõ ràng.)*

- Trong mệnh đề danh từ, chủ ngữ đứng trước động từ. Không dùng trật tự từ của câu nghi vấn trong mệnh đề danh từ.

Eg: I couldn't hear **what he said.**

~~Eg: I couldn't hear **what did he say.**~~

*(Tôi không thể nghe những gì anh ấy nói.)*

## EXERCISES

I. Complete each sentence by changing the question in parentheses to a noun clause.

1. (Will it rain?) I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.
2. (Where did she go?) \_\_\_\_\_ is none of your business.
3. (How far is it from New York to Jakarta?) I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (Which one does he want?) Let's ask him \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (Who is coming to the party?) I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (Has Susan ever been in Portugal?) I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.
7. (How many letters are there in the English alphabet?)  
I don't remember \_\_\_\_\_.
8. (Why did they leave the country?) \_\_\_\_\_ is a secret.
9. (Can birds communicate with each other?) Do you know \_\_\_\_\_.
10. (How much does it cost?) I can't remember \_\_\_\_\_.

II. Choose the correct answers.

1. I don't know how many \_\_\_\_\_, but it sounds like they have a dozen.  
a. children do they have                      b. children they have  
c. do they have children                      d. they have children
2. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_? I myself have no idea.  
a. how many years the earth is              b. how long is the earth  
c. how old the earth is                      d. how old is the earth
3. There's too much noise in this room. I can't understand what \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. is the professor saying                      b. that the professor is saying  
c. is saying the professor                      d. the professor is saying
4. "Is it true that you fell asleep in class yesterday?"  
"Unfortunately, yes \_\_\_\_\_ is unbelievable! I'm very embarrassed.  
a. That I could do such a thing it              b. I could do such a thing it  
c. That I could do such a thing                      d. I could do such a thing
5. Is it true \_\_\_\_\_ the law says there is no smoking in restaurants in this city?  
a. that what              b. what              c. if              d. that

6. 'What are you going to buy in this store?' 'Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ want is much too expensive.  
 a. That I                    b. What I                    c. That what I            d. What do I
7. Does anybody know \_\_\_\_\_ on the ground?  
 a. how long this plane will be                    b. how long will this plane be  
 c. how long will be this plane                    d. that how long this plane will be
8. Did you remember to tell Marge \_\_\_\_\_ she should bring to the meeting tomorrow?  
 a. that                    b. what                    c. if                    d. that what
9. \_\_\_\_\_ saying was so important that I asked everyone to stop talking and listen.  
 a. What the woman was                    b. That the woman was  
 c. The woman was                    d. What was the woman
10. Somebody forgot this bag. - I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. whose is this bag                    b. whose bag is  
 c. whose bag this is                    d. is this whose bag

## VII. MỆNH ĐỀ SAU “WISH” VÀ “IF ONLY”

Câu ao ước: **WISH (ước)/ IF ONLY (giá mà)**

1) Không có thật ở hiện tại: V2/ed/ were

Eg: I wish Peter were here now. (He isn't here now.)

(Tôi ước bây giờ Peter có ở đây.)

Eg: If only I had more money.

(Giá mà tôi có nhiều tiền hơn.)



2) Không có thật ở tương lai: would + Verb

Eg: She wishes Tom would be here tomorrow.

(Cô ấy ước ngày mai Tom sẽ đến đây.)

Eg: If only Tom would be here tomorrow.

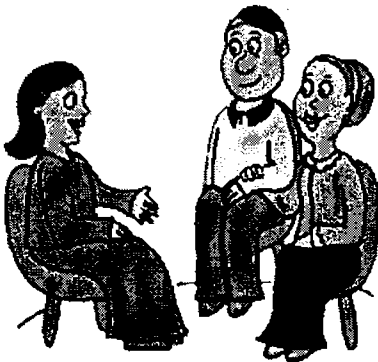
3) Không có thật ở quá khứ: had + V3/ed

Eg: We wish she had passed her exam last year.

(Chúng tôi ước cô ấy đỗ kì thi năm ngoái)

Eg: If only you hadn't told Peter about our plan.

(Giá mà bạn không nói với Peter về kế hoạch của chúng ta.)



## EXERCISES

---

### I. Complete the sentences with an appropriate verb form.

1. Our classroom doesn't have any window. I wish our classroom \_\_\_\_\_ windows.
2. The sun isn't shining. I wish the sun \_\_\_\_\_ right now.
3. I didn't go shopping. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ shopping.
4. I can't swim. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ so I would feel safe in the boat.
5. I don't know how to dance. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ how to dance.
6. I live in the country. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ in a big city.
7. You didn't tell them about it. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ them about it.
8. It's cold today. I'm not wearing a coat. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ a coat.
9. I don't have enough money to buy that book. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ enough money.
10. It's raining and I want it to stop. I wish it \_\_\_\_\_ raining.
11. Elena is tired because she went to bed late last night. She wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ to bed earlier last night.
12. Ann has a beautiful voice, so I want her to sing. I wish Ann \_\_\_\_\_ a couple of songs.
13. I'm not lying on the beach in Hawaii. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ on a beach in Hawaii.
14. The teacher is going to give an exam tomorrow. I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ us an exam tomorrow.
15. Jack didn't drive to work. I wish Jack \_\_\_\_\_ to work. I'd ask him for a ride home.
16. Bill didn't get the promotion. I wish Bill \_\_\_\_\_ the promotion. He feels bad.
17. It isn't winter. I wish it \_\_\_\_\_ winter so that I could go skiing.
18. We're going to the concert tonight. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ with us.
19. I quit my job. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ my job until I'd found another one.
20. My friend won't ever lend me his car. I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ me his car for my date tomorrow night.

## II. Put the verbs into the correct form.

1. I feel sick. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ so much cake. (I/ not/ eat)
2. I'm fed up with this raining. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ raining, (it/ stop)
3. It's a difficult question. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ the answer. (I/ know)
4. I should have listened to you. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ your advice. (I/ take)
5. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ here. She'd be able to help us. (Ann/ be)
6. Aren't they ready yet? I wish \_\_\_\_\_. (they/ hurry up)
7. It would be nice to stay here. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ to go now.  
(we/ not/ have)
8. When we were in London last year, I didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ more time. (we/ have)
9. It's freezing today. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ so cold. I hate cold weather. (it/ not/ be)
10. What's her name again? I wish \_\_\_\_\_ remember her name. (I/ can)
11. What I said was stupid. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ anything. (I/ not/ say)
12. You're driving too fast. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ a bit. (you/ slow down)
13. It was a terrible film. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ to see it. (we/ not/ go)
14. You're always tired. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ to bed so late, (you/ not/ go)
15. I spent all my money. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ it. (I/ save)
16. Vicky's work isn't going well. She wishes \_\_\_\_\_ better, (it/be)
17. I looked everywhere for the key. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ it. (I/ find)
18. The phone has been ringing for five minutes. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ it. (somebody/ answer)
19. It's very crowded here. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ so many people, (there/ not/be)
20. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ me about the dance, I would have gone, (you/ tell)

## III. For each situation, write a sentence with "wish" or "if only".

1. Ann isn't here. I need to see her now.  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. John would like to be a pilot when he grows up.  
\_\_\_\_\_



3. I'm sorry I didn't come to the party last night.

---

4. I regret that you didn't give me a chance to tell you the truth.

---

5. Mary is afraid she won't be able to attend your wedding next week.

---

6. I regret I didn't learn to play a musical instrument.

---

7. You drive too fast. I'd like you to drive more slowly.

---

8. It is raining. I want to go out, but not in the rain.

---

9. I'd like to buy this book but I don't have enough money to buy it.

---

10. I live in a big city, but I don't like it.

---

11. Nam was sorry that he didn't accept the job.

---

12. I have to work tomorrow but I'd like to stay at home.

---

13. I feel sick because I ate too much ice-cream.

---

14. It's pity that you were not here last week.

---

15. A lot of people drop litter in the street.

---

16. I'd like to take some photographs but I didn't bring my camera.

---

17. It's cold and I hate cold weather.

---

18. I can't go to the party and I'd like to.

---

19. I regret I didn't apply for that job.

---

20. My life isn't interesting.

---

**IV. Choose the correct answer.**

1. A: Could you lend me some money?

B: I wish I \_\_\_ you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself,

- a. can lend      b. would lend      c. could lend      d. will lend

2. A: Are we lost?

B: I think so. I wish we \_\_\_\_\_ a map with us today.

- a. were bringing    b. brought      c. had brought    d. would bring

3. A: What are you doing later this afternoon?

B: I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ the answer of that question.

- a. knew      b. know      c. could know      d. would know

4. A: I told your mother that you had left your job.

B: Well, I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ her. It's none of your business.

- a. wouldn't tell    b. didn't tell      c. hadn't told      d. doesn't tell

5. A: I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ making that noise. It's bothering me.

B: Sorry, I'll stop it right now.

- a. would stop    b. are going to stop    c. stop      d. can stop

6. A: These figures are too complicated to work out in your head.

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ a calculator.

- a. I wish we would have      b. if only we had  
c. if only we had had      d. I wish we have

7. A: You look so tired.

B: Yes, I'm really sleepy today. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ Bob to the airport late last night.

- a. didn't have to take      b. weren't taking  
c. hadn't had to take      d. didn't take

8. A: It's raining. I wish it \_\_\_\_\_

B: Me too. If only the sun \_\_\_\_\_ so that we could go swimming.

- a. stopped/ shined      b. would stop/ were shining  
c. had stopped/ had shined      d. would stop/ would shine

9. A: Did you study for that test?

B: No, but now I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ because I flunked it.

a. had studied    b. studied    c. would study    d. have studied

10. A: My feet are killing me! I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ more comfortable shoes.

B: Yeah, me too. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ that we were going to have to walk this much.

a. had worn/ knew

b. am wearing/ had known

c. were wearing/ would know

d. wore/ had known



**I. MỆNH ĐỀ TÍNH TỪ:**

Mệnh đề tính từ hay mệnh đề quan hệ được đặt sau danh từ nó phụ nghĩa, được nối bằng các từ quan hệ: *who, whom, which, that, whose, where, that, why, when.*

**Đại từ “Who”:** Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm chủ ngữ trong câu.

Eg: The woman who is standing over there is my sister.

*(Cô gái đang đứng ở phía kia là chị của tôi)*

**Đại từ “Whom”:** Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người, làm tân ngữ trong câu.

Eg: I know the boy whom I spoke to.

*(Tôi biết cậu bé người mà đã nói chuyện với tôi)*

**Đại từ “Which”:** Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật, làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ trong câu.

Eg: She works for a company which makes cars.

*(Cô ấy làm việc trong công ty sản xuất ô tô)*

**Đại từ “Whose”:** Dùng để chỉ sự sở hữu.

Eg: John found a cat whose leg was broken.

*(John tìm một con mèo mà chân của nó bị gãy)*

**Đại từ “that”:** Có thể thay thế cho 3 đại từ: **who, whom, which** trong mệnh đề quan hệ hạn định.

**\* Trạng từ quan hệ: when – where - why**

**Trạng từ quan hệ “when”:** Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ thời gian.

Eg: Do you remember the day when we first met?

*(Bạn có nhớ ngày chúng ta gặp nhau lần đầu tiên không?)*

**Trạng từ quan hệ “where”:** Thay thế cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn.

Eg: The hotel where we stayed wasn't very clean.

*(Khách sạn mà chúng tôi ở không sạch sẽ lắm.)*

**Trạng từ quan hệ “why”:** thay thế cho danh từ chỉ lí do.

Eg: Tell me the reason why you are so sad.

(Hãy nói cho tôi biết lý do tại sao bạn buồn như vậy.)

### 1) Mệnh đề quan hệ hạn định:

Dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước. Nếu bỏ đi mệnh đề chính sẽ không rõ nghĩa.

Eg: I saw the girl. She helped us last week.

→ I saw the girl who/that helped us last week.

(Tôi đã gặp cô gái người mà đã giúp chúng tôi tuần trước.)

### 2) Mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định:

Dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước, là phần giải thích thêm. Nếu bỏ đi mệnh đề chính vẫn rõ nghĩa. Mệnh đề này thường được tách khỏi mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy “,”.

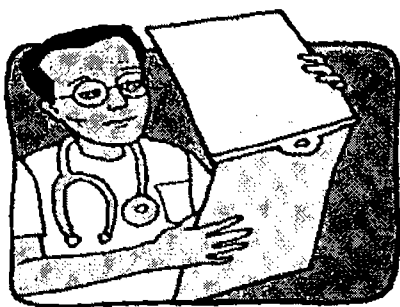
Ta dùng mệnh đề quan hệ không hạn định khi:

- Trước danh từ quan hệ có các determiner như: *this/that/these/those/my/her/his/...*
- Từ quan hệ là tên riêng hoặc danh từ riêng.

Eg: My father is a doctor. He is fifty years old.

→ My father, who is fifty years old, is a doctor.

(Bố của tôi là một bác sĩ, ông ấy đã 50 tuổi.)



Mr Brown is a very nice teacher. We studied English with him.

→ Mr Brown, who(m) we studied English with, is a very nice teacher.

(Ông Brown người mà chúng tôi học tiếng anh cùng là một giáo viên rất tốt.)

\* LƯU Ý: KHÔNG dùng THAT trong mệnh đề này.

Mr Brown, that we studied English with, is a very nice teacher.

### 3) Giới từ đặt trước mệnh đề tính từ: (whom/ which)

Eg: The man speaks English very fast. I talked to him last night.

→ The man to whom I talked last night speaks English very fast.

(Người đàn ông mà tôi nói chuyện ngày hôm qua nói tiếng anh rất nhanh.)

The house is for sale. I was born in it.

→ The house in which I was born is for sale.

(Ngôi nhà nơi tôi sinh ra đã được bán rồi.)

\* LƯU Ý: không dùng that, who sau giới từ.

The house in that I was born is for sale.

### 4) Đại từ quan hệ THAT:

#### 4.1 Những trường hợp thường dùng THAT:

- Sau cụm từ quan hệ vừa chỉ người và vật:

Eg: He told me the places and people that he had seen in London.

(Anh ấy kể với tôi những nơi anh ấy đến thăm và con người anh ấy đã gặp ở Luân Đôn.)

- Sau đại từ bất định:

Eg: I'll tell you something that is very interesting.

(Tôi sẽ kể cho bạn một vài điều rất thú vị.)

- Sau các tính từ so sánh nhất, ALL, EVERY, VERY, ONLY:

Eg: This is the most beautiful dress that I have.

(Đây là chiếc váy đẹp nhất mà tôi có.)

All that is mine is yours.

(Tất cả những gì của tôi cũng là của bạn.)

You are the only person that can help us.

(Bạn là người duy nhất có thể giúp chúng tôi.)

- Trong cấu trúc It + be + ... + that ... (chính là ...)

Eg: It is my friend that wrote this sentence.

(Chính là bạn của tôi viết câu đó.)

#### 4.2 Những trường hợp không dùng THAT:

- Trong mệnh đề tính từ không hạn định.

- Sau giới từ.

### 5) of which/ of whom:

Eg: Daisy has three brothers. All of them are teachers.

→ Daisy has three brothers, all of whom are teachers.

*(Daisy có ba anh trai, cả ba đều là giáo viên.)*

He asked me a lot of questions. I couldn't answer most of them.

→ He asked me a lot of questions, most of which I couldn't answer.

*(Anh ấy hỏi tôi rất nhiều câu hỏi, nhưng hầu hết tôi không trả lời được)*



### 6) Rút gọn mệnh đề tính từ thành cụm tính từ:

#### 6.1 Dùng V-ing hoặc bỏ BE:

Khi động từ chính trong mệnh đề tính từ ở thể chủ động hoặc là to be.

Eg: Those people who are taking photos over there come from Sweden.

→ Those people taking photos over there come from Sweden.

*(Những người đang chụp ảnh ở kia đến từ Thụy Sĩ.)*

Fans who want to buy tickets started queuing early.

→ Fans wanting to buy tickets started queuing early.

*(Những fan hâm mộ muốn mua vé phải xếp hàng từ sớm.)*

The books which are on that shelf are mine.

→ The books on that shelf are mine.

*(Những cuốn sách trên giá là của tôi.)*



### 6.2 Dùng V3/ed:

Khi động từ chính trong mệnh đề tính từ ở thể bị động.

Eg: The books which were written by To Hoai are interesting.

→ The books written by To Hoai are interesting.

(Những cuốn sách Tô Hoài viết rất hay.)

Most students who were punished last week are lazy.

→ Most students punished last week are lazy.

(Phần lớn học sinh bị phạt tuần trước là những học sinh lười.)

### 6.3 Dùng cấu trúc for sb + to V:

Eg: This is the hotel where we can stay.

→ This is the hotel (for us) to stay.

(Đây là khách sạn nơi chúng ta có thể ở.)





## EXERCISES

---

**I. Complete the sentences. Put in relative pronouns only if you have to. If the sentence is correct without relative pronouns, write Ø. Also add commas where necessary.**

1. The man \_\_\_\_\_ paid for the meal was a friend of Tom's.
2. The meeting \_\_\_\_\_ we had to attend went on for three hours.
3. My office, \_\_\_\_\_ is on the second floor of the building, is very small.
4. Jane works for a company \_\_\_\_\_ makes shoes.
5. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ I was sitting next to talked all the time.
6. This school is only for children \_\_\_\_\_ first language is not English.
7. Laura had a wooden box, \_\_\_\_\_ she kept her photos in.
8. I don't know the name of the woman to \_\_\_\_\_ I spoke on the phone.
9. Towns \_\_\_\_\_ attract tourists are usually crowded in the summer.
10. Somewhere I've got a photo of the mountain \_\_\_\_\_ we climbed.
11. The sun, \_\_\_\_\_ is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.
12. I thought I recognized the assistant \_\_\_\_\_ served us.
13. Which is the European country \_\_\_\_\_ economy is growing the fastest?
14. John, \_\_\_\_\_ speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide.
15. The detective lost sight of the man \_\_\_\_\_ he was following.
16. She told me her address, \_\_\_\_\_ I wrote down on a piece of paper.
17. Sarah, \_\_\_\_\_ you met yesterday, works in advertising.
18. I'm afraid the numbers \_\_\_\_\_ I chose didn't win the prize.
19. Electronics is a subject about \_\_\_\_\_ I know very little.
20. Mark, \_\_\_\_\_ car had broken down, was in a very bad mood.

**II. Use a relative pronoun to combine each pair of the sentences. If the relative pronoun can be omitted, write it in brackets.**

1. Professor Wilson is an excellent lecturer. He teaches Chemistry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The man is a famous actor. You met him at the party last night.  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. There are some words. They are very difficult to translate.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The student writes well. I read her composition.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Jim's sister is a famous architect. You met her yesterday  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. I received two job offers. I accepted neither of them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. I was looking for a book this morning. I've found it now.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Mrs Smith does volunteer work at the hospital. She is a retired teacher.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. I live in a dormitory. Its residents come from many countries.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Lake Prespa is a lonely beautiful lake. It's on the north Greek border.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. The little girl ate candy the whole way. She sat next to me on the coach.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. The police blocked off the road. That caused a traffic jam.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. Felix Reeve is a journalist. His tape recorder was stolen.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. This famous picture is worth thousands of pounds. It was damaged during the war.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. The village has around 200 people. The majority of them are farmers.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. I don't know the name of the woman. I spoke to her on the phone.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol. It is only 30 miles away.  
\_\_\_\_\_

18. I have to call the man. I accidentally picked up his umbrella after the meeting.

---

19. Louis knows the woman. The woman is meeting us at the airport tomorrow.

---

20. The scientist has won the Nobel Prize. He discovered a new planet.

---

21. The river is the Wye. It flows through Hereford.

---

22. We climbed to the top of the tower. We had a beautiful view from there.

---

23. A few days ago I met Diana. I hadn't seen her for ages.

---

24. This is a photograph of our friends. We went on holiday with these friends.

---

25. This famous painting was damaged during the war. Its value is inestimable.

---

### III. Choose the correct explanation of the meaning of each sentence.

1. The students, who attend class five hours per day, have become quite proficient in their new language.
  - a. *All of the students* attend class for five hours per day.
  - b. *Only some of the students* attend class for five hours per day.
2. The students who attend class five hours per day have become quite proficient in their new language.
  - a. *All of the students* attend class for five hours per day.
  - b. *Only some of the students* attend class for five hours per day.
3. The orchestra conductor signaled the violinists, who were to begin playing.
  - a. *All of the violinists* were to begin playing.
  - b. *Only some of the violinists* were to begin playing.
4. The orchestra conductor signaled the violinists who were to begin playing.
  - a. *All of the violinists were* to begin playing.
  - b. *Only some of the violinists* were to begin playing.

5. I put the vase on the top of the TV set, which is in the living room.
  - a. I have *more than one* TV set.
  - b. I have *only one* TV set.
6. I put the vase on the top of the TV set which is in the living room,
  - a. I have *more than one* TV set.
  - b. I have *only one* TV set.
7. Trees which lose their leaves in winter are called deciduous trees.
  - a. *All* trees lose their leaves in winter.
  - b. *Only some* trees lose their leaves in winter.
8. Pine trees, which are evergreen, grow well in a cold climate.
  - a. *All* pine trees are evergreen.
  - b. *Only some* pine trees are evergreen.
9. The teacher thanked the students, who had given her some flowers.
  - a. The flowers were from *only some* of the students.
  - b. The flowers were from *all* of the students.
10. The teacher thanked the students who had given her some flowers.
  - a. The flowers were from *only some* of the students.
  - b. The flowers were from *all* of the students.
11. Roberto reached down and picked up the grammar book, which was lying upside down on the floor.
  - a. There was *only one* grammar book near Roberto.
  - b. There was *more than one* grammar book near Roberto.
12. Roberto reached down and picked up the grammar book which was lying upside down on the floor.
  - a. There was *only one* grammar book near Roberto.
  - b. There was *more than one* grammar book near Roberto.

**IV. Complete the sentences. Use the sentences in the box to make relative clauses with “where” or “when”.**

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| he was born there              | people are buried there                  |
| I can buy some postcards there | the weather is usually the hottest then  |
| I first met you then           | we had the car repaired there            |
| we spent our vacation there    | you phoned then                          |
| the revolution took place then | people can have a really good meal there |

1. I can't remember the name of the garage \_\_\_\_\_.
2. July is the month \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I'll never forget the day \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ is Martin's.
5. Unfortunately I wasn't at home the evening \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The old man wants to go back to the village \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The cemetery is a place \_\_\_\_\_.
8. 1960 is the year \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Hawaii, \_\_\_\_\_ is a famous vacation spot.
10. Is there a shop \_\_\_\_\_ near here?

**V. Combine the sentences by using relative adverbs.**

1. This is the place. The accident occurred there.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. 7:05 is the time. My plane arrives at that time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I'll show you the second-hand bookshop. You can find valuable books in this shop.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The reason is to invite you to my party. I'm phoning you for this reason.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Mark likes to travel at night. The roads are quiet at that time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The Riverside Restaurant is very beautiful. I once had lunch with Henry in this restaurant.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. She doesn't want to speak the cause. She divorced her husband for this cause.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. The days were the saddest ones. I lived far from home on those days.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. A cafe is a small restaurant. People can get a light meal there.  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. You didn't tell us the reason. We had to cut down our daily expenses for that reason.

---

**VI. Complete the advertisement. Put in *who, whom, whose, which, where or why*.**

The town of Keswick, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ lies at the heart of the Lake District, is the perfect place for a holiday, and the Derwent Hotel, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ overlooks the town, is the perfect place to stay. Robin and Wendy Jackson, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ bought this small hotel three years ago, have already won an excellent reputation. Robin, (4) \_\_\_\_\_ cooking is one of the reasons (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the Derwent is so popular, was once Young Chef of the Year. The comfort of the guest, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the owners treat almost as members of the family, always comes first. Peter Ustinov, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ once stayed at the hotel, described it as 'marvellous'. And the Lake District, (8) \_\_\_\_\_ has so much wonderful scenery and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the poet Wordsworth lived, will not disappoint you.

**VII. Use a relative pronoun or relative adverb to combine each pair of sentences.**

1. The student is from China. He sits next to me in the English class.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. 'The Old Man and the Sea' is an interesting novel. It was written by Ernest Hemingway.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The professor is excellent. I'm taking his course.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Mr. Smith said he was too busy to speak to me. I had come to see him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The man is my father. I respect this man most.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Do you know the reason? Marta left for this reason.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Tom has three sisters. All of them are married.  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. I recently went back to Paris. It is still as beautiful as a pearl.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. I recently went back to Paris. I was born in Paris nearly 50 years ago.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Laura couldn't find the box. She kept her photos in that box.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Art Golding was a famous actor. He played the ship's captain in 'Iceberg'.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. The police want to know the hotel. Mr Foster stayed there two weeks ago.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. I've sent him two letters. He has received neither of them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. That man is an artist, I don't remember the man's name.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. Do you still remember the day? We moved to this town on that day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. The reason hasn't been told yet: The President will come to that city for this reason.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Vicky didn't get the job. It's made her very depressed.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. My uncle usually goes to work by bus. You met him at the bus stop this morning.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. That car belongs to Dr. Clark. Its engine is very good.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. He gave several reasons. Only a few of them were valid.  
\_\_\_\_\_
21. Charlie Chaplin died in 1977. His films amused millions of people in the world.  
\_\_\_\_\_
22. The taxi driver is friendly. He took me to the airport.  
\_\_\_\_\_

23. I ran into a woman. I had gone to elementary school with her.

---

24. The house is empty now. I used to live there.

---

25. Do you remember the year? The First World War ended in that year.

---

26. A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital.

---

27. Mrs. Bond is going to spend a few weeks in Sweden. Her daughter lives in that country.

---

28. We stayed at the Grand Hotel. Ann recommended it to us.

---

29. My sister was looking after a dog. Its leg had been broken in an accident.

---

30. The street I live in is very noisy at night. This makes it difficult to sleep.

---

**VIII. Put in the relative clause. Sometime there is more than one possible answer.**

1. Someone knows all about it - the secretary.

The person \_\_\_\_\_ is the secretary.

2. Vicky's name was missed off the list, so she wasn't very pleased.

Vicky, \_\_\_\_\_, wasn't very pleased.

3. Laura painted a picture, and it's being shown in an exhibition.

The picture \_\_\_\_\_ is being shown in an exhibition.

4. We're all looking forward to a concert. It's next Saturday.

The concert \_\_\_\_\_ is next Saturday.

5. One week Mike and Harriet went camping. It was the wettest of the year.

The week \_\_\_\_\_ was the wettest of the year.

6. Aunt Joan is a bit deaf, so she didn't hear the phone.

Aunt Joan, \_\_\_\_\_, didn't hear the phone.



7. You'll meet Henry tomorrow. He's also a member of the board.  
Henry, \_\_\_\_\_ is also a member of the board.
8. I'll see you near the post office. We met there the other day.  
I'll see you near the post office, \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Zedco has 10,000 employees. It's an international company.  
Zedco, \_\_\_\_\_, is an international company.
10. I didn't know your address, so I didn't write to you.  
The reason \_\_\_\_\_ was that I didn't know your address.

**IX. Change the relative clauses to phrases.**

1. Do you know the woman who is coming toward us?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The road that joins the two villages is very narrow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Most of the goods that are made in this factory are exported.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. My grandmother, who is old and sick, never goes out of the house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Kuala Lumpur, which is the capital city of Malaysia, is a major trade center in Southeast Asia.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The woman who lived here before us is a romantic novelist.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The scientists who are researching the causes of cancer are making progress.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Our solar system is in a galaxy that is called the Milky Way.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. All students who don't hand in their papers will fail in the exam.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Simon Bolivar, who was a great South American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19th century.  
\_\_\_\_\_

11. Some of the people who have been invited to the party can't come.

---

12. Ann is the woman who is responsible for the error.

---

13. Mr. Jackson, who has been working in the company for over ten years, was nominated as the new director.

---

14. English has an alphabet that consists of 26 letters.

---

15. We noticed a pile of stones which had been left in the road.

---

**X. Change the relative clauses to phrases, using "to-infinitive" or infinitive phrases (for + 0 + to-infinitive).**

1. We used to have a room in which we could play music.

---

2. The child will be happier if he has someone that he can play with.

---

3. David was the only person who offered his help.

---

4. We had to sit on the ground because we hadn't anything that we could sit on.

---

5. She didn't have anyone to whom she could send cards.

---

6. There is a big yard that your children can play in.

---

7. Emma Thompson is the most famous actress who will appear on stage here.

---

8. We have some picture books that children can read.

---

9. He was the second man who was killed in this way.

---

10. Here are some novels that she should read.

---

**XI. Comment on each situation. Use the to-infinitive structure.**

1. David offered his help. No one else did.

David was the only person to offer his help.

2. Oliva's daughter swam a length of the pool. No other girl as young as her did that.

Oliva's daughter was \_\_\_\_\_

3. The secretaries got a pay rise. No one else did.

The secretaries were \_\_\_\_\_

4. The pilot left the aircraft. Everyone else had left before him.

The pilot was \_\_\_\_\_

5. Mrs. Harper became Managing Director. No other woman had done that before.

Mrs. Harper was \_\_\_\_\_

6. Daniel applied for the job. No other candidate as suitable as him applied.

Daniel was \_\_\_\_\_

7. Janet solved the puzzle. She did it before everyone else.

Janet was \_\_\_\_\_

8. Mark wrote a letter of thanks. No one else did.

Mark was \_\_\_\_\_

**XII. Complete the sentences, using present participle, past participle or to-infinitive of the verbs in the box.**

<i>overlook</i>	<i>blow</i>	<i>call</i>	<i>strike</i>	<i>live</i>	<i>offer</i>
<i>read</i>	<i>ring</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>study</i>	<i>work</i>	<i>leave</i>
<i>fill</i>	<i>survive</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>block</i>	<i>publish</i>	

1. An obstacle is something \_\_\_\_\_ your way.

2. I was woken up by a bell \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Baseball is a game \_\_\_\_\_ mainly in the USA.

4. Here is an application form for you \_\_\_\_\_ in.

5. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ Jack phoned while you were out.
6. Ian has got a brother \_\_\_\_\_ in a bank in London and a sister economics at the university in Manchester.
7. There was a tree \_\_\_\_\_ down in the storm last night.
8. The captain was the last \_\_\_\_\_ the sinking ship.
9. Life must be very unpleasant for people \_\_\_\_\_ near busy airport.
10. When I entered the waiting room, it was empty except for a young man \_\_\_\_\_ by the window \_\_\_\_\_ a magazine.
11. The photographs \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspaper were extraordinary.
12. The air-hostess was the only person \_\_\_\_\_ the plane crash.
13. Two out of three people \_\_\_\_\_ by lightning survive.
14. We have an apartment \_\_\_\_\_ the park.
15. A few days after the interview, I received a letter \_\_\_\_\_ me a job.

**XIII. Make one sentence from two. Use one of them as a relative phrase.**

1. Astronomy is one of the world oldest sciences. It is the study of planets and stars.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The vegetables are grown without chemicals. They are sold in supermarkets.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. People have marched to London. They are protesting against pollution.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. The police never found the money. It was stolen in the robbery.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. There was a big red car. It had been parked outside the house.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Libya is a leading producer of oil. It is a country in North Africa.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. A chemical company has gone bankrupt. It employed 4,000 people.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. A new drug may give us eternal youth. It was developed at a British university.  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. A new motorway is planned. It will cost £500 million.

---

10. Some weapons belong to the IRA. They are found at a flat in Bristol.

---

11. John Quincy Adams was born on July 11, 1767. He was the sixth president of the United States.

---

12. There were some children. They were swimming in the river.

---

13. Tennis fans have been queuing all night at Wimbledon. They hope to buy tickets.

---

14. Some paintings haven't been found yet. They were stolen from the museum.

---

15. Two languages, Finnish and Swedish, are used in Helsinki. It is the capital of Finland.

---

**XIV. Each of these sentences contains errors in it. Write the correct sentence.**

1. There were a lot of people waited in a long line outside the box office.

---

2. This isn't the bus on that I normally travel.

---

3. Baseball is the only sport which I am interested in it.

---

4. The reason because I didn't know was that no one had told me.

---

5. I didn't know the name of the man helped me.

---

6. I've met many people, some of them are from my country.

---

7. Hiroko was born in Sapporo that is a city in Japan.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Dr. Darnell was the only person to whom I wanted to see.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Rupert knows the family who's house is for rent.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Students who living on campus are close to their classroom and the library.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Einstein who failed his university entrance exam discovered relativity.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. The person we talked to was very friendly.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. The bridge building only two years ago has been declared unsafe.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. It's the President makes the important decisions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. I can't find my diary, what is a real nuisance.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. Outside the door was a pair of boots covering in mud.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. Lake Superior, that lies on the US Canadian border, is the largest lake in North America.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. My favorite place in the world is a small city is located on the southern coast of Brazil.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. I would like to live in the country which there is plenty of sunshine.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. The nice couple with who we went on holiday has just moved in next door.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**XV. Choose the correct answer.**

1. What's the name of the man \_\_\_\_\_ gave us a lift?  
a. he                      b. what                      c. which                      d. who
2. Were you able to locate the person \_\_\_\_\_ wallet you found?  
a. which                      b. that his                      c. whose                      d. that's
3. My friend Nigel, \_\_\_\_\_ works in the city, earns much more than I do.  
a. that                      b. which                      c. who                      d. whose
4. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ the building was searched by the police.  
a. enter                      b. entered                      c. entering                      d. enters
5. Yesterday was the hottest day \_\_\_\_\_ remember.  
a. that can                      b. which can                      c. which I can                      d. I can
6. Florida, \_\_\_\_\_ the Sunshine State, attracts many tourists every year.  
a. is                                      b. known as  
c. is known as                                      d. that is known as
7. There was little \_\_\_\_\_ we could do to help her.  
a. which                      b. what                      c. that                      d. when
8. Atlanta is the city \_\_\_\_\_ the Olympic Games were held in 1996.  
a. that                      b. when                      c. where                      d. which
9. Ann quit her job at the advertising agency, \_\_\_\_\_ surprised everyone.  
a. which                      b. that                      c. who                      d. that it
10. Is this the address \_\_\_\_\_ you want the package sent?  
a. that                      b. to that                      c. to which                      d. to
11. What was that notice \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. at that you were looking                      b. you were looking at  
c. you were looking at it                      d. which you were looking
12. Little Women, \_\_\_\_\_ in 1868, is my favorite book.  
a. is a novel published                      b. a novel published  
c. a novel was published                      d. was a novel published
13. I have three brother; \_\_\_\_\_ are businessmen.  
a. all of which                      b. all of those  
c. all of whom                      d. all of who
14. The chemistry book \_\_\_\_\_ was a little expensive.  
a. that I bought it                      b. I bought that  
c. what I bought                      d. I bought

15. We passed shops \_\_\_\_\_ windows were decorated for Christmas.  
 a. the                      b. their                      c. which                      d. whose
16. Why do you get up at 4:00 am? 'Because it's the only time \_\_\_\_\_ without being interrupted.  
 a. when I can work on my book                      b. when I can work on my book at  
 c. when I can work on my book then                      d. at when I can work on my book
17. I didn't believe them at first but in fact everything \_\_\_\_\_ was true.  
 a. they said                      b. that they said to  
 c. what they said                      d. to which they said
18. That book is by a famous anthropologist. It's about the people in Samoa \_\_\_\_\_ for two years.  
 a. that she lived                      b. that she lived among them  
 c. among whom she lived                      d. where she lived among them
19. Do you remember Mrs. Goddard, \_\_\_\_\_ taught us English composition?  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. that                      d. which
20. Only a few of movies \_\_\_\_\_ on TV are suitable for children.  
 a. which show                      b. showing                      c. shown                      d. are shown
21. Do you have the book \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher?  
 a. that it belongs to                      b. to which belongs to  
 c. to which belongs                      d. that belongs to
22. York, \_\_\_\_\_ last year, is a nice old city.  
 a. I visited                      b. that I visited  
 c. which I visited                      d. whom I visited
23. Neil Armstrong, the first person \_\_\_\_\_ on the moon, reported that the surface was fine and powdery.  
 a. that set foot                      b. set foot  
 c. setting foot                      d. to set foot
24. They left me at the bus stop \_\_\_\_\_ they had met me the week before.  
 a. where                      b. which                      c. when                      d. that
25. Thanksgiving is a time \_\_\_\_\_ everyone eats turkey in America.  
 a. at that time                      b. when                      c. that                      d. b and c





# hương 10 SỰ SO SÁNH (COMPARISON)

## I. SO SÁNH BẰNG:

1) Câu khẳng định: **as + adj/adv + as (bằng/như)**

Eg: I'm as tall as Tom. (*Tôi cao bằng Tom.*)

John works as hard as his father.

(*John làm việc vất vả như bố anh ấy.*)

2) Câu phủ định: **not as/so + adj/adv + as (không bằng/như)**

Eg: This watch is not as/so expensive as mine. (= my watch)

(*Chiếc đồng hồ này không đắt bằng chiếc đồng hồ của tôi.*)

She doesn't sing as/so well as her sister.

(*Cô ấy hát không hay như chị cô ấy.*)



### \* LƯU Ý:

- Khi so sánh danh từ với nghĩa giống/bằng hay không giống/không bằng, ta có thể dùng cấu trúc:

(not) + the same + (noun) + as

Eg: He is the same age as I am. (*Anh ấy bằng tuổi với tôi.*)

Ann's salary isn't the same as Jane's.

(*Lương của Ann không bằng lương của Jane.*)

- Có thể dùng less + adj/adv + than (kém ... hơn) thay cho not as/so + adj/adv + as

Eg: This watch is less expensive than mine.

She sings less well than her sister.

- Khi nói gấp bao nhiêu lần, ta dùng cấu trúc ... times as + adj/adv + as.

Eg: Their house is three times as big as ours.

(*Ngôi nhà của họ to gấp ba lần ngôi nhà của chúng tôi.*)

## II. SO SÁNH HƠN

### 1) Tính từ/trạng từ ngắn: **adj/adv + ER + than**

Tính từ/trạng từ ngắn là từ có một vần hay hai vần tận cùng bằng "y".

fast → faster      cold → colder      thick → thicker

lucky → luckier      happy → happier      dry → drier ...

Eg: John is stronger than his brother.

*(John khỏe như anh trai cậu ấy.)*

This athlete runs faster than that one.

*(Vận động viên điền kinh này chạy nhanh hơn vận động viên kia.)*



### 2) Tính từ/trạng từ dài: **more + adj/adv + than**

Tính từ/trạng từ dài là từ có hai vần trở lên.

modern, patient, difficult, fluently, beautifully, ...

Eg: This problem is more difficult than we thought.

*(Vấn đề này khó hơn những gì chúng tôi nghĩ.)*

He speaks English more fluently than his friend.

*(Anh ấy nói tiếng anh thành thạo hơn bạn anh ấy.)*

## III. SO SÁNH NHẤT

### 1) Tính từ/trạng từ ngắn: **the + adj/adv + EST**

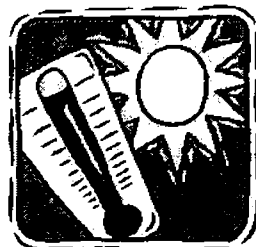
cold → the coldest      thick → the thickest

fast → fastest

lucky → the luckiest      happy → the happiest .....

Eg: Yesterday was the hottest day of the year.

*(Ngày hôm qua là ngày nóng nhất trong năm.)*



2) Tính từ/trạng từ dài: **the + MOST + adj/adv**

Eg: She is the most beautiful girl in the class.

(Bạn ấy là bạn gái xinh nhất lớp tôi.)

**LƯU Ý:**

- Ta có thể dùng the least để chỉ mức độ kém ... nhất.

Eg: This story is the least interesting of all.

(Truyện này ít thú vị nhất trong tất cả.)

- Tính từ/trạng từ bất qui tắc.

Tính từ/trạng từ	So sánh hơn	So sánh nhất
good/well (tốt)	better	the best
bad/badly (xấu, dở)	worse	the worst
far (xa)	farther/further	the farthest/furthest
little (ít)	less	the least
many/much (nhiều)	more	the most

**IV. CÁC DẠNG SO SÁNH KHÁC:**

1) Càng ngày càng ...

- Tính từ/trạng từ ngắn: **adj/adv + er and adj/adv + er**

Eg: Betty is younger and younger. (Betty càng ngày càng trẻ.)

He runs faster and faster. (Anh ấy chạy càng ngày càng nhanh.)

- Tính từ/trạng từ dài: **more and more + adj/adv**

Eg: My wife is more and more beautiful.

(Vợ của tôi càng ngày càng xinh.)

They work more and more carefully.

(Họ làm việc càng ngày càng cẩn thận.)

2) Càng ... càng ...

- **The more + S + V, the more + S + V**

Eg: The more I know him, the more I like him.

(Càng hiểu về anh ấy, tôi càng thích anh ấy.)

- **The + SS hơn + S + V, the + SS hơn + S + V**

Eg: The older he gets, the weaker he is.

(Ông ấy càng già thì ông ấy càng yếu.)

The more beautiful she is, the more miserable her parents are.

(Cô ta càng đẹp thì cha mẹ cô ta càng khổ.)

- The more + S + V, the adj + ER + S + V

Eg: The more he works, the richer he is.

(Anh ấy càng làm việc nhiều thì anh ấy càng giàu.)

- The adj + ER + S + V, the more + S + V

Eg: The hotter it is, the more tired I feel.

(Trời càng nóng thì tôi càng thấy mệt.)

## V. QUI TẮC THÊM ER VÀ EST ĐỐI VỚI TÍNH TỪ/TRẠNG TỪ NGẮN:

### 1) Adj tận cùng bằng "e"

Eg: large → larger → the largest

### 2) Adj tận cùng bằng phụ âm "y"

easy → easier → the easiest

### 3) Adj có một âm tiết và có nguyên âm đứng giữa 2 phụ âm: gấp đôi phụ âm cuối:

Eg: hot → hotter → the hottest

## EXERCISES

---

I. Complete the sentences using "as ... as". Choose one of the following words.

*expensive comfortable fast long quietly soon*  
*well often quickly much strong exciting*

1. I don't earn as much as I'd like.
2. Oh, don't sit there. The stool isn't \_\_\_\_\_ the armchair.
3. I didn't want to wake anybody, so I came in \_\_\_\_\_ I can.
4. We can't do crosswords \_\_\_\_\_ you do.
5. I'm sorry I'm a bit late. I got here \_\_\_\_\_ I could.
6. We like to keep fit, so we go swimming \_\_\_\_\_ we can.
7. It was a difficult question. I answered it \_\_\_\_\_ I could.
8. I prefer surfing to swimming. Swimming isn't \_\_\_\_\_ surfing.
9. How long can we stay with you? ~ You can stay \_\_\_\_\_ you like.
10. Why don't you buy a motorbike? A motorbike isn't \_\_\_\_\_ a car.
11. I need the information quickly, so please let me know \_\_\_\_\_ possible.
12. I don't like these plastic screws. Plastic isn't \_\_\_\_\_ metal.

II. Complete the sentences using a comparative form.

1. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere quieter?
2. The dining room is so small. I like it a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The exam was surprisingly easy. I expected it to be \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The weather is too cold in this country. I'd like to live somewhere \_\_\_\_\_.
5. You were a bit depressed yesterday but you look \_\_\_\_\_ today.
6. You're standing too near the camera. Can you move a bit \_\_\_\_\_ away?
7. Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do \_\_\_\_\_.
8. You're driving too fast. Could you drive \_\_\_\_\_?
9. My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something \_\_\_\_\_.
10. You hardly ever phone me. Why don't you phone me \_\_\_\_\_?
11. Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be \_\_\_\_\_.

13. This coffee is very weak. I like it a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
14. You're talking very loudly. Can you speak a bit \_\_\_\_\_?
15. I was surprised how complicated it was to use the computer. I thought it would be \_\_\_\_\_.

**III. Write the comparative form of the adjective or adverb in brackets. Use "than" where necessary.**

1. They've made these chocolate bars smaller. (small)
2. Sport is more interesting than politics. (interesting)
3. We could have found the place \_\_\_\_\_ with a map. (easily)
4. I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed \_\_\_\_\_ usual. (early)
5. The weather is getting \_\_\_\_\_. (bad)
6. Health and happiness are \_\_\_\_\_ money. (important)
7. You need to draw it \_\_\_\_\_. (carefully)
8. I like living in the country. It's \_\_\_\_\_ living in the town. (peaceful)
9. We can't hear. Could you speak a little \_\_\_\_\_?(slowly)
10. I can't stay \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour. (long)
11. A cellphone would be a \_\_\_\_\_ present. (useful)
12. It's a long way from here to the station \_\_\_\_\_ I thought. (far)
13. Can't you think of anything \_\_\_\_\_ to say? (intelligent)
14. It was \_\_\_\_\_ usual in town today. (busy)
15. Unfortunately her illness was \_\_\_\_\_ we thought at first. (serious)

**IV. Comment on these situations. Write sentences with a comparative and "than". Use these adjectives: big, fast, expensive, long, old, popular, strong, tall, cold, far, had, early, frequently, busy, high.**

1. Yesterday the temperature was nine degrees. Today it's only six degrees.  
It's colder today than it was yesterday.
2. The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.  
Travelling by car is \_\_\_\_\_
3. Chris and Joe both did badly in the exam. Chris got 20% but Joe only got 15%  
Joe did \_\_\_\_\_

4. I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o'clock. In fact they arrived at 2:30.

My friends \_\_\_\_\_

5. The film lasts two and a half hours, but the videotape is only two hours long.

The film \_\_\_\_\_

6. The cassette is \$11,000, and the CD is \$18,000.

The CD \_\_\_\_\_

7. Dave and I went for a run. I ran ten kilometers. Dave stopped after eight kilometers.

I ran \_\_\_\_\_

8. The castle was built in 1878 and the church in 1925.

The castle \_\_\_\_\_

9. Mike is 1.7 meters tall, but Harriet is 1.8 meters.

Harriet \_\_\_\_\_

10. Andrew hasn't many friends. Claire has lots of friends.

Claire \_\_\_\_\_

11. Mark's car has room for five people, but Sandra's has room for only four.

Mark's car \_\_\_\_\_

12. Sears Tower in Chicago is 442 meters high. Petronas Twin Towers in Kuala Lumpur is 452 meters high.

Petronas Twin Towers \_\_\_\_\_

13. We were very busy at work today. We're not usually as busy as that.

We \_\_\_\_\_

14. You can go by bus or by train. The buses run every 30 minutes. The trains run every hour.

The buses \_\_\_\_\_

15. Daniel can lift 90 kilos, but Matthew can lift 120 kilos.

Matthew \_\_\_\_\_

**V. Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most) and a preposition (if necessary).**

1. This room is nice. It's the nicest room in the hotel.

2. Susan is very beautiful. She's the most beautiful girl I've ever met.

3. It was a very happy day. It was \_\_\_\_\_ my life.

4. She's a very intelligent student. She's \_\_\_\_\_ the class.
5. The speech was very boring. It was \_\_\_\_\_ I've ever heard.
6. It's a very large company. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the town.
7. August is very wet. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the year.
8. The meal was delicious. That was \_\_\_\_\_ I've had for a long time.
9. Matthew always drives carefully. He drives \_\_\_\_\_ all the drivers.
10. She is a very good player. She is one of \_\_\_\_\_ the team.
11. Manchester United is a very famous football team. They're one of \_\_\_\_\_ the world.
12. Melanie is a quick child. She reacts \_\_\_\_\_ the three sisters.
13. It was a very bad experience. It is one of \_\_\_\_\_ my life.
14. It's a very valuable painting. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the gallery.
15. Spring is a very busy time for me. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the year.

**VI. Write the sentences from the notes. Use the supelative form of the adjective,**

1. Melanie/ kind person/I know      Melanie is the kindest person I know.
2. Friday/ busy day/ week  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. This watch/ one/ expensive/ the store  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. This Beatles album/ good/ they ever made  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Alan/ successful salesman/ company  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. That/ funny joke/ I've ever heard  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Mary/ patient person/ my daughters  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Ten kilometers/ far distance/ he've ever run  
\_\_\_\_\_



**VII. Complete the sentences, using the structure “...er and ...er” or “more and more”.**

1. This subject gets harder and harder all the time. (hard)
2. I'm just getting more and more confused. (confused)
3. It's becoming \_\_\_\_\_ for me to keep up. (difficult)
4. The textbook just gets \_\_\_\_\_. (complicated)
5. I spend \_\_\_\_\_ time on my work, (much) .
6. My list of things to do gets \_\_\_\_\_. (long)
7. As I waited for my interview, I became \_\_\_\_\_. (nervous)
8. My problem is just getting \_\_\_\_\_. (bad)
9. Since she has been in Britain, her English has got \_\_\_\_\_. (good)
10. My bags seemed to get \_\_\_\_\_ as I carried them. (heavy)
11. Travelling is becoming \_\_\_\_\_. (expensive)
12. That hole in your pullover is getting \_\_\_\_\_. (big)

**VIII. Complete each sentence using the information in brackets and the structure with two comparatives.**

1. (The rent is high.) The bigger a flat is, the higher the rent is.
2. (You learn quickly.) The younger you are, \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (The roads are quiet.) The earlier you leave, \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (The choice is wide.) The bigger a supermarket is, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (I get confused.) The more I try to work this out, \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (You can speak fluently.) The more you practice, \_\_\_\_\_.
7. (The beaches get crowded.) The better the weather is, \_\_\_\_\_.
8. (She became impatient.) The longer she wait, \_\_\_\_\_.
9. (It's hard to concentrate.) The more tired you are, \_\_\_\_\_.
10. (The product is reliable) The higher the price, \_\_\_\_\_.

**IX. Complete the sentences. Use the comparison of the word in brackets**

1. Mary isn't \_\_\_\_\_ (pretty) as her sister.
2. The steak is \_\_\_\_\_ (expensive) than the fish.
3. Of the four dresses, I like the red one \_\_\_\_\_ (well).
4. Nobody is \_\_\_\_\_ (happy) than Miss Snow.

5. It was an awful day. It was \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) day of my life.
6. John is much \_\_\_\_\_ (strong) than I thought.
7. They have got three daughters. \_\_\_\_\_ (old) is 14 years old.
8. Thanks to the progress of science, human life is \_\_\_\_\_ (good and good).
9. Mr Brown is \_\_\_\_\_ (delightful) person I have ever known.
10. The competition makes the price of goods \_\_\_\_\_ (cheap and cheap).
11. Sam's conduct is \_\_\_\_\_ (bad) than Paul's.
12. These boys are \_\_\_\_\_ (ill-prepared) for employment than my children.
13. What is \_\_\_\_\_ (popular) sport in your country?
14. They speak English \_\_\_\_\_ (fluently) than we do.
15. Of the three boys, Harry is \_\_\_\_\_ (badly-bred).

**X. Complete the conversations, using the correct form of the word(s) supplied and adding any other words needed.**

1. A: Why have you bought a new car?  
B: We needed one with a \_\_\_\_\_ (big) boot, to take our sports gear.
2. A: Which is \_\_\_\_\_ (small/ planet) in our solar system?  
B: Pluto, isn't it? I know it's \_\_\_\_\_ (far) away from the sun.
3. A: Do you like playing badminton?  
B: I prefer tennis. I think tennis is \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting) badminton.
4. A: Who is \_\_\_\_\_ (good/ student) in the class?  
B: Matthew is \_\_\_\_\_ student in the class. He's \_\_\_\_\_ other students. (intelligent)
5. A: What's the weather like in Ho Chi Minh City?  
B: It's getting \_\_\_\_\_ (bad).  
A: Is April \_\_\_\_\_ (hot/ month) of the year?  
B: Yes, it is.
6. A: Shall we go for a swim? It's lovely and sunny.  
B: I'm not sure. There's quite a strong wind. I think you'll find it's \_\_\_\_\_ (not/warm) it looks, when you get outside.

7. A: Which is \_\_\_\_\_ (high) mountain in Africa?  
 B: I'm not sure. Kilimanjaro, perhaps?  
 A: Where's that? In Zambia?  
 B: No, it's \_\_\_\_\_ (far/ north) that. Kenya I think.  
 A: Which mountain is \_\_\_\_\_ (high), Everest or Kilimanjaro?  
 B: Everest. It's \_\_\_\_\_ (high/ mountain) in the world.
8. A: What is \_\_\_\_\_ (important) in one's life? It's money, isn't it?  
 B: In my oppion, health and happiness are \_\_\_\_\_ (important) money.
9. A: Hurry up! We'll miss the train. Can't you run \_\_\_\_\_ (fast)?  
 B: Sorry, I'm going \_\_\_\_\_ (fast) I can already.  
 A: OK. I guess you're quite a bit \_\_\_\_\_ (short/I) after all.
10. A: I'm very sorry to hear of your mother's illness.  
 B: Unfortunately her illness was \_\_\_\_\_ (serious) we thought at first.  
 A: Does she feel \_\_\_\_\_ (healthy) now?  
 B: Yes, she's a little bit \_\_\_\_\_ (good).
11. A: Are you still trying to get that stain out of the rug?  
 B: Yes. I've tried all sorts of soaps and things but it's still  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) when I start.
12. A: We'd better go to the bank this morning.  
 B: Can't we go \_\_\_\_\_ (late)?  
 A: No. They shut \_\_\_\_\_ (early/ here) they do at home.
13. A: How was your driving test?  
 B: Oh, not so bad really. It was \_\_\_\_\_ (much/ easy) I'd expected,  
 in fact.  
 A: So, you've passed?  
 B: Yes, I have.  
 A. Congratulations! That's \_\_\_\_\_ (good) news I've heard for ages!
14. A: Is your new car as big as the old one?  
 B: No, it's \_\_\_\_\_ (small), so it uses , \_\_\_\_\_ (little)  
 petrol. They tested some small cars, and this one costs \_\_\_\_\_  
 (little) to run of all the cars in the test.

15. A: I hear you were having problems with your business last year. Is it \_\_\_\_\_ (good) this year?

B: No, I'm afraid it's \_\_\_\_\_;(bad) if anything.

A: I suppose people just aren't spending \_\_\_\_\_ (much/ money) they used to.

**XI. Complete the sentences with "than" or "as".**

1. I can't reach as high as you. You're taller than me / I am.
2. He doesn't know much. I know more \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I don't work particularly hard. Most people work as hard \_\_\_\_\_.
4. We were very surprised. Nobody was more surprised \_\_\_\_\_.
5. She's not a very good player. I'm a better player \_\_\_\_\_.
6. They've been very lucky. I wish we were as lucky \_\_\_\_\_.
7. You speak English very well. We can't speak as well \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent more money \_\_\_\_\_.

**XII. Some of these sentences are correct, and some are incorrect. If a sentence is correct, put a tick (✓). If it is incorrect, cross the wrong word and correct it**

1. You're the luckiest person I know .....✓.....
2. The situation is getting more difficult.
3. Silver isn't as expensive as gold. \_\_\_\_\_
4. This is the quicker way to school. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Is Rachel elder than Vicky? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Who is the cleverest student of the class? \_\_\_\_\_
7. This month has been weter than last month. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The weather is getting more and more hot. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The telephone is one of the most useful inventions ever. \_\_\_\_\_
10. You and Luke are both better than I. \_\_\_\_\_
11. This game is more exciting as the last one. \_\_\_\_\_
12. The piano is heavier than the sofa. \_\_\_\_\_
13. She is the rich woman in the world. \_\_\_\_\_
14. I don't have as much tapes as you. \_\_\_\_\_
15. You're taller than he is. \_\_\_\_\_

**XIII. Head this part of Tessa's letter to her friend about her new job.**

**Choose the most suitable word to fill in the blank.**

My new job is great I like it(1) \_\_\_\_\_ better than my old one. The people here are (2) \_\_\_\_\_ than I expected. Luckily my new boss isn't as rude (3) \_\_\_\_\_ my old boss, Mrs Crossley, was I hate her. She was the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ friendly person I've ever met. Every one her is older (5) \_\_\_\_\_. In fact I'm the youngest person (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the office. The good thing about the job is that I get a (7) \_\_\_\_\_ more money. The bad thing is that the journey isn't (8) \_\_\_\_\_ simple as it was in my old job, where the bus took me straight there. Now I have to change buses. But I'm allowed to start work early. The (9) \_\_\_\_\_ leave home, (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the journey because the buses aren't so crowded.

- |                  |                  |               |             |
|------------------|------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. a. more       | b. most          | c. much       | d. very     |
| 2. a. more nice  | b. most nice     | c. nicer      | d. nicest   |
| 3. a. as         | b. so            | c. than       | d. that     |
| 4. a. least      | b. less and less | c. less       | d. so       |
| 5. a. as I       | b. as me         | c. than I     | d. than me  |
| 6. a. from       | b. in            | c. of         | d. out of   |
| 7. a. bit        | b. less          | c. lot        | d. much     |
| 8. a. as         | b. less          | c. more       | d. same     |
| 9. a. early      | b. more early    | c. earliest   | d. earlier  |
| 10. a. more easy | b. more easier   | c. the easier | d. the easy |

**XIV. Write the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first, Use the word in brackets.**

1. This hotel is more expensive than all the others. (most)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The moon isn't as hot as the sun. (hotter)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. I'm not as patient as you. (more)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. The table and the desk are the same size. (big)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Prices just get higher all the time. (and)

\_\_\_\_\_

6. The dress is cheaper than the skirt. (expensive)

\_\_\_\_\_

7. This crossword is the easiest. (difficult)

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Their excitement was increasing all the time (excited)

They were getting \_\_\_\_\_

9. I've never read a more romantic story. (most)

It's the \_\_\_\_\_

10. A bus is cheaper than a taxi. (less) \_\_\_\_\_



## Chương 11 SỰ ĐẢO NGỮ (INVERSION)

Trong tiếng Anh, hiện tượng đảo ngữ là một hiện tượng khó và ít thường xuyên được sử dụng. Đảo ngữ thường được sử dụng khi muốn nhấn mạnh.

### 1. Đảo ngữ với NO và NOT

No + N + auxiliary + S + Verb (inf)

Not any + N + auxiliary + S + verb(inf)

Eg: No money shall I lend you from now on = Not any money shall I lend you from now on.

*(Mình sẽ không cho cậu vay một đồng nào kể từ bây giờ.)*

### 2. Đảo ngữ với các trạng từ phủ định: Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Hardly ever,.....

Never/ rarely/ seldom / little/ hardly ever + auxiliary + S + V

Eg: Never in mid-summer does it snow.

*(Không bao giờ có tuyết vào giữa mùa hè.)*

Hardly ever does he speak in the public.

*(Hiếm khi anh ta nói trước đám đông.)*

### 3. Đảo ngữ với ONLY

only later	only in adv of time/ place
only in this way	only by V-ing/ N
only in that way	only when + clause
only then + auxiliary + S + V	only with + N
only after + N	only if + clause

Eg:

- Only after all guests had gone home could we relax.

*(Chỉ sau khi khách khứa về hết, chúng tôi mới được thư giãn.)*

- Only when I understand her did I like her.

*(Chỉ khi tôi đã hiểu, tôi mới thích cô ấy.)*

- Only by practising English every day can you speak it fluently.  
(Chỉ bằng cách luyện tập tiếng Anh hàng ngày bạn mới có thể nói trôi chảy)

**4. Đảo ngữ với các cụm từ có “No”:**

At no time	For no reason
On no condition	In no way
On no account + auxiliary + S + N	No longer
Under/ in no circumstances	

Eg: For no reason will you play truant.

(Không có lý do nào cho việc bạn trốn học)

The money is not to be paid under any circumstances = Under no circumstances is the money to be paid.

(Trong bất cứ trường hợp nào thì cũng không được trả.)

On no condition shall we accept their proposal.

(Dù bất cứ lý do gì chúng tôi cũng không chấp nhận đề nghị của họ.)

**5. No sooner.... than..... Vừa mới....thì.....**

Hardly/ Barely/ Scarcely.... When/ before

Eg: No sooner had I arrived home than the telephone rang.

(Tôi vừa mới về đến nhà thì điện thoại đổ chuông.)

Hardly had she put up her umbrella before the rain became down in torrents.

(Hiếm khi cô ấy mở ô trước khi trời mưa to.)

**6. Đảo ngữ với “Not only .... but.... also ....”: không những...mà còn**

Not only + auxiliary + S + V but.... also....

Eg: Not only is he good at English but he also draw very well.

(Cô ấy không những giỏi tiếng anh mà còn vẽ rất đẹp)

Not only does he sing well but he also plays musical instruments perfectly.

(Anh ấy không những hát hay mà còn chơi nhạc cụ rất giỏi)





### 7. Đảo ngữ với "SO":

So + adj/ adv + auxiliary + S + V + that clause

Eg: So dark is it that I can't write. (*Trời tối đến nỗi tôi không thể viết*)

So busy am I that I don't have time to look after myself.

(*Tôi bận đến nỗi không có thời gian để chăm sóc bản thân*)

So difficult was the exam that few student pass it.

(*Bài tập này quá khó đến nỗi chỉ vài học sinh đạt*)

So attractive is she that many boys run after her.

(*Cô ấy hấp dẫn đến nỗi nhiều chàng trai chạy theo cô ấy*)



### 8. So + adjective + be + N + clause

Eg: So intelligent is that she can answer all questions in the interview.

(*Cô ấy thông minh đến mức có thể trả lời tất cả những câu hỏi trong cuộc phỏng vấn*)



### 9. Đảo ngữ với until/ till + clause/ adv of time + auxiliary + S + V

Eg: I won't come home till 10 o'clock = Not until/ till o'clock that I will come home = It is not until 10 o'clock that I will come home.

(*Cho đến 10 giờ cô ấy mới về nhà*)

I didn't know that I had lost my key till I got home = Not until/ till I got home did I know that I had lost my key.

(*Tôi không biết tôi mất chìa khóa cho đến khi tôi về nhà*)

### 10. Đảo ngữ với No where + auxiliary + S + V

Eg: No where in the VN is the scenery as beautiful as that in my country.

(*Không nơi nào ở Việt Nam có cảnh đẹp như vùng quê của tôi*)

No where do I feel as comfortable as I do at home.

(*Không nơi đâu tôi cảm thấy thoải mái như ở nhà*)

## 11. Đảo ngữ với câu điều kiện:

### a. Câu điều kiện loại 1: If clause = should + S + V

Should she come late she will miss the train.

*(Nếu cô ấy đến muộn, cô ấy sẽ bị lỡ chuyến tàu)*

Should he lend me some money I will buy that house.

*(Nếu anh ấy vay được tiền, anh ấy sẽ mua ngôi nhà đó)*

### b. Câu điều kiện loại 2: If clause = Were S + to V/ Were + S

If I were you I would work harder = Were I you ...

*(Nếu tôi là bạn, tôi sẽ làm việc chăm chỉ hơn)*

If I knew her I would invite her to the party = Were I to know her ...

*(Nếu tôi biết cô ấy, tôi sẽ mời cô ấy đến bữa tiệc)*

### c. Câu điều kiện loại 3: If clause = Had + S + P<sub>II</sub>

If my parents hadn't encouraged me, I wouldn't have taken pass exam. =

Had my parents not encouraged me, I wouldn't have taken pass exam.

*(Nếu bố mẹ tôi không ủng hộ tôi, tôi đã không đỗ kì thi đó)*

# EXERCICES

---

## I. Choose the most suitable words underlined.

1. Jim promised that he would never/ never would he tell anyone else.
2. Not until it was too late I remembered / did I remember I call Susan.
3. Hardly had we settle down in our seats than/when the lights went out.
4. Only after checking three times I was/was I certain of the answer.
5. At no time I was aware/was I aware of anything out of usual.
6. Only Mary and Sally passed/ did they pass the final examination.
7. So the waves were high/ So high were the waves that swimming was dangerous.
8. Only when Peter has arrived / has Peter arrived can we begin the program.
9. No sooner had it stopped raining than/when the sun came out.
10. If should you leave early/ should you leave early could you leave me a lift?

## II. Rewrite these sentences, using "NEVER".

1. She has never been so happy before.  
.....

2. I have never heard such nonsense!  
.....

3. I have never seen such a mess in my life.  
.....

4. Our profits this year are higher than they have ever been.  
.....

5. She would never again trust her own judgment when buying antiques.  
.....

6. The firm has never before laid on such a sumptuous celebration.  
.....

7. I've never come across such a horrifying film.  
.....

8. I have never been so moved by a Shakespeare production.  
.....

9. I never for one moment thought the consequences would be so far- reaching.  
.....

10. I had never tasted such a wonderful combination of flavors before.  
.....

**II. Rewrite these sentences, using RARELY, SELDOM or LITTLE.**

1. One rarely find good service these days.  
.....

2. She has rarely traveled more than fifty miles from her village.  
.....

3. It is very unusual for a military campaign to have been fought with so little loss of life.  
.....

4. It is unusual for the interior of the island to be visited by tourists.  
.....

5. Public borrowing has seldom been so high.  
.....

6. They had seldom participated in such a fascinating ceremony.  
.....

7. They little suspected that the musical was going to be a run away success.  
.....

8. The embassy staff little realized that Ted was a secret agent.  
.....

9. She didn't realized what would happen to her next.  
.....

10. I didn't think that one day I'd be appearing in films rather than just watching them.  
.....

**III. Rewrite these sentences, using IN, AT , UNDER, or ON.**

1. Keith certainly can't be held responsible for the accident.  
.....

2. The children themselves are not in any way to blame for the disaster.  
.....
3. The existence of extraterrestrial is not confirmed by the report.  
.....
4. I was never shown how to operate the machinery.  
.....
5. He never suspected that she was a witch.  
.....
6. There has never been a time when the English language was not in a state of change.  
.....
7. Miss Weaver will not be offered the job under any circumstances.  
.....
8. You should not send money to us by post under any circumstances.  
.....
9. We can't exchange tickets in any circumstances.  
.....
10. I won't go out that way to visit him again on my account!  
.....

**IV. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with NOT.**

1. He is my friend as well as yours.  
.....
2. He booked tickets for the afternoon performance and the evening performance as well.  
.....
3. Burglars stole a thousand pounds' worth of electrical goods, and left the flat in an awful mess.  
.....
4. Tony was not only late, but he had left all his books behind.  
.....
5. You will enhance your posture and improve your acting ability on this course.  
.....

6. It isn't worth considering his suggestion for a moment.  
.....

7. She didn't shed a tear when the story ended in tragedy.  
.....

8. The manager not once offered us an apology.  
.....

9. She made no sound as she crept upstairs.  
.....

10. He only thought about having a holiday abroad after he retired.  
.....

**V. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with ONLY.**

1. I only realized how dangerous the situation had been when I got home.  
.....

2. It wasn't until last week that the Agriculture Minister admitted defeat.  
.....

3. I understood Hamlet only after seeing it on the stage.  
.....

4. They didn't get round to business until they had finished eating.  
.....

5. They had to wait for twelve hours before their flight left.  
.....

6. I didn't realize who he was until later.  
.....

7. The door could not be opened without using force.  
.....

8. I won't agree until Tom's apologized.  
.....

9. To get the 40% discount, you must buy all twelve books at the same time.  
.....

10. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard every day.  
.....

**VI. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with SHOULD.**

1. If the Government were forced into another election, it would be the favourite to win.  
.....
2. If you should wish to make an appointment to see Dr Simons, she is available between 9.00 and 11.00.  
.....
3. If you should have further problems with your printer, contact your dealer for advice.  
.....
4. If you should decide to accept the post, you will be expected to start work on 1<sup>st</sup> April.  
.....
5. If we hear any further news, we will be in touch immediately.  
.....
6. If you wish to take advantage of the offer, kindly tick the box on your order form.  
.....
7. If the film should be a post office success, they may be sequel.  
.....
8. If you should change your mind, there will always be a job for you here.  
.....

**VII. Rewrite these sentences, using inversion with WERE or HAD**

1. If the chemical were to leak, a large area of the sea would be contaminated.  
.....
2. If Germany were to beat Romania, they would face Italy in the final.  
.....
3. If Mr Morgan were still head master, he would not permit such bad behavior.  
.....
4. If you had given it on time, you would have got a high mark.  
.....

5. If she had become a lawyer, as her parents wished, she would have earned a large salary.  
.....

6. If anything has gone wrong with my plan, I would have held responsibility.  
.....

7. If it hadn't been for Henry, I might not have met you.  
.....

8. If only they had confirmed by phone, the airline could have warned them.  
.....

9. The coast guards could have saved the vessels if they had been notified.  
.....

10. If his solicitor hadn't advised him, he would have made a serious mistake.  
.....

**VIII. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.**

1. He spent all his money. He even borrowed some from me.

→ Not only \_\_\_\_\_

2. He had hardly left the office when the telephone rang.

→ No sooner \_\_\_\_\_

3. I had only just put the phone down when the boss rang back.

→ Hardly \_\_\_\_\_

4. He didn't finish his work until the bell rang.

→ Not until \_\_\_\_\_

5. We only began to see the symptoms of the disease after several months.

→ Only \_\_\_\_\_

6. I have never seen anyone in my life drink as much as you.

→ Never \_\_\_\_\_

7. A sleeping dog was lying under the table.

→ Under the table \_\_\_\_\_

8. His brother had rarely been more excited.

→ Rarely \_\_\_\_\_



9. The facts were not all made public until later.

→ Only \_\_\_\_\_

10. If I had realized what would happen, I wouldn't have accepted the job.

→ Had \_\_\_\_\_

11. The response to our appeal was so great that we had to take on more staff.

→ Such \_\_\_\_\_

12. Harry broke his leg, and also injured his shoulder.

→ Not only \_\_\_\_\_

13. The police didn't at all suspect that the judge was the murderer.

→ Little \_\_\_\_\_

14. If you do happen to see Helen, could you ask her to call me?

→ Should \_\_\_\_\_

15. The bus driver can not be blamed for the accident in any way.

→ In \_\_\_\_\_

16. The snowfall was so heavy that all the trains had to be cancelled.

→ So \_\_\_\_\_

17. If the government raised interest rates. They would lose the election.

→ Were \_\_\_\_\_

18. As soon as I got into the bath, someone knocked at the door.

→ No sooner \_\_\_\_\_

19. There was so much uncertainty that the financial markets remained closed.

→ Such \_\_\_\_\_

20. It's not common for there to be so much rain in March.

→ Seldom \_\_\_\_\_

21. You won't allowed in until your identify has been checked.

→ Only \_\_\_\_\_

22. Just after the play started there was a power failure.

→ Hardly \_\_\_\_\_

23. The Prime Minister has hardly ever made a speech as inept as this.

→ Rarely \_\_\_\_\_

24. We had only just arrived home when the police called.

→ Scarcely \_\_\_\_\_

25. Press photographers are banned from taking photographs backstage.

→ On no \_\_\_\_\_

26. The way so much money has been spent to so little purpose must be a record.

→ Never before \_\_\_\_\_

27. The judge was taken ill just after the trial proceedings began.

→ Barely \_\_\_\_\_

### IX. Complete each sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

1. ....had we arrived at the hotel, when there was a power cut.

2. ....are members of staff to accept gratuities from clients.

3. ....Detective Dawson realized what she was to discover!.

4. ....so many employees taken sick leave at the same time.

5. .... to pay the full amount now, there would be a ten per cent discount.

6. I supposed, as.....most people, that I would be retiring at 60.

7. ....the doctor seen more difficult case.

8. ....Jean win first prize, but she was also offered a promotion.

9. ....will late arrival be admitted to the theatre before the interval.

10. ....one missing child been found, than another three disappeared.

### X. Complete each sentence with a suitable word or phrase.

1. Scarcely .....the pilot had to make an emergent landing.

2. Little .....what has been going on in her absent.

3. No sooner.....than I realized I'd left my bag on the platform.

4. Only when .....on the light did we notice the hole of the ceiling.

5. Not until I asked a passer -by ..... where I was.

6. Seldom does .....below freezing at this time of the year.

7. Hardly ..... his speech, when the minister interrupted.

8. On no account am .....while I am in a meeting.

9. Rarely has .....this school written a better composition.

10. In no way ..... bear responsibility for injured passengers.

**XI. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word or words in capitals, and so that the meaning stay the same.**

a. Were Smith to resign, I might stand a chance of getting his job.

IF

---

b. Such was the demand for the tickets that people queued day and night.

GREAT

---

c. The money is not to be paid under no circumstances.

NO

---

d. Three days passed before we arrived at the first oasis.

NOT UNTIL

---

e. Hardly had the ship left port, than a violent storm developed.

SOON AFTER

---

f. They would have discovered land sooner had they carried a compass.

IF

---

g. Little did Brenda know what she was letting herself in for.

IDEA

---

h. It was only when I stopped that I realized something was wrong.

DID I

---

i. The accused never expressed regret for what he had done.

AT NO TIME

---

j. So exhausted were the runners that none of them finished the race.

TOO.

---

**XII. Rewrite these sentences with the adverbial phrase of direction or place at the front of clause. Use inversion where possible.**

- 1. The people dived for cover as the bullets flew over their heads.  
.....
- 2. That night, just as John has predicted , a heavy snowfall came down.  
.....
- 3. The two men were talking in front of the station.  
.....
- 4. A line of police officers was behind the protesters.  
.....
- 5. A small stream ran at the end of the street. There was an overgrown garden across the stream.  
.....
- 6. She could hear the sound of the tractor and suddenly it came round the corner.  
.....
- 7. A white pillar was in front of them and a small, marble statue stood on top of it.  
.....
- 8. The teacher blew a whistle and the children ran off.  
.....



## Chương 12 CÂU (SENTENCES)

---

### I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (DEFINITION):

Câu là một nhóm từ thường bao gồm một chủ ngữ và một động từ, diễn đạt một lời nói, một câu hỏi hoặc một mệnh lệnh.

### II. PHÂN LOẠI CÂU (CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES)

Câu có thể được phân loại theo cấu trúc hoặc công dụng.

#### 1. Phân loại theo cấu trúc.

Khi phân loại theo cấu trúc, câu gồm 4 loại: câu đơn, câu hợp, câu phức và câu phức hợp.

##### 1.1. Câu đơn (simple sentence): là câu chỉ có một động từ được chia (finite verb)

Eg: The child cried. (*Đứa bé khóc thét lên*)

Hurricanes and other tropical storms are both frightening and dangerous.  
(*Bão lốc và các cơn bão nhiệt đới khác vừa đáng sợ vừa nguy hiểm*)

##### 1.2. Câu hợp (compound sentence): Câu hợp là câu gồm hai hay nhiều mệnh đề độc lập được kết nối với nhau bằng liên từ (and, but, for, nor, or, so ...) hoặc bằng một dấu chấm phẩy.

Eg: She told a folk and we all listened to her. (*Bà ấy kể một câu chuyện dân gian và tất cả chúng tôi lắng nghe bà ấy*)

We moved to Florida in 1978; however, we stayed only five years and then returned to Ohio.

(*Chúng tôi chuyển đến Florida vào năm 1978; Tuy nhiên chúng tôi chỉ ở đó 5 năm sau đó trở lại Ohio.*)

Câu hợp có thể được rút gọn bằng cách bỏ đi chủ ngữ và trợ động từ (nếu có) trong mệnh đề thứ hai nếu chúng giống với mệnh đề thứ nhất.

Eg: We ask him now or (we) wait him until tomorrow.

(*Chúng ta hỏi anh ấy ngay hay đợi anh ta đến ngày mai.*)

Eg: He is sitting and (he is) listening to me.

(Anh ấy đang ngồi và nghe tôi nói.)

**1.3. Câu phức (Complex sentence):** Câu phức là câu gồm một mệnh đề chính (main clause) và một hay nhiều mệnh đề phụ (subordinate clause).

Eg: The thief ran away when he saw a policeman.

Main clause                      subordinate clause

(Tên trộm đã chạy mất khi hắn nhìn thấy cảnh sát.)

Eg: The little girl whom you saw yesterday is my youngest sister.

subordinate clause

(Cô bé bạn gặp hôm qua là em gái út của tôi.)

**1.4. Câu phức hợp (Composite sentences):** Câu phức hợp là câu có hai hay nhiều mệnh đề chính và một hay nhiều mệnh đề phụ.

Eg: As they trusted me, they gave it to me and (they) asked me to preserve it.

(Vì họ tin tôi nên họ đưa nó cho tôi và yêu cầu tôi bảo quản nó.)

- Câu trên có một mệnh đề phụ: As they trusted me; và hai mệnh đề chính: they gave it to me and (they) asked me to preserve it.

When the sky darkened and the cold wind blew, she hurriedly crossed the forest and tried to find a footpath.

(Khi bầu trời tối sầm lại và gió lạnh bắt đầu thổi, cô ấy vội vàng băng qua rừng và cố tìm một con đường mòn.)

- Câu trên có hai mệnh đề phụ: When the sky darkened và the cold wind blew; hai mệnh đề chính: she hurriedly crossed the forest và (she) tried to find a footpath.

**2. Phân loại câu theo công dụng (sentence classified according to usage):**

Khi phân loại theo công dụng, câu gồm 4 loại: câu trần thuật, câu nghi vấn, câu mệnh lệnh và câu cảm thán.

**2.1. Câu trần thuật (declarative sentences):**

Câu trần thuật là câu dùng để nói lên ý nghĩ, tình cảm của mình hoặc để thuật lại một sự việc nào đó. Câu trần thuật có thể ở dạng khẳng định (affirmative) hoặc phủ định (negative).

Ex: He speaks English very well. (Anh ấy nói tiếng Anh rất hay)

I like to go shopping (Tôi thích đi mua sắm)

Câu phủ định được tạo thành bằng cách thêm **not** vào trợ động từ (*be, have, do, must, can,...*) hoặc dùng các trạng từ phủ định *never, hardly, scarcely...* trước động từ chính.

Ex: They **don't work** on Saturday. (*Thứ 7 họ nghỉ làm.*)

I **will never agree** to their demands.

(*Tôi sẽ không bao giờ đồng ý với những yêu cầu của họ.*)

Câu phủ định cũng có thể được thành lập bằng cách thêm *no* trước danh từ hoặc *not* + *to* + động từ ở dạng khẳng định.

Ex: *No music is allowed* after eleven. (*Không được mở nhạc sau 11 giờ.*)

[= Music **isn't** allowed after eleven]

There are **no** new houses in the village.

(*Trong làng chẳng có ngôi nhà nào mới cả.*)

[= There **aren't** any new houses in the village.]

## 2.2. Câu nghi vấn (interrogative sentences):

Câu nghi vấn là câu dùng để hỏi. Câu nghi vấn gồm các loại sau:

### a. Câu hỏi có – không (yes – no question)

Câu hỏi có – không là dạng câu hỏi mà câu trả lời là có (yes) hoặc không (no).

#### ❖ Câu hỏi xác định (affirmative questions)

Trong dạng câu hỏi này, trợ động từ (auxiliary verbs: *be, have, will, can, may, must...*) thường được đặt trước chủ ngữ (subject):

#### Auxiliary verb + subject + verb?

Ex: **Is it raining?** – Yes, it **is**. / No, it **isn't**

(*Có phải trời đang mưa không? – Vâng, đúng vậy. / Không, không phải.*)

**Have you received my letter yet?** – Yes, I **have** / No, I **haven't**.

(*Bạn đã nhận được thư của tôi chưa? – Vâng, tôi nhận được rồi. / Chưa, tôi chưa nhận được.*)

**Will Tom be here tomorrow?** – Yes, he **will** / No, he **won't**.

(*Ngày mai Tom sẽ đến chứ? – Vâng, anh ấy sẽ đến / Không, anh ấy sẽ không đến.*)

**Can Emma drive?** – Yes, she **can** / No, she **can't**.

(*Emma có biết lái xe không? – Có, cô ấy biết / Không, cô ấy không biết.*)

- Nếu trong câu không có trợ động từ, ta dùng trợ động từ *do* (*do, does, did*) để đặt câu hỏi.

Ex: **Do you like Mozart?** – Yes, I **do** / No, I **don't**.

(*Anh có thích nhạc Mozart không? – Có, tôi thích / Không, tôi không thích.*)

**Does the bus run down town?** – Yes, it **does** / No, it **doesn't**.

(*Xe buýt này có chạy xuống phố không? – Có / Không.*)

**Did you go climbing last weekend?** – Yes, we **did** / No, we **didn't**.

(*Cuối tuần rồi các bạn có đi leo núi không? – Có, chúng tôi có đi / Không, chúng tôi không đi.*)

- Động từ chính *be* cũng đứng trước chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi.

Ex: **Is she a student?** – Yes, she **is** / No, she **isn't**.

(*Cô ấy là học sinh phải không? – Vâng, đúng vậy / Không, không phải.*)

➤ Cách trả lời cho câu hỏi xác định: trả lời **Yes** có nghĩa là đúng và **No** có nghĩa là không đúng.

Ex: **Are you a student?** (*Bạn có phải là học sinh không?*)

- **Yes, I am** (*Vâng, đúng vậy.*)

- **No, I am not. I left school last year.**

(*Không, không phải. Tôi đã tốt nghiệp năm ngoái.*)

❖ **Câu hỏi phủ định (negative questions):**

Câu hỏi phủ định được thành lập bằng cách thêm **not (n't)** vào sau trợ động từ.

Ex: **Isn't she a doctor?** (*Cô ấy không phải là bác sĩ sao?*)

**Can't you swim?** (*Anh không biết bơi sao?*)

**Doesn't the bus run down town?** (*Xe buýt này không chạy xuống phố à?*)





Câu hỏi phủ định thường được dùng:

- **Diễn đạt sự ngạc nhiên** (*Vì điều gì đó không xảy ra.*)

Ex: **Didn't you** hear the bell? I rang it four times.

(*Anh không nghe tiếng chuông sao? Tôi đã bấm chuông bốn lần.*)

**Isn't he** at home? (*Không có ông ấy ở nhà sao?*)

- Khi người nói đang mong đợi người nghe đồng ý với mình (như dạng câu hỏi đuôi)

Ex: **Aren't you** a friend of Harriet's?

[= You're a friend of Harriet's, aren't you?]

(*Chẳng phải anh là bạn của Harriet sao?*)

**Haven't we** met somewhere before?

[= We have met somewhere before. Haven't you?]

(*Chẳng phải trước đây chúng ta đã gặp nhau ở đâu đó rồi sao?*)

**Isn't it** a lovely day? [= It's a lovely day, isn't it?]

(*Hôm nay chẳng phải là một ngày đẹp trời sao?*)

➤ Cách trả lời cho câu hỏi phủ định: trả lời **No** có nghĩa là đúng và **Yes** có nghĩa là không đúng.

Ex: **Haven't you** repaired the car yet? (*Anh chưa sửa xe sao?*)

- **No**, I haven't had time. (*Chưa, tôi không có thời gian.*)

- **Yes**, I did it yesterday. (*Rồi, tôi đã sửa nó hôm qua.*)

\* **Lưu ý:** đôi khi câu hỏi **yes/ no**, đặc biệt là các câu hỏi với các động từ tình thái, được dùng để đưa ra lời gợi ý, lời yêu cầu, lời đề nghị, lời mời hoặc xin phép.

Ex: **Shall we** eat out tonight?

(*Tối nay chúng ta ăn ngoài ăn nhé*) → lời gợi ý (*suggestion*)

**Could you** wait a moment, please?

(*Anh vui lòng đợi một chút có được không?*) → lời yêu cầu (*request*)

**Can I** carry your bag? (*Tôi xách hộ túi cho bạn nhé?*) → lời đề nghị (*offer*)

**Would you** like to come to the party? (*Anh đến dự tiệc nhé?*) → lời mời (*invitation*)

**May I** go out? (*Tôi có được phép ra ngoài không?*) → xin phép (*asking permission*)

## b. Câu hỏi Wh- (Wh- questions):

Câu hỏi Wh- là loại câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng các nghi vấn từ (question words) *who, whom, which, what, where, when, why, how...*

## ? Question word + auxiliary verb + subject + verb?

Ex: **Who** are you talking about? (*Các bạn đang nói chuyện về ai vậy?*)

**When** will the war be over? (*Khi nào chiến tranh sẽ kết thúc?*)

**What** can we do for the poor?

(*Chúng ta có thể làm được gì cho người nghèo?*)

**Where** do you come from? (*Các bạn từ đâu đến?*)



- Khi *who, what, which* làm chủ ngữ của câu hỏi, không dùng trợ động từ *do, does, did* và trật tự của từ giống trong câu trần thuật.

Ex: **Who telephoned** you last night? (*Tối qua ai đã gọi điện cho anh vậy?*)

[NOT ~~who did telephone~~...]

**What will happen** next? (*Chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra nữa đây?*)

**Which bus** goes to the city center?

(*Xe buýt nào đi vào trung tâm thành phố?*)

[NOT ~~which bus does go~~...]

- Động từ chính *be* cũng đứng trước chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi.

Ex: **Where is** Kitty? (*Kitty đâu?*)

**What was** that noise? (*Tiếng ồn đó là tiếng gì vậy?*)

\* Một số cụm từ dùng để hỏi: *what time, what kind of, what sort of, what colour, how often, how long, how far, how high, how much, how many, how old* v.v

Ex: **What time** is your friend arriving? (*Mấy giờ bạn của anh sẽ đến?*)

**How much** money did you spend? (*Anh đã tiêu hết bao nhiêu tiền?*)

**\* Lưu ý:** khi chúng ta hỏi về thông tin chúng ta thường nói **Do you know...?** hoặc **Could you tell me...?** v.v. Nếu bạn bắt đầu câu hỏi bằng các cụm từ này, thì trật tự từ trong câu sẽ khác với câu đơn.

Ex: **Where has** Tom gone? (*Tom đi đâu vậy?*)

But: Do you know where **Tom has gone**? (*Anh có biết Tom đi đâu không?*)

Who is **that man**? (*người đàn ông đó là ai vậy?*)

But: Can you tell me who **that man is**?

(*Anh có thể cho tôi biết người đàn ông đó là ai không?*)

### c. Câu hỏi đuôi (tag questions/ question tags):

Câu hỏi đuôi (question tags) là câu hỏi ngắn được thêm vào cuối câu trần thuật (statements). Câu hỏi đuôi thường được dùng để kiểm tra điều gì đó có đúng hay không, hoặc để yêu cầu sự đồng ý.

Ex: You haven't seen Mary today, have you?

(*Hôm nay anh chưa gặp Mary, phải không?*)

It was a good film, wasn't it? – Yes, I really enjoyed it.

(*Đó là một bộ phim hay phải không? - Vâng, tôi rất thích nó.*)

Câu hỏi đuôi thường được dùng trong văn nói, và đôi khi trong văn viết thân mật.

❖ Hình thức (form):

Câu hỏi đuôi được thành lập bằng một trợ động từ (hoặc động từ *be*) và một đại từ nhân xưng (chỉ chủ ngữ của câu)

?

**Auxiliary verb (+ not) + pronoun**

• Câu hỏi đuôi phủ định (negative question tag) được dùng sau câu trần thuật xác định (positive statement). Hình thức phủ định thường được rút gọn (not = n't)

?

**Positive statement + negative tag**

Ex: The children **can** swim, **can't** they? (*Bọn trẻ biết bơi phải không?*)

• Câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định (positive question tag) được dùng sau câu trần thuật phủ định (negative statement).

?

**Negative statement + positive tag**

Ex: David **hasn't** got a car, **has** he? (*David không có ô tô phải không?*)

- Nếu trong câu trần thuật có trợ động từ (hoặc động từ *be*) thì trợ động từ này được lặp lại trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: Mary **will** be here soon, **won't** she? (*Mary sẽ đến đây sớm phải không?*)

The meeting **is** at ten, **isn't** it? (*Cuộc họp bắt đầu lúc 10 giờ phải không?*)

I **shouldn't** laugh, **should** I? (*Tôi không nên cười phải không?*)

We **don't** have to pay, **do** we? (*Chúng tôi không phải trả tiền phải không?*)

- Nếu câu trần thuật không có trợ động từ, dùng trợ động từ *do (do, does, did)*  
Ex: You live near here, **don't** here? (*Bạn sống gần đây phải không?*)  
Karen plays the piano, **doesn't** she? (*Karen chơi dương cầm phải không?*)  
You locked the door, **didn't** you? (*Anh đã khóa cửa rồi phải không?*)
- Cách trả lời câu hỏi đuôi: câu trả lời **Yes** có nghĩa câu khẳng định là đúng và **No** có nghĩa câu phủ định là đúng.

Ex: Claire is married, isn't she? (*Claire đã kết hôn phải không?*)  
- **Yes**, she has just married. (*Vâng, cô ấy vừa mới kết hôn.*)  
- **No**, of course she isn't. (*Không dĩ nhiên là cô ấy chưa kết hôn.*)  
Andrew hasn't got many friends, has he?  
(*Andrew không có nhiều bạn phải không?*)  
- **No** (vâng) [= He hasn't got many friends.]  
- **Yes** (không phải) [= He has a lot of friends.]

### \* Lưu ý:

- Câu hỏi đuôi của *I am* là *aren't I?*  
Ex: I **am** late, **aren't** I? (*Tôi bị trễ phải không?*) [= am I not]  
- *There* có thể làm chủ ngữ của câu hỏi đuôi.  
Ex: There is something wrong, isn't **there**? (*Có điều gì không ổn phải không?*)  
- Sau *Let's ...* dùng câu hỏi đuôi *shall we?*  
Ex: **Let's** go for a walk, **shall we**? (*Chúng ta đi dạo nhé?*)  
- Sau câu mệnh lệnh (*Do... / Don't do...*) câu hỏi đuôi thường là *will you?*  
Ex: **Give** me a hand, **will you**? (*Giúp tôi một tay được không?*)  
**Don't make** any noise, **will you**? (*Đừng làm ồn được không?*)  
+ *won't you?* Thường được dùng trong lời mời (nhất là trong tiếng Anh của người Anh)  
Ex: Do sit down, **won't you**? (*Mời ngồi.*)  
+ *can/ can't you? Could you? Hoặc would you?* Cũng có thể được dùng trong câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định.  
Ex: Wait here a moment, **can you**? (*Đợi ở đây một lát được chứ?*)  
Open the window, **would you**? (*Hãy mở cửa sổ, được chứ?*)  
- Câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định được dùng sau những câu có các đại từ hoặc trạng từ phủ định *never, nothing, nobody, no, none, hardly, scarcely, little*  
Ex: You **never** say what you're thinking, **do you**?  
(*Bạn không bao giờ nói ra những điều bạn nghĩ phải không?*)  
It's **no** good, **is it**? (*Điều đó không tốt phải không?*)  
**Nothing** was said, **was it**? (*Không ai nói gì phải không?*)

- Đại từ *it* được dùng trong câu hỏi đuôi thay cho *all, nothing* và *everything*.

Ex: **Everything can happen, can't it?**

*(Mọi chuyện đều có thể xảy ra, đúng không?)*

- Đại từ *they* được dùng thay cho *anyone, nobody, no one, somebody, someone, everybody, everyone*.

Ex: **Someone had recognized him, hadn't they?**

*(Có người đã nhận ra anh ta phải không?)*

**No one** would object, would **they**?

*(Không ai phản đối phải không?)*

#### ❖ Ý nghĩa và ngữ điệu (meaning and intonation)

Trong văn nói, ý nghĩa của câu hỏi đuôi tùy thuộc vào ngữ điệu:

- Nếu bạn xuống giọng ở câu hỏi đuôi có nghĩa là bạn không thật sự đặt câu hỏi, bạn chỉ muốn người nghe đồng ý với bạn.

Ex: **It's a nice day, isn't it?** – Yes, lovely.

*(Một ngày đẹp trời phải không? – Vâng, thật đẹp)*

Tom doesn't look well today, doesn't he? – No, he looks very tired.

*(Hôm nay Tom có vẻ không khỏe phải không? – Vâng, anh ấy có vẻ mệt.)*

- Nếu lên giọng ở câu hỏi đuôi, thì đó là câu hỏi thật sự.

Ex: **You haven't seen Mary today, have you?** – No, I'm afraid not.

*(Hôm nay anh chưa gặp Mary phải không? – Vâng, tôi chưa gặp)*

- Câu trần thuật phủ định + câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định (negative statement + positive tag) thường được dùng để hỏi về điều gì đó, hoặc yêu cầu ai làm điều gì. Câu hỏi được lên giọng ở phần cuối câu.

Ex: **You don't know where Karen is, do you?**

*(Bạn không biết Karen ở đâu à?)*

**You couldn't lend me a pound, could you?**

*(Anh không thể cho tôi mượn một bảng à?)*

#### d. Câu hỏi trần thuật (declarative questions):

Trong văn nói, chúng ta có thể dùng dạng câu hỏi mang hình thức câu trần thuật và lên giọng ở cuối câu. Dạng câu hỏi này có thể được dùng khi người nói nghĩ là họ biết hoặc đã hiểu điều gì đó, nhưng muốn hỏi lại cho chắc hoặc bày tỏ sự ngạc nhiên.

Ex: **You're working late tonight?**

*(Tối nay anh sẽ làm việc đến khuya à?)*

**That's** the boss? I thought he was the cleaner.

*(Sếp đó hả? Tôi tưởng ông ta là người quét dọn chứ?)*

Trật tự này thường không thể dùng sau từ để hỏi.

Ex: Where **are** you going? [NOT where-you-are going?]

**e. Câu hỏi đáp lại (reply questions):**

Chúng ta thường có thể đáp lại một câu kể bằng một câu hỏi ngắn để biết thêm thông tin.

Ex: I'm going out. – **Who with?** *(Tôi sẽ đi chơi – Với ai?)*

Anne is leaving her job. – **When?** *(Anne sẽ thôi việc. – Khi nào?)*

Can you talk to Tom this afternoon? – **Why me?**

*(Chiều nay anh nói chuyện với Tom được không? – Sao lại là tôi?)*

Câu hỏi ngắn gồm trợ động từ + đại từ (auxiliary verb + pronoun) cũng có thể được dùng để bày tỏ sự chú ý hoặc quan tâm. Dạng câu hỏi này không phải để hỏi thông tin mà chỉ cho thấy phản ứng của người nghe với những điều đã được nói.

Ex: We had a lovely holiday. – **Did you?**

*(Chúng tôi đã có kỳ nghỉ thật thú vị. – Vậy sao?)*

I've got a headache. – **Have you?** I'll get you an aspirin.

*(Tôi bị đau đầu. – Thế à? Để tôi lấy cho bạn một viên aspirin.)*

Để hỏi lại điều mới được nói, ta lặp lại điều nghe được và lên giọng cuối câu. Nếu chỉ muốn hỏi một phần trong câu, thì ta có thể đặt từ để hỏi thay cho phần ta muốn hỏi.

Ex: I'm getting married. – **You're getting married?**

*(Tôi sẽ kết hôn. - Bạn sẽ kết hôn à?)*

She's invited thirteen people to dinner. – She's invited **how many?**

*(Cô ấy đã mời 13 người đến ăn tối – Cô ấy mời bao nhiêu người?)*



#### f. Câu hỏi tu từ (rhetorical questions):

Câu hỏi tu từ được dùng như một biện pháp tu từ để làm cho câu văn hoặc câu nói trở nên bóng bẩy, ngụ ý và lôi cuốn. Câu hỏi tu từ không đòi hỏi câu trả lời.

Ex: Do you know what time it is? (*Anh có biết mấy giờ rồi không?*)

[= You're late. (*Anh trễ rồi đấy*)]

Who's a lovely baby? (*Đứa bé đáng yêu nào thế này?*)

[= You're a lovely baby (*Con là một đứa bé đáng yêu*)]

Have you lost your tongue? (*Bạn bị thụt mất lưỡi rồi à?*)

[= Why don't you say anything? (*Sao bạn không nói gì vậy?*)]

Câu hỏi Yes- No phủ định thường ám chỉ một tình huống khẳng định.

Ex: Haven't I done enough for you? (*Tôi làm chưa đủ cho bạn hay sao?*)

[= I have done enough for you.]

#### 2.3. Câu mệnh lệnh (imperative sentences):

Câu mệnh lệnh là câu được dùng để bảo, ra lệnh hoặc yêu cầu ai làm việc gì đó. Câu mệnh lệnh được chia thành hai loại: mệnh lệnh khẳng định và mệnh lệnh phủ định.

a. Câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định (affirmative imperative) thường bắt đầu bằng động từ nguyên mẫu không to (bare-infinitive)

#### ? Verb (bare-inf) + object/ preposition

Ex: **Bring** another chair. (*Hãy mang lại cái ghế khác.*)

**Get** out of here. (*Hãy ra khỏi đây.*)

**Open** the door. (*Hãy mở cửa.*)

- Do có thể được đặt trước động từ nguyên mẫu để nhấn mạnh câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định.

Ex: **Do sit** down. (*Ngồi xuống đi*)

**Do be** quiet. (*Im lặng nào*)

b. Câu mệnh lệnh phủ định (negative imperative) được thành lập bằng do not (don't) + động từ nguyên mẫu.

#### ? Don't + verb (bare-inf) + object

Ex: **Don't be** silly! (*Đừng ngốc thế!*)

**Don't throw** trash on the street. (*Đừng vứt rác trên đường.*)

**Don't do** that again or you'll be in trouble.

(*Đừng lặp lại chuyện đó nếu không bạn sẽ gặp rắc rối đấy.*)

➤ Câu mệnh lệnh thường không có chủ ngữ, nhưng chúng ta có thể dùng danh từ hoặc đại từ để nhấn mạnh hoặc chỉ rõ chúng ta đang nói với ai.

Ex: **Somebody** tell me the truth. (*Ai đó hãy nói cho tôi biết sự thật đi.*)

**Mary** come here – **everybody else** stay where you are.

(*Mary đến đây – còn những người khác hãy ở nguyên vị trí.*)

Don't **anybody** say a word. (*Không ai được nói lời nào.*)

[~~NOT anybody don't say...~~]

- **You** được dùng trước câu mệnh lệnh để nhấn mạnh sự thuyết phục hoặc sự giận dữ.

Ex: **You** take your hand off me. (*Anh hãy lấy tay ra khỏi người tôi.*)

**You** sit down and relax for a bit. (*Bạn hãy ngồi xuống nghỉ một lát.*)

Don't **you** believe (*Anh đừng tin điều đó*) [~~NOT you don't believe it~~]

- Chủ từ có thể được diễn đạt bằng một danh từ đứng cuối cụm từ.

Ex: Eat your breakfast, **boys**. (*Các cậu bé, hãy ăn điểm tâm đi.*)

Come in, **Tom**. (*Vào đi Tom.*)

➤ *Always* và *never* có thể đứng trước câu mệnh lệnh.

Ex: **Always** remember what I told.

(*Hãy luôn nhớ những điều tôi đã nói với anh.*)

**Never** speak to me like that again.

(*Đừng bao giờ nói với tôi như thế nữa.*)

➤ Câu mệnh lệnh có thể được thành lập với **Let (+object) + bare-infinitive**.

Ex: **Let** me see. (*Hãy để tôi xem nào.*)

**Let's (Let us)** go home. (*Chúng ta hãy về nhà.*)

**Let's** not open the door. (*Chúng ta đừng mở cửa.*)

[= Don't let's open the door]

**Let** them go by train. (*Hãy để họ đi bằng xe lửa.*)

➤ **Please** (Xin vui lòng) có thể được thêm vào đầu hoặc cuối câu mệnh lệnh khi muốn yêu cầu hoặc ra lệnh một cách lịch sự.

Ex: **Please** come in. (*Xin mời vào.*)

Wait a moment, **please** (*Vui lòng đợi một lát.*)

**Please** don't be late. (*Xin đừng đến muộn.*)

➤ Ngoài ra còn có một số từ hoặc cụm từ có thể được dùng để yêu cầu người nào đó làm điều gì đó: *can / could / will / would you...?; Would / do you mind...?; would you be kind/ good enough...?*



Ex: **Will/ Would you** (please) shut the door?

(Vui lòng đóng giúp cửa được không?)

**Could you** lend me ten pound? (Anh có thể cho tôi mượn 10 bảng không?)

**Would/ Do you** mind sitting in the back?

(Anh vui lòng ngồi phía sau được không?)

## 2.4. Câu cảm thán (Exclamatory sentence):

Câu cảm thán là câu được dùng để diễn đạt cảm xúc hay thái độ (ngạc nhiên, thán phục, tội nghiệp, kinh miệt, ghê tởm, thú vị,...) của một người trước một người, sự vật hoặc sự việc nào đó.

Ex: **How fast** he runs! (Anh ấy chạy nhanh thật!)

**What a lovely** girl! (Cô gái đáng yêu quá!)

Câu cảm thán thường được thành lập với *how*, *what*, *so*, *such* và hình thức câu hỏi phủ định.



### ! Câu cảm thán với *how* (exclamations with *how*)

#### ✍ **How + adjective!**

Ex: **How beautiful!** (Đẹp quá!)

**How dreadful!** (Khủng khiếp quá!)

#### ✍ **How + adjective/ adverb + subject + verb!**

Ex: **How dirty** the dog is! (Con chó dơ quá!)

**How pale** she looks! (Cô ấy có vẻ xanh xao quá!)

**How well** he plays the guitar! (Anh ấy chơi ghi-ta mới hay làm sao!)

**How beautifully** you sing! (Bạn hát hay quá!)

#### ✍ **How + subject + verb!**

Ex: **How you've grown!** (Cháu lớn nhanh quá!)



### ! Câu cảm thán với *what* (exclamations with *what*)

#### ✍ **What + a/ an + (adjective) + singular countable noun**

Ex: **What a terrible** noise! (Tiếng ồn kinh khủng quá!)

**What an intelligent** girl! (Thật là một cô gái thông minh!)

**What a nuisance!** (Thật phiền toái!)

#### ✍ **What + (adjective) + uncountable/ plural noun**

Ex: **What awful** weather! (Thời tiết khó chịu làm sao!)

**What lovely** flowers! (Hoa đẹp quá!)

What rubbish! (*Thật là đồ rác rưởi!*)

✍ **What (+a/ an) + adjective + noun + subject + verb!**

Ex: What a beautiful smile your sister has! (*Chị của bạn có nụ cười đẹp quá!*)

What nice shoes you've got on! (*Đôi giày bạn đang mang đẹp quá!*)

What rubbish he writes! (*Anh ta viết tệ làm sao!*)

! **Câu cảm thán với *so* và *such* (exclamations with *so* and *such*)**

✍ **So + adjective!**

✍ **Such (+ a/ an) + adjective + noun!**

Ex: He is **so fat!** (*Anh ta mập quá!*)

It was **such a boring speech!** (*Bài diễn văn buồn tẻ quá!*)

She has **such an expensive coat!**

(*Cô ấy có cái áo khoác đắt tiền làm sao!*)



- Không dùng *a/ an* trước danh từ số nhiều (plural noun) và danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun)

Ex: You have **such good books!** (*Bạn có những quyển sách hay làm sao!*)

- *Such* có thể được dùng trước danh từ không có tính từ.

Ex: She's **such a baby!** (*Cô ấy trẻ con quá!*)

! **Dạng câu hỏi phủ định (negative question form):**

Dạng câu hỏi phủ định cũng có thể tạo thành câu cảm thán.

Ex: **Isn't the weather nice!** (*Thời tiết đẹp quá nhỉ!*)

**Hasn't she grown!** (*Cô bé lớn nhanh thật!*)



### III. CHỨC NĂNG VÀ TRẬT TỰ TỪ TRONG CÂU (FUNCTION AND ORDER OF WORDS IN THE SENTENCES)

#### 1. Chức năng của từ trong câu (functions of words in the sentences):

##### a. Chủ ngữ (subjects):

Chủ ngữ là từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ người, sự vật hoặc sự việc thực hiện hoặc chịu trách nhiệm cho hành động của động từ trong câu và thường đứng trước động từ. Mỗi câu trong tiếng Anh đều phải có chủ ngữ, tuy nhiên trong câu mệnh lệnh, chủ ngữ "you" được hiểu ngầm.

- Chủ ngữ có thể là một danh từ hoặc một cụm danh từ.

Ex: **Coffee** is delicious. (*Cà phê rất ngon.*)

**Jane** likes shopping. (*Jane thích đi mua sắm.*)

**My father** is a pilot. (*Cha tôi là phi công.*)

**That new red car** is John's. (*Chiếc xe hơi mới màu đỏ đó là của John.*)

- Chủ ngữ có thể là đại từ.

Ex: **I** usually get up early in the morning.

(*Tôi thường thức dậy sớm vào buổi sáng.*)

**Somebody** called while **you** were out.

(*Khi anh vắng nhà có người nào đó đã gọi điện.*)

- Chủ ngữ cũng có thể là một động từ nguyên thể (to-infinitive) hoặc danh động từ (gerund)

Ex: **To lean out of the window** is dangerous.

(*Nghiêng người ra ngoài cửa sổ rất nguy hiểm.*)

**Refusing invitations** is not always easy.

(*Không phải lúc nào từ chối lời mời cũng dễ dàng.*)

- Trong một số trường hợp, chủ ngữ thật (real subject) không xuất hiện ở vị trí bình thường (trước động từ) mà nó đứng sau động từ. *It* hoặc *there* được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả của câu.

Ex: **It's** hard to believe what he says. [= What **he** says is hard to believe]

(*Thật khó tin được những điều anh ta nói.*)

**There** is a man at the bus-stop. [= **The man** is at the bus-stop]

(*Có một người đàn ông ở trạm xe buýt.*)

##### b. Động từ (verbs):

Động từ là từ theo sau chủ ngữ trong lời nói khẳng định. Động từ diễn đạt hành động hoặc trạng thái của chủ ngữ trong câu.

- Động từ có thể là một từ đơn.

Ex: John **drives** too fast. (*John lái xe quá nhanh.*)

They **speak** English fluently. (*Họ nói tiếng Anh lưu loát.*)

- Động từ có thể là một cụm từ.

Ex: We **are going to** Miami tomorrow. (*Ngày mai chúng tôi sẽ đi Miami.*)

Jane **has been studying** French for five years.

(*Jane đã học tiếng Pháp được 5 năm rồi.*)

c. Bổ ngữ (complements):

Bổ ngữ là từ hoặc cụm từ (thường là một danh từ, cụm danh từ, hoặc tính từ) được dùng để mô tả chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ.

Ex: My father is **a doctor**. (*Cha tôi là bác sĩ.*)

That cat regards Bill **as his father**. (*Con mèo đó xem Bill như cha của nó.*)

Leaves turn **yellow** in Autumn. (*Lá ngả vàng vào mùa thu.*)

- Bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ (subject complement) thường đi sau các động từ *be, look, seem, become, get, feel, turn...*

Ex: Alice is **a ballet dancer**. (*Alice là diễn viên múa ba lê.*)

The weather gets **cold** in the evening (*Thời tiết lạnh vào buổi tối.*)

→ *a ballet dancer* và *cold* làm bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ *Alice* và *the weather* và được gọi là *subject complement*.

- Bổ ngữ cho tân ngữ (object complement) thường đứng ngay sau tân ngữ mà nó bổ nghĩa.

Ex: She called her husband **a liar**. (*Bà ta gọi chồng mình là kẻ dối trá.*)

They painted their house **blue**. (*Họ sơn nhà màu xanh.*)

Why ever did they elect him **chairman**?

(*Sao họ lại bầu ông ta làm chủ tịch?*)

→ *a liar, blue* và *chairman* làm bổ ngữ cho tân ngữ *her husband, their house* và *him* được gọi là *object complement*.

- Bổ ngữ cũng có thể là một từ hoặc cụm từ hoàn thành nghĩa của một động từ, một danh từ hay tính từ.

Ex: We hope **to see** you soon. (*Chúng tôi mong sớm gặp lại bạn.*)

I have no intention **of resigning** (*Tôi không có ý định từ chức.*)

Jane is interested **in learning** to cook. (*Jane thích học nấu ăn.*)

d. Tân ngữ (object)

Tân ngữ hoàn chỉnh nghĩa cho động từ và đứng sau động từ trong câu.

- Tân ngữ có thể là danh từ, đại từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ người (trả lời cho câu hỏi với *who*) và vật (trả lời cho câu hỏi với *what*)

Ex: I love **Susan**. (*Tôi yêu Susan*) [Who do you love?]

He bought **a new car**. (*Anh ấy đã mua xe mới.*) [What did he buy?]

- Tân ngữ có thể là một động từ nguyên mẫu (to-infinitive) hoặc một danh động từ (gerund)

Ex: I want **to go** now. (*Tôi muốn đi bây giờ.*)

Please stop **smoking**. (*Xin đừng hút thuốc nữa.*)

- Tân ngữ cũng có thể là một danh từ, đại từ hoặc cụm từ đứng sau giới từ và được gọi là tân ngữ của giới từ (prepositional object)

Ex: He was lying on **the bed**. (*Anh ta đang nằm trên giường.*)

→ *the bed* là tân ngữ của giới từ *on*.

She talked of **applying** for another job.

(*Cô ấy nói về việc xin một việc làm khác.*)

→ *applying* là tân ngữ của giới từ *of*

**\* Lưu ý:** trong câu không nhất thiết phải có tân ngữ

Ex: The children are playing. (*Bọn trẻ đang chơi.*)

Tuy nhiên một số động từ có thể có hai tân ngữ: tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) và tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object). Tân ngữ trực tiếp thường chỉ vật và tân ngữ gián tiếp thường chỉ người.

Ex: My mother gave **me a bicycle** on my birthday. / My mother gave **a bicycle to me** on my birthday.

(*Mẹ cho tôi một chiếc xe đạp vào ngày sinh nhật tôi.*)



→ *me* là tân ngữ gián tiếp và *a bicycle* là tân ngữ trực tiếp của động từ *gave*.

e. Định ngữ (adjuncts):

Định ngữ là trạng từ hoặc trạng ngữ được dùng để cho biết thời gian, nơi chốn hoặc cách thức của hành động. Định ngữ thường trả lời cho câu hỏi với *when*, *where* và *how*.

Ex: He runs **fast**. (*Anh ấy chạy nhanh*) [how does he run?]

My father came home **yesterday morning**.

(*Cha tôi về nhà sáng hôm qua.*) [When did your father come home?]

We work **in a hospital**.

(*Chúng tôi làm việc ở bệnh viện.*) [Where do you work?]

2. **Trật tự từ trong câu** (the orders of words in the sentences):

Các mẫu câu cơ bản (basic sentence patterns)

a. **Subject + verb**

Ex: The ducks are swimming. (Những con vịt đang bơi.)

S V

She laughed. (Cô ấy cười.)

S V

b. **Subject + verb + adjunct**

Ex: He came home. (Anh ấy đi về nhà.)

S V A

She was lying on the sofa. (Cô ấy đang nằm trên ghế sofa.)

S V A

c. **Subject + verb + subject complement**

Ex: Her sister looks beautiful. (Chị cô ấy trông có vẻ xinh xắn.)

S V SC

Seven is my lucky number. (Số 7 là con số may mắn của tôi.)

S V SC

d. **Subject + verb + object**

Ex: Tom can speak English (Tôm biết nói tiếng Anh.)

S V O

I know her husband. (Tôi quen chồng bà ấy.)

S V O

e. **Subject + verb + indirect object (IO) + direct object (DO)**

Ex: She has just sent him a letter. (Cô ấy vừa gửi thư cho anh ấy.)

S V IO DO

He bought his wife a new car. (Ông ấy mua xe mới cho vợ.)

S V IO DO

f. **Subject + verb + direct object + preposition + indirect object**

Ex: She has just sent a letter to him.

S V DO Pre IO

He bought a new car for his wife.

S V DO Pre IO

**g. Subject + verb + object + object complement (OC)**

Ex: They named their son Tony. (*Họ đặt tên cho con trai là Tony.*)

S V O OC (noun)

You make me nervous (*Anh làm tôi căng thẳng quá.*)

S V O OC (adjective)

We found him sleeping on the pavement.

S V O OC (present participle)

(*Chúng tôi thấy anh ta đang ngủ trên vỉa hè.*)

I had my hair cut. (*Tôi đã đi cắt tóc.*)

S V O OC (past participle)

**h. Subject + verb + preposition + prepositional object**

Ex: He fell into the stream. (*Anh ấy rơi xuống suối.*)

S V Pre O

I was longing for him to invite me to the party.

S V Pre O

(*Tôi đang mong anh ta mời tôi đi dự tiệc.*)

**i. Subject + verb + object + adjunct**

Ex: We took a taxi to Ben Thanh market.

(*Chúng tôi đón taxi đến chợ Bến Thành.*)

S V O A

Did you wind the clock up? (*Anh đã lên dây đồng hồ phải không?*)

S V O A

## EXERCISES

---

### I. Read each situation and write down the question.

1. You want to know if it is raining. *Is it raining?*
2. You need to ask Poly where she lives. *Where do you live?*
3. You want to know if Mark has been to Los Angeles. Ask Sarah.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. You would like to ask Nancy where she bought her coat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. You want to know if Laura plays tennis. Ask Trevor.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. You want to ask Matthew if you can borrow his squash racket.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. On the phone you want to know who you are speaking to.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. You need to know how much video recorders cost.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. You want to ask Adrian what he locked the door for.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. You need to know if David will be at the club tonight. Ask him.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. You are wondering if Claire enjoyed her holiday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. You need to find out how long the journey takes.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. You're in town with a friend, and you are wondering where the two of you are going to have lunch.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. You want to know if the train is on time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. You are wondering if Mike and Harry go camping. Ask David.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. You've forgotten when the course finishes. Ask your friend.  
\_\_\_\_\_



17. You want to ask what happens next.

\_\_\_\_\_

18. You want to suggest to Rachel that you both go for a walk.

\_\_\_\_\_

19. You want to know if Nick has got a motorbike. Ask him.

\_\_\_\_\_

20. You are asking permission to come in.

\_\_\_\_\_

**II. Tony is being interviewed for a job. Look at the notes and the Tony's answers, then write the questions.**

- |                                |                     |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. (How old?) _____            | I'm 18.             |
| 2. (live locally?) _____       | Yes, I do.          |
| 3. (where/ live?) _____        | 5, Sanker St.       |
| 4. (when/ leave school?) _____ | Last year.          |
| 5. (which school/ go?) _____   | Benham School.      |
| 6. (work/ now?) _____          | Yes, I am.          |
| 7. (who/ work for?) _____      | Millers Limited.    |
| 8. (how long?) _____           | For six months.     |
| 9. (enjoy/present job?) _____  | Yes, I do.          |
| 10. (why/ want/ leave?) _____  | The pay isn't good. |
| 11. (work/ Saturdays?) _____   | Yes, I can.         |
| 12. (how/ travel/ work?) _____ | By motorcycle.      |
| 13. (get/ car?) _____          | No, I haven't.      |
| 14. (When/ start?) _____       | Right now.          |

**III. Write the questions to which the underlined words are the answers.**

1. Christopher is going to London by train.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The Smiths have got three cars.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Janet works at the supermarket.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Anne is learning English because she will need it in her job.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The film was really romantic.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The meeting will take place next Tuesday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Tessa switched off the computer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Mr Johnson's burglar alarm was ringing.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Ann went to the dance with Martin.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. The Olympic games are held every four years.  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. I weigh seventy-five kilos.  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. My father is an engineer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. I earn about £250 a week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. It's about 200 meters from here to the post office.  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. The Vietnamese flag is red and yellow.  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. I bought a box of chocolates.  
\_\_\_\_\_
17. My friends are arriving at half past eight.  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. The meeting will last an hour.  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Susan works in a toy shop.  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. We bought this computer magazine to read about business software.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Complete the conversations using the words given.**

1. A: Do you know \_\_\_\_\_? (football boots)  
B: In your sports bag. I expect.
2. A: Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_? (this jacket)  
B: £59.99.
3. A: I'd like to know \_\_\_\_\_. (books about Russia)  
B: They're on the third shelf, beside the window.
4. A: Do you happen to know \_\_\_\_\_? (the last bus)  
B: I think it leaves at half past ten.
5. A: Could you explain \_\_\_\_\_? (this coffee machine)  
B: It's quite simple. You put a coin in here and press the red knob.
6. A: Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_? (the airport)  
B: It's not far from here. About three kilometers.
7. A: Please tell me \_\_\_\_\_. (the manager's office)  
B: It's on the first floor, at the end of the corridor.
8. A: Do you know \_\_\_\_\_? (the first Olympic Games)  
B: 776 BC.
9. A: I can't remember \_\_\_\_\_. (your sister)  
B: She was seventeen last March.
10. A: I can't understand \_\_\_\_\_. (the car)  
B: You've run out of petrol, that's why!

**V. Put a question tag on the end of these sentences.**

1. These sausages are delicious, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ They certainly are.
2. You haven't lived here long, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, only 3 months.
3. It's quite a big garden, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, there's plenty of room.
4. There aren't many people here yet, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, but it's still quite early.
5. Those are Rachel's friends, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, I suppose.
6. Tom won't be late, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, he's never late.
7. Listen, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ OK. I'm listening
8. You arrived at 10:30, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ That's right.
9. These burgers look good, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ I can't wait to try them.

10. We can sit on the grass, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ I think it's dry enough.
11. The weather forecast wasn't very good, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, it wasn't.
12. Let's go to the shade, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, let's.
13. I'm late, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, ten minutes.
14. Don't drop that vase, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, don't worry.
15. You have never had a barbecue before, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, this is the first time.
16. He won't mind if I use his phone, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, of course he won't.
17. Give me the pepper, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, here it is.
18. You don't know where Karen is, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Sorry I've no idea.
19. Melanie speaks French very well, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, she lived in France for three years.
20. There will be enough coffee for everyone, \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, of course.

**VI. What would you say in these situations? Write sentences with a question tag.**

1. You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining, (beautiful day).  
It is a beautiful day, isn't it?
2. You've just come out of the cinema with a friend. You really enjoyed the film. (great)  
The film \_\_\_\_\_
3. You and your friend are listening to a woman singing. You like her voice very much. (a lovely voice)  
She \_\_\_\_\_
4. You are trying on a jacket. You look in the mirror and you don't like what you see. (not/ look/ very good)  
It \_\_\_\_\_
5. Your friend's hair is much shorter than when you last met. (have/ your hair/ cut)  
You \_\_\_\_\_
6. You and your friend are walking over a wooden bridge. It's very old and some parts are broken. (not/ very safe)  
This bridge \_\_\_\_\_

7. You are with a friend outside a restaurant. You're looking at the prices, which are very high. (expensive)

It \_\_\_\_\_

8. Suggest to Vicky that you both listen to some music.

Let's \_\_\_\_\_

9. Warn David not to do anything silly.

Don't \_\_\_\_\_

10. Ask Rachel to pass you the salt.

Pass \_\_\_\_\_

**VII. Read the conversation. Then choose the correct answer.**

*Judy:* (1) \_\_\_\_\_ we go to the party tonight?

*Lisa:* (2) \_\_\_\_\_ giving a party?

*Judy:* Susan. You know her, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ you ?

*Lisa:* I'm (4) \_\_\_\_\_ sure. Has she got long dark hair?

*Judy:* Yes, she (5) \_\_\_\_\_. And she's quite tall. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ you spoken to her?

*Lisa:* (7) \_\_\_\_\_. But I know who you mean. There are two sisters, Susan and Janet. They're twins, (8) \_\_\_\_\_?

*Judy:* Yes, that's right.

*Lisa:* (9) \_\_\_\_\_ one is Susan?

*Judy:* Oh, I (10) \_\_\_\_\_ know. They both look the same. I can't always tell them apart.

*Lisa:* (11) \_\_\_\_\_ can I. In any case, I haven't been invited to the party.

*Judy:* That (12) \_\_\_\_\_ matter.

*Lisa:* OK. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ go to it then, shall we?

- |    |           |          |            |            |
|----|-----------|----------|------------|------------|
| 1. | a. Do     | b. Shall | c. Would   | d. Are     |
| 2. | a. What's | b. Whose | c. Who's   | d. When is |
| 3. | a. don't  | b. do    | c. didn't  | d. aren't  |
| 4. | a. don't  | b. not   | c. no      | d. so      |
| 5. | a. got    | b. has   | c. does    | d. is      |
| 6. | a. Having | b. Don't | c. Haven't | d. Aren't  |
| 7. | a. No     | b. Yes   | c. Not     | d. I have  |

- |     |            |             |               |                |
|-----|------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| 8.  | a. do they | b. are they | c. don't they | d. aren't they |
| 9.  | a. What    | b. Which    | c. Who        | d. Whose       |
| 10. | a. not     | b. don't    | c. am not     | d. no          |
| 11. | a. Neither | b. Either   | c. No         | d. So          |
| 12. | a. doesn't | b. isn't    | c. not        | d. no          |
| 13. | a. Shall   | b. Could    | c. Let's      | d. We          |

**VIII. Write the sentences correctly.**

1. Would like you to go sailing?

---

2. Do you be a student here?

---

3. How many cakes you have eaten?

---

4. I'm too impatient, am I?

---

5. Enjoyed you your trip?

---

6. Where have gone your friends?

---

7. Does Peter plays tennis?

---

8. Don't drop those plates, do you?

---

9. It's hardly rained at all this summer, hasn't it?

---

10. What has it happened?

---

11. Who this calculator belongs to?

---

12. Didn't you watch 'Frankenstein' last night? ~ Yes, I hate horror film.

---

13. What of these magazines would you like? ~ This one, please.

---

14. For what are you looking?

---

15. Let's sit in the garden, haven't we?

---

16. Have ever you been to Thailand?

---

17. Would you like to explain what is the problem?

---

18. How long did it you take to get there?

---

19. Which color are you going to paint it? ~Oh, I don't know yet.

---

20. Why people in your country don't show more respect to the elderly?

---

**IX. Fill in the blanks with the imperative form (positive or negative) of these verbs: *place (2), dean, eat, make, switch, use, put, leave, keep.***

**How to set up your computer**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ your computer on a flat table or desk.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ sure your chair is a comfortable height.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ a screen to protect you from dangerous X-rays.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ it near a fire or the central heating.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ your computer in the sun.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ liquids (water, ect.) on the computer; they may get inside.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ while you're working; food can fall into the keyboard.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ the computer and dust it regularly.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ the floppy disks clean and in their box.
10. Always \_\_\_\_\_ off the computer and the screen when you finish.

**X. Turn into exclamatory sentences. Beginning as shown.**

1. The boy is very clever.                      What  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. She is very tall.                              Isn't  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The novel was interesting.                How  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. They wrote slowly.                          Didn't  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The horses are fast.                        What  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. The dress is expensive.                    How  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The film was frightening.                Wasn't.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. It was warm weather.                      What  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. They work effectively.                    How  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. My friend has a lovely cat.              What  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. He looks like his father.                Doesn't  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Those trousers are dirty.                How  
\_\_\_\_\_
13. The noise is awful.                        What  
\_\_\_\_\_
14. It's very cold today.                      How  
\_\_\_\_\_
15. You've got on nice shoes.                What  
\_\_\_\_\_
16. I feel tired.                                How  
\_\_\_\_\_



17. The house is very old.                      What  
\_\_\_\_\_
18. That's a great song.                      Isn't  
\_\_\_\_\_
19. Marta sings very beautifully.              How  
\_\_\_\_\_
20. She has a beautiful smile.                What  
\_\_\_\_\_

**XI. Write sentences, put these words into the correct order. Do not add or omit any words:**

1. Helen/ giving/ some cassettes/ Jack/ is/ on his birthday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. some new jeans/ recently/ bought / I.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. doesn't/ this climate/ me/ suit.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Diana/ beautiful/ these days/ is becoming/ more and more.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. a bright yellow/ have painted/ they/ their front door!  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. my purse/ under the bed/ I/ found.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. sold/ yesterday/ to our next door neighbor/ the old Renault/ Dad .  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. our friend/ some tulips/ us/ by express mail/ sent.  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. in town/ Bob/ crossing/ saw/ Mary/ the street.  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. a bus/ took/ we/ to the airport  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. answering/ all the time/ hates/ she/ the phone.  
\_\_\_\_\_

12. her/ to be/ all the neighbors/ a widow/ supposed.

---

13. living/ her/ her father/ alone/ would not/ in a big city/ consent to.

---

14. you/ me/ can/ a few minutes/ spare/ of your valuable time?

---

15. important/ regularly/ is/ to go/ it/ to school.

---

16. we/ the encyclopedia/ must/ back/ them/ give/ to.

---

17. short of/ is/ we/ are/ money/ the trouble/ that.

---

18. no one/ leave/ the house/ John/ heard.

---

19. John/ we/ are/ for/ waiting/ to arrive.

---

20. the bus/ knocked/ down/ him.

---



## VĂN PHONG (STYLES)

---

Văn phong (style) là cách hành văn để diễn đạt một câu nói. Có nhiều cách để diễn đạt, ta có thể dùng:

a. Tính từ thay cho danh từ (hoặc ngược lại):

Eg: She had a **determination** to overcome her difficulties. = She was **determined** to overcome her difficulties.

(*Cô ta quyết tâm vượt qua mọi khó khăn.*)

They show no **interest** in the picture. = They aren't **interested** in the picture

(*Họ không thích bức tranh.*)

b. Động từ thay cho danh từ (hoặc ngược lại)

Eg: Can I have a **look** at your new dress? = Can I **look** at your new dress?

(*Tôi có thể xem chiếc áo mới của bạn được không?*)

He had an **intention** of making a journey with her. = He **intended** to make a journey with her. (*Anh ta định đi du lịch với cô ta.*)

c. Thể bị động của động từ thay cho thể chủ động (hoặc ngược lại):

Eg: Mary **has finished** her homework. (*Mary đã làm xong bài tập về nhà.*)

= Mary's homework **has been finished**.

(*Bài tập về nhà của Mary đã được làm.*)

We **should keep** dangerous chemicals in safe places.

(*Chúng ta nên cất giữ hóa chất nguy hiểm ở nơi an toàn.*)

= Dangerous chemicals **should be kept** in safe places

(*Hóa chất nguy hiểm nên được cất ở nơi an toàn*)

d. Trạng từ thay cho tính từ (hoặc ngược lại):

Eg: He is a **careful** driver. (*Anh ấy là một tài xế cẩn thận.*)

= He drives **carefully**. (*Anh ấy lái xe cẩn thận.*)

Tom is a **good** student. (*Tom là một học sinh giỏi.*)

= Tom studies **well**. (*Tom học giỏi.*)



**Lưu ý:** khi thay đổi cách hành văn, ta cần lưu ý sự thay đổi của giới từ, tính từ hoặc phó từ trong câu.

Eg: They gave some **careful thought** to the problem.

= They **thought carefully** about the problem.

(Họ đã suy nghĩ kỹ về vấn đề này.)

He has a **strong desire** to become doctor.

= He **strongly desires** to become a doctor.

(Anh ấy ao ước được trở thành bác sĩ.)

\* Một số từ thường được sử dụng dưới dạng động từ và danh từ

- |                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| 1. to look at           | : to have a look at (nhìn vào)                          |
| 2. to think about/ of   | : to give thought to (nghĩ)                             |
| 3. to be determined to  | : to have a determination to (quyết tâm)                |
| 4. to know (about)      | : to have knowledge of (biết)                           |
| 5. to tend to           | : to have a tendency to (có khuynh hướng)               |
| 6. to intend to + inf   | : to have intention of + V-inf (dự định)                |
| 7. to desire            | : to have a desire (ao ước)                             |
| 8. to wish              | : to have / express a wish (ao ước)                     |
| 9. to visit sb          | : to pay a visit to sb/ to pay sb a visit (thăm viếng)  |
| 10. to discuss sth      | : to have a discussion about sth (thảo luận)            |
| 11. to decide to        | : to make a decision to (quyết định)                    |
| 12. to talk to          | : to have a talk with (nói chuyện)                      |
| 13. to explain sth      | : to give an explanation for sth (giải thích)           |
| 14. to call sb          | : to give sb a call (gọi điện cho...)                   |
| 15. to be interested in | : to have interest in (thích)                           |
| 16. to drink            | : to have a drink (uống)                                |
| 17. to photograph       | : to have a photograph of (chụp hình)                   |
| 18. to cry              | : to give a cry (khóc, kêu)                             |
| 19. to laugh at         | : to give a laugh at (cười nhạo)                        |
| 20. to welcome sb       | : to give sb a welcome (chào đón)                       |
| 21. to kiss sb          | : to give sb a kiss (hôn)                               |
| 22. to ring sb          | : to give sb a ring (gọi điện)                          |
| 23. to warn             | : to give warning (báo động, cảnh báo)                  |
| 24. to try to (+inf)    | : to make an effort to/ to make an attempt to (cố gắng) |
| 25. to meet sb          | : to have a meeting with sb (gặp ai...)                 |
| 26. to succeed          | : to make a success (thành công)                        |
| 27. to be used          | : to be in use (được sử dụng)                           |

28. to rest	: to have a rest (nghỉ ngơi)
29. to sleep	: to have a sleep (ngủ)
30. to bathe	: to have/take a bath (tắm)
31. to examine	: to have an examination (khám, kiểm tra, xem xét)
32. to agree	: to be in agreement (đồng ý)
33. to disagree	: to be in a disagreement (không đồng ý)
34. to contact sb	: to have contact with sb (liên lạc, quan hệ)
35. to exchange	: to have an exchange of (trao đổi)
36. to argue with sb	: to have an argument with sb (tranh cãi với ai)
37. to complain about	: to have a complaint about (phàn nàn về)
38. to land	: to make a landing (hạ cánh)
39. to receive sth	: to be in receipt of sth (nhận...)
40. to need	: to have a need of (cần)
41. to love sb	: to fall in love with sb (yêu ai)
42. to brush sth	: to give sth a brush (chải)
43. to arrange with sb	: to have an arrangement with sb (sắp xếp)

## EXERCISES

---

I. Rewrite these sentences by using the underlined nouns as verbs or adjectives.

1. He had no intention of making a long journey with her.

---

2. Has the city government made a decision to build a hospital for the poor?

---

3. She shows no interest in what she is doing for the company.

---

4. Do most school-leavers have a strong desire to work at a tourist office?

---

5. I don't think they are in disagreement with what we shall do.

---

6. The plan didn't make a success just because most members showed no determination of doing it well.

---

7. During the lesson, she always takes a careful look at all the sentences and examples the teacher is giving.

---

8. My friend expressed a wish to become a pilot.

---

9. You have no need of answering all the questions in their order.

---

10. Please give me a call when you arrive, and we'll have a meeting at a certain restaurant.

---

11. She has no knowledge of what will be because she never gives thought to it.

---

12. She said she would pay me a visit someday.

---

13. He made a decision to leave home.

\_\_\_\_\_

14. I had no intention of staying here.

\_\_\_\_\_

15. She has a great interest in music.

\_\_\_\_\_

16. There was an exchange of English lessons between the two schoolgirls.

\_\_\_\_\_

17. He takes a bath every morning.

\_\_\_\_\_

18. I had an arrangement with the neighbors about feeding the cats.

\_\_\_\_\_

19. There was no explanation for her plan.

\_\_\_\_\_

20. She had a medical examination by a doctor.

\_\_\_\_\_

**II. Rewrite these sentences, using the nouns corresponding to the verbs.**

1. I argued with the referee about his decision.

I had an \_\_\_\_\_

2. Do you agree with John about this?

Are you in \_\_\_\_\_

3. She usually brushes her hair before going out.

She usually gives her hair a \_\_\_\_\_

4. She complained about his rudeness.

She had a number of \_\_\_\_\_

5. Because of engine trouble, the plane had to land on the fields.

Because of engine trouble, the plane had to make a \_\_\_\_\_

6. Just look at this picture.

Take a \_\_\_\_\_

7. I love her very much.

I'm in \_\_\_\_\_

8. We must start early.

We must make an \_\_\_\_\_

9. He received her letter of the 10th.

He was in \_\_\_\_\_

10. After lunch time she usually rests.

After lunch time she usually takes a \_\_\_\_\_

### III. Rewrite the sentences, beginning with the given words.

1. There is a tendency to minimize problems.

They \_\_\_\_\_

2. They show a strong desire to put aside the status of the school child.

They strongly \_\_\_\_\_

3. They thought much about their work.

They gave a \_\_\_\_\_

4. They had little knowledge of the job of their choice.

They \_\_\_\_\_

5. There is a determination to overcome problems.

They are \_\_\_\_\_

6. He visits us whenever he's in town.

He pays \_\_\_\_\_

7. There has been a tendency to choose well-paid jobs.

They have \_\_\_\_\_

8. They spend millions of dollars on advertising every year.

Millions \_\_\_\_\_

9. It's good for you not to have a contact with her.

You'd better \_\_\_\_\_

10. I slept well last night.

I had \_\_\_\_\_

11. Carol Stuart cooks and swims very well.

Carol Stuart is \_\_\_\_\_

12. She has a strong desire for a scholarship.

She strongly \_\_\_\_\_



13. The villagers gave us a cordial welcome.

The villagers \_\_\_\_\_

14. He has no intention of leaving the city.

He doesn't \_\_\_\_\_

15. She teaches English well.

She is \_\_\_\_\_

16. This job has to be done at once.

They \_\_\_\_\_

17. She types with care.

She is \_\_\_\_\_

18. No sooner had we begun our walk than it rained.

Hardly \_\_\_\_\_

19. This woman has very little sleep.

This woman \_\_\_\_\_

20. My grandfather is a lover of music.

My grandfather \_\_\_\_\_

21. He is a careful driver.

He drives \_\_\_\_\_

22. She sings well.

She is \_\_\_\_\_

23. All the arrangements have been made.

They \_\_\_\_\_

24. He is the best football player in his team.

No one \_\_\_\_\_

25. She plays tennis well.

She is \_\_\_\_\_

26. People speak English in Australia.

English \_\_\_\_\_

27. They are building a hospital for the poor.

A \_\_\_\_\_

28. No one has seen her since 1980.

She \_\_\_\_\_

29. He visited his parents last week.

His \_\_\_\_\_

30. We decided to go to Boston.

We had \_\_\_\_\_

# MỘT SỐ KIỂU CẤU TRÚC CÂU CẦN LƯU Ý

## 1. THÔNG TIN THỪA VÀ CẤU TRÚC SONG SONG (REDUNDANCY AND PARALLEL STRUCTURE):

### ❖ THÔNG TIN THỪA (REDUNDANCY) :

Khi thông tin trong câu bị lặp đi lặp lại không cần thiết thì nó bị gọi là thông tin thừa, cần phải loại bỏ phần thừa đó. Ví dụ: Người Anh không dùng *the time when* mà chỉ dùng một trong hai.

- It is (the time/ when) I got home. (*Đã đến lúc tôi đi về nhà*)

Người Anh không dùng *the place where* mà chỉ dùng một trong hai.

- It is (the place/ where) I was born. (*Đó là nơi tôi đã sinh ra*)

**Không dùng song song các từ dưới đây trong cùng một câu:**

advance forward proceed forward progress forward	Cả 3 từ advance, proceed, progress đều có nghĩa tiến lên, tiến về phía trước: "to move in a forward direction". Vì vậy forward là thừa.
return back revert back	Cả 2 từ return, revert đều có nghĩa: "to go back, to send back". Vì vậy back là thừa.
sufficient enough	Hai từ này nghĩa như nhau
compete together	compete = đua tranh, cạnh tranh với nhau "to take part in a contest against others"
reason ... because	Hai từ này có nghĩa như nhau. Mẫu đúng phải là "reason... that"
join together	join có nghĩa "to bring together", "to put together", "to become a part or a member of..."
repeat again	repeat có nghĩa "to say again"
new innovation	innovation có nghĩa là một ý tưởng mới "a new idea"
matinee performance	matinee = buổi biểu diễn chiều
same identical	hai từ này nghĩa giống nhau

two twins	twins = two brothers or sisters
the time when	hai từ này nghĩa giống nhau
the place where	hai từ này nghĩa giống nhau

❖ **CẤU TRÚC SONG SONG (PARALLEL STRUCTURE):**

Khi thông tin trong một câu được đưa ra dưới dạng liệt kê thì các thành phần được liệt kê phải tương ứng với nhau về mặt từ loại (noun - noun, adjective - adjective, ...). Ví dụ:

SAI	ĐÚNG
Mr. Henry is <u>a lawyer</u> , <u>a politician</u> , and <u>he teaches</u> .	Mr. Henry is <u>a lawyer</u> , <u>a politician</u> , and <u>a teacher</u> .
Peter is <u>rich</u> , <u>handsome</u> , and <u>many people like him</u> .	Peter is <u>rich</u> , <u>handsome</u> , and <u>popular</u> .
The cat approached the mouse <u>slowly</u> and <u>silent</u> .	The cat approached the mouse <u>slowly</u> and <u>silently</u> .
She like <u>to fish</u> , <u>swim</u> and <u>surfing</u> .	She like <u>to fish</u> , <u>to swim</u> and <u>to surf</u> . She like <u>fishing</u> , <u>swimming</u> and <u>surfing</u> .
When teenagers finish high school, they have several choices: <u>going to college</u> , <u>getting a job</u> , or <u>the army</u> .	When teenagers finish high school, they have several choices: <u>going to college</u> , <u>getting a job</u> , or <u>joining the army</u> .
Tim <u>entered</u> the room, <u>sat</u> down, and <u>is opening</u> his book.	Tim <u>entered</u> the room, <u>sat</u> down, and <u>opened</u> his book.

Tuy nhiên nếu thời gian trong các mệnh đề khác nhau của câu là khác nhau thì động từ cũng phải tuân theo qui luật thời gian. Lúc đó cấu trúc câu song song về thời của các động từ (như ví dụ ở dòng cuối bảng trên) không được áp dụng. Ví dụ:

She is a senior, studies every day, and will graduate a semester early.

## 2. CÂU GIẢ ĐỊNH (SUBJUNCTIVE):

Câu giả định hay còn gọi là câu cầu khiến là loại câu đối tượng thứ nhất muốn đối tượng thứ hai làm một việc gì. Câu giả định có tính chất cầu khiến chứ không mang tính ép buộc như câu mệnh lệnh. Trong câu giả định, người ta dùng dạng nguyên thể không có "to" của các động từ sau một số động từ chính mang tính cầu khiến. Thường có "that" trong câu giả định trừ một số trường hợp đặc biệt.

### Dùng với "would rather that"

Ngữ pháp hiện đại ngày nay đặc biệt là ngữ pháp Mỹ cho phép dùng *would rather* mà không cần dùng *that* trong loại câu này.

We would rather (that) he not take this train.

### Dùng với động từ

Bảng sau là những động từ đòi hỏi mệnh đề sau nó phải ở dạng giả định và trong câu bắt buộc phải có *that* trong trường hợp đó.

advise	ask	command	decree
demand	insist	move	order
prefer	propose	recommend	request
require	stimulate	suggest	urge

Động từ sau chủ ngữ thứ hai ở dạng nguyên thể không chia bỏ *to*. Nếu muốn thành lập thể phủ định đặt **not** sau chủ ngữ hai trước nguyên thể bỏ *to*.

Subject + verb + *that* + subject + [verb in simple form] + ...

The doctor suggested that his patient stop smoking.

(*Bác sĩ đề nghị bệnh nhân ngừng hút thuốc*)

The doctor suggested that his patient not stop smoking.

Nếu bỏ **that** đi thì chủ ngữ hai sẽ trở về dạng tân ngữ và động từ sau nó trở về dạng nguyên thể có *to*, câu mất tính chất giả định, trở thành một dạng mệnh lệnh thức gián tiếp.

The doctor suggested his patient to stop smoking.

The doctor suggested his patient not to stop smoking.

Trong ngữ pháp Anh-Anh trước động từ ở mệnh đề hai thường có **should**, người Anh chỉ bỏ **should** khi sau nó là động từ *to be* nhưng ngữ pháp Anh-Mỹ không dùng **should** cho toàn bộ động từ ở mệnh đề thứ hai.

### Dùng với tính từ

Bảng sau là một số các tính từ đòi hỏi mệnh đề sau nó phải ở dạng giả định, trong câu bắt buộc phải có **that** và động từ sau chủ ngữ hai ở dạng nguyên thể bỏ **to**.

advised	important	mandatory
necessary	obligatory	proposed
recommended	required	suggested
urgent	imperative	

Lưu ý rằng trong bảng này có một số tính từ là phân từ hai cấu tạo từ các động từ ở bảng trên. Nếu muốn cấu tạo phủ định đặt **not** sau chủ ngữ thứ hai, trước động từ nguyên thể bỏ **to**.

It + be + adj + *that* + S + [verb in simple form]

It is necessary that he find the books.

(Điều cần thiết là anh ấy phải tìm những cuốn sách đó)

It is necessary that he not find the books.

(Điều cần thiết là anh ấy không phải tìm những cuốn sách đó)

It has been proposed that we change the topic.

(Điều được đề xuất là chúng tôi nên thay đổi chủ đề)

It has been proposed that we not change the topic.

(Điều được đề xuất là chúng tôi không nên thay đổi chủ đề)

Nếu bỏ **that** đi thì chủ ngữ thứ hai sẽ biến thành tân ngữ sau giới từ **for**, động từ trở về dạng nguyên thể có **to** và câu mất tính chất giả định trở thành dạng mệnh lệnh thực gián tiếp.

It is necessary for him to find the books.

It is necessary for him not to find the books.

It has been proposed for us to change the topic.

It has been proposed for us not to change the topic.

### Lưu ý:

- Câu giả định dùng với hai loại trên thường được dùng trong các văn bản hoặc thư giao dịch diễn đạt lời đề nghị từ phía A → B mà không có tính bắt buộc.
- Không chỉ có động từ và tính từ mới được dùng theo dạng này, tất cả các danh từ xuất phát từ những động từ và tính từ trên đều buộc mệnh đề sau nó phải ở dạng giả định, nếu như nó diễn đạt các yếu tố trên.

There is suggestion from the doctor that the patient stop smoking.

(Có một đề nghị từ bác sĩ rằng bệnh nhân phải ngừng hút thuốc.)

It is recommendation that the vehicle owner be present at the court.

(Đề nghị chủ phương tiện phải có mặt ở tòa.)

### **Thể giả định trong một số trường hợp khác**

- Dùng để diễn đạt một ước muốn hoặc một lời nguyện rủa, thường bao hàm các thể lực siêu nhiên.

God be with you = Good bye.

Curse this toad: Chết tiệt cái con cóc này.

- Dùng với động từ **May** trong một số trường hợp đặc biệt sau:

- Come what may = Dù thế nào chẳng nữa, dù bất cứ chuyện gì.

Eg: Come what may we will stand by you.

(Dù thế nào chẳng nữa, chúng tôi cũng ở bên cạnh bạn)

- May as well not do sth .... if .... = Có thể đừng..... nếu không.

Eg: You may as well not come if you can't be on time.

(Các anh có thể đừng đến nếu không đến được đúng giờ.)

- May/Might (just) as well do smt = Chẳng mất gì mà lại không, mất gì của bộ.

Eg: Since nobody wants that job, we might (just) as well let him have it.

(Vì không ai thích việc này, mình chẳng mất gì mà lại không cho hắn ta làm nó)

- May diễn đạt một lời đề nghị mà người nói cho rằng chưa chắc nó đã được thực hiện: (không dùng *should* trong trường hợp này).

The sign on the lawn says clearly that people may not walk on the grass.

(Biển báo trên bãi cỏ chỉ rõ rằng mọi người không được giẫm lên cỏ)

- *May + S + link verb + adj* hoặc *May + S + verb + complement* (Cầu chúc cho).

May you both very happy. (Chúc các bạn bách niên giai lão.)

May the conference be successful. (Chúc hội nghị thành công rực rỡ)

Long may she live to enjoy her good fortune.

(Chúc cho nàng sống lâu để hưởng vận may của nàng.)

- If need be = If necessary = Nếu cần

If need be, we can take another road.

(Nếu cần chúng tôi đi một con đường khác)

- o Dùng với động từ **to be**, bỏ **to** sau **if** để chỉ một sự giả định chưa được phân định rõ ràng là đúng hay sai.

If that be right, then it would be no defence for this man to say he's innocent.

- o Let it be me: Giả sử đó là tôi, giá phải tay tôi.

Husband: Let it be me.

Wife (suddenly appearing): If that be you, what would you do.

- o Be that as it may... = whether that is true or not... = Cho dù là phải thế hay không.

Be that as it may, you have to accept it.

*(Cho dù là phải thế hay không thì bạn cũng phải chấp nhận nó)*

- o Then so be it: Cứ phải vậy thôi.

If we have to pay \$2,000, then so be it.

*(Nếu chúng ta phải trả 2000 đô la thì cứ phải trả thôi.)*

### 3. CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ DỄ GÂY NHẦM LẪN:

Những động từ dễ gây nhầm lẫn:

Những động từ ở bảng sau rất dễ gây nhầm lẫn về mặt ngữ nghĩa, chính tả hoặc phát âm.

Nội động từ			
Nguyên thể	Quá khứ	Quá khứ phân từ	V-ing
rise	rose	risen	Rising
lie	lay	lain	lying
sit	sat	sat	sitting

Ngoại động từ			
Nguyên thể	Quá khứ	Quá khứ phân từ	V-ing
raise	raised	raised	raising
lay	laid	laid	laying
set	set	set	setting



- To rise: Dâng lên, tự nâng lên, tự tăng lên.

Prices have risen more than 10% this year.

(Năm nay giá cả tăng hơn 10%)

He rose early so that he could play golf before the others.

(Anh ấy dậy sớm để có thể chơi gôn trước những người khác)

When oil and water mix, oil raises to the top.

(Khi đổ dầu vào nước thì dầu sẽ nổi lên trên)

The sun raises early in the summer.

(Mặt trời mọc sớm vào mùa hè)

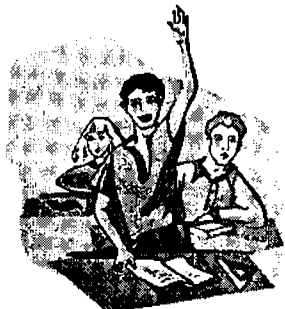
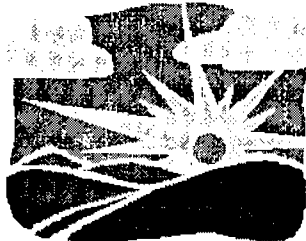
- To raise smt/sb: Nâng ai, cái gì lên.

OPEC countries have raised the price of oil.

(Các quốc gia OPEC phải nâng giá dầu)

The students raise their hands in class.

(Học sinh giơ tay xây dựng bài ở trong lớp)



- To lie: Nằm, ở, tại.
- To lie in: ở tại
- To lie down: nằm xuống.
- To lie on: nằm trên.

Don't disturb Mary, she has laid down for a rest.

(Đừng làm phiền Mary, cô ấy đang nằm nghỉ)

The university lies in the western section of town.

(Trường đại học nằm ở phía Tây của thị trấn)



**Lưu ý:** Cần phân biệt động từ này với *to lie* (nói dối) trong mẫu câu *to lie to sb about st* (nói dối ai về cái gì):

He is lying to you about the test. (*Anh ấy nói dối bạn về bài kiểm tra*)

- To lay smt: đặt, để cái gì vào vị trí nào đó
- To lay smt on: đặt trên
- To lay smt in: đặt vào
- To lay smt down: đặt xuống.

Don't lay your clothes on the bed.

(*Đừng để quần áo lên trên giường*)

The enemy soldiers laid down their weapons and surrendered.

(*Quân thù đặt vũ khí xuống và đầu hàng*)

**\* Lưu ý:** Thời hiện tại của động từ này rất dễ gây nhầm lẫn với quá khứ đơn giản của động từ *to lie*. Cần phải phân biệt bằng ngữ cảnh cụ thể.

- To sit: ngồi
- To sit in: ngồi tại, ngồi trong.
- To sit on: ngồi trên (đã ngồi sẵn).
- To set = to put, to lay: đặt, để.

We are going to sit in the fifth row at the opera.

(*Chúng tôi sẽ ngồi ở hàng ghế thứ năm trong nhà hát*)

Nobody has sat through as many boring lectures as Peter has.

(*Không một ai ngồi nghe hết cả buổi thuyết trình nhiều như Peter*)

After swimming, she sat on the beach to dirt off.

(*Sau khi bơi, cô ấy ngồi trên bờ biển cho khô*)



**\* Lưu ý:** Phát âm hiện tại đơn giản của động từ này rất dễ lẫn với Simple past của *to sit*.

- To set smt: đặt cái gì, bày cái gì, để cái gì

The botanist set his plants in the sun so that they would grow.

(*Nhà thực vật học đặt những chậu cây dưới ánh mặt trời để chúng có thể lớn lên*)

The little girl help her father set the table every night.

(Cô bé giúp bố bày bàn ăn mỗi tối)



• Một số các thành ngữ dùng với các động từ trên:

o to set the table for: bày bàn để.

My mother has set the table for the family dinner.

(Mẹ tôi đã bày bàn ăn cho bữa tối của cả gia đình)

o to lay off (workers, employees): cho thôi việc, giãn thợ.

The company had to lay off twenty-five employees because of a production slow down.

(Công ty phải cho 25 công nhân nghỉ việc bởi vì sản xuất bị giảm sút)

o to set (broken bone) in: bó những cái xương gãy vào.

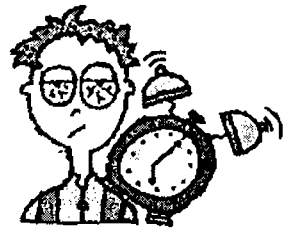
Dr. Jacobs has set many broken bones in plaster casts.

(Bác sĩ Jacobs đã bó những chiếc xương bị gãy bằng khuôn thạch cao)

o to set one's alarm for: đặt đồng hồ báo thức vào lúc.

John set his alarm for six o'clock.

(John đặt đồng hồ báo thức vào lúc 6 giờ)



o to set fire to: làm cháy

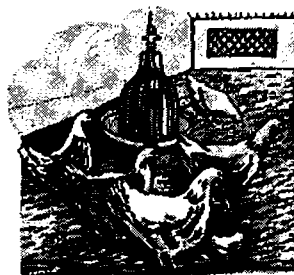
While playing with matches, the children set fire to the sofa.

(Trong khi nghịch diêm, những đứa trẻ làm cháy ghế sô-pha)

o to raise (animals, plants) for a living: trồng cái gì, nuôi con gì bán để lấy tiền.

That farmer raises chickens for a living.

(Người nông dân đó nuôi gà để kiếm sống)



#### 4. SỰ KHÁC NHAU GIỮA BRITISH ENGLISH VÀ AMERICAN ENGLISH

Một số điểm khác nhau thuộc về ngữ pháp giữa tiếng Anh của người Anh (British English) và tiếng Anh của người Mỹ (American English)

British English	American English
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Danh từ có thể đứng sau các động <i>appear, feel, look, seem</i> và <i>sound</i> eg: He <b>seemed</b> (to be) a good pilot. It <b>looks</b> (to be) a lovely evening. I <b>felt</b> a fool.</li> <li>• Thì hiện tại hoàn thành (the present perfect) được dùng cho hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ có kết quả ở hiện tại. eg: Bob <b>has washed</b> these dishes, look. Sally isn't here. She's <b>gone out</b>.</li> <li>• Thì hiện tại hoàn thành được dùng với các từ <i>just, already, yet, ever, never</i>. eg: We've <b>already eaten</b> our lunch. <b>Have you finished</b> your homework yet? The child <b>has never seen</b> snow before.</li> <li>• <i>Will</i> hoặc <i>shall</i> có thể được dùng với <i>I</i> or <i>we</i>. eg: I <b>will/ shall</b> be here tomorrow. We <b>will/shall</b> contact you. <i>Shall I ? Shall we ?</i> được dùng để xin lời khuyên, đưa ra lời đề nghị v.v</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>To be</i> hoặc <i>like</i> luôn được dùng sau các động từ động <i>appear, feel, look, seem, sound</i>. eg: He <b>seemed to be/ like</b> a good pilot. It <b>looks to be/ like</b> a lovely evening. I <b>felt like</b> a fool.</li> <li>• Thì hiện tại hoàn thành (the present perfect) hoặc thì quá khứ đơn (the past simple) có thể được dùng. eg: Bob <b>has washed/ washed</b> the dishes, look. Sally isn't here. She <b>has gone out/ went out</b>.</li> <li>• Thì hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc thì quá khứ đơn có thể được dùng. eg: We <b>have already eaten/ already ate</b> our lunch. <b>Have you finished/ Did you finish</b> your homework yet? The child <b>has never seen/ never saw</b> snow before.</li> <li>• <i>Shall</i> thường không được dùng để nói về tương lai. eg: I <b>will</b> be here tomorrow. We <b>will</b> contact you. <i>should I? should we?</i> thường được dùng để xin lời khuyên, đưa ra lời đề nghị v.v</li> </ul>

eg: Which way **shall we go**?

**Shall I** make the coffee?

• Có thể dùng *needn't* hoặc *don't need*.

eg: We **needn't** hurry./ We **don't need** to hurry.

• Thì hiện tại, thì quá khứ hoặc *should* thường được dùng sau *demand, insist, suggest, ... và it's important/ essential that...*

eg: Tim's parents have suggested that he **gets/ should get** a job.

It's important that everything **goes/ should go** according to plan.

I demanded that he **apologized/ should apologise**.

• Mạo từ *the* được dùng trước nhạc khí

eg: I can play **the piano**.

• Mạo từ *the* không được dùng trước hospital (to/ in hospital)

eg: The injured were taken **to the hospital**.

• Các danh từ tập hợp như: *government, team, family, crowd, v.v* có thể đi với động từ số ít hoặc số nhiều.

eg: The team **is/ are** playing well.

The crowd **was/ were** getting restless.

• *Can't* được dùng để nói rằng điều gì đó không thể xảy ra.

eg: Which way **should we go**?

**Should I** make the coffee?

• *Needn't* thường không được dùng  
eg: We **don't need** to hurry.

[NOT...~~needn't to hurry~~]

• Hiện tại giả định (present subjunctive) thường được dùng. *Should* thường không được dùng sau *demand, insist, suggest...*

eg: Tim's parents have suggested that he **get** a job.

It's important that everything **go** according to plan.

I demanded that he **apologise**.

• Mạo từ *the* có thể được bỏ

eg: I can play **(the) piano**.

• Mạo từ *the* luôn được dùng trước hospital (to/ in the hospital)

eg: The injured were taken **to the hospital**.

• Các danh từ tập hợp thường đi với động từ số ít

eg: The team **is** playing well

The crowd **was** getting restless.

• *Can't* hoặc *mustn't* có thể được dùng để nói điều không thể xảy ra.

eg: I rang, but there's no reply. They **can't/ mustn't** be at home.

eg: I rang, but there's no reply. They **can't** be at home.

- At the weekend/ at weekends

eg: Will you be **at the weekend**?

- In a street/ road/ avenue

eg: Do you live **in Bond street**?

- Different from/ to

eg: This cup is **different from/ to** the others.

- Write to somebody

eg: Please write **to** me soon.

- Các động từ *burn, learn, smell, spill, spoil* có thể là động từ có quy tắc (*burned, learned...*) hoặc bất quy tắc (*burnt, learnt...*)

eg: You've **spelt/ spelled** this word wrong.

- Quá khứ phân từ (past participle) của *get* là *got*.

eg: Your driving **has got** better.

- Have got = have

eg: I've **got** two brothers.

- On the weekend/ on weekends

eg: Will you be **on the weekend**?

- On a street/ road/ avenue

eg: Do you live **on Bond street**?

- Different from/ than

eg: This cup is **different from/ than** the others.

- Write (to) somebody

eg: Please write **(to)** me soon.

- Các động từ *burn, learn, smell, spell, spill, spoil* thường là động từ có quy tắc (*burned, learned...*)

eg: You've **spelled** this word wrong.

- Quá khứ phân từ (past participle) của *get* là *gotten*.

eg: Your driving **has gotten** better.

- Have got = have

eg: I've **got** two brothers

## 5. BẢNG ĐỘNG TỪ BẤT QUY TẮC

Hiện tại	Quá khứ	P <sub>II</sub>	NGHĨA
am/is/are	was/were	been	thì, là, ở
arise	arose	arisen	xuất hiện
bear	bore	borne	sinh ra
beat	beat	beaten	đánh đập
become	became	become	trở nên
begin	began	begun	bắt đầu

bend	bent	bent	<i>cúi, gập</i>
bet	bet	bet	<i>đánh cuộc</i>
bite	bit	bitten	<i>cắn</i>
bleed	bled	bled	<i>chảy máu</i>
blow	blew	blown	<i>thổi</i>
break	broke	broken	<i>làm vỡ</i>
breed	bred	bred	<i>nuôi</i>
bring	brought	brought	<i>mang</i>
build	built	built	<i>xây dựng</i>
burn*	burnt	burnt	<i>đốt cháy</i>
burst	burst	burst	<i>bùng</i>
buy	bought	bought	<i>mua</i>
catch	caught	caught	<i>bắt</i>
choose	chose	chosen	<i>chọn lựa</i>
come	came	come	<i>đến</i>
cost	cost	cost	<i>trị giá</i>
creep	crept	crept	<i>bò</i>
cut	cut	cut	<i>cắt</i>
dig	dug	dug	<i>đào</i>
do	did	done	<i>làm</i>
draw	drew	drawn	<i>vẽ</i>
dream*	dreamt	dreamt	<i>mơ</i>
drink	drank	drunk	<i>uống</i>
drive	drove	driven	<i>lái xe</i>
eat	ate	eaten	<i>ăn</i>
fall	fell	fallen	<i>té xuống</i>
feed	fed	fed	<i>cho ăn</i>
feel	felt	felt	<i>cảm thấy</i>
fight	fought	fought	<i>đánh nhau</i>
find	found	found	<i>tìm thấy</i>

fit	fit	fit	<i>vừa vặn</i>
fly	flew	flown	<i>bay</i>
forecast	forecast	forecast	<i>dự báo</i>
forget	forgot	forgot(ten)	<i>quên</i>
forgive	forgave	forgiven	<i>tha thứ</i>
freeze	froze	frozen	<i>đông lạnh</i>
get	got	got(ten)	<i>đạt được</i>
give	gave	given	<i>cho</i>
go	went	gone	<i>đi</i>
grind	ground	ground	<i>nghiền</i>
grow	grew	grown	<i>mọc, trồng</i>
hang	hung	hung	<i>treo</i>
have	had	had	<i>có</i>
hear	heard	heard	<i>nghe</i>
hide	hid	hidden	<i>che giấu</i>
hit	hit	hit	<i>đánh</i>
hold	held	held	<i>cầm</i>
hurt	hurt	hurt	<i>làm đau</i>
keep	kept	kept	<i>giữ</i>
know	knew	known	<i>biết</i>
lay	laid	laid	<i>đặt</i>
lead	led	led	<i>dẫn dắt</i>
learn*	learnt	learnt	<i>học</i>
leave	left	left	<i>rời khỏi</i>
lend	lent	lent	<i>cho mượn</i>
let	let	let	<i>cho phép</i>
lose	lost	lost	<i>mất</i>
make	made	made	<i>làm</i>
mean	meant	meant	<i>nghĩa là</i>
meet	met	met	<i>gặp</i>



overcome	overcame	overcome	<i>vượt qua</i>
pay	paid	paid	<i>trả tiền</i>
put	put	put	<i>đặt, để</i>
quit	quit	quit	<i>thoát ra</i>
read	read	read	<i>đọc</i>
ride	rode	ridden	<i>đạp xe</i>
ring	rang	rung	<i>reo, rung</i>
rise	rose	risen	<i>mọc lên</i>
run	ran	run	<i>chạy</i>
say	said	said	<i>nói</i>
seek	sought	sought	<i>tìm kiếm</i>
sell	sold	sold	<i>bán</i>
send	sent	sent	<i>gửi đi</i>
set	set	set	<i>đặt</i>
shake	shook	shaken	<i>lắc</i>
shoot	shot	shot	<i>bắn</i>
shut	shut	shut	<i>đóng lại</i>
sing	sang	sung	<i>hát</i>
sink	sank	sunk	<i>chìm</i>
sit	sat	sat	<i>ngồi</i>
sleep	slept	slept	<i>ngủ</i>
slide	slid	slid	<i>trượt</i>
smell*	smelt	smelt	<i>ngửi</i>
speak	spoke	spoken	<i>nói</i>
speed	sped	sped	<i>tăng tốc</i>
spell	spelt	spelt	<i>đánh vần</i>
spend	spent	spent	<i>tiêu xài</i>
spill	spilt	spilt	<i>trào ra</i>
spread	spread	spread	<i>lan truyền</i>
stand	stood	stood	<i>đứng</i>

sting	stung	stung	<i>chích</i>
strike	struck	struck	<i>đánh</i>
swear	swore	sworn	<i>thề</i>
sweep	swept	swept	<i>quét</i>
swim	swam	swum	<i>bơi</i>
swing	swung	swung	<i>đánh đu</i>
take	took	taken	<i>cầm, nắm</i>
teach	taught	taught	<i>day</i>
tear	tore	torn	<i>xé</i>
tell	told	told	<i>báo, kể</i>
think	thought	thought	<i>suy nghĩ</i>
throw	threw	thrown	<i>ném</i>
thrust	thrust	thrust	<i>đâm</i>
understand	understood	understood	<i>hiểu</i>
wake	woke	woken	<i>đánh thức</i>
wear	wore	worn	<i>mặc</i>
weave	wove	woven	<i>dệt</i>
weep	wept	wept	<i>khóc</i>
wet	wet	wet	<i>làm ướt</i>
win	won	won	<i>thắng</i>
write	wrote	written	<i>viết</i>

\* Có thể thêm "ed" để thành lập V<sub>2</sub> hoặc P<sub>II</sub>.

# KEY

---



- VII.** 2. me                      6. her                      10. me - myself  
           3. him                      7. himself                11. us - ourselves  
           4. myself                 8. you                    12. yourself  
           5. us                        9. them-themselves
- VIII.** 1. b                      6. d                        11. c  
           2. a                        7. b                        12. b  
           3. a                        8. a                        13. a  
           4. c                        9. c                        14. d  
           5. b                        10. c                      15. b
- IX.** 2. somebody-anybody                      8. something-anybody  
       3. any    9. Anybody  
       4. something-something                    10. somebody-something  
       5. anything                                    11. Anybody  
       6. something                                 12. some  
       7. somebody-anybody
- X.** 1. nobody                                      6. anything  
       2. Everyone-no one                        7. everywhere-nothing  
       3. anything                                    8. nobody  
       4. somewhere-Someone                    9. something  
       5. Nothing                                    10. Nobody-anything
- XI.** 1. their                      4. likes - they            7. have  
       2. his                         5. wants - they         8. come  
       3. are                         6. it                        9. has - their  
       10. is
- XII.** 1. of                      2. of                      3.- (.)                    4 - (.)                    5. -(.)  
       6. of                      7. of                      8. - (.)                    9. of                      10. of  
       11.- (.)                    12.- (.)                    13.- (.)                    14- (.)
- XIII.** 3. Many people                            8. all the time  
           4. Some of the photographs                9. most of the time  
           5. Some people                                10. Most people  
           6. most of the food                            11. half (of) the questions  
           7. all (of) the money                         12. None of the shops

- |             |                   |               |                         |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| <b>XIV.</b> | 2. none-All       | 6. each       | 10. Both-either-Neither |
|             | 3. both           | 7. either     |                         |
|             | 4. neither - Both | 8. neither    |                         |
|             | 5. none           | 9. none - All |                         |
| <b>XV.</b>  | 1. a              | 6. b          | 11. a                   |
|             | 2. d              | 7. c          | 12. c                   |
|             | 3. a              | 8. b          | 13. d                   |
|             | 4. d              | 9. b          | 14. b                   |
|             | 5. c              | 10. c         | 15. c                   |

➤ DANH TỪ (NOUNS)

- |             |                     |                       |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| <b>I.</b>   | 1. C                | 2. U                  | 3. U            | 4. U  | 5. C  |       |       |       |
|             | 6. U                | 7. C                  | 8. U            | 9. C  | 10. C |       |       |       |
|             | 11. U               | 12. C                 | 13. U           | 14. C | 15. U |       |       |       |
|             | 16. U               | 17. U                 | 18. U           | 19. U | 20. C |       |       |       |
| <b>II.</b>  | 3. a key            | 7. a letter           | 11. music       |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 4. sugar            | 8. a moment           | 12. electricity |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 5. blood            | 9. a coat             | 13. an apple    |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 6. an interview     | 10. luck              | 14. Cheese      |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 15. sand            |                       |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
| <b>III.</b> | 1. time             | 3. a painting         | 5. an orange    |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 2. an experience    | 4. a paper            | 6. fruits       |       |       |       |       |       |
| <b>IV.</b>  | 2. a light          | 9. doesn't            |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 3. light            | 10. very good weather |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 4. time             | 11. Your hair is-it   |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 5. a wonderful time | 12. a piece of advice |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 6. job              | 13. stone             |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 7. experience       | 14. a paper           |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
|             | 8. any paper        | 15. means             |                 |       |       |       |       |       |
| <b>V.</b>   | 1. b                | 3. a                  | 5. c            | 7. b  | 9. c  | 11. d | 13. c | 15. d |
|             | 2. c                | 4. d                  | 6. a            | 8. d  | 10. c | 12. a | 14. b |       |

**VI.**

- |                 |           |             |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. garbage      | 4. change | 7. traffic  |
| 2. screwdrivers | 5. junk   | 8. music    |
| 3. thunder      | 6. rivers | 9. homework |
| 10. hardware    |           |             |

**VII.**

- |          |                |              |            |
|----------|----------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. were  | 9. likes       | 17. are      | 25. has    |
| 2. has   | 10. is         | 18. isn't    | 26. is     |
| 3. work  | 11. don't      | 19. weren't  | 27. were   |
| 4. are   | 12. does or do | 20. confirms | 28. have   |
| 5. wears | 13. isn't      | 21. is       | 29. aren't |
| 6. is    | 14. works      | 22. are      | 30. is     |
| 7. are   | 15. is         | 23. is       |            |
| 8. have  | 16. has        | 24. is       |            |

**VIII.**

- |              |             |          |
|--------------|-------------|----------|
| 1. has       | 6. remember | 11. is   |
| 2. Are or Is | 7. are      | 12. are  |
| 3. think-is  | 8. is       | 13. has  |
| 4. are       | 9. live     | 14. is   |
| 5. is        | 10. is      | 15. Have |

**IX.**

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 3. glass → glasses                                    | 4. persons → people                  |
| 5. ✓  | 6. was → were                        |
| 7. is → are   | 8. a wonderful news → wonderful news |
| 9. ✓  | 10. Leafs → Leaves                   |
| 11. a new pyjama → new pyjamas/ a pair of new pyjamas |                                      |
| 12. luggages → luggage                                |                                      |
| 13. are → is  |                                      |
| 14. ✓   |                                      |
| 15. Has → Have  |                                      |

**X.**

- |                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 2. leather shoes       | 6. the dining room carpet  |
| 3. a five-year-old boy | 7. the Marketing Director  |
| 4. working clothes     | 8. a glass medicine bottle |
| 5. a factory inspector | 9. shoe shops              |
| 10. a credit card      |                            |





5. The region's main industry is tourism.
6. This year's prices are even lower.
7. A five minutes' rest is enough for me.
8. From here it's a two hours' drive.
9. I'll see you in a week's time.
10. The yesterday's paper reported...

## ➤ **TÍNH TỪ (ADJECTIVE)**

**I.** pleasant, ideal, quiet, short, popular, lovely, friendly, helpful, good, marvelous, excellent, local

**II.**

- |                     |                 |              |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. a. disappointing | b. disappointed |              |
| 2. a. exhausting    | b. exhausted    |              |
| 3. a. depressing    | b. depressed    | c. depressed |
| 4. a. exciting      | b. exciting     | c. excited   |
| 5. a. bored         | b. boring       |              |

**III.**

- |                         |                 |             |
|-------------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 2. exciting             | 11. annoying    |             |
| 3. embarrassing         | 12. depressed   |             |
| 4. embarrassed          | 13. exhausting  |             |
| 5. amazed               | 14. confusing   |             |
| 6. astonishing          | 15. frightened  |             |
| 7. amused               | 16. tiring      |             |
| 8. terrifying; shocked  | 17. fascinating |             |
| 9. bored; boring        | 18. excited     |             |
| 10. boring; interesting | 19. thrilling   | 20. puzzled |

**IV.**

- |               |              |                 |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 2. confusing  | 5. surprised | 8. amusing      |
| 3. interested | 6. exhausted | 9. annoyed      |
| 4. boring     | 7. excited   | 10. interesting |

**V.**

- |                |                  |              |
|----------------|------------------|--------------|
| 1. exciting    | 3. disappointing | 5. confusing |
| 2. surprised   | 4. puzzled       | 6. bored     |
| 7. interesting |                  |              |

## VI.

- |             |                |               |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| 2. tired    | 5. amused      | 8. thrilling  |
| 3. relieved | 6. interested  | 9. exhausting |
| 4. annoyed  | 7. fascinating | 10. shocked   |

## VII.

2. a lovely old glass vase
3. a new green pullover
4. a small black metal box
5. an antique silver sugar basin
6. big black leather shoes
7. a nice new blue dress
8. an attractive wall mirror
9. an expensive wooden garden seat
10. an interesting old French painting
11. a famous Italian opera singer
12. long straight black hair
13. valuable Australian postage stamps
14. red metal kitchen chairs
15. a splendid old model boat
16. a long boring train journey
17. some nice easy quiz questions
18. a beautiful sunny day
19. a long wide avenue
20. a big fat black and yellow cat

## VIII.

2. This is a powerful Japanese business computer.
3. This is an excellent small electric fire.
4. This is a big new chocolate bar.
5. This is a terrific American television comedy.
6. These are stylish aluminium garage doors.
7. Those are wonderful modern sports shoes.
8. This is a very good German mobile phone.

**IX.**

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 2. feel fine        | 6. sounded... interesting |
| 3. smell nice       | 7. seemed upset           |
| 4. look wet         | 8. am getting hungry      |
| 5. became... boring | 9. look terrible          |
|                     | 10. became violent        |

**X.**

2. twelve-storey building
3. language teachers
4. three-act play
5. two-day sale
6. seventy-nine-piece tool set
7. sixteen-ounce cans of tomatoes
8. six-quart pressure cooker
9. brick houses
10. ten-speed bicycle

**XI.**

- |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 2. Every | 4. every | 6. Each  | 8. each  | 10. Each |
| 3. each  | 5. every | 7. every | 9. Every |          |

**XII.**

- |            |                |          |
|------------|----------------|----------|
| 1. both    | 3. either      | 5. every |
| 2. Neither | 4. each/ every | 6. whole |

**XIII.**

- |             |                            |
|-------------|----------------------------|
| 2. a lot of | 6. a lot of                |
| 3. many     | 7. many                    |
| 4. a lot of | 8. much                    |
| 5. much     | 9. many - many - a lot of  |
|             | 10. much - much - a lot of |

**XIV.**

- |           |             |             |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| 2. little | 5. a little | 8. Few      |
| 3. few    | 6. a few    | 9. a little |
| 4. a few  | 7. little   | 10. a few   |

**XV.**

- |             |             |                          |
|-------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| 1. many     | 6. a few    | 11. much                 |
| 2. much     | 7. much     | 12. many - much          |
| 3. many     | 8. A little | 13. little               |
| 4. little   | 9. a few    | 14. many - much - little |
| 5. a little | 10. few     | 15. few - little         |

**XVI.**

1. Are you going on holiday this year?
2. That was a very good idea of yours.
3. You've got a lot of books, haven't you?
4. I don't know the time of the meeting.
5. Nigel has hurt his leg.
6. All (of) the rooms in the house were cold.
7. Each of the four doors was locked.
8. I live my life and my sister lives hers.
9. Both the socks have got holes in them.
10. Here's a copy of this week's magazine.
11. This sweater is losing its color.
12. I want some paper, but there's none in here.
13. He quickly put a few things into a bag.
14. I take photos, but not as many as I used to.
15. There were cars parked along every street in town.

**XVII.**

2. I've lived here most of my life.
3. Your house is bigger than ours.
4. I've forgotten the name of my doctor.
5. We've had little warning of the changes.
6. So many people have applied for the job.
7. I met an old friend of yours at a party.
8. Neither of the chairs is/ are comfortable.
9. Every hotel was full.
10. My holiday starts in ten days' time.

## ▶ TRẠNG TỪ (ADVERBS)

### I.

Adverb	Position	Adverb	Position
1. Once	front	6. politely	mid
2. often	mid	7. immediately	mid
3. patiently	end	8. again	end
4. Soon	front	9. Suddenly	front
5. dramatically	mid	10. even	mid
		11. always	mid

### II.

3. Wrong: doesn't like coffee very much
4. Right
5. Wrong: immediately phoned Tom
6. Wrong: go to bed late
7. Wrong: hardly ever gets angry
8. Right
9. Wrong: usually has to hurry
10. Wrong: at school today
11. Wrong: We were all tired
12. Wrong: an old friend on my way home
13. Wrong: tall enough
14. Right
15. Wrong: peacefully at his home.

### III.

2. am always
3. has probably gone
4. would certainly recognize
5. clearly crossed
6. will probably rain
7. didn't fully understand
8. were both born

9. were soon working
10. occasionally visited it / visited it occasionally
11. always has to hurry
12. probably won't be
13. has obviously forgotten
14. are usually
15. surprisingly easy

#### IV.

2. We certainly can't afford a new car./ Certainly we can't...
3. Tom cut the paper carefully./ Tom carefully cut the paper.
4. The tourists didn't walk far.
5. They have lived in the same house for a long time.
6. I haven't been to the cinema recently.
7. Mrs Brown goes to the bank every Friday.
8. John/Mrs. Michael occasionally saw Mrs. Michael/John in the supermarket last year.
9. The Queen has visited the show regularly since 1985.
10. The Prime Minister went to Greece last year.
11. I didn't see you at the party on Saturday night.
12. The protesters marched through the streets yesterday.
13. They arrived at the theater late last night.
14. Obviously, Olga has been studying hard recently./ Olga has obviously been studying hard recently.
15. Fortunately, they landed safely on a small airfield.

#### V.

- |                  |                     |          |
|------------------|---------------------|----------|
| 2. angrily       | 6. enthusiastically |          |
| 3. happily       | 7. reasonably       |          |
| 4. automatically | 8. securely         |          |
| 5. publicly      | 9. unexpectedly     | 10. Well |

#### VI.

- |             |             |               |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| A. 2. dark  | 5. suddenly | 8. sadly      |
| 3. terribly | 6. quietly  | 9. curious    |
| 4. badly    | 7. unhappy  | 10. foolishly |

**B.**

- |                 |              |                |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. kind         | 6. quickly   | 11. busy       |
| 2. good         | 7. lately    | 12. easily     |
| 3. efficiently  | 8. fluent    | 13. different  |
| 4. hard         | 9. near      | 14. absolutely |
| 5. surprisingly | 10. pleasant | 15. good       |
|                 |              | 16. accurate   |

**VII.**

- |                 |              |                 |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. quickly      | 4. happily   | 7. complete     |
| 2. careful      | 5. fluent    | 8. perfectly    |
| 3. continuously | 6. specially | 9. nervous      |
|                 |              | 10. financially |

**VIII.**

- |                  |                   |                  |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 2. wrong: hardly | 3. wrong: near    | 4. right         |
| 5. wrong: well   | 6. right          | 7. wrong: slowly |
| 8. right         | 9. wrong: badly   | 10. wrong: free  |
| 11. right        | 12. wrong: late   | 13. wrong: high  |
| 14. right        | 15. wrong: hardly |                  |

**IX.**

- |                     |                  |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. hungry           | 2. freely        | 3. late-badly    |
| 4. thoughtfully     | 5. The young man | 6. hard          |
| 7. scientifically   | 8. soon          | 9. sick          |
| 10. fascinating     | 11. fast         | 12. happily      |
| 13. terrible        | 14. slightly     | 15. quiet        |
| 16. hardly          | 17. difficult    | 18. the disabled |
| 19. badly           | 20. colourful    | 21. selfishly    |
| 22. safe            | 23. hard         | 24. confused     |
| 25. late            | 26. slowly       | 27. awful        |
| 28. reasonably-good | 29. well         | 30. frightened   |

## X.

- 2.... did he think about having a holiday abroad.
- 3.... had he started driving his new car when he had an accident.
- 4.... did I realize how dangerous the situation had been.
- 5.... does he play in an orchestra.
- 6.... would he be allowed to set foot in their house.
- 7.... are the designs reproduced exactly as illustrated.
- 8.... will Miss Rose be offered the job.
- 9.... have I heard such nonsense.
- 10.... had we walked in the door than the phone rang.
- 11.... should a doctor break his confidence.
- 12.... was Tom late, but he had left all his books behind.
- 13.... you need any help, just call.
- 14.... ran a small stream.
- 15.... was I shown how to operate the machine.

## ► ĐỘNG TỪ (VERBS)

### I.

- |                   |                     |                    |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 3. must           | 4. had to           | 5. don't have to   |
| 6. have to        | 7. must             | 8. mustn't         |
| 9. must/ have to  | 10. doesn't have to | 11. has had to     |
| 12. have to       | 13. mustn't         | 14. have to        |
| 15. must/ have to | 16. don't have to   | 17. had to         |
| 18. must          | 19. mustn't         | 20. didn't have to |
| 21. have to       | 22. has to I must   | 23. don't have to  |
| 24. mustn't       | 25. must            |                    |

### II.

- |                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. needn't-mustn't   | 2. must - mustn't - needn't |
| 3. needn't - must    | 4. mustn't - must           |
| 5. mustn't - needn't | 6. mustn't-must-needn't     |
| 7. must - mustn't    | 8. must - needn't           |



### III.

2. can/ is able to
3. be able to
4. can't/ am not able to
5. was able to
6. be able to
7. could/ was able to
8. couldn't
9. were able to
10. been able to - can / am able to - can I will be able to
11. were able to
12. could
13. can
14. couldn't/ wasn't able to
15. could

### IV.

- 2.... should look for another job.
- 3.... should go away for a few days.
- 4.... shouldn't use her car so much.
- 5.... should put some pictures on the walls.
- 6.... shouldn't drive so fast.
- 7.... shouldn't go to bed so late.
- 8.... should take a photograph.

### V.

- |              |           |              |             |
|--------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. ought     | 3. ought  | 5. shouldn't | 7. oughtn't |
| 2. shouldn't | 4. should | 6. Should    |             |

### VI.

3. could rain/ might rain
4. might have gone/ could have gone
5. couldn't go
6. couldn't have seen / can't have seen
7. should get

8. wouldn't recognize/ mightn't recognize
9. must have heard
10. should have turned

### VII.

3. You needn't have gone home so early.
4. He must have forgotten.
5. It can't be changed now.
6. She may be watching television.
7. She must have been waiting for somebody..
8. he couldn't have done it.
9. You ought to have been here earlier.
10. I would have helped you.
11. You should have been warned.
12. He might not have been feeling, very well.  
He might not have felt very well.

### XIII.

2. We ought to be careful.
3. I was able to finish all my work.
4. It must have been a terrible experience for you.
5. Players aren't allowed to have a drink.
6. You'd / You had better sit down.
7. The report has to be on my desk tomorrow.
8. Joanna mightn't have received my message.
9. Martin can't be jogging in this weather.
10. Nancy didn't need to clean the flat.

### IX.

- |                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. used to dream         | 2. am not used to speaking |
| 3. get used to living    | 4. used to stop            |
| 5. use to work           | 6. am not used to drinking |
| 7. has got used to being | 8. used to have            |
| 9. used to live          | 10. am not used to eating  |
| 11. used to have         | 12. used to be             |

13. didn't use to have - used to be

14. get used to living

15. aren't used to driving

**X.**

2. to organize

5. to be

8. working

3. wearing

6. reminding

9. to buy

4. to approve

7. to be

10. Waiting

**XI.**

1. to spend

5. staying

9. to hire

2. lying

6. sitting

10. driving

3. to get

7. touring

11. to spend

4. to leave

8. to go

12. Taking

**XII.**

2. showing

6. spending

10. to disappoint

3. to go

7. watching

11. phoning

4. running

8. to work

12. to explain

5. to make

9. to tell

13. Going

**XIII.**

2. walking - get

9. to phone

3. changing

10. to be

4. to change

11. drinking

5. cry

12. to see

6. being

13. to be

7. to go out

14. to think - making

8. saying

15. to be - playing

16. being stopped - stealing - driving

17. work - to press

18. smoking - to risk - setting

19. to turn - working

20. to come - going - to climb - making

**XIV.**

2. We must avoid wasting so much time.

3. It's not worth taking a taxi.

4. Jane would like to see the Rocky Mountain some day.
5. I don't fancy going for a walk.
6. We meant to give Judy a nice welcome yesterday.
7. Tom doesn't like swimming/ to go swimming much.
8. I can't face getting up at five tomorrow.
9. Last year we made an agreement to work together.
10. Yesterday you promised to carry on shooting the film.
11. My father seems to be getting better now.
12. I'd rather you did the shopping.
13. My mother isn't used to walking so far.
14. He insisted on showing his photographs to me.
15. Bill suggested having dinner early.

#### XV.

2. in getting hold of the CD?
3. reading newspapers.
4. not go out tonight.
5. me to use his car.
6. walking/ in walking.
7. him do what he wants.
8. him look older.
9. of being a cheat/ of cheating.
10. me to apply for the job.
11. to seeing them again.
12. not taking your advice/ that I didn't take your advice.
13. me not to say anything to the police.
14. to go out with you.
15. not to believe everything he says.

#### XVI.

- |                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. lying                    | 11. finding - worrying |
| 2. being shouted - to sack  | 12. passing - studying |
| 3. to meet - check          | 13. breaking - knock   |
| 4. to work - to pass - help | 14. doing - to write   |

- |                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 5. inviting - seeing                  | 15. being-to set            |
| 6. to park - parking                  | 16. to wear                 |
| 7. to see - to forget                 | 17. to keep-waiting - to go |
| 8. to bother - to ask                 | 18. feel - look             |
| 9. to visit - postponing - decorating | 19. to know - read          |
| 10. talking - to have                 | 20. to be left              |

## ➤ CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS)

### I.

- |                   |            |             |
|-------------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. on             | 8. took    | 15. out     |
| 2. looking - away | 9. looking | 16. down    |
| 3. try            | 10. after  | 17. Give    |
| 4. out/off        | 11. pick   | 18. puts    |
| 5. broke          | 12. round  | 19. brought |
| 6. back           | 13. fell   | 20. across  |
| 7. up             | 14. turn   |             |

### II.

- |                   |                 |                  |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. show ... round | 2. made up      | 3. turn ... down |
| 4. worn out       | 5. put... off   | 6. see... off    |
| 7. catch up       | 8. put out      | 9. turn up       |
| 10. run out of    | 11. blow up     | 12. came across  |
| 13. carried out   | 14. broken into | 15. cut down     |
| 16. cross ... out | 17. went on     | 18. gave up      |
| 19. took ... off  | 20. set up      |                  |

### III.

- |             |                    |                        |
|-------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. reduce   | 2. consider        | 3. erect               |
| 4. resemble | 5. delete          | 6. occupy              |
| 7. demolish | 8. cancel          | 9. explode             |
| 10. return  | 11. prepare - omit | 12. calculated         |
| 13. display | 14. discovered     | 15. discuss            |
| 16. execute | 17. reject         | 18. examine - postpone |

19. appear

20. delay

21. select

22. continued

23. stopped

24. represent

25. tolerate

#### IV.

1. found out

3. sent out

5. put off

2. left out

4. throw away

6. made up

7. go on/ carry on

#### V.

1. I'm looking for my diary.

2. You're too young to give up working.

3. This bag belongs to Janet.

4. The police carried on watching the house.

5. They discussed the plan.

6. I've run out of money.

7. The staff all look up to their boss.

8. I wouldn't put up with such terrible conditions.

9. They'll have to put off the game/ put the game off.

10. I called on some old friends while I was in Manchester.

11. I'm trying to cut down (on) the amount of coffee I drink.

12. We're trying to fix up a holiday together.

13. The teacher was dictating so fast, we couldn't keep up with her.

14. I always like to go in for quiz competition.

15. We got some money from the insurance company, but nothing could make up for losing my wedding ring.

16. This film let me down.

17. I think Jack made up the story about seeing the ghost.

18. I'm fed up with waiting for her to telephone.

19. The fire broke out in the early hours of the morning.

20. If you don't know the number, you can look it up in the phone book.

## VI.

- |                |                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. fixed up    | 8. closed down                      |
| 2. Look out    | 9. pull down - giving out           |
| 3. bringing in | 10. calls in (on)/ drops in (on) us |
| 4. took off    | 11. went in for                     |
| 5. go away     | 12. think it over                   |
| 6. going up    | 13. carry on/ go on                 |
| 7. come about  | 14. turned it down                  |
|                | 15. look back on                    |

## ► MAO TỬ (ARTICLES)

- I.
- |           |         |       |
|-----------|---------|-------|
| 3. a      | 4. an   | 5. φ  |
| 6. []     | 7. a    | 8. φ  |
| 9. an- [] | 10. a-φ | 11. a |
| 12. an    | 13. φ-a | 14. φ |
|           |         | 15. a |
- II.
- |              |              |                  |
|--------------|--------------|------------------|
| 2. the - the | 3. φ         | 4. The           |
| 5. []        | 6. the       | 7. the-the- φ    |
| 8. The       | 9. the - the | 10. [] - [] -the |
- III.
- |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 2. a    | 3. the  | 4. a    |
| 5. the  | 6. The  | 7. the  |
| 8. the  | 9. a    | 10. The |
| 11. the | 12. the | 13. the |
| 14. the | 15. a   | 16. the |
| 17. the | 18. an  | 19. the |
| 20. the | 21. the |         |
- IV.
- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 2. a - the - the | 3. a-the-a       |
| 4. the-the       | 5. a - the - the |

- |                                       |                             |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 6. a-the                              | 7. a-the                    |
| 8. a-the                              | 9. the - The - a            |
| 10. a-a-the-a                         | 11. the-a                   |
| 12. the - a - the - the - a - The - a | 13. the - a - a - the - the |
| 14. a-the-an-the                      | 15. the-a                   |

**V.**

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 2. in town                             | 9. to the library  |
| 3. at home                             | 10. in prison      |
| 4. in bed                              | 11. at college     |
| 5. in (the) hospital - to the hospital | 12. in the factory |
| 6. to school                           | 13. to the pub     |
| 7. to church                           | 14. at sea         |
| 8. to work                             | 15. to the cinema  |

**VI.**

1. the football - television - football - the news - the radio
2. dogs - the dogs
3. cars - pollution - cars- aeroplanes - the pollution - the atmosphere
4. the birds - birds - wildlife
5. sports - basketball - skiing
6. music - The music
7. breakfast - breakfast
8. Thanksgiving - November - Christmas
9. the rich - the poor - the unemployment
10. history - the history - museums - old buildings
11. the guitar-the piano
12. the telescope - the telescope - astronomy

**VII.**

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 2. the Irish Republic | 3. Lake Michigan      |
| 4. Italy              | 5. The United Kingdom |
| 6. The Andes          | 7. Tasmania           |
| 8. The West Indies    | 9. The River Nile     |
|                       | 10. the North         |



### III.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 3. right                                | 4. the United States   |
| 5. The south ... the north              | 6. right               |
| 7. the Channel                          | 8. the Middle East     |
| 9. right                                | 10. right              |
| 11. the Swiss Alps                      | 12. The United Kingdom |
| 13. The Seychelles ... the Indian Ocean |                        |
| 14. The River Volga                     | 15. The Ritz           |

### IX.

1. the British Museum
2. Waterloo Station
3. the Thames
4. The Grand Hotel - Baker Street
5. Harrison's
6. Hyde Park
7. IBM - British Telecom
8. the Houses of Parliament
9. Buckingham Palace
10. Everest
11. the States - New York
12. The Statue of Liberty - New York harbour
13. West London
14. Cambridge University
15. the Metropolitan Museum of Art - Broadway - Macy's department store

### X.

1.  - a - the
2.  - a - a
3.  -  - the
4.  -  -
5. an -  -  / the -  -
6. an - the -  - an - the
7. the - the - The -  - the - the

8. The - a - □ - The - □ - □ - □  
 9. the - a - the - the - a - The - □  
 10. The - □ - □ - the - the - a

## GIỚI TỪ (PREPOSITIONS)

### I.

- |       |             |           |             |
|-------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. in | 6. in       | 11. at    | 16. on - in |
| 2. on | 7. at       | 12. at-in | 17. on      |
| 3. in | 8. on       | 13. on-in | 18. in      |
| 4. on | 9. at/ on   | 14. in    | 19. in      |
| 5. in | 10. at - at | 15. at    | 20. in      |

### II.

- |        |        |        |       |
|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| 2. on  | 3. *   | 4. on  | 5. *  |
| 6. in  | 7. at  | 8. on  | 9. in |
| 10. in | 11. on | 12. at |       |

### III.

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. on                  | 7. at-in              |
| 2. until - by          | 8. at - in            |
| 3. on - in             | 9. during/ in - since |
| 4. during - until - by | 10. on - at - until   |
| 5. for-since           | 11. during-for        |
| 6. at-on               | 12. by-until          |

### IV.

- |          |            |               |
|----------|------------|---------------|
| 1. in    | 2. During  | 3. For        |
| 4. until | 5. By/At   | 6. During/ In |
| 7. by    | 8. in      | 9. for/ở      |
| 10. at   | 11. during |               |

### V.

- |       |            |       |
|-------|------------|-------|
| 1. at | 2. on-in   | 3. at |
| 4. on | 5. At      | 6. on |
| 7. at | 8. in - in | 9. on |

- |              |              |             |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| 10. at       | 11. in/on    | 12. at      |
| 13. in       | 14. on - on  | 15. at      |
| 16. in-on    | 17. in       | 18. in      |
| 19. on       | 20. on       | 21. at      |
| 22. at       | 23. on       | 24. in      |
| 25. at/in-in | 26. at-at-in | 27. in-at   |
| 28. in       | 29. at       | 30. in - at |

#### VI.

- |             |            |           |
|-------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. near     | 6. between | 11. among |
| 2. opposite | 7. behind  | 12. in    |
| 3. below    | 8. outside | 13. at    |
| 4. across   | 9. in      | 14. at    |
| 5. over     | 10. beside | 15. above |

#### VII.

- |         |                  |                |
|---------|------------------|----------------|
| 3. at   | 9. to-in         | 15. into       |
| 4. to   | 10. at           | 16. in/ into   |
| 5. to   | 11. to           | 17. through-in |
| 6. into | 12. into-through | 18. in-to-in   |
| 7.*-to  | 13. to           | 19. in/into    |
| 8. at   | 14. to           | 20. in         |

#### VIII.

- |         |            |                   |
|---------|------------|-------------------|
| 1. by   | 4. with    | 7. by             |
| 2. with | 5. by - in | 8. by - with - on |
| 3. by   | 6. on      | 9. by             |
|         |            | 10. in            |

#### IX.

- |             |          |            |
|-------------|----------|------------|
| 1. at       | 2. on    | 3. on      |
| 4. at       | 5. in-in | 6. on - on |
| 7. by-in    | 8. at    | 9. on      |
| 10. In - on | 11. in   | 12. at     |
| 13. on      | 14. by   | 15. on     |

#### X.

- |                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 2. advantage of         | 3. solution to/ for   |
| 4. increase in          | 5. difference between |
| 6. attitude to/ towards | 7. demand for         |

- 8. cheque for
- 10. reason for
- 12. damage to
- 14. need for

- 9. contact with
- 11. invitation to
- 13. difficulty with
- 15. connection between

**XI.**

- |        |        |            |
|--------|--------|------------|
| 1. of  | 2. to  | 3. of      |
| 4. of  | 5. for | 6. with    |
| 7. for | 8. of  | 9. between |

**XII.**

- 2. afraid of the dark.
- 3. bored with the video.
- 4. interested in computers.
- 5. surprised at/ by the news.
- 6. proud of the/ their victory.
- 7. annoyed with her/ the-children.
- 8. satisfied with their pay increase.
- 9. nervous of speaking in front of the crowd.
- 10. disappointed with the loss.

**XIII.**

- |                       |               |            |
|-----------------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. with               | 14. with / by | 27. of     |
| 2. of                 | 15. about     | 28. of     |
| 3. to-to              | 16. for       | 29. in     |
| 4. with               | 17. of        | 30. of     |
| 5. with               | 18. for       | 31. at     |
| 6. to                 | 19. of        | 32. from   |
| 7. about              | 20. of - of   | 33. of     |
| 8. of                 | 21. in        | 34. for    |
| 9. about              | 22. to        | 35. to     |
| 10. for/ about - with | 23. of - of   | 36. on     |
| 11. with-for          | 24. on        | 37. to-for |
| 12. about             | 25. of        | 38. of     |
| 13. at/ by            | 26. with      | 39. to-for |
|                       |               | 40. of     |

**XIV.**

- |               |                    |                  |
|---------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 2. used to    | 3. responsible for | 4. ready for     |
| 5. similar to | 6. full of         | 7. interested in |
| 8. late for   | 9. famous for      |                  |

**XV.**

2. prefer water to wine?
3. blaming Tom for the/ his accident?
4. thank you for the present?
5. accuse him I the head teacher of murder?
6. provide you with towels?
7. invite you to her wedding?
8. congratulate them on the/ their victory?
9. pointed a gun at Melanie?
10. punished him/ Mark for hitting an opponent?

**XVI.**

- |                |                   |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. applied for | 4. care about     | 7. decided on     |
| 2. pay for     | 5. caring for     | 8. concentrate on |
| 3. ask for     | 6. suffering from | 9. agree with     |

**XVII.**

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d  | 2. c  | 3. a  | 4. d  | 5. a  |
| 6. d  | 7. b  | 8. a  | 9. b  | 10. d |
| 11. b | 12. a | 13. d | 14. c | 15. c |
| 16. a | 17. a | 18. b | 19. d | 20. c |

**XVIII.**

- |        |       |            |                |
|--------|-------|------------|----------------|
| 2. on  | 5. at | 8. in      | 11. until/till |
| 3. ago | 6. at | 9. across  |                |
| 4. on  | 7. on | 10. during |                |

**LIÊN TỪ (CONJUNCTIONS)****I.**

2. He loves her and she loves him, so they are getting married.
3. I can paint the lounge or (I can) clean the fridge, but I can't do both.
4. Mr Downes seemed poor, but in fact he had a lot of money.

5. Tim is sleeping, so you can't speak to him at the moment.
6. The postman banged the gate and shouted at Lulu, so she - - bit him.
7. My mother wanted me to become a doctor but I didn't.
8. Nick didn't understand the lesson, so he couldn't do the homework.
9. A bee flew into the classroom this morning and (it) stung me.
10. You mustn't put this in the washing machine, you must wash it by hand or (you must) dry-clean it.
11. We lay in the sun and we got hot, so we swam and we cooled off.
12. Louis broke her watch, so she borrowed mine.
13. We might go to Spain or France.
14. Mike could speak French and Spanish, but he couldn't write them.
15. We went to the museum but it was closed, so we went to the cinema.

## II.

- |                |            |       |                |
|----------------|------------|-------|----------------|
| 2. Although    | 4. because | 6. If | 8. unless      |
| 3. in order to | 5. but     | 7. so | 9. In spite of |
| 10. in case    |            |       |                |

## III.

- |      |      |      |      |       |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 2. a | 4. g | 6. b | 8. d | 10. i | 12. k |
| 3. c | 5. f | 7. h | 9. j | 11. l |       |

## IV.

2. I must get to the post office before it closes.
3. My leg hurts when I walk.
4. Mark heard the news on the radio while he was driving home.
5. We're going to tidy up after everyone's gone.
6. It started to rain as soon as she had left.
7. You have to wait until the light changes to green.
8. I've been sad since you left me.
9. Think of me while I'm away.
10. Come back before I forget you.

## V.

- |           |          |          |                |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------------|
| 1. before | 4. since | 7. until | 9. when        |
| 2. while  | 5. when  | 8. after | 10. as soon as |
| 3. as if  | 6. since |          |                |

## VI.

- |               |            |              |                 |
|---------------|------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. after      | 5. but     | 9. until.    | 13. in spite of |
| 2. as soon as | 6. so that | 10. although |                 |
| 3. to         | 7. because | 11. if       |                 |
| 4. since      | 8. in case | 12. so       |                 |

## VII.

- |                |                    |                |
|----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. As a result | 4. In other words  | 7. for example |
| 2. Furthermore | 5. On the contrary |                |
| 3. however     | 6. After all       |                |

## VIII.

2. Although Nick used to smoke, he seems to be in good health.
3. No one thought our team would win the championship, but we won by a large margin.
4. He was standing in the shadow, so I couldn't see his face clearly.
5. We couldn't get tickets in spite of queuing for an hour.
6. Both Tom and Ann were late.
7. You won't learn to use a keyboard properly unless you practice.
8. The man spoke very slowly so that I could understand what he said.
9. We can leave either today or tomorrow.
10. You can use my car as long as you drive carefully.
11. Even though she got a B.A. degree, she earned her living, by selling newspaper.
12. This prize will mean an honor not only for him but also for us.
13. Since our flight was delay, we decided to take a long walk around the terminal.
14. I'm sorry to say that Paul has neither patience nor sensitivity to others.
15. Success in karate requires not only balance and skill but also concentration and mental alertness.

**► TỪ ĐỊNH LƯỢNG (QUANTITATIVE WORD)**

**I.**

- |              |         |             |         |
|--------------|---------|-------------|---------|
| 1. any       | 2. some | 3. any-some | 4. some |
| 5. any       | 6. any  | 7. some     | 8. any  |
| 9. any/ some | 10. any |             |         |

**II.**

1. any-some
2. some - anything
3. someone - any
4. anyone - any
5. something - some
6. anyone/ anybody - some
7. somewhere
8. something - anyone/ anybody
9. something - anything - something - Anything
10. anywhere

**III.**

- |             |                   |                    |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a lot of | 2. a lot of       | 3. many I a lot of |
| 4. many     | 5. a lot of       | 6. much/ a lot of  |
| 7. many     | 8. many/ a lot of | 9. much            |

**IV.**

- |             |           |          |             |             |
|-------------|-----------|----------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. a little | 2. Few    | 3. few   | 4. little   | 5. a little |
| 6. a few    | 7. little | 8. a few | 9. a little | 10. a few   |

**V.**

- |         |         |           |         |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------|
| 1. many | 2. much | 3. little | 4. much |
| 5. many | 6. few  | 7. little |         |

**VI.**

- |           |                        |
|-----------|------------------------|
| 1. much   | 11. somebody - anybody |
| 2. little | 12. a little           |
| 3. much   | 13. a lot of           |
| 4. many   | 14. few                |
| 5. less   | 15. a great deal of    |



6. too much
7. some - a little
8. any
9. many - a lot
10. How much

16. A large number of
17. a lot of - many
18. a few
19. only a few
20. How many

## VII.

1. plants
2. of my friends
3. of my life
4. European countries
5. of that food

6. of a chicken
7. accidents
8. birds
9. of these clothes
10. cars

## VIII.

1. All milk
2. most of the time
3. most people
4. No student

5. most of the money
6. All cars
7. All fruit/ Most fruit
8. all (of) the lights

## IX.

1. each
2. every
3. Each / Every
4. Every
5. Each

6. every
7. every
8. each
9. Every
10. each

## X.

1. few
2. None of
3. Some of
4. a few of/ some of
5. Most
6. a little
7. any - much
8. little

11. much
12. much-a lot of/a little
13. many
14. much
15. most of
16. little - a lot of/ a little
17. each
18. all of - any of

9. all of/ most of

19. many - much

10. none of

20. half (of) - all of - any of

**XI.**

1. many

6. them

11. little

2. anything

7. every morning

12. a few

3. Ail

8. Neither of

13.no

4. both

9. somebody

14. anywhere

5. none of the

10. somewhere

15. The whole

16. nothing

**XII.**

1. b

6. d

11. a

16. d

2. c

7. d

12. c

17. b

3. b

8. b

13. d

18. c

4. c

9. c

14. c

19. d

5. b

10. c

15. d

20. a

## CHƯƠNG 2: TỪ VỰNG HỌC (WORD STUDY)

### I.

- |                        |                            |                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. curious             | 35. beautifully            | 67. pleasure     |
| 2. easily              | 36. cooker                 | 68. symbolizes   |
| 3. silent              | 37. colorless              | 69. socialist    |
| 4. careful             | 38. noise                  | 70. carelessness |
| 5. slowly              | 39. accountant             | 71. attendance   |
| 6. drives              | 40. entertainment          | 72. carriage     |
| 7. commercial          | 41. products               | 73. flight       |
| 8. weekly              | 42. funny                  | 74. appearance   |
| 9. difficult           | 43. celebrated             | 75. punishment   |
| 10. choice             | 44. greeting               | 76. explanation  |
| 11. recently           | 45. actor                  | 77. successfully |
| 12. expensive          | 46. writer                 | 78. scientific   |
| 13. beautiful          | 47. natural                | 79. simplicity   |
| 14. performance        | 48. pollution              | 80. preparation  |
| 15. interesting        | 49. performed              | 81. unsuccessful |
| 16. frequently         | 50. boring - bored         | 82. allowances   |
| 17. well               | 51. historical             | 83. unknown      |
| 18. exciting           | 52. life                   | 84. daily        |
| 19. lengthen           | 53. dangerous              | 85. faithful     |
| 20. smell              | 54. happily                | 86. gently       |
| 21. seats              | 55. choose                 | 87. comfortable  |
| 22. fluently           | 56. helpful                | 88. pleased      |
| 23. valuable           | 57. open                   | 89. noisily      |
| 24. good               | 58. knowledge              | 90. competitors  |
| 25. splendid           | 59. Developing – developed | 91. laziness     |
| 26. excitement         | 60. collection             | 92. apologize    |
| 27. exciting - excited | 61. librarian              | 93. proud        |
| 28. Teaching – teacher | 62. friendly               | 94. famous       |
| 29. useful             | 63. attractively           | 95. produce      |
| 30. health             | 64. admiration             | 96. careless     |

- 31. care
- 32. complaint
- 33. width
- 34. sewing

- 65. thrilling
- 66. independent

- 97. speech
- 98. advice
- 99. quietly
- 100. amazement

## II.

- 1. made fun of
- 2. made use of
- 3. taking leave of
- 4. caught sight
- 5. take care of
- 6. felt regret for
- 7. put an end to
- 8. of ... take advantage
- 9. with ... lost touch
- 10. setting fire to
- 11. pay attention to I take account of
- 12. pays attention to
- 13. made fun of
- 14. for ... make allowance
- 15. keep pace with/ keep up with
- 16. take notice of
- 17. takes care of/ makes allowance for/ feels pity for
- 18. take notice of
- 19. takes interest in
- 20. make room for
- 21. keep correspondence with
- 22. feel ashamed at
- 23. put an end to
- 24. got victory over
- 25. lost track of
- 26. plays an influence over

27. show affection for
28. make use of
29. feel pity for/ take pity on
30. take note of/ pay attention to
31. made a decision on/ made your mind up
32. feel pity for
33. lose sight of
34. have a look at
35. catch sight of
36. made a decision on
37. make a contribution to
38. have faith in
39. put an end to/ I put a stop to
40. gave birth to
41. make complaint about
42. feel sympathy for
43. lost touch with
44. make room ... for
45. keep up with/ keep pace with
46. take advantage of
47. make fun of
48. pay attention to I take account of/ put an end to
49. give way to
50. make a fuss over/ pay attention to

## CHƯƠNG 3: CÁC THÌ (TENSES)

### I.

- |                 |                   |                      |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. flows        | 4. grow           | 7. is always leaving |
| 2. belongs      | 5. isn't raining  | 8. seems             |
| 3. is biting    | 6. shines - wakes | 9. takes             |
| 10. is bleeding |                   |                      |

### II.

1. are you doing - am writing - write
2. is snowing - doesn't snow
3. does he live - Do you know - lives - is staying
4. do you usually finish - finish - am working
5. do you travel - am going - drive
6. rises - are traveling
7. Are you looking.- need - think - is talking
8. want - am saving - cost - is getting
9. looks - doesn't fit - don't know
10. are you doing - am tasting - tastes
11. think-is going - agree
12. are always fighting - grow
13. am living - am looking - promise
14. am always falling - do you go - doesn't make
15. do you want - don't understand - are being

### III.

1. have you been studying - have been learning
2. have been waiting - hasn't come
3. have lost - Have you seen - have just seen
4. Have you been working - have been studying
5. Have you seen - haven't seen - has lived/ has been living
6. have been doing - have finished
7. has left - has been cleaning - has finished
8. have been working - have done

9. have heard - have you been doing - have done
10. have you been reading - have been reading - haven't finished
11. have you known - have known
12. Has John always lived - has been living

#### IV.

1. think - is knocking
2. don't know - hasn't spoken
3. circles
4. are you staring - haven't seen
5. have you seen
6. play
7. is increasing
8. haven't been waiting
9. goes - is traveling
10. are - have been
11. haven't watered
12. has lost
13. haven't finished - have been dealing
14. does your father do - is - aren't working
15. Have you ever seen - have seen

#### V.

2. have been
3. want/ are planning/ plan/ have decided
4. are enjoying/ have been enjoying
5. have visited
6. have been wandering/ have been walking
7. haven't spent
8. have taken/ have been taking/ have been getting/ have been doing
9. have had
10. has been
11. say

12. rains
13. have been/ have come
14. guest/ suppose

## VI.

1. When Don arrived, we were having coffee.
2. He sat down on a chair while I was painting it.
3. the students were playing a game when the professor arrived.
4. Felix phoned the fire brigade when the cooker caught fire.
5. While he was walking in the mountains, Henry saw a bear.
6. When the starter fired his pistol, the race began.
7. I was walking home when it started to rain.
8. When Margaret opened the door, the phone was ringing.
9. He was sitting in the garden when a wasp stung him on the nose.
10. While he was running for a bus, he collided with a lamp post.
11. Vicky was having a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang.
12. When Alex saw the question, he knew the answer immediately.
13. The train was waiting when we arrived at the station.
14. Sarah had an electric shock when she touched the wire.
15. When the campers woke, they saw the sun was shining.

## VII.

1. arrived - was talking
2. was - left - was falling
3. called - wasn't - was studying
4. saw - didn't see - was looking
5. opened - fell
6. did you break - slipped - was crossing
7. were you doing - were driving - heard - drove
8. met - were going - was going - had - were waiting/ waited
9. was cycling - stepped - was going - managed - didn't hit
10. was flying - encountered - dropped - was carrying
11. were working - discovered - contained - were filming - found



12. was making - started up - was speeding - saw - called  
 13. stopped - was speeding - were searching - found - was taking  
 14. were coming - saw - appeared - stopped - got - were watching - flew - disappeared  
 15. finally found - was already - were talking - were speaking - were conversing - just sat - chose - sat - walked - stopped

### VIII.

- |                   |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. are you doing  | 7. are trying     | 13. lent        |
| 2. I'm looking    | 8. I hope         | 14. managed     |
| 3. Do you want    | 9. aren't looking | 15. choose      |
| 4. are getting    | 10. don't have    | 16. gave        |
| 5. did you decide | 11. We want       | 17. was looking |
| 6. were staying   | 12. did           | 18. bumped      |

### IX.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. have had            | 11. Have you washed..                            |
| 2. tidied              | 12. moved - have been                            |
| 3. has lost            | 13. worked                                       |
| 4. went                | 14. have cooked                                  |
| 5. have finished - did | 15. have worked - graduated                      |
| 6. has won             | 16. posted - haven't received                    |
| 7. has been            | 17. was - developed                              |
| 8. haven't ridden      | 18. died - never met                             |
| 9. have never met      | 19. has gone - did he go                         |
| 10. has left - rang    | 20. have you lived - did you live - did you live |

### X.

- |                     |                              |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Have you heard   | 2. What's/ What has happened |
| 3. He's/ He has had | 4. he fell                   |
| 5. broke            | 6. did it happen             |
| 7. told             | 8. You knew                  |

9. you didn't tell

10. I didn't see

11. I haven't seen

12. He's/He has had

13. He did

### XI.

1. b

2. a

3. d

4. c

5. b

6. d

7. a

8. c

9. a

10. b

### XII.

1. have never seen

8. had just closed

2. hadn't cleaned

9. had already seen

3. had ordered

10. have eaten

4. have finished

11. haven't seen

5. had already sold

12. had told

6. has stopped

13. had become

7. have turned

14. has started

15. had done - had made

### XIII.

1. got-had gone

2. turned

3. Did you meet - had already gone - arrived

4. felt-had taken

5. had already given - got

6. was - had stopped

7. helped - was

8. saw - had broken - stopped

9. arrived - found - had broken - called

10. went - had never been - didn't take - was

### XIV.

1. had been watching

6. has been ringing

2. has been aching

7. had been smoking

3. have been waiting
4. had been working
5. had been waiting

8. had been traveling
9. have been writing
10. had been playing

### XV.

1. saw - was - had seen - remembered - was
2. knocked - was - had gone - didn't want
3. went - got - was already waiting - had arrived
4. was lying - wasn't watching - had fallen - was snoring - turned - woke
5. had just gone - was reading - heard - got - didn't see - went
6. had to - missed - was standing - realized - had left - had - got
7. met - was walking - had been - had been playing - were going - invited - had arranged - didn't have

### XVI.

1. Have you seen
2. did you go
3. are you going
4. Do you watch
5. have you lived/ have you been living/ have you been
6. Did you have
7. Have you seen
8. was she wearing
9. Have you been waiting/ Have you been here
10. does it take
11. Have you finished
12. Have you (ever) been

### XVII.

1. We have had it
2. She used it
3. They opened it
4. it was raining
5. She has lost it
6. We had sold our old one
7. I haven't wore it
8. She is enjoying it

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 9. I hate it  | 10. He has been waiting                        |
| 11. I have checked them   | 12. They play it                               |
| 13. I'm going   | 14. I last saw her                             |
| 15. I was looking   | 16. I have been reading -I haven't finished it |
| 17. I had had a big breakfast                                   | 18. She has been running                       |
| 19. Somebody has taken it                                       | 20. He doesn't eat breakfast                   |
| 21. They had only known each other                              | 22. I had been dreaming                        |
| 23. She had been lying  | 24. does this word mean - I've never seen it   |
| 25. Did David drive - He stopped and offered me - I was waiting |  |

### **XVIII.**

1. are having
2. does your train leave - gets
3. Does the film begin - begins - am picking
4. am going - does the match start - starts
5. does the art exhibition open - opens - finishes
6. do you finish - am not going - am staying
7. Are you doing - am going - is staying - arrives
8. are you going - are leaving - leaves
9. does it finish - lasts
10. am meeting

### **XIX.**

1. am going to look round
2. is going to attack
3. will get
4. am going to sit - will join
5. will find
6. will land
7. am not going to apply

8. will wake/ are going to wake
9. is going to get
10. will look after
11. am going
12. will take - will leave - is going to take

## XX

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b  | 2. a  | 3. c  | 4. a  | 5. b  |
| 6. a  | 7. c  | 8. b  | 9. 3  | 10. c |
| 11. b | 12. a | 13. c | 14. c | 15. c |
| 16. c | 17. b | 18. b | 19. a | 20. c |

## XXI.

1. will meet - clear - will be standing
2. will you leave - will be lying
3. have - will be shopping - will be
4. will be working
5. will call - won't be - will be studying
6. will be attending - will substitute - teach - return
7. will you be doing - leave - will be running
8. heal - will be playing
9. will tell - am - won't be
10. won't go - will be cleaning - do

## XXII.

1. we'll be playing
2. I'll be working
3. The meeting will have finished
4. he'll have spent
5. I'll be staying
6. The film will already have started
7. Chuck will have been
8. I'll be watching - The match will have finished
9. will have traveled
10. Will you be passing - will have closed

### XXIII.

1. I'm cycling - It'll be
2. I'm going to move
3. I'll take
4. we're going
5. I'll be using
6. I'll get
7. He's going to jump
8. We'll have walked
9. it's going to snow - I'll take
10. I'll have worked
11. I'm revising - that only lasts
12. Will you have finished - I'll be having
13. does your evening class finish - Shall I come - I'm meeting
14. I'm going - I'll lend
15. will you be - it stops raining - it will go - I'll tidy - we're waiting

### XXIV.

1. Did you buy - I wanted - I'd/I had left
2. I've/I have finished
3. have we been waiting - We've/ We have been
4. we'd I we had drunk - she hurried
5. I was having - I heard
6. have you been doing - We've/ We have done
7. she'd I she had been crying - she'd/ she had had
8. we heard - we threw
9. I was having
10. I've/I have been working
11. she went
12. I haven't finished - you've/ you have been writing
13. They moved
14. he stopped - I was waiting

15. Did you arrive - it had already begun
16. I'm/I am living - I've/I have found
17. she'd I she had never used - didn't know
18. I think - it belongs
19. You leave - I've/I have had - I've/I have been rushing
20. are you going to learn - does the Spanish course start - It starts - you'll/ you will enjoy - it will be/ ifs going to be
21. I'm having/ I'm going to have - are coming - they'll have gone - they're - I won't be - you know - I'll phone

<b>XXV.</b>	1. c	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. a
	6. d	7. c	8. d	9. b	10. d
	11. b	12. d	13. c	14. a	15. a
	16. b	17. b	18. d	19. c	20. b
	21. d	22. b	23. a	24. d	25. a

## CHƯƠNG 4

### SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CÁC THỜI (SEQUENCE OF TENSES)

#### I.

- |               |                |                    |
|---------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. will rain  | 9. would end   | 17. has lived      |
| 2. would get  | 10. built      | 18. had helped     |
| 3. had lost   | 11. will take  | 19. has just said  |
| 4. would come | 12. is writing | 20. would capture  |
| 5. is         | 13. was        | 21. will introduce |
| 6. has        | 14. is         | 22. has made       |
| 7. was-turned | 15. had made   | 23. wouldn't do    |
| 8. had locked | 16. have taken | 24. has never seen |
|               |                | 25. is             |

#### II.

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1. is writing | 11. will finish  |
| 2. will look  | 12. were         |
| 3. was        | 13. has accepted |

4. has been
5. would be
6. comes
7. rises
8. will do
9. started
10. was going

14. had never seen
15. will move
16. never know - will be
17. had been
18. hadn't come
19. got
20. will not rain

### III.

1. will phone - get
3. will tell - come
5. is
7. will be - gets
9. phones - am

2. goes
4. see - won't recognize
6. will wait - are
8. is
10. will get - go - stops - will leave

### IV.

1. was watching - was reading
2. get
3. have finished/ finish
4. had graduated/ graduated
5. left
6. have been - broke
7. had never heard
8. was getting
9. will have
10. left
11. went
12. go

13. was making
14. hasn't been -broke
15. will have already left
16. had already opened
17. see
18. live
19. saw
20. has gone
21. was
22. had gone
23. changes
24. will leave
25. had seemed

### V.

3. The first time I parachuted from a plane, I was both terrified and exhilarated.
4. My boss stormed into my office while I was talking on the phone to an important client.



5. After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years, its name was changed to Sri Lanka.
6. Since Jack fell off his bicycle, he's had to use crutches to walk.
7. Ms Johnson will return your call as soon as she has some free time.
8. Once John learns how to use a computer, he'll be able to work more efficiently.
9. I won't return this book to the library until I finish my research project.
10. Sue dropped a carton of eggs as she was leaving the store.
11. The next time Ann goes to class, she'll remember to take her grammar book.
12. When the flooding river raced down the valley, it destroyed everything in its path.
13. Just as soon as the rice is done, we can eat.
14. When I go to bed at night, I like to read until I get sleepy.
15. I must get to the post office before it closes.

## VI.

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b  | 2. d  | 3. c  | 4. d  | 5. d  |
| 6. a  | 7. c  | 8. b  | 9. b  | 10. a |
| 11. d | 12. b | 13. c | 14. c | 15. d |
| 16. c | 17. c | 18. d | 19. b | 20. b |
| 21. c | 22. c | 23. c | 24. a | 25. c |
| 26. d | 27. b | 28. c | 29. b | 30. a |

## VII.

1. Don't say anything while I'm eating.
2. We will leave as soon as it stops raining.
3. They had already left by the time we got back.
4. You have to wait until they call your name.
5. I've known her since I was a child.
6. What are you going to do after you finish university?
7. We were having dinner when they arrived.
8. I think of you whenever I hear that song.
9. She sprained her ankle while she was playing tennis.
10. The phone rang shortly after I had gone home.

### VIII.

- |       |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b  | 2. a  | 3. c  | 4. c  | 5. a  |       |
| 6. d  | 7. a  | 8. b  | 9. a  | 10. c |       |
| 11. a | 12. d | 13. c | 14. b | 15. a | 16. d |

### IX.

1. went - got - were dancing - were talking - was standing - had never met - introduced
2. am planning - am going/ will go - leave - am going/ will go - is studying - has lived/ has been living - knows - promised/ has promised - have never been - am looking
3. is - am speaking - knows - heard - had been taking/ has been taking - has answered - arrived - were waiting - has been reading
4. happened - had decided - were waiting realized - had forgotten - was - hurried - rang - were working - heard - found - drove - met - had - had said - ran - got - were sitting - saw - started
5. has been raining - has dropped - is - was shining - was - changes - wake - will be snowing
6. is - grew - greatly admired/ had greatly admired - had become - became - contained - wrote - died - had been working - never finished - has become
7. has disappeared - failed - lives - left - had made - were walking - saw - has seen - hadn't arrived - had been waiting/ were waiting - have been trying/ have tried - have had - are taking - believe - want

## CHƯƠNG 5: CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG (PASSIVE SENTENCES)

### I.

1. is surrounded
2. was invited
3. are caused
4. is being built
5. were blown
6. have been murdered
7. will be held
8. has been collected
9. was invented
10. is spelled
11. was reported
12. have been translated
13. will be shown
14. was written
15. wasn't stolen

### II.

1. are being followed
2. can't be explained
3. was cancelled
4. has been repaired
5. is being restored
6. is believed
7. would be sacked
8. might have been thrown
9. was taught
10. being arrested
11. is being repaired
12. are reported - have been injured
13. might be sent
14. had been cooked
15. will be told

### III.

1. Should Jane be helped with the sewing?
2. Judy's car is being repaired by the mechanic.
3. Must the test be finished before ten?
4. A computer is used to do that job nowadays.

5. All travel expenses for this training course must be paid by employers.
6. Were they taken in by her story?
7. I was kept waiting for half an hour by the bank manager.
8. Has this word been spelt wrongly?
9. He will be seen off at the airport by all his friends.
10. Beer used to be drunk for breakfast in England years ago.
11. The letter might have been sent to the wrong address.
12. The floor was being cleaned when I arrived.
13. The hole is being dug on the wrong side of the road.
14. Your money is going to be stolen if you're not careful.
15. Have you ever been asked for your opinion?
16. I am not impressed by Alan's knowledge of art.
17. How are candles made?
18. Tea can't be made with cold water.
19. When are the results of the contest going to be announced?
20. The police weren't informed that there had been a mistake.
21. Where will you be sent by your company next year?
22. By whom were the children looked after when you were away?
23. Look! The seals are being fed.
24. The book had been returned to the library by Kathy.
25. By this time tomorrow, the announcement will have been made by the president.
26. People's breathing was being affected by the pollution in the city.
27. Those papers haven't been signed by Mrs Andrews yet. Have them been signed by Mr Andrews yet?
28. Is that airplane being filed by a student pilot?
29. Where were the 1988 Olympic Games held?
30. Are those tractors made in this country, or are they imported?

#### IV.

1. I am always given proper encouragement by parents.  
Proper encouragement is always given (to) me by parents.
2. I remember being given a toy drum on my fifth birthday.

3. He was seen to pick up the gun.
4. I was asked some difficult questions at the interview.
5. Let not this switch be touched.
6. You won't be allowed to do that silly thing again.
7. You will be sent a copy of the sales contract by the real estate office./ A copy of the sales contract will be sent (to) you by the real estate office.
8. I didn't expect my car to be found by the police.
9. I rarely hear her children are called bad names.
10. A terrible mistake seems to have been made.
11. I think Tom should have been offered the job./I think the job should have been offered (to) Tom.
12. Arthur is said to have robbed a bank a long time ago./ It is said that Arthur robbed a bank a long time ago.
13. Little boys used to be made to climb the chimneys to clean them.
14. They suggested that the sale of alcohol should be banned at football matches.
15. Let your coat be taken off.
16. That money has been sent to the poor families.
17. He recommended bullet-proof glass should be used.
18. She loves being praised all the time.
19. He is believed to have special knowledge ... / It is believed that he has special knowledge ...
20. Your hair needs cutting/ to be cut.

#### V.

1. The situation was reported to be under control.
2. She is said to work 16 hours a day.
3. The company is thought to be planning a new advertising campaign.
4. The soap opera is expected to end next year.
5. The man is alleged to have driven through the town at 90 miles an hour.
6. The President was reported to have suffered a heart attack.
7. The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over a wall.
8. The buildings are reported to have been badly damaged by fire.

9. Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.
10. Marta was expected to pass her driving test.
11. He is believed to have been killed by terrorists.
12. You were known to have been in town on the night of the crime.
13. The footballer Wayne Johnson was supposed to be earning £10 million a year.
14. There is said to be a secret tunnel between those two houses.
15. They are known to live in a small flat on the fifth floor.
16. The Prime Minister and his wife are believed to have separated.
17. The boy is believed to be wearing a white pullover and blue jeans.
18. The hostages are expected to be released soon.
19. Two people are reported to have been injured in the explosion.
20. Exercise is said to be good for health.

## VI.

1. arrived - was met
2. Have you paid - will be shut off
3. was your camera stolen - disappeared
4. has been sold - will be built
5. left - might be thrown
6. must be taken - are watered - is cut
7. is suspected - has been arrested - is being questioned - will be identified
8. was built - is owned - was being used - was bought - hadn't been looked - has been done - is used
9. is - is visited - was designed - was erected - has been - is recognized
10. was damaged - was discovered - was injured - be rescued - are believed to have been destroyed - is not known
11. is being resurfaced - are asked/ are being asked/ have been asked - is expected - will be closed - will be diverted
12. was forced - being threatened - had been stolen - was later found' - had been abandoned - has been arrested - is still being questioned

## VII.

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. b | 5. b  |
| 6. a | 7. c | 8. a | 9. b | 10. a |

## VIII.

1. they have increased the bus fares
2. People should use bicycles for short journeys.
3. someone has discovered a new source of energy?
4. they are going to knock down this building.
5. you shouldn't keep eggs in a freezer.
6. people put litter in the bin?
7. the robbers stole a lot of money.
8. they are resurfacing the road in front of your house?
9. the board won't make a decision until the next meeting.
10. how people pronounce this word.

## IX.

1. are having the house painted
2. have another key made
3. had your hair cut
4. Have you had your hair cut
5. Do you have a newspaper delivered
6. haven't had the film developed .
7. are having a swimming pool built
8. have it cleaned
9. have your ears pierced
10. do you have your car serviced

## X.

2. ... fill his tooth.
3. ... dyed.
4. ... to change my number.

5. ... taken off tomorrow.
6. ... design his new house.
7. ... fitted on the windows.
8. ... developed while she is walking around town.
9. ... painted before he died.
- 10.... straightened.

## XI.

1. These products have to be tested.
2. The first motor car was made by a Belgian called Etienne Lenoir.
3. The police took Nigel's passport away from him.
4. Babysitters are paid a lot of money.
5. I hope to be interviewed for the job.
6. Judy is having her car repaired.
7. Tessa got lost.
8. It was agreed that the plan should go ahead.
9. When did you get your kitchen decorated?
10. He is believed to be living abroad.
11. The song was sung by Pavarotti.
12. The floor is being cleaned.
13. Do you suppose such a letter could have been written by your brother?
14. Laura got her brother to repair her bicycle.
15. Let not that be done again./ Don't let that be done again.

## XII.

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c  | 2. b  | 3. b  | 4. d  | 5. a  |
| 6. c  | 7. d  | 8. c  | 9. a  | 10. b |
| 11. a | 12. c | 13. d | 14. a | 15. d |
| 16. c | 17. a | 18.c  | 19. d | 20. c |



## CHƯƠNG 6: CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT (REPORTED SPEECH)

- I.
2. Jane told Tom (that) he played very well.
3. Sue said (that) she left/ had left school a year before.
4. Charlie told Helen (that) he hadn't seen Diana recently.
5. Rachel told us (that) we could come and stay at her flat if we were in London.
6. John told us (that) he didn't know where Fred was.
7. Matthew said (that) his car was stolen/ had been stolen the week before.
8. Judy said she wanted to go on holiday but she couldn't afford it.
9. Emma said (that) she had only had the new computer since the previous day.
10. Sarah told me (that) she was going away for a few days and she would phone me when she got back.
11. Mark told Sandra (that) they must/ had to finish that report.
12. Nick said (that) he saw/ had seen Helen at a party the night before and she seemed/ had seemed unwell.
13. Claire said (that) she might go to Bali again.
14. Susan said (that) it was the funniest show she had ever seen.
15. Tom told Susan (that) he woke/ had woken up feeling ill, so he didn't go/ hadn't gone to work.
16. Judy said (that) she worked for a small publish company, and she was their marketing manager.
17. Mark said (that) Ann might ring that day.
18. Sandra said (that) they had to stay home be cause it had been raining all evening.
19. Bill told Joanna (that) when he saw I had seen Sarah she was playing/ had been playing tennis.
20. Nick said (that) he knew the place well because he used to live here/ there.

### II.

2. you liked classical music
3. you couldn't speak (any) Japanese.
4. you weren't on a diet.

5. you had finished it/ your project.
6. you weren't applying for it/ the job.
7. she didn't enjoy them/ parties.
8. you wouldn't be here next week.
9. you had/ had had a job interview.
10. you had been to the cinema/ you went to the cinema.

### III.

2. He wondered if/ whether they liked him.
3. He wanted to know where I lived.
4. He asked me if/whether I had/ had got a driving licence.
5. He wanted to know how she knew his name.
6. He asked (me) when the new manager was coming.
7. He asked me if/ whether I could lend him some money.
8. He wanted to know why I came/ had come back.
9. He wondered if/ whether he would be ready in time.
10. He asked me if/ whether I had any plans for a holiday.
11. He wanted to know what time the meeting was.
12. He asked me how long I had been working in my present job.
13. He asked (me) if/ whether Susan came/ had come the party last night/ the night before.
14. He wondered if/ whether there was any food in the refrigerator.
15. He asked me what I was doing now I then.
16. He asked if he could park here/ there.
17. He wondered if/ whether he was doing the right thing.
18. He asked me why I applied/ had applied for the job.
19. He wanted to know what time the banks closed.
20. He wondered where Tom had gone.

### IV.

2. her to slow down
3. her not to worry
4. them not to touch the electric wires

5. Tom to give me a hand
6. me to open my bag
7. them to turn the music down
8. him to repeat what he said I had said
9. Claire to stay for dinner
10. her not to wait for me if I was late
11. her to marry him
12. to pay for the damage
13. joining an poetry club
14. me not to tell anybody what (had) happened
15. me to stay in bed for a few days

V.

1. Laura told me to move this/ that table.
2. The policeman warned us (that) the road were/ had been dangerous.
3. The builders promised (that) everything would be ready on time.
4. The tourist asked which way was the post office./ The tourist asked which way the post office was.
5. Ann reminded Janet to sign the form.
6. Bernard wondered if/ whether his wife had seen his car keys.
7. The police ordered Christ to stop the car.
8. Tessa admitted eating all the cake the day before/ the previous day.
9. Adrian apologized for being rude.
10. Simon invited Susan and Melanie to come to his party.
11. The Prime Minister claimed (that) the government had made the right decision.
12. Tom suggested going for a meal tonight/ that night.
13. The doctor advised me to take more exercise.
14. Mark agreed not to talk about football.
15. The nurse wanted to know how the doctor knew her name.
16. The boss asked his secretary not to play computer games in the office.
17. Peter insisted on leaving.
18. Martin asked Nancy if/ whether someone rang I had rung her an hour before.

19. Jessica said they were thinking/, had been thinking of selling the house but they had decided not to.
20. Jack explained (that) he never ate vegetarian food.

## VI.

1. could still get - I had already bought
2. she had to clean up - left/ could leave - she would
3. if I knew - had known - why she wanted
4. why she still smoked - had tried to quit - didn't seem
5. what the capital of Australia was/ is - wasn't - he thought it was
6. was pouring - had better take - would stop - didn't need
7. where she was going - was on her way - asked/ invited me to go - I would like - had to stay - had - if there was anything she could pick up - were - she'd be happy to
8. asked - where I was - told - was - said - was - if I had heard - had - was - had been - asked - if I had been - hadn't - told - had gone if it was
9. do-you like - have always liked - I play in a jazz band - does the band play - play mainly in small clubs - Have you ever played - I have - played - and I enjoyed it - Do you ever want to - I hope to - I don't know when it can happen because I'm so busy acting.
10. Why have you written - I find romantic fiction easy - won't be a romance - am hoping to write - I'm interested in - Is he anyone you know - don't have a Felix - I've been happily married - have now written - did you start writing - I've written stories and poems - will continue to write even when I am - Thank you for talking - will be successful

## VII.

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b  | 2. d  | 3. c  | 4. c  | 5. a  |
| 6. d  | 7. d  | 8. a  | 9. a  | 10. b |
| 11. c | 12. b | 13. d | 14. a | 15. a |
| 16. b | 17. c | 18. d | 19. b | 20. c |

**CHƯƠNG 7: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN  
(CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)**

**I.**

1. found
2. will be - am not
3. were/ was - wouldn't want
4. had known - would have gone
5. pour - will float/ floats
6. rings
7. had - wouldn't have to
8. had missed - would/ might have been
9. is - will/ can go
10. hadn't woken - wouldn't be
11. would taste - wasn't/ weren't
12. had had - would have sent
13. weren't-wouldn't be
14. find-will tell
15. would be - didn't come
16. had driven/ had been driving - wouldn't have happened
17. didn't read - wouldn't know
18. had - would you go
19. send - will arrive
20. would be able - had
21. had read - wouldn't have washed
22. was/ were - would have put
23. had taken - would have won
24. had paid - wouldn't be
25. drink - can't sleep

**II.**

- |                   |                      |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. don't practise | 2. played            | 3. couldn't hear     |
| 4. had told       | 5. wouldn't have let | 6. didn't play       |
| 7. might not be   | 8. had realized      | 9. would have thrown |
| 10. go            | 11. will have        |                      |

### III.

1. If you take more exercise, you'll/ you will get fit.
2. If the driver in front hadn't stopped suddenly, the accident wouldn't have happened.
3. If I had a key, I could get in.
4. If you throw a stone into water, it sinks/ it'll sink.
5. If I'd/ I had had (some) breakfast, I wouldn't be hungry now.
6. If road travel wasn't/ weren't cheaper than rail travel, we wouldn't have lots of traffic jams, or If road travel was I were expensive than rail travel,...
7. If Martin hadn't been very nervous, he wouldn't have failed his driving test last week.
8. If you want a chat, just give me a ring.
9. If I'd/I had finished my report yesterday, I could begin a new project today.
10. If the wind weren't/ wasn't blowing hard, I'd/I would take the boat out for a ride.
11. If I'd/I had known you were busy, I wouldn't have disturbed you.
12. If it rains, everyone can eat inside.
13. If you didn't live so far away, we'd/ we would visit you more often.
14. If Margaret hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she'd I she would have been injured in the crash.
15. If I didn't have to work tomorrow evening, I could meet you.
16. If I knew something about plumbing, I would/ could have fixed the leak in the sink myself.
17. If Matthew enters the race, he'll probably win it.
18. If we'd/ we had bought that picture five years ago, it would be quite valuable now.
19. I wouldn't feel better now if you hadn't talked to me about my problems last night.
20. If Carol hadn't been studying, she would have answered the phone.

### IV.

1. You don't get there in time unless you hurry.
2. We can't do the job unless we get help.
3. You aren't allowed into the club unless you're member.

4. I don't like fish. I wouldn't eat it unless I was extremely hungry.
5. Don't leave the TV on unless you are watching it.
6. The doctor won't see you today unless it's an emergency.
7. I wouldn't have bought the picture unless I liked it.
8. You can't get a driver's license unless you are at least eighteen years old.
9. I'm not going to the party unless you go with me.
10. The dog won't attack you unless you move suddenly.

#### V.

1. Should you need more money, go to the bank before six o'clock.
2. Were I you, I wouldn't do that.
3. Had they realized the danger, they would have done it differently.
4. Were I your teacher, I would insist you do better work.
5. Should you change your mind, please let me know immediately.
6. She would have gotten the job had she been better prepared.
7. Your boss sounds like a real tyrant. Were I you, I would look for another job.
8. Should you need to reach me, I'll be at the Hilton Hotel in Seoul.
9. I wouldn't have known about your new job had I not talked to your mother.
10. Were she ever in trouble, I'd do anything I could to help her.

#### VI.

- |               |             |               |
|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. if         | 4. in case  | 7. when       |
| 2. as long as | 5. unless   | 8. so long as |
| 3. unless     | 6. provided | 9. if         |
|               |             | 10. in case   |

#### VII.

1. I'm in a hurry.
2. press this button?
3. you pay it back as soon as possible.
4. you get hungry.
5. hadn't eaten so much.
6. wouldn't be in this mess.
7. you work much harder.

8. will you give her a message?  
9. I'd/I would insist you stop smoking.  
10. there weren't too much traffic.

**VIII.**

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. c  | 2. d  | 3. c  | 4. d  | 5. z  |
| 6. a  | 7. c  | 8. b  | 9. c  | 10. d |
| 11. c | 12. a | 13. b | 14. d | 15. c |
| 16. b | 17. b | 18. b | 19. a | 20. C |
| 21. c | 22. d | 23. b | 24. b | 25. b |
| 26. b | 27. c | 28. a | 29. d | 30. d |



**CHƯƠNG 8:**  
**CÁC MỆNH ĐỀ VÀ CỤM TỪ (CLAUSE AND PHRASE)**

**I. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH (PHRASES AND CLAUSE OF PURPOSE)**

**I.**

1. I hurried in order not to be late for the meeting.
2. We took off our boots so as not to make the floors dirty.
3. I'm saving money to go abroad for a holiday.
4. Lynn unplugged the phone in order not to be interrupted while she was working.
5. I phoned to the police station to report that my car had been stolen.
6. The staff are working at weekends so as to complete the project in time:
7. I stood on tiptoes to see the parade better.
8. Ali often writes down the time and date of his appointment in order not to forget to go.
9. Tom turned on the radio to hear the football results.
10. We wore warm clothes so as not to get cold.

**II.**

1. Rachel turned on the TV so that she could watch the news.
2. I'll post the card today in order that it gets/ will get there on Daniel's birthday.
3. Please turn down the radio so that I can get to sleep.
4. She locked the door in order that she wouldn't be disturbed.
5. I gave her my address so that she could contact me.
6. I'm going to cash a check in order that I will have enough money to go shopping.
7. Please arrive early so that we can start the meeting on time.
8. I slowed down in order that the car behind could overtake.
9. Jackson is planning to take a semester off so that he will travel/ travels in Europe.
10. The man spoke very slowly so that I could/ would understand what he said.
11. I whispered in order that nobody else could/ would hear our conversation.
12. I'll give you a map so that you can/ will find the way all right.

13. Please be quiet so that I can hear what Sharon is saying.
14. The little boy pretended to be sick in order that he would/ could stay home from school.
15. I turned off the TV in order that my roommate could study in peace and quiet.

### III.

1. Melanie was hurrying so that she wouldn't miss her bus.
2. Ali borrowed an eraser to erase a mistake in his composition.
3. Most people work in order that they earn/ will earn money.
4. I wish we had a garden so that the children could/ would play in.
5. She is learning English in order to study in the United States.
6. The staff are working at weekends in order that they won't delay the project any further.
7. Can we stop so that I can buy a newspaper?
8. We moved to London so as to visit our parents more often.
9. We're having to borrow money so that we can / will pay our bills.
10. I left the door open for Harry to get in.
11. I'm going to be very careful in order not to have an accident.
12. The government took these measures so that they could reduce crime.
13. He wore glasses and false beard in order not to be recognized
14. I lowered the volume on the TV set so that it wouldn't disturb my neighbors.
15. Yesterday I took my umbrella so as not to get wet.

### IV.

2. Claude studies encyclopedias so that he can answer quiz questions.
3. Vicky is saving up for a holiday.
4. Nick keeps a dog to guard the house.
5. Olivia booked a babysitter so that she could go out for the evening.
6. Jessica is going on a diet in order to lose weight.
7. Trevor often switches off the heating to save money.
8. Sarah had to go to Birmingham for a business meeting
9. Emma wore boots so that her feet wouldn't get wet.
10. I'm saving my money in order to travel in Europe next summer.

## V.

1. ... buy some stamps.
2. Natasha is going to the United States...
3. ... she could phone me.
4. Mike turned on the TV...
5. .... it would defrost
6. ... our summer holiday.
7. I hurried...
8. We'll give you a map...
9. ... I could/ would pass the final exam.
10. ... stop people stealing things.

## II. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ (PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF RESULT)

### I.

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. too hastily      | 6. clearly enough    |
| 2. difficult enough | 7. too many mistakes |
| 3. sweet enough     | 8. too much traffic  |
| 4. too expensive    | 9. too complicated   |
| 5. enough rain      | 10. enough food      |

### II.

- |                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. old enough to get married | 6. enough energy to play  |
| 2. too busy to talk          | 7. too far away to hear   |
| 3. too late to go            | 8. enough English to read |
| 4. warm enough to sit        | 9. too big to put         |
| 5. too nice to be            | 10. enough qualifications |

### III.

1. The food was too hot (for us) to eat.
2. I didn't have enough money for a taxi.
3. Sarah is too busy to take a day off.
4. It's too wet for a picnic./ It's too wet to have a picnic.

5. The piano was too heavy to move.
6. This coat isn't warm enough to wear in winter.
7. I haven't got enough chairs for all my guests.
8. The situation is too complicated to explain.
9. This sofa isn't wide enough for three people to sit on.
10. I had too much equipment, to carry.
11. The wall was too high to climb over.
12. Natasha is good enough to be a professional musician.
13. This river isn't clean enough to swim in.
14. Some things are too small to see without a microscope.
15. He wasn't experienced enough to get the job.

#### IV.

- |           |                                    |            |
|-----------|------------------------------------|------------|
| 1. such   | 6. so                              | 11. such   |
| 2. so     | 7. so - such                       | 12. so     |
| 3. such a | 8. so                              | 13. so     |
| 4. such   | 9. such a                          | 14. such a |
| 5. such a | 10. so                             |            |
|           | 15. A: so - such a - such - such a |            |
|           | B: so-so - such - so               |            |

#### V.

1. The weather was so hot (that) you could fry egg on the sidewalk.
2. She talked so fast (that) I couldn't understand her.
3. Grandpa held me so tightly (that) I couldn't breathe for a moment.
4. There were so few people at the meeting (that) it was canceled.
5. Ted was worried about the exam (that) he couldn't get to sleep last night.
6. Jerry got so angry (that) he put his fist through the wall.
7. I have so many problems (that) I can use all the help you can give me.
8. His handwriting is so illegible (that) I can't figure out what this sentence says.
9. There was so little traffic (that) it took us only ten minutes to get there.
10. There were so many people came to the meeting (that) there weren't enough seats for everyone.

## VI.

1. It was such a nice day (that) we took a walk.
2. It was such an expensive car (that) we couldn't afford to buy it.
3. We're having such beautiful weather (that) I don't feel like going to class.
4. The classroom has such comfortable chairs (that) the students find it easy to fall asleep.
5. The tornado struck with such great force (that) it lifted automobiles off the ground.
6. This is such good coffee (that) I think I'll have another cup.
7. Karen is such a good pianist (that) I'm surprised she didn't go into music professionally.
8. It was such a good book (that) I couldn't put it down.
9. We did such a lot of gymnastics (that) we couldn't walk afterwards.
10. They were such beautiful flowers (that) we took a photograph of them.

## VII.

1. Sarah was so late home (that) Mark had already gone to bed.
2. Mike hadn't cooked for such a long time (that) he'd almost forgotten how to.
3. The piano was so heavy (that) Mike and Harriet couldn't move it.
4. Tom was annoyed about United losing (that) he wouldn't speak to anyone.
5. The band was such a big attraction (that) all the tickets sold out.
6. Vicky had such a lot of work to do (that) she was sure she'd never finish it.
7. The party made such a lot of noise (that) it kept all the neighbors awake.
8. She speaks English so well (that) you would think it was her native language.
9. It was such horrible weather (that) we spent the whole day indoors.
10. The music was so loud (that) you could hear it from miles away.

## VIII. Đáp án gợi ý

- 1....most of the students couldn't do it.
- 2....I fell asleep in the armchair.
- 3....they don't know what to do with it.
- 4....he doesn't have any free time.
- 5....we decided to spend the day on the beach.

- 6....I couldn't understand what he said.
- 7....we didn't want to come home.
- 8....I don't have time to go out
- 9....I can't afford to buy it.
- 10.... no one believed a word of it

### III. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN HAY LÍ DO (PHRASE AND CLAUSE OF CAUSE OR REASON)

#### I.

- |                |               |               |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. because of  | 4. because    | 7. because of |
| 2. because     | 5. because of | 8. because of |
| 3. because of  | 6. because    | 9. because    |
| 10. because of |               |               |

#### II.

- 1. Since yesterday was a public day, we didn't have to go to work.
- 2. As we didn't want to wake anybody up, we came in very quietly.
- 3. We didn't know what time it was because none of us had a watch.
- 4. As it was a nice day, we went for a walk by the sea.
- 5. Since the door was open, I walked in.
- 6. As you paid for the theater tickets, please let me pay for our dinner.
- 7. Since oil is an irreplaceable natural resource, we must do whatever we can to conserve it.
- 8. Because we didn't see Lisa for a long time, we didn't recognize her.
- 9. Lilian was late for work because she missed the bus.
- 10. Sonia was tired because she'd been working very hard.
- 11. Since Eve had an attractive personality, she was very popular.
- 12. As mother had burnt the dinner, we ate out.
- 13. It's a really useful book because it explains everything very clearly.
- 14. Because Ellie hadn't fully recovered yet, she felt weak.
- 15. Since all the students had done poorly on the test, the teacher decided to give it again.

### III.

1. Because the weather was cold, we stayed home.
2. Most people begin to jog because they hear jogging is a good exercise.
3. People like to live in this country because its climate is healthy.
4. A computer becomes very popular nowadays because it can be used for various purposes.
5. Stacey retired in 1987 partly because his health was ill.
6. We were late to the meeting because the traffic was heavy.
7. Harry had to stay in hospital because he broke his leg.
8. Because our leader couldn't attend the meeting, it was canceled.
9. The young couple decided not to buy the house because it was in dilapidated condition.
10. Because I always enjoyed mathematics in high school, I decided to major in it in college.

### IV.

1. Jim had to give up jogging because of his severely sprained ankle.
2. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink because of its pollution.
3. We had to stay in London an extra day because of the fog at the airport.
4. Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning because of his wife's illness.
5. We all have received the best everything because of our parents' generosity.
6. I couldn't get to sleep last night because of the noise in the next apartment.
7. John has to sit in the front row in class because of his poor eyesight.
8. We stopped our car because of the red traffic lights.
9. She couldn't see the road because of the high wall,
10. We postponed our trip because of the bad driving conditions.
11. Sarah won't walk across a bridge because of her fear of heights.
12. Mark's doctor has advised him to exercise regularly because of his overweight
13. Piranhas can devour an entire cow in several minutes because of their extremely sharp teeth.
14. Most students couldn't do the final exam because of its difficulty.
15. John succeeded in his exam because of his hard and methodical work.

#### IV. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ TƯƠNG PHẢN – NHƯỢNG BỘ (PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CONCESSION)

##### I.

- |                |                 |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. Although    | 6. although     | 11. because     |
| 2. in spite of | 7. because of   | 12. in spite of |
| 3. because of  | 8. because      | 13. because of  |
| 4. Because     | 9. Although     | 14. although    |
| 5. in spite of | 10. in spite of |                 |
15. Because of-although

##### II.

1. I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story.
2. We hardly ever see each other despite living in the same street
3. Although my foot was injured, I managed to walk to the nearest village.
4. In spite of having very little money, they are happy.
5. Even though I had an umbrella, I got very wet in the rain.
6. I couldn't sleep despite being tired.
7. Though he liked the sweater, he decided not to buy it.
8. I didn't get the job in spite of having all the necessary qualifications.
9. Although Nick used to smoke, he seems to be in good health.
10. It was still hot in the room even though I had turned on the air conditioner.
11. Laura wants to fly in spite of the fact (that) she feels afraid.
12. Trevor didn't notice the sign even though it was right in front of him.
13. I'm no better despite the fact (that) I've taken the pills.
14. Matthew doesn't know any French though it was one of his school subjects.
15. Despite being a millionaire, Henry's friend hates spending money.
16. We couldn't get tickets in spite of queuing for an hour.
17. Although I'd met her twice before, I didn't recognize her.
18. Laura felt unwell in spite of this she went on working.
19. Even though I told the absolute truth, no one would believe me.
20. The goods were never delivered despite the promise we had received.



### III.

1. Although he has a very important job,...
2. ... in spite of its inherent dangers.
3. Although it was sunny,...
4. Despite its many benefits,...
5. ... even though it has been shown to be safe.
6. Though I had never seen her before,...
7. ... in spite of the low salary.
8. Although her grades were low,...
9. Despite his fear of heights,...
10. ... in spite of not playing very well.

### IV.

1. In spite of being over sixty/ his age, Mr. Pike doesn't wear glasses.
2. Despite having much experience in machinery, he ...
3. In spite of the darkness, they ...
4. Despite the noise, I ...
5. In spite of the heavy rain, ...
6. Despite his strength, I ...
7. ... in spite of his poverty.
8. In spite of not having finished the paper, he ...
9. Despite having been absent frequently, he ...
10. ... despite the red traffic lights.

### V.

1. No matter how rich they are, they aren't happy.
2. I'd rather have a room of my own, however small it is.
3. No matter what jobs he got, he was not satisfied.
4. Whatever job you do, you should do it devotedly.
5. Whoever gains the most points wins the competition.
6. Whatever kinds of exercise he had taken, he got fatter and fatter.
7. No matter where he lived, he always thought of his homeland.
8. My roof leaks whenever it rains.

9. Don't trust him, no matter what he says.
10. Whatever difficulties you encounter, you should study hard.
11. No matter how intelligent she is, she can't answer my question.
12. She would still love him however badly he behaved.
13. Whatever nonsense the papers print, some people always believe it.
14. I'll find him, no matter where he has gone.
15. Phone me when you arrive, however late it is.

## **V. MỆNH ĐỀ SAU AS IF, AS THOUGH, IT'S (HIGH) TIME, WOULD RATHER**

### **I.**

1. as if she was enjoying it.
2. as if he meant what he was saying.
3. as if it has just been cut.
4. as if it never gets fed.
5. as if I'm going to be sick.
6. as if she didn't want to come.
7. as if he's been up all night.
8. as if he hadn't eaten for a week.
9. as if they are going to get married.
10. as if someone has been smoking here.

### **II.**

1. as if/ as though he was, were
2. as if it had been made
3. as if she had ... met
4. as if I was/ were
5. as if she hadn't heard
6. as if he didn't have
7. as if it was/ were
8. as if she was I were
9. as if she had taken
10. as if she wouldn't be

### III.

1. It's time the children were in bed.
2. It's time I had a holiday.
3. It's time she was here.
4. It's time the train left the station.
5. It's time 11 we had a party.
6. It's time some changes were made./ It's time there were some changes.
7. It's time he got up.
8. It's time my parents stopped treating Tommy like a child.
9. It's too late. It's time we went home.
10. It's time the windows were cleaned./ It's time we cleaned the window.

### IV.

1. have gone to an opera
2. have studied Chinese
3. be an engineer
4. not tell you
5. go out with their friends ... stay home with their parents
6. not have gone out
7. stay home
8. lie on the beach/ be lying on the beach

### V.

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. didn't know | 3. hadn't seen |
| 2. came        | 4. hadn't done |
| 5. didn't read | 8. hadn't left |
| 6. was         | 9. didn't tell |
| 7. didn't      | 10. had come   |

### VI.

- |      |       |       |       |       |       |       |      |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| 1. c | 2. b  | 3. a  | 4. d  | 5. b  | 6. a  | 7. c  | 8. d |
| 9. a | 10. b | 11. c | 12. a | 13. b | 14. c | 15. a |      |

## VII.

1. I had been run over by a ten-ton truck
2. eat at home than go to the restaurant
3. to go to the concert tonight
4. he was/ were a billionaire
5. (for us) to go home/ we went home
6. reviewed your lessons for the exams
7. it was/ were her native tongue
8. you would stop fighting
9. they had told me the truth
10. he came to my house tonight

## VI. MỆNH ĐỀ DANH TỪ (NOUN CLAUSES)

### I.

1. I wonder if/ whether it will rain.
2. Where she went is none of your business.
3. I wonder how far it is from New York to Jakarta.
4. Let's ask him which one he wants.
5. I don't know who is coming to the party.
6. I wonder if/ whether Susan has ever been in Portugal.
7. I don't remember how many letters there are in the English alphabet.
8. Why they left the country is a secret.
9. Do you know if/ whether birds can communicate with each other.
10. I can't remember how much it costs.

- II.      1. b            2. c            3. d            4. c            5. d  
            6. b            7. a            8. b            9. a            10. c

## VII. MỆNH ĐỀ SAU “WISH” VÀ “IF ONLY”

### I.

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. had               | 11. had gone        |
| 2. were/ was shining | 12. would sing      |
| 3. had gone          | 13. was/ were lying |
| 4. could swim        | 14. wouldn't give   |

- |                       |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 5. knew               | 15. had driven  |
| 6. lived              | 16. had gotten  |
| 7. had told           | 17. were/ was   |
| 8. was I were wearing | 18. would go    |
| 9. had                | 19. hadn't quit |
| 10. would stop        | 20. would lend  |

## II.

- |                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I hadn't eaten              | 11. I hadn't said               |
| 2. it'd/ it would stop         | 12. you'd/ you would slow down  |
| 3. I knew                      | 13. we hadn't gone              |
| 4. I'd /I had taken            | 14. you wouldn't go I didn't go |
| 5. Ann were/ was.              | 15. I'd /I had saved            |
| 6. they'd/ they would hurry up | 16. it was I were               |
| 7. didn't have                 | 17. I had found                 |
| 8. we'd/ we had had            | 18. somebody would answer       |
| 9. it wasn't/ weren't          | 19. there weren't               |
| 10. I could                    | 20. you had told                |

## III.

1. I wish Ann was/ were here, or If only Ann was/were here.
2. John wishes he could be a pilot when he grows up.
3. I wish I had come to the party last night, or If only I had come...
4. I wish you had given me a chance to tell you the truth, or If only you had given ...
5. Mary wishes she could attend your wedding next week.
6. I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument, or If only I had learned...
7. I wish you drove more slowly. If only you drove...
8. I wish it would stop raining, or If only it would stop...
9. I wish I had enough money to buy this book, or If only I had...
10. I wish I didn't live in a big city, or If only I didn't live...
11. Nam wished he had accepted the job.
12. I wish I wouldn't have to work tomorrow, or If only I wouldn't have...

13. I wish I hadn't eaten too much ice-cream, or If only I hadn't eaten...
14. I wish you had been here last week, or If only you had been...
15. I wish people didn't drop litter in the street, or If only people didn't drop...
16. I wish I had brought my camera, or If only I had brought...
17. I wish it wasn't/ weren't cold, or If only it wasn't/ weren't...
18. I wish I could go to the party, or If only I could go...
19. I wish I had applied for that job. or If only I had applied...
20. I wish my life was I were more interesting, or If only my life was / were ...

#### IV.

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. c | 3. a | 4. c | 5. a  |
| 6. b | 7. c | 8. b | 9. a | 10. d |

**CHƯƠNG 9:**  
**MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSE)**

**I.**

- |               |               |            |
|---------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. who        | 7. which      | 13. whose  |
| 2. □          | 8. whom       | 14. who    |
| 3. which      | 9. which/that | 15. □      |
| 4. which/that | 10. □         | 18. which  |
| 5. □          | 11. which     | 17. who(m) |
| 6. whose      | 12. who       | 18. □      |
| 19. which     | 20. whose     |            |

**II.**

1. Professor Wilson, who teaches Chemistry, is an excellent lecturer.
2. The man (who) you met at the party last night is a famous actor.
3. There are some words which/ that are very difficult to translate.
4. The student whose composition I read writes well.
5. Jim's sister, who (m) you met yesterday, is a famous architect.
6. I received two job offers, neither of which I accepted.
7. I've found the book (which/ that) I was looking for this morning.
8. Mrs. Smith, who is a retired teacher, does volunteer work at the hospital.
9. I live in a dormitory whose residents come from many countries.
10. Lake Prespa, which is on the north Greek border, is a lonely beautiful lake.
11. The little girl who sat next to me on the coach ate candy the whole way.
12. The police blocked off the road, which caused a traffic jam.
13. Felix Reeve, whose tape recorder was stolen, is a journalist.
14. This famous picture, which was damaged during the war, is worth thousands of pounds.
15. The village has around 200 people, the majority of whom are farmers.
16. I don't know the name of the woman (who) I spoke to on the phone./... the woman to whom I spoke on the phone.
17. We often go to visit our friends in Bristol, which is only 30 miles away.
18. I have to call the man whose umbrella I accidentally picked up after the meeting.
19. Louis knows the woman who is meeting us at the airport tomorrow.
20. The scientist who discovered a new plane: has won the Nobel Prize.

21. The river which/ that flows through Hereford is the Wye.
22. We climbed to the top of the tower (which) we had a beautiful view from./... the tower from which we had a beautiful view.
23. A few days ago I met Diana, who (m) I hadn't seen for ages.
24. This is a photograph of our friends (who) we went on holiday with./... our friends with whom we went on holiday.
25. This famous painting, whose value is inestimable, was damaged during the war.

- III.**
- |      |      |      |       |       |       |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. a | 4. b  | 5. b  | 6. a  |
| 7. b | 8. a | 9. b | 10. a | 11. a | 12. b |

**IV.**

1. where we had the car repaired
2. when the weather is usually the hottest
3. when I first met you
4. where people can have a really good meal
5. when you phoned
6. where he was born
7. where people are burned
8. when the revolution took place
9. where we spent our vacation
10. where I can buy some postcards

**V.**

1. This is the place where the accident occurred.
2. 7:05 is the time, when my plane arrives.
3. I'll show you the second-hand bookshop where you can find valuable books.
4. The reason why I'm phoning you is to invite you to my party.
5. Mark likes to travel at night when the roads are quiet.
6. The Riverside Restaurant, where I once had lunch with Henry, is very beautiful.
7. She doesn't want to speak to the cause why she divorced her husband.
8. The days when I lived far from home were the saddest ones.



9. A cafe where people can get a light meal is a small restaurant.
10. You didn't tell us the reason why we had to cut down our daily expenses.

## VI.

- |          |            |          |
|----------|------------|----------|
| 1. which | 4. whose   | 7. who   |
| 2. which | 5. why     | 8. which |
| 3. who   | 6. who (m) | 9. where |

## VII.

1. The student who sits next to me in the English class is from China.
2. 'The Old Man and the Sea', which was written by Ernest Hemingway, is an interesting novel.
3. The professor whose course I'm taking is excellent.
4. Mr Smith, who(m) I had come to see, said he was too busy to speak to me.
5. The man (who) I respect most is my father.
6. Do you know the reason (that/ why) Marta left?
7. Tom has three sisters, all of whom are married.
8. I recently went back to Paris, which is still as beautiful as a pearl.
9. I recently went back to Paris, where I was born nearly 50 years ago.
10. Laura couldn't find the box in which she kept her photos./ ... the box (which/ that) she kept her photos in.
11. Art Golding, who played the ship's captain in 'Iceberg', was a famous actor.
12. The police want to know the hotel where Mr Foster stayed two weeks ago.
13. I've sent him two letters, neither of which he has received.
14. That man, whose name I don't remember, is an artist.
15. Do you still remember the day (that/ when) we moved to this town?
16. The reason (that/ why) the President will come to that city hasn't been told yet.
17. Vicky didn't get the job, which has made her very depressed.
18. My uncle, who you met at the bus stop this morning, usually goes to work by bus.
19. That car, whose engine is very good, belongs to Dr. Clark.
20. He gave several reasons, only a few of which were valid.
21. Charlie Chaplin, whose films amused millions of people in the world, died in 1977.

22. The taxi driver who took me to the airport is friendly.
23. I ran into a woman (who/ that) I had gone to elementary school with./ ... the woman with whom I had gone to elementary school.
24. The house where I used to live is empty now.
25. Do you remember the year (that/ when) the First World War ended?
26. The girl who is now in hospital was injured in the accident.
27. Mrs. Bond is going to spend a few weeks in Sweden, where her daughter lives.
28. We stayed at the Grand Hotel, which Ann recommended to us.
29. My sister was looking after a dog whose leg had been broken in an accident.
30. The street I live in is very noisy at night, which makes difficult to sleep.

### VIII.

1. who knows all about it
2. whose name was missed off the list
3. (that/ which) Laura painted
4. (that/ which) we're all looking forward to/ to which we're all looking forward
5. (that/ when) Mike and Harriet went camping
6. who is a bit deaf
7. who (m) you will meet tomorrow
8. where we met the other day
9. which has ten thousand employees
10. (that/ why) I didn't write to you

### IX.

1. Do you know the woman coming toward us?
2. The road joining the two villages is very narrow.
3. Most of the goods made in this factory are exported.
4. My grandmother, being old and sick, never goes out of the house.
5. Kuala Lumpur, the capital city of Malaysia, is a major trade center in Southeast Asia.
6. The woman living here before us is a romantic novelist.
7. The scientists researching the causes of cancer are making progress.
8. Our solar system is in a galaxy called the Milky Way.

9. All students not handing in their papers will fail in the exam.
10. Simon Bolivar, a great south American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.
11. Some of the people invited to the party can't come.
12. Ann is the woman responsible for the error.
13. Mr. Jackson, working in the company for over ten years, was nominated as the new director.
14. English has an alphabet consisting of 26 letters.
15. We noticed a pile of stones left in the road.

### X.

1. We used to have a room to play music in.
2. The child will be happier if he has someone to play with.
3. David was the only person to offer his help.
4. We had to sit on the ground because we hadn't anything to sit on.
5. She didn't have anyone to send cards to.
6. There is a big-yard for your children to play in.
7. Emma Thompson is the most famous actress to appear on stage here.
8. We have some picture books for children to read.
9. He was the second man to be killed, in this way.
10. Here are some novels for her to read.

### XI.

2. the youngest girl to swim a length of the pool.
3. the only people to get a pay rise.
4. the last person to leave the aircraft.
5. the first woman to become Managing Director.
6. the most suitable candidate to apply for the job.
7. the first person to solve the puzzle.
8. the only person to write a letter of thanks.

### XII.

- |             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| 1. blocking | 8. to leave           |
| 2. ringing  | 9. living             |
| 3. played   | 10. sitting - reading |

- |                       |                 |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 4. to fill            | 11. published   |
| 5. called             | 12. to survive  |
| 6. working - studying | 13. struck      |
| 7. blown              | 14. overlooking |
| 15. to offer          |                 |

### XIII.

1. Astronomy, one of the world's oldest sciences, is the study of planets and stars.
2. The vegetables sold in supermarkets are grown without chemicals.
3. People protesting against pollution have marched to London.
4. The police never found the money stolen in the robbery.
5. There was a big red car parked outside the house.
6. Libya, a country in North Africa, is a leading producer of oil.
7. A chemical company employing 4,000 people has gone bankrupt.
8. A new drug developed at a British university may give us eternal youth.
9. A new motorway costing £500 million is planned.
10. Some weapons found at a flat in Bristol belong to the IRA.
11. John Quincy Adams, the sixth president of the United States, was born on July 11, 1767.
12. There were some children swimming in the river.
13. Tennis fans hoping to buy tickets have been queuing all night at Wimbledon.
14. Some paintings stolen from the museum haven't been found yet.
15. Two languages, Finnish and Swedish, are used in Helsinki, the capital of Finland.

### XIV.

1. There were a lot of people waiting in a...
2. This isn't the bus on which I...
3. ... which I am interested in.
4. The reason why I didn't know...
5. ... the name of the man who helped me.
6. some of whom are from my country.
7. ... in Sapporo, a city in Japan.
8. ... the only person (who (m)/ that) I wanted to see.
9. ... whose house is for rent.

10. Students who live on campus...
11. Einstein, who failed his university entrance exam, discovered relativity.
12. ... was very friendly.
13. The bridge built only...
14. It's the President who makes...
- 15.... which is a real nuisance.
- 16.... a pair of boots covered in mud.
17. Lake Superior, which lies...
- 18.... a small city located on the southern coast of Brazil.
- 19.... the country where there is plenty of sunshine.
20. The nice couple with whom we ...

**XV.**

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d  | 2. c  | 3. c  | 4. c  | 5. d  |
| 6. b  | 7. c  | 8. c  | 9. a  | 10. c |
| 11. b | 12. b | 13. c | 14. d | 15. d |
| 16. a | 17. a | 18. c | 19. a | 20. c |
| 21. d | 22. c | 23. d | 24. a | 25. d |

## CHƯƠNG 10: SỰ SO SÁNH (COMPARISON)

### I.

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 2. as comfortable as | 7. as well as       |
| 3. as quietly as     | 8. as exciting as   |
| 4. as quickly as     | 9. as long as       |
| 5. as fast as        | 10. as expensive as |
| 6. as often as       | 11. as soon as      |
| 12. as strong as     |                     |

### II.

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 2. larger/ bigger   | 9. more interesting |
| 3. more difficult   | 10. more often      |
| 4. warmer           | 11. worse           |
| 5. happier          | 12. more expensive  |
| 6. further/ farther | 13. stronger        |
| 7. better           | 14. more quietly    |
| 8. more slowly      | 15. simpler         |

### III.

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 3. more easily         | 9. more slowly           |
| 4. earlier than        | 10. longer than          |
| 5. worse               | 11. more useful          |
| 6. more important than | 12. further/farther than |
| 7. more carefully      | 13. more intelligent     |
| 8. more peaceful than  | 14. busier than          |
| 15. more serious than  |                          |

### IV.

2. Travelling by car is faster than (travelling) by train.
3. Joe did worse than Chris.
4. My friends arrived earlier than I expected.
5. The film is longer than the videotape.
6. The CD is more expensive than the cassette.
7. I ran further than Dave.

8. The castle is older than the church.
9. Harriet is taller than Mike.
10. Claire is more popular than Andrew.
11. Mark's car is bigger than Sandra's.
12. Petronas Twin Towers is higher than Sears Tower.
13. We were busier than usual at work today./ We were busier at work today than usual.
14. The buses run more frequently than the trains.
15. Matthew is stronger than Daniel.

#### V.

- |                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 3. the happiest day of       | 4. the most intelligent student in |
| 5. the most boring speech    | 6. the largest company in          |
| 7. the wettest month of      | 8. the most delicious meal         |
| 9. the most carefully of     | 10. the best players in            |
| 11. the most famous teams in | 12. the quickest of                |
| 13. the worst experiences of | 14. the most valuable painting in  |
| 15. the busiest time of      |                                    |

#### VI.

2. Friday is the busiest day of the week.
3. This watch is one of the most expensive (watches) in the store.
4. This Beatles album is the best (one) they ever made.
5. Alan is the most successful salesman in the company.
6. That was the funniest joke I've ever heard.
7. Mary is the most patient person of my daughters.
8. Ten kilometers is the furthest distance he've ever run.

#### VII.

- |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 3. more and more difficult  | 4. more and more complicated |
| 5. more and more            | 6. longer and longer         |
| 7. more and more nervous    | 8. worse and worse           |
| 9. better and better        | 10. heavier and heavier      |
| 11. more and more expensive | 12. bigger and bigger.       |

### VIII.

2. the more quickly you learn
3. the quieter the roads (are)
4. the wider the choice (is)
5. the more confused I get
6. the more fluently you can speak
7. the more crowded the beaches get
8. the more impatient she became
9. the harder it is to concentrate
10. the more reliable the product

### IX.

1. as pretty
2. more expensive
3. best
4. happier
5. the worst
6. stronger
7. The eldest/ oldest
8. better and better
9. the most delightful
10. cheaper and cheaper
11. worse
12. more ill-prepared/ worse-prepared
13. the most popular
14. more fluently
15. the most badly-bred/ the worst-bred

### X.

1. bigger
2. the smallest planet - the furthest/ farthest
3. more interesting than
4. the best student - the most intelligent - more intelligent than
5. worse - the hottest month
6. not as warm as/ not so warm as
7. the highest - further/ farther north than - higher - the highest mountain
8. the most important - more important than
9. (any) faster - as fast as - shorter than I am
10. more serious than - healthier - better
11. no cleaner than
12. later - earlier here than
13. much easier than - the best
14. smaller - less - the least
15. (any) better - worse - as/ so much money as



**XI.**

- |                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 2. than him/ than he does | 6. as them/ as they have been |
| 3. as me/ as I do         | 7. as you/ as you do          |
| 4. than us/ than we were  | 8. than me/ I did             |
| 5. than her/ than she is  |                               |

**XII.**

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| 3. ✓                                     | 9. ✓                      |
| 4. quicker → quickest                    | 10. I → me/ I am          |
| 5. elder → older                         | 11. as → than I more → as |
| 6. of → in                               | 12. ✓                     |
| 7. weter → wetter                        | 13. rich → richest        |
| 8. more and more hot → hotter and hotter | 14. much → many           |
|  | 15. ✓                     |

**XIII.**

- |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 4. a | 7. a | 10. C |
| 2. c | 5. d | 8. a |       |
| 3. a | 6. b | 9. d |       |

**XIV.**

1. This hotel is the most expensive.
2. The sun is hotter than the moon.
3. You are more patient than I am/ me.
4. The table/ the desk is as big as the desk/ the table.
5. Prices just get higher and higher.
6. The skirt is more expensive than the dress.
7. This crossword is the least difficult.
8. They were getting more and more excited.
9. It's the most romantic story I've ever read.
10. A bus is less expensive than a taxi.

## CHƯƠNG 11: SỰ ĐẢO NGỮ (INVERSION)

### I.

- |                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. he would never | 6. passed                  |
| 2. did I remember | 7. so high were the waves  |
| 3. when           | 8. Peter has arrived       |
| 4. was I          | 9. than                    |
| 5. was I aware    | 10. should you leave early |

### II.

1. Never before had she been so happy.
2. Never have I heard such nonsense!
3. Never in my life have I seen such a mess.
4. Never have our profits been higher than/ as higher as they are this year.
5. Never again would she trust her own judgment when buying antique.
6. Never before had the firm laid on such a sumptuous celebration.
7. Never have I come across such a horrifying film.
8. Never have I been so moved by a Shakespeare production.
9. Never for one moment did I think the consequences would be so far reaching.
10. Never before had I tasted such a wonderful combination of flavours.

### III.

1. In no way can Keith be held responsible for the accident.
2. In no way are the children themselves to blame for the disaster.
3. In no way is the existence of extraterrestrial life confirmed by the report.
4. At no time was I shown how to operate the machine.
5. At no time did he suspect that he was a witch.
6. At no time has the English language not been in a state of change.
7. Under no circumstance will Miss Weaver be offered the job.
8. Under no circumstance should you send money to us by post.
9. Under no circumstance can we exchange tickets.
10. On any account will I go all that way to visit him again.

### IV.

1. Not only is he your friend, but he's mine too.
2. Not only did he book tickets for the afternoon performance but he also booked for the evening performance as well.

3. Not only did the burglars steal a thousand pounds' worth of electrical goods, they also left the flat in an awful mess.
4. Not only was Tom late, but he had left all his books behind.
5. Not only will you enhance your posture but you will (also) improve your acting ability (as well) on this course.
6. Not for one moment is it worth considering his suggestion /is his suggestion worth considering.
7. Not a tear did she shed when the story ended in tragedy.
8. Not once did the manager offer is an apology.
9. Not a sound did she make as she crept upstairs.
10. Not until he retired did he think about having a holiday abroad.

#### V.

1. Only when I got home did I realize how dangerous the situation had been.
2. Only last week did the Agriculture Minister admit defeat.
3. Only after seeing Hamlet on the stage did I understand it.
4. Only after they had finished eating did they get round to business.
5. Only after they waited for twelve hours did their flight leave.
6. Only after did I realize who she was.
7. Only by (using) force could the door be opened.
8. Only when Tom's apologized will I agree.
9. Only when you buy all twelve books at the same time can/will you get the 40% discount.
10. Only by training hard can/will/could you become a good athlete.

#### VI.

1. Should the government be forced into another election, it would be the favorite to win.
2. Should you wish to make an appointment to see Dr Simons, she is available between 9.00 and 11.00.
3. Should you have further problems with your printer, contact your dealer for advice.
4. Should you decide to accept the post, you will be expected to start work on 1<sup>st</sup> April.
5. Should we hear any further news, we will be in touch immediately.

6. Should you wish to take advantage of the offer, kindly tick the box on your order.
7. Should the film be a box-office success, they may be a sequel.
8. Should you change your mind, there will always be a job for you here.

## VII.

1. Were the chemical to leak, a large area of sea would be contaminated.
2. Were Germany to beat, they would face Italy in the final.
3. Were Mr Morgan still headmaster, he would not permit such bad behavior.
4. Had you given it in on time, you would have got a high mark.
5. Had she become a lawyer, as her parents' wishes, she would have earned a large salary.
6. Had anything gone wrong, I would have been held responsible.
7. Had it not been for Henry, I might not have met you.
8. Had the coast guards been notified they could have saved the vessels.
9. Had they confirmed by phone, the airline could have warned them.
10. Had it not been for his solicitor's advice, he would have made a serious mistake.

## VIII.

1. Not only did he spend all his money but she also borrowed some from me.
2. No sooner had I left the office than the phone rang.
3. Hardly had I put the phone down when the boss rang back.
4. Not until the bell rang did he finish his work.
5. Only after several months did we begin to see the symptoms of the disease.
6. Never in my life have seen anyone drink as much as you.
7. Under the table was lying a sleeping dog.
8. Rarely had his brother been more excited.
9. Only later were all the facts made public.
10. Had I realized what would happen, I wouldn't have accepted the job.
11. Such was the response to our appeal that we had to take on more staff.
12. Not only did Harry break his leg but he also injured his shoulder.
13. Little did the police suspect that the judgment was the murderer.
14. Should you see Helen, could you ask her to call me?

15. In no way can the bus be blamed for the accident.
16. So heavy was the snowfall that all the trains had to be cancelled.
17. Were the government to write interest rates they would lose the election.
18. No sooner had I got into the bath than someone knocked on the door.
19. Such was the uncertainty that the financial markets remained closed.
20. Seldom is there so much rain in March.
21. Only when your identity has been checked will you be allowed in.
22. Hardly had the play started when there was a power failure.
23. Rarely has the Prime Minister made so inept a speech.
24. Scarcely had we arrived home when the police called.
25. On no account are press photographers allowed to take photographs backstage.
26. Never before has so much money been spent to so little purpose!.
27. Barely had the trial proceedings begun when the judge was taken ill.

#### IX.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Hardly/ Scarcely       | 6. do                     |
| 2. Under no circumstances | 7. Never had /have        |
| 3. Little did             | 8. Not only did           |
| 4. Never had / Rarely had | 9. Under no circumstances |
| 5. Were you               | 10. No sooner had         |

#### X.

- |                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. had the plane taken off, when | 6. the temperature fall             |
| 2. Does she know                 | 7. had he begun.                    |
| 3. had the train left            | 8. I to be disturbed                |
| 4. we turned.                    | 9. a pupil at this / a student from |
| 5. did I know                    | 10. does the company.               |

#### XI.

1. If Smith were to resign , I might stand a chance of getting his job.
2. The demand for tickets was so great that people queued night and day.
3. Under no circumstances is the money to be paid.
4. Not until three days had passed did we arrived at the first oasis/ It was not until three days later that we arrived at the first oasis.

5. Soon after the ship left port , a violent storm developed.
6. If they had carried a compass they would have discovered the land sooner.
7. Brenda had no idea what she was letting herself in for.
8. Only when I stopped did I realize that something was wrong.
9. At no time did the accused express regret for what he has done.
10. The runners were too exhausted to finish the race.

## **XII.**

1. .... as over their heads flew the bullets.
2. .... down came a heavy snow.
3. In front of the station, the two men were talking.(no inversion)
4. Behind the protesters was a line of police officers.
5. At the end of the street ran a small stream. Across the stream was an overgrown garden.
6. .... and suddenly round the corner it came. ( no inversion)
7. In front of them was a white pillar, and on top of it stood a small, marble statue.
8. ....and off ran the children.

## CHƯƠNG 12: CÂU (SENTENCES)

### I.

3. Has Mark been to Los Angeles?
4. Where did you buy your coat?
5. Does Laura play tennis?
6. Can I borrow your squash racket?
7. Who am I speaking to?
8. How much do video recorders cost?
9. What did you lock the door for?
10. Will you be at the club tonight?
11. Did you enjoy your holiday?
12. How long does the journey take?
13. Where are we going to have lunch?
14. Is the train on time?
15. Do Mike and Harry go camping?
16. When does the course finish?
17. What happens next?
18. Shall we go for a walk?/ Why don't we go for a walk?
19. Have you got a motorbike?/ Do you have a motorbike?
20. May/ Can I come in?

### II.

1. How old are you?
2. Do you live locally?
3. Where do you live?
4. When did you leave school?
5. Which school did you go to?
6. Are you working now?
7. Who do you work for?
8. How long have you been working there?/ How long have you worked there?
9. Do you enjoy your present job?
10. Why do you want to leave?
11. Can you work on Saturdays?

12. How do you travel to work?
13. Have you got a car?
14. When can you start?

### III.

1. How is Christopher going to London?
2. How many cars have the Smiths got/ do the Smiths have?
3. Where does Janet work?
4. Why is Ann learning English?
5. How was the film?/ What was the film like?
6. When will the meeting take place?
7. Who switched off the computer?
8. Whose burglar alarm was ringing?
9. Who(m) did Ann go to the dance with?/ With whom did Ann go to the dance?
10. How often are the Olympic Games held?
11. What is your weight?/ How many kilos do you weigh?
12. What does your father do?
13. How much money do you earn?
14. How far is it from here to the post office?
15. What color is the Vietnamese flag?
16. What did you buy?
17. What time are your friends arriving?/ When are your friends arriving?
18. How long will the meeting last?
19. Which shop does Susan work in?/ What kind of shop does Susan work in?
20. What did you buy this computer magazine for?/ Why did you buy this computer magazine?

### IV.

1. where my football boots are
2. how much this jacket costs/ how much this jacket is
3. where the books about Russia are
4. what time the last bus leaves/ when the last bus leaves
5. how to use this coffee machine/ how this coffee machine works
6. how far it is to the airport
7. where the manager's office is



8. when the first Olympic Games took place
9. how old your sister is
10. why the car has stopped/ why the car won't go

#### V.

- |                 |                 |              |
|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. aren't they  | 2. have you     | 3. isn't it  |
| 4. are there    | 5. aren't they  | 6. will he   |
| 7. will you     | 8. didn't you   | 9. do they   |
| 10. can't we    | 11. was it      | 12. shall we |
| 13. aren't I    | 14. will you    | 15. have you |
| 16. will he     | 17. will you    | 18. do you   |
| 19. doesn't she | 20. won't there |              |

#### VI.

2. The film was great, wasn't it?
3. She has a lovely voice, doesn't she?/ She has got a lovely voice, hasn't she?
4. It doesn't look very good, does it?
5. You have had your hair cut, haven't you?
6. This bridge isn't very safe, is it?
7. It's (very) expensive, isn't it?
8. Let's listen to some music, shall we?
9. Don't do anything silly, will you?
10. Pass me the salt, will you?

#### VII.

- |       |       |       |      |       |
|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|
| 1. b  | 2. c  | 3. a  | 4. b | 5. b  |
| 6. c  | 7. a  | 8. d  | 9. b | 10. b |
| 11. a | 12. a | 13. c |      |       |

#### VIII.

1. Would you like to go sailing?
2. Are you a student here?
3. How many cakes have you eaten?
4. I'm too impatient, aren't I?
5. Did you enjoy your trip?

6. Where have your friends gone?
7. Does Peter play tennis?
8. Don't drop those plates, will you?
9. It's hardly rained at all this summer, has it?
10. What has happened?
11. Who does this calculator belong to?
12. No, I hate horror film.
13. Which of these magazines would you like?
14. What are you looking for?
15. Let's sit in the garden, shall we?
16. Have you ever been to Thailand?
17. Would you like to explain what the problem is?
18. How long did it take you to get there?
19. What color are you going to paint it?
20. Why don't people in your country show more respect to the elderly?

### IX.

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. Place     | 2. Make        |
| 3. Use       | 4. Don't place |
| 5. Don't put | 6. Don't leave |
| 7. Don't eat | 8. Clean       |
| 9. Keep      | 10. switch     |

### X.

1. What a clever boy!
2. Isn't she tall!
3. How interesting the novel was!
4. Didn't they write slowly!
5. What fast horses!
6. How expensive the dress is!
7. Wasn't the film frightening!
8. What warm weather!
9. How effectively they work!
10. What a lovely cat my friend has!
11. Doesn't he look like his father!

12. How dirty those trousers are!
13. What awful noise!
14. How cold it is!
15. What nice shoes you've got on!
16. How tired I feel!
17. What an old house!
18. Isn't that a great song!
19. How beautifully Marta sings!
20. What a beautiful smile she has!

## XI.

1. Helen is giving Jack some cassettes on his birthday.
2. I bought some new jeans recently.
3. This climate doesn't suit me.
4. Diana is becoming more and more beautiful these days.
5. They have painted their front door a bright yellow!
6. I found my purse under the bed.
7. Dad sold the old Renault to our next door neighbor yesterday.
8. Our friend sent us some tulips by express mail.
9. Bob saw Mary crossing the street in town.
10. We took a bus to the airport.
11. She hates answering the phone all the time.
12. All the neighbors supposed her to be a widow.
13. Her father would not consent to her living alone in a big city.
14. Can you spare me a few minutes of your valuable time?
15. It is important to go to school regularly.
16. We must give the encyclopedia back to them.
17. The trouble is that we are short of money.
18. No one heard John leave the house.
19. We are waiting for John to arrive.
20. The bus knocked him down.

## CHƯƠNG 13: VĂN PHONG (STYLES)

### I.

1. He didn't intend to make a long journey with her.
2. Has the city government decided to build ...?
3. She isn't interested in what she ...
4. Do most school-leavers strongly desire to work ...
5. I don't think they disagree with what ...
6. The plan didn't succeed just because most members weren't determined to do it well.
7. During the lesson, she always looks carefully at all the sentences ...
8. My friend wished to become a pilot.
9. You needn't answer all the questions ...
10. Please call me when you arrive, and we'll meet at a ...
11. She doesn't know what will be because she never thinks about it.
12. She said she would visit me someday.
13. He decided to leave home.
14. I didn't intend to stay here.
15. She is greatly interested in music.
16. The two schoolgirls exchanged their English lessons.
17. He bathes every morning.
18. I arranged with the neighbors ...
19. She didn't explain her plan.
20. She was examined by a doctor.

### II.

1. I had an argument with the referee about his decision.
2. Are you in agreement with John about this?
3. She usually gives her hair a brush before going out.
4. She had a number of complaints about his rudeness.
5. Because of engine trouble, the plane had to make a land on the fields.
6. Take a look at this picture.
7. I'm in love with her.
8. We must make an early start.
9. He was in receipt of her letter of the 10th.
10. After lunch time she usually takes a rest.

### III.

1. They tend to minimize problems.
2. They strongly desire to put aside ...
3. They gave a lot of thought to their work.
4. They knew little about the job of their choice.
5. They are determined to overcome problems.
6. He pays us a visit whenever he's in town.
7. They have tended to choose well-paid jobs.
8. Millions of dollars are spent on advertising every year.
9. You'd better not contact her.
10. I had a good sleep last night.
11. Carol Stuart is a good cooker and swimmer.
12. She strongly desires for a scholarship.
13. The villagers cordially welcomed us.
14. He doesn't intend to leave the city.
15. She is a good English teacher.
16. They have to do this job at once.
17. She is a careful typist.
18. Hardly had we begun our walk when it rained.
19. This woman sleeps very little.
20. My grandfather loves music.
21. He drives carefully.
22. She is a good singer.
23. They have made all the arrangements.
24. No one in his team plays football as well as him.
25. She is a good tennis player.
26. English is spoken in Australia.
27. A hospital is being built for the poor.
28. She hasn't been seen since 1980.
29. His parents were visited by him last week.
30. We had a decision to go to Boston.

## MỤC LỤC

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU.....	4
CHƯƠNG 1: TỪ LOẠI TRONG TIẾNG ANH (THE PARTS OF SPEECH) .....	5
CHƯƠNG 2: TỪ VỰNG HỌC (WORD STUDY).....	240
CHƯƠNG 3: CÁC THÌ (TENSES).....	254
CHƯƠNG 4: SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CÁC THỜI (SEQUENCE OF TENSES) .....	289
CHƯƠNG 5: CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG (PASSIVE SENTENCES) .....	304
CHƯƠNG 6: CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT (REPORTED SPEECH) .....	321
CHƯƠNG 7: CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES) .....	335
CHƯƠNG 8: CÁC MỆNH ĐỀ VÀ CỤM TỪ (CLAUSE AND PHRASE)...	346
CHƯƠNG 9: MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSE) .....	388
CHƯƠNG 10: SỰ SO SÁNH (COMPARISON).....	409
CHƯƠNG 11: SỰ ĐẢO NGỮ (INVERSION).....	428
CHƯƠNG 12: CÂU (SENTENCES).....	437
CHƯƠNG 13: VĂN PHONG (STYLES) .....	469
<b>KEY .....</b>	<b>491</b>

## GIẢI THÍCH NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH

---

**NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI**

16 Hàng Chuối - Hai Bà Trưng - Hà Nội

Điện thoại: (04) 9714896; (04) 9724770; Fax: (04) 9714899

---

*Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:*

**Giám đốc - Tổng biên tập: TS. PHẠM THỊ TRÂM**

*Biên tập:* THU HIỀN & CẨM VÂN

*Sửa bản in:* MCBOOKS

*Chế bản:* LÊ LIÊN

*Vẽ bìa:* TRỌNG KIÊN

 **LIÊN KẾT XUẤT BẢN**

**CÔNG TY CỔ PHẦN SÁCH MCBOOKS**

*Địa chỉ:* Số nhà 26, ngõ 245 Mai Dịch

Cầu Giấy, Hà Nội

*Website:* [www.mcbooks.vn](http://www.mcbooks.vn)

---

Mã số: 2L-171ĐH2013

In 5.000 cuốn, khổ 16x24cm, tại Công ty TNHH sản xuất in Quang Minh.

Số KHXH: 476-2013/CXB/25-63ĐHQGHN ngày 12/4/2013

Quyết định xuất bản số: 231LK-XH/QĐ-NXB ĐHQGHN

In xong và nộp lưu chiểu năm 2013